Manual for

FOMA® N900iG '04.12



Contents/Precautions

Getting Started

Making/Receiving a Call

Making/Receiving a Videophone Call

Phonebook

Sound and Display Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode

Messaging

i-αppli

i-motion

Displaying, Editing and Managing Data

Other Useful Functions

Network Service

Data Communication

Character Entry

Traveling with N900iG

Appendix

Index/ Quick Manual

Network Mode Switchover Overseas

➔“Manual for FOMA N900iG” p.544

The FOMA N900iG automatically detects and connects to an appropriate network when it is set to “Auto” from “Menu”, “Settings”, “Network setting” and “Network switch”. However, it may be hard to switch networks depending on radio wave and overseas network conditions in the area where the FOMA terminal is used.

Since network detection starts with 3G networks, it is recommended to set “Network switch” to “GSM” if you know in advance that 3G networks are not available in your local area.

- The default setting for “Network switch” is “Auto”.
- For the areas where 3G networks are available, refer to the WORLD WING homepage.

Charging your Terminal Overseas

To charge the FOMA N900iG overseas, take with you a conversion plug adapter that is suitable for the local specification and use the “FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use” with it.

- You can purchase the conversion plug adapter at various locations such as mass retailers of consumer electronics or travel goods shops.
- Do not use a voltage converter for overseas use to charge your terminal.

DoCoMo
W-CDMA System

Thank you for purchasing the FOMA N900iG.

Please read carefully this user's manual and the other manuals delivered with units such as the battery pack before and while using the N900iG to ensure correct use of your terminal. If you find any unclear point in this manual, please contact the DoCoMo Information Center indicated on the back cover of this manual. We hope you enjoy using the N900iG for years to come as your efficient and reliable partner.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- FOMA terminals operate using radio waves, so phone calls cannot be made in locations where radio waves cannot be received. You cannot use the FOMA terminal in tunnels, underground areas, inside buildings, and outdoor locations where reception is poor, or out of the service areas. You may also experience difficulties making phone calls from the upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. When reception is good (i.e. the reception level indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during the call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, be mindful of not disturbing the people around you.
- Because the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always the risk of your calls being intercepted by a third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports tapping prevention for all calls. In this way, even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where signal reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what was actually said.
- It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data (names, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, etc.) stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo shall not be held liable for any loss of stored data.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the results of using TLS/SSL. Neither NTT DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as to security in the use of TLS/SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain any damage or loss due to the use of TLS/SSL, under no circumstances shall either NTT DoCoMo or the certifier be held responsible for any such damage or loss. Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and DoCoMo's roaming area.

Before using this manual

- **Search from contents**
  See "Contents" (p.2) first. Items that can be tips for your terminal operations are listed. You can find the page that describes information you want to know, by reading "Contents".
- **Search from Index**
  If you know the keyword of the item you want to know, you can find the keyword in the Index (p.594) in order to quickly go to the desired page.
- **Search from chapter side title**
  To search the category, use "Chapter side title" on the front cover. The first page of each chapter lists in detail the page numbers.
- **Search from feature**
  When you have a specific feature in mind, you can find it in "Features of the FOMA N900iG" (pp.4 and 5). If you know the function name, you can find its page in "Menu List" (p.554).
- **Using "Quick Manual"**
  The "Quick Manual" on the end of this manual describes the basic operations and screen displays of the FOMA terminal. To use the quick manual, remove it from this manual and fold it into the shape of a book.

- Note that the **FOMA N900iG** is referred to simply as "FOMA terminal" in this manual for **FOMA N900iG**.
- Some of the functions that are explained in this manual require the optional miniSD memory card.
  miniSD memory card →p.376
- Reprinting of this manual in part or in whole without permission is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

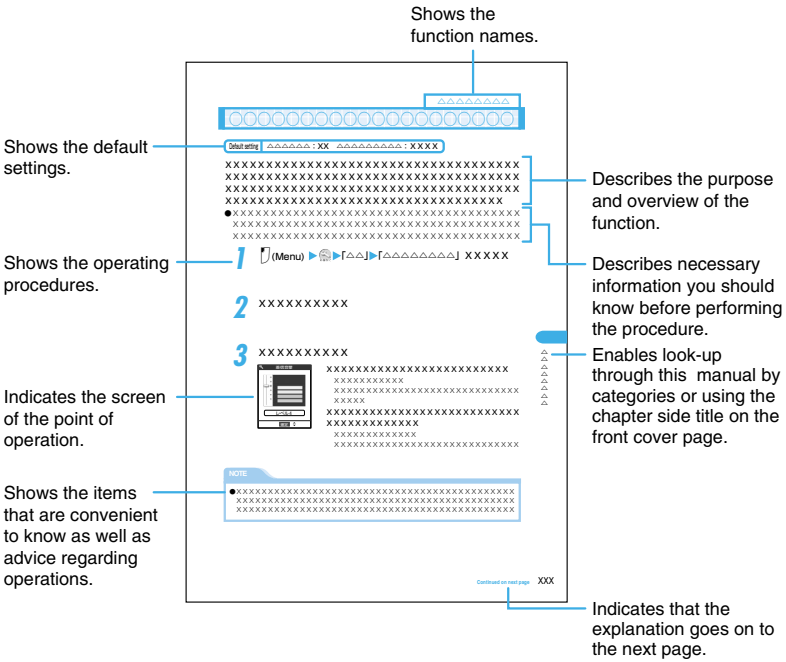
About the symbols (Quick Manual → p.602)

This manual uses the symbols shown in the sample page below.
Understanding the meaning of the different symbols will help you use this manual more effectively.

In this manual, the following instructions are used for menu operations: “Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call ” ▶ “Ring volume””. For specific operations, see “Instructions for menu operations” (p.44) in “How to Select Menu Items”.

Useful information and notes on using your terminal overseas are provided in “Traveling with N900iG” (p.529).

Read “Traveling with N900iG” before using the terminal overseas. → p.529



About the screen shots used in this manual

- To provide easier readout, the screen shots for the display are shown with the “Stand-by display” (p.140) set to “OFF”. In addition, some parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are zoomed in.
- This manual provides the procedures based on the default settings. If you change the settings after purchase, the display of your FOMA terminal may be different from that of this manual.
- The screens shown in this manual are screen images and may differ from the actual screens.

The Quick Manual describes basic operations and displays. Another Quick Manual helpful for using the FOMA terminal abroad is also included.

Contents

How to Use This Manual 1
Contents 2
Features of the FOMA N900iG 4
Mastering the FOMA N900iG ! 6
Safety Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS) 8
Handling and Care 20
Copyrights/Trademarks 22
Standard Package and Optional Accessories 24

Getting Started 25
• Components name and functions
• How to view the display • Menu functions
• FOMA card • Charging
• Battery level • Power on/off
• Date and time • Caller ID notification
• Own number, etc.

Making/Receiving a Call 61
• Making calls • Redial • Pause dial
• WORLD CALL • International call
• Reconnect • Receiving calls
• Dialled/Received calls list
• Volume • On hold
• Driving mode • Record message, etc.

Making/Receiving a Videophone Call 87
• Videophone calls • Making videophone calls
• Receiving videophone calls • Chara-den
• Changing videophone call settings
• Remote monitor, etc.

Phonebook 101
• Phonebook entry • Group setting
• Utilities/Group utilities • Phonebook search
• Edit • Delete • FOMA card operation
• Number of stored entries • Two-touch dial, etc.

Sound and Display Settings 123
• Ring tone • Vibrator • Voice announce
• Keypad sound • Manner mode • Desktop
• Display settings • Image window • Display light
• Color pattern • Illumination • Clock display, etc.

Security Settings 151
• Security codes • Set PIN codes
• Cancel PIN codes • All lock • Self mode
• PIM lock • Keypad dial lock
• Side keys guard • Secret mode/Secret only mode
• Restrictions • Reject unknown, etc.

Camera 169
• Before using • Still image • Movie
• Changing shooting settings
• Changing camera settings • Bar code reader, etc.

i-mode 197
• i-mode • i-mode menus • My menu
• i-mode password • Internet access • Bookmark
• Home URL • Screen memo
• Downloading image
• Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions
• Receiving Messages • i-mode inquiry, etc.

Messaging 241
• Mail menu • Composing/sending i-mode mail
• Deco-mail • Templates • Speed photo mail
• Mail auto reception • Mail selective reception

• i-mode inquiry • Replying to i-mode mail
• Forwarding i-mode mail
• Add mail address in Phonebook
• Saving melody • i-motion mail
• Inbox/Outbox • Composing/sending SMS
• Receiving SMS • FOMA card operation

i-αppli 309

• i-αppli • Downloading i-αppli
• Running i-αppli • i-αppli standby display

i-motion 331

• i-motion • Downloading i-motion
• i-motion auto replay setting
• i-motion type setting, etc.

Displaying, Editing and Managing Data ... 337

• Displaying saved image • Editing still image
• Playing movie/i-motion • Editing movie
• Chara-den • Playing melody • Folders and data
• Managing data • miniSD memory card, etc.
• Data transfer by Ir exchange/cable connection
• Forwarding images

Other Useful Functions 403

• Multi access • Multi task • Alarm notification
• Alarm clock • Schedule • ToDo
• Register your name and image
• Recording voice • Text memo • Dictionary
• Earphone/microphone with switch
• Reset settings

Network Service 445

• Voice mail • Call waiting
• Call forwarding • Bar nuisance call
• Caller ID request • English guidance, etc.

Data Communication 459

• Data communication available with the FOMA terminal
• Checking the procedures
• Connecting a PC and the FOMA terminal
• Install the Communication setting file (driver)
• FOMA PC setting software
• Dial-up network settings • AT command list, etc.

Character Entry 501

• Character entry • Kana input mode
• Copy/Cut/Paste
• Kuten code
• Own dictionary • Resetting learning record
• Download dictionary • Setting the entry mode
• Text entry with the T9 method
• Text entry with the 2-touch method
• Switching screens

Traveling with N900iG 529

• International Roaming Service (WORLD WING)
• Before using your terminal overseas
• Available services • Making a call
• Receiving a call • Network switch
• Set network search • Set preferred networks
• Roaming setting • International service
• Answer setting during i-mode

Appendix 553

• Menu function list • Glossary
• Letter assignment on Keypads • Symbols
• Special symbols • Pictographs • Face marks
• Common phrase list • Kuten code list
• Combination in multi access
• Combination in multi task
• Available service • Optional/related accessories
• Data Link Software • Malfunction
• Error messages • Clear settings or data
• Warranty and after-sales service
• Software update
• SAR certification and other information

Index 592

Quick Manual 602

Features of the FOMA N900iG

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

Compatible with i-mode service and more user-friendly mail service

- You can comfortably use the site (program) connection services, internet connection, i-αppli and i-motion with the high-speed packet communication capability of up to 384 kbps for receiving. Also, SMS (free) used without a specific application for the service and i-mode mail (charged) used as mail through the Internet are available.
- i-mode service requires a separate subscription (charged).
  - i-mode (Charged) →p.198
  - i-mode mail →p.242
  - i-motion →p.332
  - i-motion mail →p.260
  - i-αppli →p.310

International Roaming Service

→p.530

- This function features services such as voice/videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication※ performed by connecting to a machine such as PC in overseas areas, and useful network services such as the voice mail service and call forwarding service.
- You can use International roaming with the phone number you use in Japan.
- Available networks and carriers are detected automatically under the initial setting, allowing you to use the communication service without having to worry about the country/region.

※: As of December 2004, packet communication performed by connecting to a machine such as PC is not available in overseas areas. For the latest information, see the DoCoMo web site.

Supports packet transmission at speeds of up to 384 kbps

→p.460

- Connecting an external device such as a PC to the FOMA terminal enables speedy packet transmission providing a maximum speed of 384 kbps for receiving.
- An external device such as a PC is necessary for data communication.

More compatible with multi access and multi task functions

→pp.404 and 407

- By Multi access that enables the FOMA terminal to handle a voice call and packet transmission at the same time, you can talk while enjoying the i-mode service or exchange mails during a call. The FOMA terminal also supports the multi task function that allows multiple applications simultaneously.
- A separate subscription (charged) is required for the i-mode service.
- In addition to multi access, you can use the SMS at the same time.

Supports the FOMA card

→p.46

- The FOMA card is an IC card that holds your private information such as telephone number. You can use multiple FOMA terminals according to applications by switching your FOMA card.

Security settings

→p.151

- Protects your FOMA terminal from unauthorized use by another and secures your important data. You can also restrict some operations and functions or bar nuisance calls as needed, ensuring safe and convenient use of your FOMA terminal.
  - Security code
  - All lock
  - PIM lock
  - Side key lock
  - Secret mode/Secret only mode
  - Restrictions
  - Ringing time
  - PIN codes (PIN1 code and PIN2 code)
  - Self mode
  - Keypad dial lock
  - Record display set
  - Security settings
  - Call setting w/o ID
  - Reject unknown

Rich network services

→p.445

- Voice mail service
- Call waiting
- Call forwarding service
- Bar nuisance call service
- Caller ID request service
- Dual network service
- English guidance

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Videophone ➔p.87

- You can talk on the videophone to the other party with videophone-capable terminals face to face. If you switch to the handsfree mode, you can hear the other party's voice from the speaker. By operating Chara-den instead of displaying your own image, you can enjoy making Chara-den do various actions during a call.
- It supports the remote monitor with the camera function to check the behavior of your pet in your home from outside, or observe the local conditions such as a plant or operation status from a remote location. Your FOMA terminal can work as a terminal for both sending and receiving remote monitor data.

Camera ➔p.169

- You can take pictures (still images), continuous multiple pictures and movies using the two cameras, in-camera and out-camera. You can take a large picture of 1280×960 dots using the out-camera with 1.23 million recordable pixels (1.24 million valid pixels).
- It also loads the "Chance capture" function, which records movies retroactively from the point you end shooting, and the "Picture voice" function, which adds voice to pictures (still images) taken. Movies shot with these functions can be sent with i-mode mail.

Picture voice ➔p.179

You can add voice to a picture (still image) you have taken. A picture to which voice is added through this function can be played using "i-motion" and be easily sent/received as an i-motion mail.

Speed photo mail ➔p.263

You can send a picture (still image) taken during a voice call to the other party you are talking with easy operation. This function allows you to send not only a picture (still image) taken during a voice call but also a saved picture (still image) in the FOMA terminal.

Deco-mail ➔p.254

- You can change the color of the character of the body and compose and send mail decorated with subtitle, flashing, etc. (Deco-mail). You can also receive Deco-mail to enjoy expressive mail.
- By using pre-installed templates, you can make greeting cards such as birthday cards.

i-αppli DX ➔p.310

You can conveniently use and enjoy i-αppli by interlocking it with the information of a mobile phone that supports i-mode. For example, you can compose mail on the screen with your favorite character, you can know who has called you from the character's comments, and so on.

miniSD memory card ➔p.376

- You can transfer data such as phonebooks, schedule, mail and images between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card. You can also display and/or delete data stored in the miniSD memory card and connect it to a PC to use the miniSD reader/writer function.
- The Long duration mode of the camera function allows you to store shot movies directly into the miniSD memory card and shoot movies for up to one hour.

Supports Flash image ➔p.207

You can display sites with more expressive Flash images. You can also set a Flash image for the standby display.

Bar code reader ➔p.193

You can read the JAN code or QR code using the camera function or use the information to store it into the phonebook and compose i-mode mail, etc. If the pieces of information read are images or melodies, you can display, play and save them.

Dictionary ➔p.434

3 different dictionaries, English-Japanese, Japanese-English and Japanese, are available. They are easy to use and allow you to look up words while composing mails.

Ring tone • Chaku-motion ➔p.124

- N900iG supports ring tones using 50 chords and sound effects such as voices that are generated with the FM※1 and WaveTable※2 sound sources.
  - ※1: Sounds generated by using oscillation circuits are synthesized to generate various tones.
  - ※2: Person's voices and animal sounds recorded digitally can be used for generating various tones. The pitch of such sounds can be changed and used for composing melodies.
- N900iG also supports Chaku-motion, allowing you to enjoy true-to-life stereophonic sound.

Mastering the FOMA N900iG !

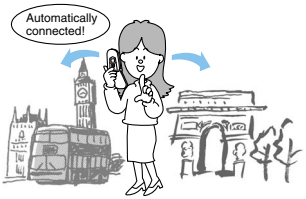
"International roaming" allows the use of i-mode as well as calls overseas.



●Global communication is just as easy abroad as in Japan. →p.530

International roaming allows you to use your own FOMA terminal and phone number anywhere in the world.
You can also use voice calling, videophone calling, i-mode, SMS and packet communication※, as well as convenient network services.

※: As of December 2004, packet communication performed by connecting to a machine such as PC is not available in overseas areas. For the latest information, see the DoCoMo web site.



●Appropriate network/carrier is automatically selected for connection. →p.531

Even if you are no longer within the service area of the carrier you are currently using overseas because you moved to a different location, your FOMA terminal automatically searches for and reconnects to the appropriate network/carrier for your area.

"Dialing assistance" enables calls without changes from your current phonebook even overseas.



●Built-in function facilitates international calls. →p.539

To call Japan from abroad, just dial the usual phone number using the current phonebook and your international call to Japan will be automatically placed.

Other useful functions overseas: "Remote time" and "Dictionary"



●You can display the local time of where you are staying. (Remote time)

By selecting the city that you are visiting to set the local time, you can display both the local time and Japan time on the standby screen. The daylight saving time can also be set.
Set remote time →p.58



●You can look up the meaning of unfamiliar words. (Dictionary)

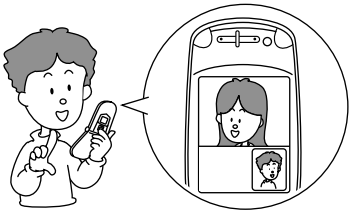
English-Japanese, Japanese-English and Japanese dictionaries are available.
Using the Dictionary →p.434

*The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

“Video-phone” enables a face-to-face communication.

Real time communication while watching each other's face through the videophone →p.88

You can chat with your interlocutor, listening to the voice via a speaker and watching each other's face on the screen.
Switching between the in-camera and out-camera allows the callee to see the surrounding view.



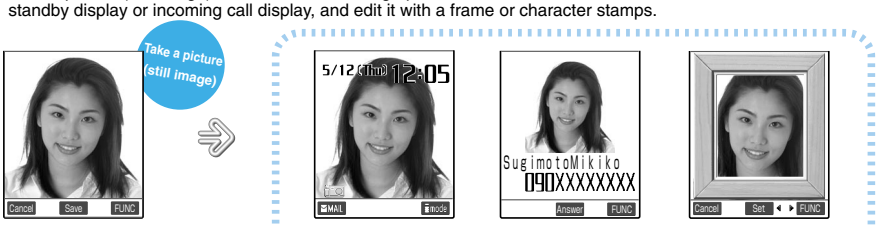
Instead of yourself, you can display a substitute animated image and move its mouth and limbs.



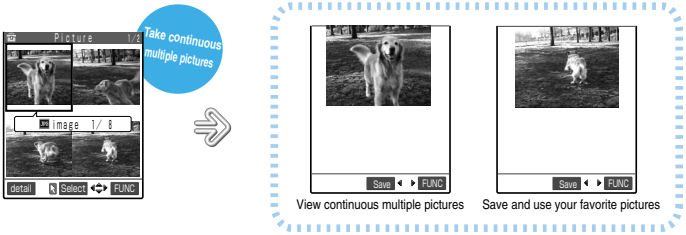
“Camera” enables you to master your FOMA N900iG as the digital cameras or video recorders

Taking a picture (still image) or shooting movie. →p.170

Take a picture (still image) in “Photo mode”, “Mega pixel mode” and save it. You can attach it to mail, set it to the standby display or incoming call display, and edit it with a frame or character stamps.



Take continuous multiple pictures in “Continuous mode” and save them. You can view them like animation, select your favorite ones among these pictures and save them.



Shoot a movie in “Movie mode”, “Chance capture” or “Long duration mode” and save it. With “Chance capture” mode, you can shoot it without missing the important scenes. With “Long duration mode” , you can shoot it until the storage limit of miniSD memory card is reached. The shot movie can be attached to mail, clipped as a still image, or edit a subtitle.



Safety Precautions

ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

■ To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read this “Safety Precautions” carefully prior to use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
■ These safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain information intended to prevent bodily injury and damage to property.
■ The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.

⚠ DANGER	⚠ WARNING	⚠ CAUTION
This symbol indicates that death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use.	This symbol indicates that death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use.	This symbol indicates that bodily injury and/or property damage may result from improper use.

■The following symbols indicate specific directions:

 Don't	Indicates a prohibited action.
 No disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble the device.
 No wet hands	Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.
 No liquids	Indicates not to use the device near water, and not to get it wet.
 Do	Indicates a compulsory action for the described direction.
 Unplug	Indicates that the power cord should be unplugged from the power outlet.

■ “Safety Precautions” are explained in the following categories:

1. Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack and Adapter (including a Charger) (Common) 9
2. Handling the FOMA Terminal 11
3. Handling the Battery Pack 14
4. Handling the Adapters (including a Charger) 16
5. Handling the FOMA Card 18
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 19

1. Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack and Adapter (including a Charger) (Common)

⚠DANGER


Do

Use only the battery packs and adapters (including a charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for use with the FOMA terminal.
The use of devices other than those specified by DoCoMo may result in the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other parts leaking, overheating, exploding, catching fire or malfunction.

Battery Pack N07　Desktop Holder N05　FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use
FOMA AC Adapter 01　FOMA DC Adapter 01　Data Communications Adapter N01

For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo service counter.

⚠WARNING


Don't

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal, charger and adapters may overheat, emit smoke, catch fire or suffer damage to internal circuitry.


Don't

Do not drop, throw or subject the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters to strong force or impacts.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other electronic components may also be damaged or catch fire.


Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal in locations where there is a risk of explosion or fire, such as gas stations.
Use of the FOMA terminal in dusty environments or in locations where there are flammable gases such as propane or gasoline may cause an explosion or fire.

1. Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack and, Adapter (including a Charger) (Common) (continued)

⚠CAUTION


Do

If the FOMA terminal is used by children, the children's parent or guardian should teach them how to use the FOMA terminal and make sure that they always use the FOMA terminal correctly, as instructed.
Improper usage could result in bodily injury.


Don't

Do not keep the FOMA terminal in locations that are very humid or dusty or subject to high temperatures.
Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause it to malfunction.


Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal may become deformed or malfunction.
Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.


Don't

Do not leave the FOMA terminal on a sloping or unstable surface.
The FOMA terminal may fall and cause an injury or be damaged.


Do

Keep the FOMA terminal out of the reach of young children.
A small child may swallow one of the components or suffer other bodily injury.

2. Handling the FOMA Terminal

⚠WARNING


Don't

Never use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.
Doing so may interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Stop your vehicle in a safe place before using the FOMA terminal or set the driving mode while you are driving. The use of mobile phone while driving has become subject to legal penalties since November 1, 2004 due to an amendment of the Road Traffic Law. Even when you are using the phone while walking, pay attention to your surroundings and take extra care.


No disassembly

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the FOMA terminal.
Doing so may cause a fire, bodily injury, electric shock or equipment malfunction.


Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals.
The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive devices and electronic medical equipment. Before turning the FOMA terminal off, ensure that the Auto power ON function is set to "OFF".
Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facility regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises. If you commit prohibited acts such as using the FOMA terminal in an aircraft, such acts may be punishable under the law.


Do

If you have a weak heart, you should take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring volume functions for incoming calls.
Your heart may be adversely affected.


Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance.
The FOMA terminal may overheat, catch fire or cause a malfunction.


Don't

Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another person's eyes when using infrared exchange.
Doing so may cause eye injury. Also, do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as this may cause the device to malfunction.


Do

Turn the FOMA terminal off near high-precision electronic equipment or devices that use weak electronic signals.
The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

※Take particular care with the following devices:

Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.
If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by radio waves.


Don't

If you are wearing electronic medical equipment on your body, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.
Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.


Do

Hold the FOMA terminal off your ear and keep enough distance with it when you talk in the handsfree mode with the speaker.
It may affect your hearing or cause interference to your ears.


Don't

Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.
This will interfere with safe driving and could cause an accident.

2. Handling the FOMA Terminal (continued)

⚠CAUTION


Do

In some types of vehicle, use of the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.
Do not use the FOMA if the terminal might impair safe driving.


Don't

Never swing the FOMA terminal by its strap or other parts.
The FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.


No liquids

Keep the FOMA terminal dry.
Exposing the FOMA terminal to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, malfunction, electric shock or injury. Be careful where and how you use the FOMA terminal.


Don't

Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the miniSD memory card slot.
Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or fault.


Do

Take care when loading or removing the miniSD memory card.
Injury to hands or fingers could occur.


Don't

Do not pour liquid like water or insert a metal piece or any inflammable pieces into the FOMA card insertion slot of the FOMA terminal.
Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or fault.


Don't

Do not let the FOMA terminal come close to or sandwich magnetic cards and other magnetic recording media between the FOMA terminal.
The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.


Do

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn off the FOMA terminal and take shelter in a safe location.
There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering an electric shock.


Do

If in the event that the display or camera lens breaks, be careful of the broken glass.
The surface of the display and camera lens are covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However touching a broken display or camera lens may result in injury.


Don't

Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time.
The light-collecting nature of the lens may cause fire or failure.


Don't

Do not switch the light on when the FOMA terminal is close to your eyes. Take care also not to bring the light close to your eyes or look directly into the light while it is lit.
This could cause impaired vision or otherwise adversely affect your eyes. Moreover, dazzling or surprise caused by the light may cause an accident and injury.

2. Handling the FOMA Terminal (continued)

⚠CAUTION


Don't

Do not use the light for other use than shooting with the built-in cameras.
The light will be off after approximately 30 seconds of no operation. Using it for purposes outside of shooting with built-in cameras (such as using it as an electronic torch) will cause the light run out suddenly which may lead to an accident.


Do

Use of the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and seek medical treatment.
Metal is used in the following locations.
※Location used: Material

Multi-function keys, Function key 1 & 2, Multi-key, Menu key and Neuropointer key
: Chrome-plated, undercoat; Nickel-plated and copper-plated

Perimeter of the rear camera lens
: Aluminum evaporation

3. Handling the Battery Pack

■ **Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack you have.**

Label description	Battery type
リチウムイオン (Li-ion)	Lithium-ion

⚠DANGER


Don't

Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.


Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.


Don't

Do not connect metallic objects such as wires across the battery pack terminals, and do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.


Don't

If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal or desktop holder, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing in the correct direction before you try to attach it.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.


Do

If battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.
Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.


Don't

Do not puncture the battery pack, hit it with a hammer or step on it.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.


No disassembly

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the battery pack and do not solder it directly to the FOMA terminal.
Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.


No liquids

Keep the battery pack dry.
Exposing the battery pack to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Be careful where and how you use the battery pack.

3. Handling the Battery Pack (continued)

⚠WARNING


Do

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging.
Overcharging may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.


Don't

If you notice anything unusual about the battery pack, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation, during use, charging or storage, immediately remove it from the FOMA terminal or desktop holder and do not use it again.
Continued use of a faulty battery pack may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.


Do

If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.
Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.


Do

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, stop using it immediately and move it as far as possible away from any flame or fire.
The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.


Don't

Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.
The battery pack may leak, overheat or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.

⚠CAUTION


Don't

Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage.
Throwing battery packs out with ordinary garbage constitutes an environmental hazard and may cause the garbage to catch fire. Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs and return them to a DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

4. Handling the Adapters (including a Charger)

⚠DANGER


Do

Use only the supplied AC power cords as AC power cords for the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use.
Using accessories other than the specified ones with the FOMA terminal may cause overheating, catching fire, explosion, leaks or malfunction of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices.

⚠WARNING


Do

Always use the specified power supply and voltage.
- Incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction. Use the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use while overseas.
  FOMA AC Adapter 01: 100V AC
  FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use: 100 to 240V AC
  (Plug only into household AC power outlets.)
  DC adapter: 12V DC and 24V DC (For vehicle with negative ground only)
- The AC power cord (p.52) supplied with the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use is for use with 100V AC (Japan domestic specification).


Don't

The DC adapter is only for use in vehicles with a negative ground. Never use the adapter in positively grounded vehicles.
Use in a positively grounded vehicle may cause a fire.


No liquids

Keep the adapters and the charger dry.
Exposing the adapters and the charger to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Be careful where and how you use the adapters and the charger.


Do

If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.
The use of incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction.
Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.


No disassembly

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the adapters or charger.
Doing so may cause a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.


Don't

Never use a damaged adapter's or charger's power cord or power cord.
Doing so may cause an electric shock, overheating or fire.


No wet hand

Do not touch the power cords of the adapters and charger or the power outlet with wet hands.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock.


Don't

Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is connected to a power outlet or the cigarette lighter socket in a vehicle. Take care also not to allow any part of your body (fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock, bodily injury, or equipment malfunction.


Don't

Never use the AC adapter or the desktop holder in humid or steamy locations such as a bathroom.
Doing so may result in an electric shock.

4. Handling the Adapters (including a Charger) (continued)

⚠WARNING


Do

Wipe off any dust on the charger plug or adapter plug.
Dust may cause a fire.


Unplug

Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet when it will be left unused for a long period.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.


Unplug

If any water or other liquid gets into the adapter or charger, immediately unplug it from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
Water in the adapter or charger may cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.


Don't

Place the charger or desktop holder on a stable surface during charging. Take care also not to cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.
Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall out of the charger or heat to build up, resulting in a fire or malfunction.


Do

When plugging the AC adapter into a power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

⚠CAUTION


Unplug

Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the adapter or charger.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock.


Don't

Do not place heavy objects on the power cord for the adapter or charger.
Doing so may cause an electric shock or fire.


Don't

Do not charge the wet battery pack.
The battery pack may overheat, explode or catch fire.


Do

Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter or charger from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not pull on the cord itself.
Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

5. Handling the FOMA Card

⚠WARNING


Don't

Do not place the FOMA card in cookware for heating, e.g. a microwave oven, etc. or a high pressure vessel such as a pressure cooker.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.

⚠CAUTION


Do

Be careful when dismounting the FOMA card (IC part).
Your hands or fingers may be hurt.


Do

Use the FOMA card with equipment specified by DoCoMo.
If you use a FOMA card with another equipment than specified, it may lead to the loss of data or equipment malfunction. For specified combinations of a FOMA card and equipment, contact a nearby DoCoMo service counter.


No disassembly

Do not disassemble or modify the FOMA card.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in loss of data or malfunction.


Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA card in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.


Don't

Do not incinerate or heat the FOMA card.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.


Don't

Do not tamper or short-circuit the IC part carelessly.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in loss of data or malfunction.


Don't

Do not drop the FOMA card or apply a shock on it.
Doing so may cause malfunction.


Don't

Do not bend the FOMA card or apply weight on it.
Doing so may cause malfunction.


No liquids

Keep the FOMA card dry.
Exposing the FOMA card to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause malfunction.


Don't

Do not scratch the IC part.
Doing so may cause malfunction.


Don't

Do not keep the FOMA card in a dusty place.
Doing so may cause malfunction.


Don't

Do not keep the FOMA card in locations subject to direct sunlight, high humidity, or high temperatures.
Doing so may cause malfunction.


Do

Keep the FOMA card out of the reach of young children.
A small child may swallow the FOMA card or suffer bodily injury.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

■ **The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones.**

⚠WARNING

Do

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at a distance of at least 22 cm.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.

Do

Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities:

- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If your FOMA terminal has the Auto power ON function, disable this function before turning your FOMA terminal off.

Do

Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of radio waves on the equipment.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.

General Notes

Do not expose to water.

- The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters and charger are not waterproof. Do not use them in humid or steamy locations such as bathrooms, and avoid exposing them to rain and other forms of moisture. If you carry your FOMA terminal close to your skin, sweat may cause internal components to corrode and result in a malfunction. Note that if the problem is found to be due to moisture, it will not be covered by the warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even where repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since the damage is not covered by the warranty.

Clean only with a soft, dry cloth.

- Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and clean it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that the LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.
- Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents as these agents may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.

Occasionally clean the connection terminals with a dry cotton bud.

- Soiled connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Also, as it may cause insufficient charging performance, clean the terminal with a dry cloth or cotton bud.

Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioning vent.

- Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may cause internal corrosion and malfunction.

Do not leave the FOMA terminal in locations where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in a bag filled with other objects or in the hip pocket of clothing as you sit down. Such actions may result in faults or damage to the LCD or other internal components. Such damage is not covered by your warranty.

Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapters and charger carefully.

Handling the FOMA Terminal

Avoid using the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.

- Use the FOMA terminal at temperatures between 5℃ and 35℃ with humidity between 45% and 85%.

The FOMA terminal may become warm while it is being used or charged. This is not abnormal and you can keep on using the FOMA terminal in that condition.

Using the FOMA terminal close to ordinary (landline) phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far as possible away from such items before using the FOMA terminal.

It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data (names, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, etc.) stored in your FOMA terminal.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored in your FOMA terminal.

Take care not to put the FOMA terminal in the back pocket of your pants or skirt and then sit on it. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.

Do not fold the FOMA terminal while its strap is caught between the folding parts.

- Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.

Always fit the earphone/microphone terminal cap, external connector cap and miniSD memory card slot cover before use.

- Failure to fit these covers could result in problems caused by dust or water getting into the FOMA terminal.

Handling the Battery Pack

Battery packs have a limited service life.

- Although it is affected by how it is used, if a battery pack does not work despite fully charging, it has reached the period of replacing the battery pack. Replace it with a new battery pack with the same specifications.

Charge the battery pack in a location within the correct temperature range (5℃ to 35℃).

Make sure that the battery is charged when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or have not used it for a long period of time.

The available operating time of the battery pack differs depending on the conditions in which you are using it and the condition of the battery pack itself.

Do not dispose of used battery packs in the ordinary garbage.

- Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs, and return them to a DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

Do not charge the battery pack in the following situations:

- Where the ambient temperature is lower than 5℃ or higher than 35℃.
- In very humid or dusty locations or in locations exposed to strong vibrations.
- Close to appliances such as ordinary (landline) phones, TVs or radios.

While charging the FOMA terminal, the adapters (including the charger) may become warm. This is not abnormal and you can keep on using the FOMA terminal in that condition.

Do not use the DC adapter to charge battery packs when the car engine is not running.

- Doing so may drain the car battery.

If you use an electrical outlet with a disconnection prevention mechanism, follow the instructions of the outlet's user manual.

Handling the FOMA Card

When removing the IC part, never apply force more than necessary.

When inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, never apply unnecessary force.

During using, the FOMA card may become warm. This is normal, so you can continue using it.

The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC card reader/writer. It is the user's responsibility.

Always keep the IC part clean.

Clean the FOMA card with a soft, dry cloth.

It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data (names, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, etc.) stored on your FOMA card.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored in your FOMA card.

To preserve the environment, bring used FOMA cards to a DoCoMo service counter.

Avoid using the FOMA card in extremely high or low temperatures.

Handling the miniSD Memory Card

Do not remove the miniSD memory card or switch the FOMA terminal off during miniSD memory card operation.

- Doing so may result in loss of data or FOMA terminal malfunction.

Handling the Camera

If you seriously inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Copyrights/Trademarks

Copyrights and portrait rights

Reproduction, modification, or distribution of any content including text, images, music, software programs, etc., obtained by means of photography or downloading from Internet websites using this product is prohibited without the permission of the copyright owner, except when allowed under copyright law, such as in the case of copying and quoting for personal use only.
Note that some performances, shows and exhibitions may forbid image shooting and/or sound recording even though such acts are intended for personal use.
Taking portraits of a third person using this product without that person's agreement and/or disclosing a third person's portrait taken with this product to the general public without that person's agreement by means such as posting on an Internet website, etc., may infringe the person's portrait right, and thus such acts should be avoided.

Trademarks

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "i-αppli DX", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Driving mode", "XWave", "i-melody", "i-area", "QUICKCAST", "Multi-access", "i-motion", "mopera", "i-motion mail", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chara-den", "i-anime", "i-αppli search", "i-shot", "sigmarion", "musea", "DoPa", "short mail", "Dual network", "M-stage V live", "Pake-Houdai" and "FOMA", "i-mode" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc. in Japan and other countries.
- miniSD™ is the trademark of SD Association.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- LC Font, LC FONT® and the LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- T9 Text Input® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications.
- T9 Text Input® is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the ( ) symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
  The Dialog Clarity technology and WOW technology are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
- Catch Phone (Call waiting service) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- QR Code is the registered trademark of Denso Wave, Inc.
- Macromedia, Flash, and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.
- NetFront and NetFront® are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries. Copyright© 1996-2004 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- IrFront® is a registered trademark or trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries. Copyright© 1996-2004 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- "Dimo" is the trademark or registered trademark of Buena Vista Internet Group.
- ©2004 DEVILROBOTS
- Other company and product names referred to in the text are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Other rights

- Macromedia® Flash™ technology from Macromedia, Inc. is used in this product.
  Copyright © 1995-2004 Macromedia, Inc. All right reserved.
- This product is licensed based on the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. Only the following personal and noncommercial uses are permitted:
  - Recording a video compliant with the MPEG-4 Visual standard. (This type of video is referred to as MPEG-4 Video hereinafter.)
  - Playing an MPEG-4 Video recorded by a consumer as a personal and noncommercial activity.
  - Playing an MPEG-4 Video provided by a supplier who is licensed by MPEG-LA.

  For other uses than the above (such as promotional, business and commercial uses), contact MPEG LA, LLC in the U.S.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
  4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
  5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
  5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
  5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
  5,710,784 5,778,338
- The Internet function used in this product is NetFront v3.0 for FOMA.
  NetFront v3.0 is a product from ACCESS CO., LTD.
- The OBEX function and the infrared exchange function used in this product is IrFront®.
  IrFront® is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Software used for this product contains a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Notation of Windows

- Windows® 98 is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
- Windows® Me is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 2000 Professional is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- In this manual, Windows® 98 and Windows® 98SE are referred to as Windows 98.
- In this manual, Windows® 2000 Professional is referred to as Windows 2000.
- In this manual, Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition are referred to as Windows XP.

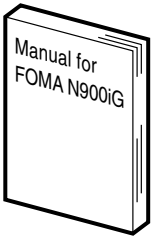
Standard Package and Optional Accessories

In the package

FOMA N900iG
(including warranty card, Back Cover N04)

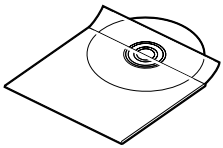


Manual for FOMA N900iG
(this manual)



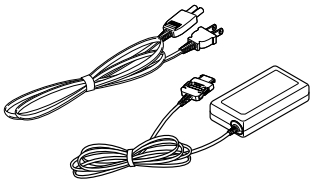
※A Quick Manual is provided on p.602.

CD-ROM for FOMA N900iG

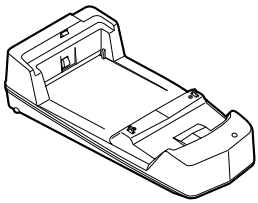


Principal optional accessories

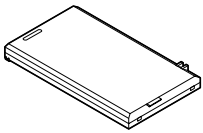
FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use
(including warranty card and manual)



Desktop Holder N05
(including warranty card and manual)



Battery Pack N07
(including manual)



※Other optional accessories →p.568

Getting Started

Component Names and Functions 26
How to View the Display 32
How to View the Image Window (Rear Panel Display) 35
Menu Functions 38
How to Select Menu Items 40
Using the FOMA Card 46
Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack 49
Charging Your Terminal 50
How to Check the Battery Level ..... Battery level 55
Switching the Screen Display to English ..... Select language 56
Power On/Off ..... Power ON/OFF 57
Setting the Date and Time ..... Set local time/Set remote time 58
Notifying Your Phone Number to the Other Party ..... Notify caller ID 59
Checking Your Own Phone Number ..... Own number 60

Component Names and Functions

In this manual, keys are represented as below icons.

In-camera
- Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send your video to the other party during a videophone call. →pp.88 and 170

Microphone
- Your voice is sent through this microphone while a handsfree device is used. Do not cover the microphone while talking or the other party will not be able to hear you.
- Used as a microphone when videos are shot using the out-camera.

Earpiece speaker
- Allows you to hear the other party's voice.

Display
- How to view the display. →p.32

Home/ +Volume/(☼) key
- Connects to the set site easily. →p.219
- Lights the display light for the image window when pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.
- Increases the earpiece volume during a call. →p.78
- Moves the cursor to the previous character assigned to the same key during character entry. →p.503
- Turns the light on when using a camera. →p.184
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page.

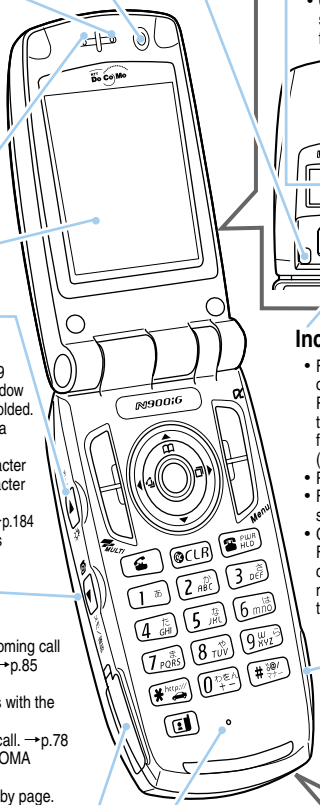
Memo/Check/ -Volume/(📷) key
- Sets the "Manner mode" during an incoming call and activates the "Record message". →p.85
- Plays recorded messages. →p.85
- Checks for missed calls and new mails with the FOMA terminal folded. →p.83
- Lowers the earpiece volume during a call. →p.78
- Takes pictures (still images) with the FOMA terminal folded. →p.176
- Scrolls the display to the next screens by page.

(The ▲ and ▼ keys together are called "Side keys" in this manual.)

External connector
- Used to connect optional external devices to the FOMA terminal. →pp.52 and 462

Mouthpiece/Front mike
- Sends your voice. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. This may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
- Used as the microphone when the in-camera is used in the Movie mode or voice is recorded with "Picture voice".

Light
- Turned on when using a camera. →p.184



Rear panel

Image window
- Tells you FOMA terminal condition by displaying messages, icons and animations. →pp.34 and 35
- Can be used as a finder when you take still pictures with your FOMA terminal folded. →p.176



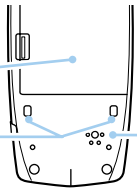
Out-camera
- Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send images such as scenery to the other party during a videophone call. →pp.88 and 170

Incoming call/Charge lamp
- Flashes when a voice/videophone call comes in or when mail or Msg. Request/Free is received. You can change the flash lamp color and synchronize the flash to a melody such as the ring tone (Illumination). →p.147
- Red illumination lights up while charging.
- Flashes when taking a still picture or while shooting a movie.
- Green illumination flashes if you power the FOMA terminal on with a miniSD memory card inserted or if you insert a miniSD memory card while charging the FOMA terminal while it is powered off.

miniSD memory card slot
- Insert the miniSD memory card. →p.377

Rear panel

Speaker
- Sounds such as the ring tone and voice of the other party during the handsfree mode are emitted from here.



Back cover

Charging terminals

Size (mm)※1	Width 50 × Height 103 × Depth 28
Mass (g) ※2	Approx. 132

※1：Height and depth are for the FOMA when folded.
※2：When the battery pack is attached.

Multi-function keys

Up key

- Moves the cursor or highlighted display upward (towards the reversed direction).
- Scrolls up the display. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Displays the phonebook menu screen.
- Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers. →p.505

Right key/Redial key

- Moves the cursor to the right.
- Scrolls the display to the next screens by page.
- Displays the redial record. →p.63

Left key/Received call record key

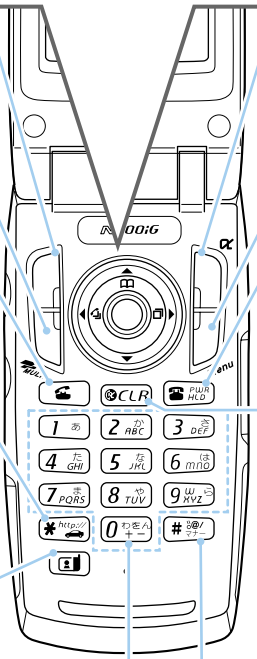
- Moves the cursor to the left.
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page.
- Displays the received call record. →p.75

Down key

- Moves the cursor or highlighted display downward.
- Scrolls down the display. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Displays the "Search phonebook" menu screen. →p.114
- Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana, number. →p.505

Neuropointer key

- How to use the Neuropointer→p.30



Function key 1

- Executes an operation displayed on the software key placed on the bottom left side of the display. →p.29

Function key 2

- Executes an operation displayed on the software key placed on the bottom right side of the display. →p.29

Multi-key (MULTI)

- Display the task menu. →p.408

Menu key (Menu)

- Displays the main menu. →p.40

Send key

- Makes a voice call. →p.62
- Answers a voice call. →p.73
- Answers a videophone call with the substitute image. →p.91
- Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. →p.505

Power/Hold/ End of operation key

- Hold down 1 second or more to turn the power on. →p.57
- Hold down 2 seconds or more to turn the power off. →p.57
- Ends a call. →p.62
- Puts a call on hold. →p.79
- Exits the i-mode menu, mail menu and i-αppli menu.

✳/Driving mode key

- Sets the Driving mode by pressing 1 second or more during a standby screen. →p.80
- Enters "✳", "http://" or other character strings. →p.558
- Enters the pause (p). →p.65

Back (clear) key

- Goes back to one step before.
- Puts a call on hold. →p.63
- Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. →pp.62 and 509
- Cancels pages being downloaded.
- If you press this key while the i-αppli standby screen is displayed, the software set for the i-αppli standby screen starts. →p.326

Videophone key

- Makes a videophone call. →p.89
- Answers a videophone call. →p.91
- Switches the substitute image/camera view while making a videophone call. →p.92

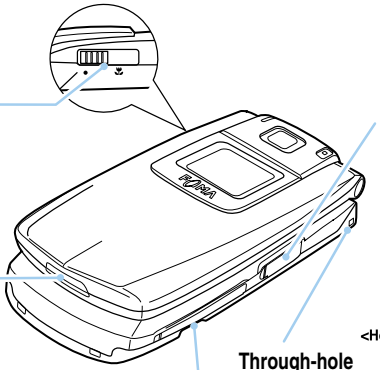
#/Manner key

- Sets the Manner mode by pressing 1 second or more during a standby screen. →p.132
- Sets the "Manner mode" when a call is received and activates the "Record message". →p.85
- Enters "#" or other symbols. →p.558

Dial keys 0 to 9

- Enters phone numbers. →p.62
- Enters characters and numbers. →p.505

Continued on next page



Lens selection switch

- Switches the lens on the out-camera to (macro lens) to take close shots or read data through the bar code reader. →pp.184 and 194

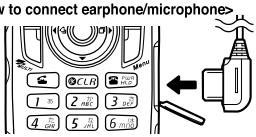
Infrared data port

- Window to send/receive infrared rays. →p.394

Earphone/Microphone terminal

- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is plugged in, handsfree operation is available. You can use a conventional earphone/microphone with switch by using the earphone plug adapter. →pp.435 and 568

<How to connect earphone/microphone>



Through-hole for strap

※:The antenna for the FOMA N900iG is built into the FOMA terminal.

miniSD memory card slot

- Slot for inserting the miniSD memory card. →p.377

Functions that involve holding down keys for 1 second or more

The functions which are available by holding down each key for 1 second or more are as follows:

Key	Function	See page
	Switches multi task (during multi task).	p.408
	Displays the network switching screen (while the standby screen is displayed).	p.544
	Displays the standby screen (during multi task).	p.407
	Checks new messages (while the standby screen is displayed).	pp.234 and 270
	Displays the list of i-αppli software (while the standby screen is displayed).	p.315
	Adjusts the earpiece volume (while the standby screen is displayed or during a call).	p.78
	Reduces the character size of mail texts (the mail detail screen is displayed).	p.281
	Enlarges the character size of mail texts (the mail detail screen is displayed).	p.281

Key	Function	See page
CLR	Cancels receiving Msg. Request/Free (during reception).	p.232
CLR	Cancels sending/receiving i-mode mails (during sending or reception).	p.250
CLR	Cancels checking new messages (during checking).	pp.234 and 270
5	Switches to turn on/off the back light.	p.146
#	Makes the manner mode settings (while the standby screen is displayed or during a call or incoming call).	p.132
0	Enters "+" (in the phone-number entry screen).	p.68
*	Sets the side keys (while the main menu is displayed).	p.160
*	Sets the driving mode (while the standby screen is displayed).	p.80
[Memo/Check]	Records a voice memo (only during a call).	p.430
[Memo/Check]	Starts/stops camera (while the FOMA terminal is folded).	p.176

How to use the software keys

Guidance signs displayed at the bottom of the screen when the FOMA terminal is in standby or in operation are referred to as software keys. These software keys are related to operations and settings. To use a displayed software key, press the corresponding function key.

■ To execute software key 1

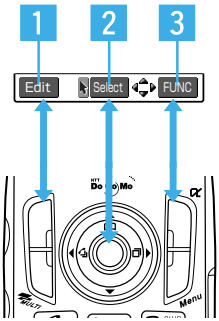
Press (1) to execute the software key displayed in 1.
1 includes [Mode], [Edit], [Store], [Finish], [Play], [ ], etc.

■ To execute software key 2

Press ● to execute the software key displayed in 2.
2 includes [Select], [Set], [Play], [Change], etc.

■ To execute software key 3

Press (3) to execute the software key displayed in 3.
3 includes [FUNC], [Exit], etc. Press (3) while [FUNC] is displayed to display the function menu. →p.44



About the software key indication

The software keys are indicated as follows in this manual:

● **[Select]**

Function key to operate — Corresponding guidance name

How to use the Neuropointer

When is displayed at the bottom of the screen, slide the Neuropointer to display the pointer ( ). Moving the pointer by sliding the Neuropointer enables you to quickly select an icon or item. When the list screen or function menu spreads across multiple pages, you can scroll a page up and down with the Neuropointer.

- The operating range of the pointer differs depending on a screen displayed.
- To select an item or icon, move the Neuropointer to the center and then press it. The Neuropointer cannot be pressed except at the center.
- You can change the pointer settings such as pointer display on/off, focus or speed in “Neuropointer”. →p.437

Selecting an icon or item with the Neuropointer

1 Press (Menu) to display the main menu while the standby display is displayed, and then display by sliding .



2 Slide to Settings so that it is shown as Settings, and then press [Select].



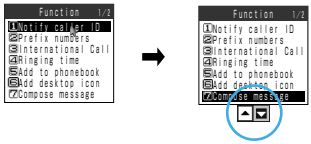
The setting screen appears.

NOTE

- The pointer disappears in the following cases:
  - ·When you select another item by pressing or other keys
  - ·When you display another screen
- The pointer disappears in the following cases. If you then slide Neuropointer, the pointer reappears at the position where it disappeared.
  - ·When you do not operate the Neuropointer for approx. 15 seconds
  - ·When you fold and reopen the FOMA terminal
- When you move the pointer to a place of no icon/item and press , the nearest icon/item to the pointer is selected, and then the pointer moves there automatically. However, the pointer does not move automatically in the following screens:
  - ·Screen memos
  - ·Site screens
  - ·Details screens for received mail/sent mail
  - ·Details screens for Msg. Request/Free
- The moving speed for the pointer differs depending on the operating display.
- The neuropointer may be unusable on some screens including Flash image screens. In such a case, “ ” does not appear at the bottom of the screen.

Scrolling a screen up or down with the Neuropointer

1 Slide ● to display ↖, and then move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range.

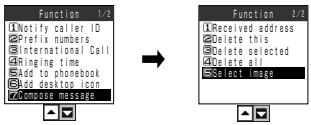


The pointer changes to ▲▼.

When the pointer is moved to the top

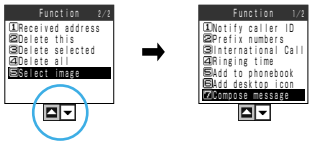
The pointer changes to ▲▼.

2 Press ● [Select].



The next page of the function menu appears.

3 Slide ● to the left to change ▲▼ to ▲▼, and then press ● [Select].



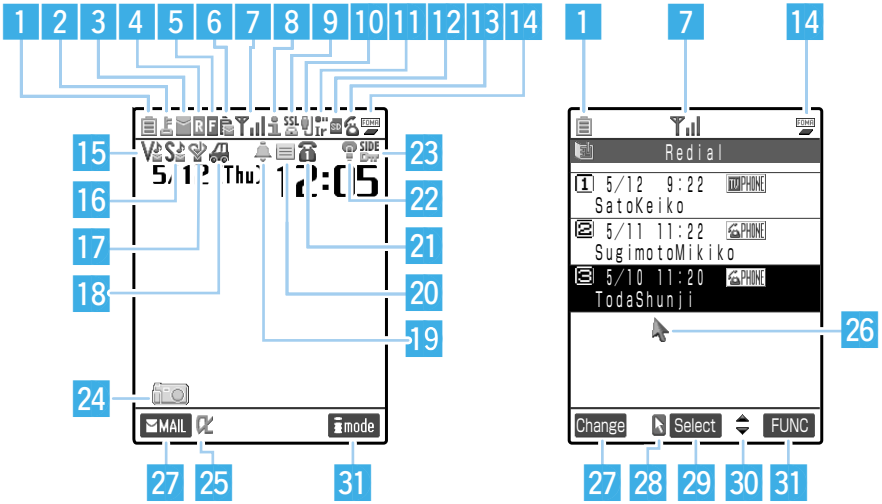
The previous page of the function menu appears.

How to View the Display

The marks (such as 上, ✉, SSL, etc.) displayed on the display and image window are referred to as icons. The icons include the following:

● For screen display while using the FOMA terminal abroad, see p.535.

■ Display



1 Displays the battery level ➜p.55

2 Displayed while All lock is activated ➜p.156

S Displayed in the Secret mode or Secret only mode ➜p.161

P Displayed while PIM lock is activated ➜p.158

D Displayed while Keypad dial lock is activated ➜p.159

D/S Displayed while Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode are set at the same time ➜pp.159 and 161

D/P Displayed while PIM lock and Keypad dial lock are set at the same time ➜pp.158 and 159

3 (Blue) You have unread mail. ➜p.266

(Red) Inbox is full. ➜p.266

(Red) SMS space in FOMA card is full. ➜p.308

(Blue/red) You have unread mail/ SMS space in FOMA card is full. ➜p.308

(Red) Inbox is full/SMS space in FOMA card is full. ➜pp.266 and 308

4 R (Green) You have unread Msg. Request. ➜p.232

R (Red) Msg. Request is full. ➜p.232

5 F (Purple) You have unread Msg. Free. ➜p.232

F (Red) Msg. Free is full. ➜p.232

6 (Blue) You have mail at the i-mode Center. ➜p.270

(Blue/red) Your mail at the i-mode Center is at the maximum capacity. ➜p.270

(Blue/green) You have Msg. Request at the i-mode Center. ➜p.234

(Blue/red) Your Msg. Request at the i-mode Center is at the maximum capacity. ➜p.234

(Blue/purple) You have Msg. Free at the i-mode Center. ➜p.234

(Blue/red) Your Msg. Free at the i-mode Center is at the maximum capacity. ➜p.234

Appears when you have mail stored at the i-mode Center and when the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". ➜p.269

7 Radio reception level ➜p.56

Displayed when the FOMA is either out of the service area or when the radio wave is out of reach ➜p.56

self Displayed in the Self mode ➜p.157

8 i-mode is in action. ➜p.204
i-mode communication is in progress. ➜p.204
Packet communication is in progress. ➜p.474
Packet communication is in progress. (sending) ➜p.474
Packet communication is in progress. (receiving) ➜p.474
Packet communication is in progress. (sending data) ➜p.474
Packet communication is in progress. (receiving data) ➜p.474

9 Displaying pages compatible with TLS/SSL. ➜p.212

10 Connecting USB cable. ➜pp.393 and 463
Appears when you are using the miniSD reader/writer (miniSD mode). ➜p.393

11 Ir exchange is in progress. ➜p.393
Appears when you are using Ir remote control function. ➜p.400

12 Appears when a miniSD memory card is loaded. ➜p.377
Appears when a wrong miniSD memory card is loaded. ➜p.377
Appears when you are using the miniSD reader/writer. ➜p.393

13 Displays the status of a voice call ➜p.62
Displays the status of a videophone call ➜p.89

14 FOMA 3G GPRS GSM Displays the currently-accessed network ➜p.535
Displayed while multiple functions are activated ➜p.407
Displayed while a single function is activated ➜p.407

15 Displayed when Vibrator is set ➜p.127

16 Displayed when Ring volume is set to Silent ➜p.126

17 Displayed in the Manner mode ➜p.132
Displayed when Remote monitor is set ➜p.99

18 Displayed in the Driving mode ➜p.80

19 Displayed when Alarm is set ➜p.409

20 to Displayed when Record message is set ➜p.84

21 to Displays the number of voice mail messages ➜p.448

22 Displayed when Display light is set to "OFF" ➜p.146

23 Displayed when Side keys guard is set to "ON" ➜p.160

24 Pasted desktop icons ➜p.137

25 i-αppli is running. ➜p.315
i-αppli standby display is being displayed. ➜p.325
Appears when you are using i-αppli DX. ➜p.315
Appears when i-αppli DX standby display is displayed. ➜p.325

26 Pointer (Follow: blue) ➜p.437
Pointer (Nonfollow: white) ➜p.437
Scrolls a page by pointer ➜p.31

27 MAIL Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 1 ➜p.29

28 Displayed when the Neuropointer is available ➜p.30

29 Select Displays the functions of software keys for the Neuropointer key ➜p.29

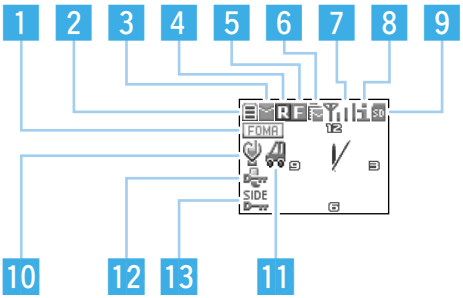
30 Displayed when each key of the Multi-function keys is available

31 i-mode Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 2 ➜p.29

In the case of icons that are displayed in different colors in different situations, the colors are indicated in the text.
An icon may be displayed in 2 colors, which will be described as shown on the right.
Blue
(Blue/red)
Red

Continued on next page

■ Image Window



1 FOMA 3G GPRS GSM
Currently accessing network ➜p.535

2 Battery level ➜p.55

3 (Blue) You have unread mail ➜p.266
(Red) Inbox is full ➜p.266
(Red) SMS space in FOMA card is full ➜p.308
(Blue/red) You have unread mail/SMS space in FOMA card is full ➜p.308
(Red) Inbox is full/SMS space in FOMA card is full ➜pp.266 and 308

4 (Green) You have unread Msg. Request ➜p.232
(Red) Msg. Request space is full ➜p.232

5 (Purple) You have unread Msg. Free ➜p.232
(Red) Msg. Free space is full ➜p.232

6 (Blue) You have mail at the i-mode center ➜p.270
(Blue/red) i-mode center mail space is full ➜p.270
(Blue/green) You have Msg. Request at the i-mode center ➜p.234
(Blue/red) i-mode center Msg. Request space is full ➜p.234
(Blue/purple) You have Msg. Free at the i-mode center ➜p.234
(Blue/red) i-mode center Msg. Free space is full ➜p.234
You have mail at the i-mode center when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". ➜p.269

7 Radio reception level ➜p.57
Out of network or radio unreachable status ➜p.57
self In Self mode ➜p.157

8 In i-mode ➜p.204
i-mode communication in progress ➜p.204
Packet communication in progress ➜p.474
Packet communication in progress (Sending) ➜p.474
Packet communication in progress (Receiving) ➜p.474
Packet communication in progress (Sending data) ➜p.474
Packet communication in progress (Receiving data) ➜p.474

9 miniSD memory card loaded ➜p.377
Wrong miniSD memory card loaded ➜p.377
miniSD reader/writer (miniSD mode) running ➜p.393

10 In Manner mode ➜p.132

11 In Driving mode ➜p.80

12 Secret mode, Secret only mode, PIM lock and/or Keypad dial lock is set ➜pp.158, 159, and 161

13 SIDE Side keys guard is set to "ON" ➜p.160

In the case of icons that are displayed in different colors in different situations, the colors are indicated in the text. An icon may be displayed in 2 colors, which will be described as shown on the right.

Blue
(Blue/red)
Red

NOTE

● The display for this FOMA terminal adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up while others may constantly light up depending on its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.

Checking the meaning of the displayed icons

You can check the meaning of each icon displayed on the screen. It is useful for checking the functions set to your FOMA terminal via icons displayed on the screen.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Icons”.**

2 **Press to position the cursor over the icon you want to check the meaning of.**



The description of the selected icon appears at the bottom of the screen.

The meaning of the selected icon appears.

How to View the Image Window (Rear Panel Display)

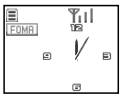
The image window notifies you of incoming call/mail or alarm notification in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening your FOMA terminal.

● The displayed information differs depending on the “Image window” settings (p.143).

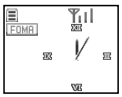
About the display

■ Clock display

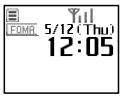
Displays the clock during standby. You can select from the following five types of display or “OFF (not displayed)”:



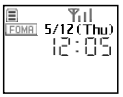
Analog 1



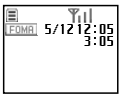
Analog 2



Digital 1



Digital 2



local & remote

■ During an incoming call display

Displays the phone number of an incoming call. When the caller’s phone number is stored in your phonebook, information such as the caller’s name appears. If no phone number is displayed, the reason for no number appears.



A voice call with the caller ID



A videophone call with the caller ID



A voice call from the caller stored in the phonebook



A videophone call from the caller stored in the phonebook



A voice call without the number display



A videophone call without the number display



A voice call without the caller ID



A videophone call without the caller ID

Continued on next page

■ During a call display

Displays the type of call during a call. Displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened.



During a voice call



During a videophone call



During remote monitor

■ During an outgoing call display

Displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened.



■ Alarm notification

For alarm notification of “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo”, an alarm notification animation corresponding to the function appears.



“Alarm clock”



“Schedule”



“ToDo”

■ Receiving a new mail

When “Mail” is set to “ON”, the sender, sent date and time, and title are displayed.



■ During packet communication

Displayed while the FOMA terminal is opened.



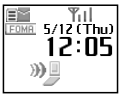
During packet communication

Checking the caller or sender

When the image window shows "" or "", you can check the caller/sender's name and the title of the mail. Press [▲] [Home] with the FOMA terminal folded to display the contents of missed call record or new mails. If you press [▲] [Home] again, you can check up to three missed calls or new mails. If you press [▲] [Home] again after checking all items, the clock display reappears. If you have both missed calls and new mails, first the missed calls appear and then new mails appear.

- When you display the "Missed calls" record or delete the "Missed call" desktop icon, the missed call display in the image window disappears.
- When using the tool group function (p.38), you cannot check missed calls with the image window.

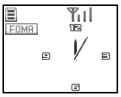
■ Missed call display



If you open the FOMA terminal, you can find the "Missed call" desktop icon on the display.

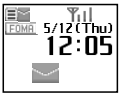


If you open the FOMA terminal, you can find the "Missed calls" record on the display.

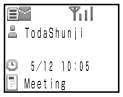


After checking all items, the clock display reappears.

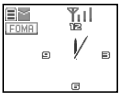
■ New mail display



If you open the FOMA terminal, you can find the "New mail" desktop icon on the display.



When the "Mail" is set to "ON", the sender, sent date and title are displayed.



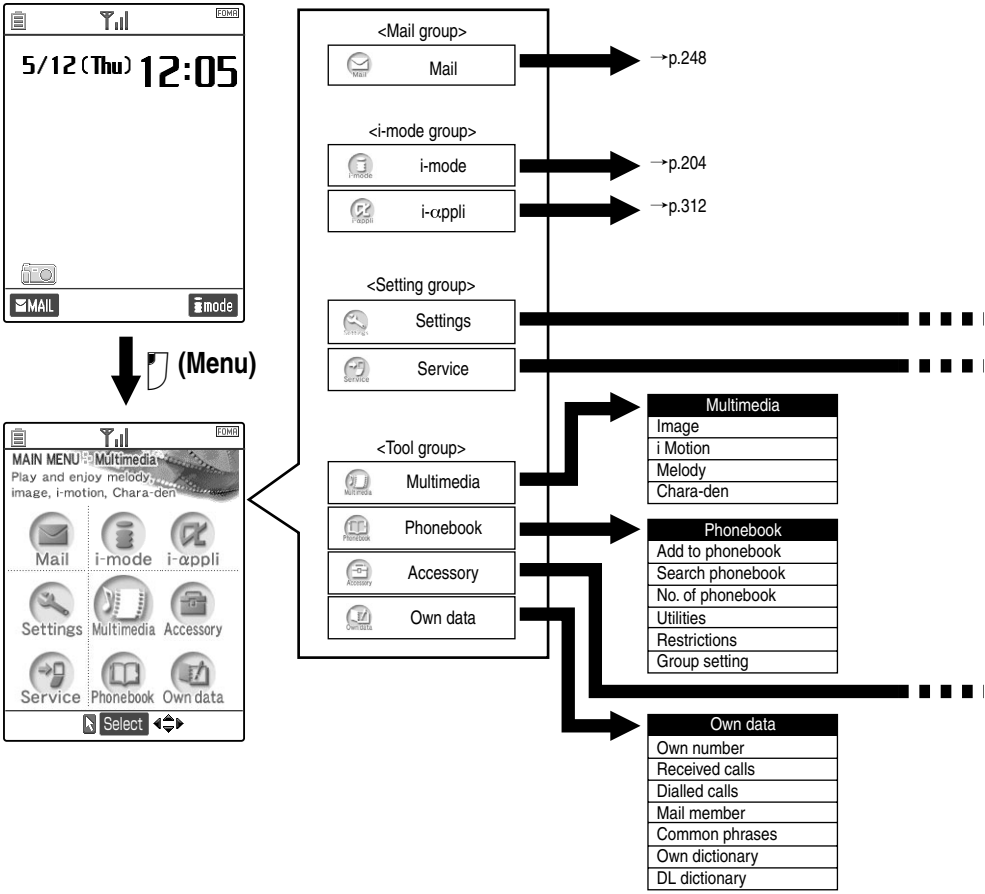
After checking all items, the clock display reappears.

NOTE

- Press [▲] [Home] with the FOMA terminal folded to turn the display light up. It is useful for checking the current time in the dark.
- In the power saver mode, the image window shows nothing. Press [▲] [Home] to display the view of the image window again.

Menu Functions

To set or check various functions with the FOMA terminal, you can call up each function from the main menu. The structure of the menus is as the following:



Multi task supported

The FOMA terminal supports "Multi task" that enables you to use multiple functions at the same time: up to three functions from the main menu groups. While the multi task function is used, the in-use groups of the menus are enclosed with a box. For details of multi task, see p.407.



In-use groups are enclosed with a box.

Settings
Incoming call
Talk
Video-phone
Display
Call data
Clock
Lock/Security
Connection setting
i-αppli settings
External option
Network setting
Other settings

Service
Check messages
Notify caller ID
Voice mail
Call waiting
Call forwarding
Bar nuisance call
Caller ID request
Arrival call act
Set arrival act
Remote control
Dual network
English guidance
International service
Roaming setting
Additional service
Service dial
Call barrings※

Accessory
Camera
Schedule
Alarm clock
ToDo
Text memo
Calculator
Play/Erase msg.
Record message
Voice memo
Voice announce
Ir exchange
UIM operation
Forwarding image
Bar code reader
SD-PIM
Dictionary

Incoming call
Ring volume
Select ring tone
SRS_WOW setting
Vibrator
Illumination
Manner mode set
Disp. phonebook image
Answer setting
Fold setting
Call FNC/i-mode
Call FNC/Packet
Mail/Msg. ring time
Ringing time
Info notice setting

Talk
Noise reduction
Quality alarm
Reconnect control
Illumination in talk
Select hold tone

Video-phone
Image quality
Camera image sending
Select image
Voice call auto switch
Remote monitor
Disp. Setting V-phone

Display
Display setting
Display light
Color pattern
Image window
Font
Desktop icon
Select language
Original menu
Menu display set
Viewer settings
Automatic display
Icons

Call data
Call duration
Reset call duration
Call time display

Clock
Set local time
Clock display
Set remote time
Alarm setting

Lock/Security
All lock
PIM lock
Self mode
Keypad dial lock
Reject unknown
FDN setting※
Call setting w/o ID
Change security code
PIN setting
Secret mode
Secret only mode

Connection setting
Connection timeout
i-mode checking
Host selection
SMS center selection
Certificate

i-αppli settings
Display software info
αDisplay light
αVibrator
αImage window
End stand-by display

External option
Earphone
Automatic answer

Network setting
Prefix setting
Int'l dial setting
NW search mode
PLMN setting
Operator name disp
Network switch

Other settings
Keypad sound
Charge sound
Battery level
Side keys guard
Input method
Record display set
Pause dial
Subaddress setting
Neuropointer
USB mode setting
Reset settings
Initialize
Software update

※ "Call barrings" and "FDN setting" are not available with your FOMA terminal.

How to Select Menu Items

You can display the screen for setting and checking functions from the main menu or an original menu.

- You can easily display the mail menu (p.248) or i-mode menu (p.204) that you often use. Press [MAIL] in the standby screen to display the mail menu and [i-mode] to display the i-mode menu.

Selecting a function from the main menu

In the standby display, press (Menu) to display the main menu. Select a high level icon from the main menu to display the middle item menu. From the middle item menu, select the desired detail item to display a setting screen or message for checking. Set a function or check the setting according to the menu.

- To select the menu or item quickly, press the dial key with the same number as the desired item <Direct key selection>. This manual uses the following way to explain item selection: "Press ○ to highlight the item and then press ● [Select]."
- Pressing (Menu) + the menu number also calls up a setting screen quickly. For details, see "Menu List" (p.554).
- After finishing the function settings, the detail item selection screen appears. Pressing PWR HLD terminates the menu option and the screen returns to the standby. Other activated menu functions are displayed during the multi task.
- To cancel the menu operation, press PWR HLD. The setting operation is canceled and the standby display or the previous screen reappears. Depending on the menu, a message asking whether to void the setting being made or not may appear. In that case, press CLR to clear the message.
- To operate the menu function, follow the steps below:

Step 1 Select the high level icon of the main menu ..... below

Step 2 Select the middle item of the menu p.41

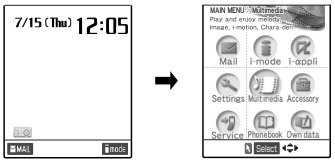
Step 3 Select the desired detail item (function) p.41

Step 4 Set or check the function you selected p.42

<Example: Setting the flashing color of the "Illumination in talk" function>

Step 1 Select the high level icon of the main menu

1 Press (Menu) .



The main menu containing nine high level icons appears. The selected high level icon is embossed in different color.

2 Press ◉ to select a high level icon.

After selecting a high level icon, the guidance for the selected icon appears.

To shift the focus continuously
Press and hold down ◉.

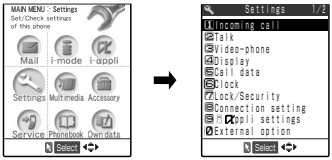
When no key is pressed for 15 seconds or more
The main menu closes and the previous screen reappears.

When using the Neuropointer
How to use the Neuropointer →p.30



Guidance for the high level icon

3 Select Settings (Settings), and then press ● [Select].



The middle item list screen appears.

NOTE

●You can set the main menu so as not to display guidance in “Menu display set”. →p.425

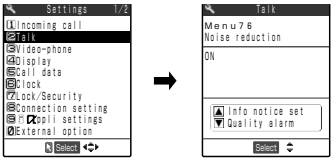
Step 2 Select the middle item of the menu

1 Press ◉ to select the middle item of the menu.

The selected middle item is highlighted.

To scroll items continuously
Press and hold down ◉.

2 Select “Talk”, and then press ● [Select].



The detail item selection screen (details screen) of “Talk” menu appears.

Step 3 Select the desired detail item (function)

1 Press ◉ to select the desired detail item (function).

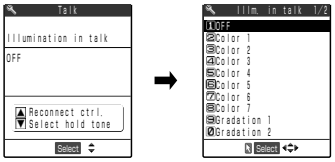
The details screen of the selected detail item (function) appears. You can check the setting status or menu number of the selected function in the details screen of the detail item.

To scroll items continuously
Press and hold down ◉.

To change the details screen to the list screen
Menu display set →p.425

Continued on next page

2 Select “Illumination in talk”, and then press ● [Select].



Illumination in talk setting screen appears.

Entering the security code

Depending on the functions, the security code entry screen may appear before the details screen of the selected function is displayed.

To display the details screen, enter the security code. →p.152

1 Enter the 4- to 8-digit security code, and then press ● [Set].



Entered numbers are displayed by “_”.
When the correct security code is entered, the details screen of the function appears.

When incorrect security code is entered

A message notifying you that wrong numbers have been entered appears. Enter the correct security code again.

Step 4 Set or check the function you selected

To set the selected function, there are various ways: selecting an item from the list display, selecting “YES/NO” (p.43), entering numbers (p.43) or marking a checkbox (p.43).

- Depending on the functions, you may have to select a more detail item.
- You cannot select some functions due to settings or other setting conditions.

1 Press ○ to select the item you want to set.

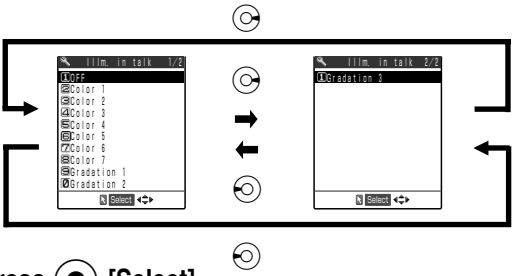
The selected item is highlighted.

To scroll items continuously

Press and hold down ○.

When items appear in multiple pages

“Current page/Total pages” appears in the upper right corner of the screen. Press ○ while the top item is selected to display the previous page. Press ○ while the bottom item is selected to display the next page. To scroll the display by page, press ○ (or [▲] [Home]) for the previous page, press ○ (or [▼] [Memo/Check]) for the next page.



2 Press ● [Select].

The selected item is set.

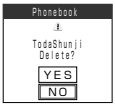
3 After operation, press PWR HLD.

The menu operation completes and the standby display reappears (except when multiple tasks are running).

Selecting “YES/NO” or “ON/OFF”

Some functions may prompt you to select “YES/NO” or “ON/OFF” on the screen.

1 **Press ● to select “YES” (or “ON”) or “NO” (or “OFF”), and then press ● [Select].**



The selected item is set.

Entering numbers

Some functions may prompt you to enter numbers on the screen.

1 **Enter numbers by pressing 0わをん+ to 9wxyzら, and then press ● [Set].**



The entered numbers are set.
Entered numbers may be set automatically by just entering all the required digits. In this case, you don't have to press ● [Set].

To enter a 1-digit number in a 2-digit number entry screen

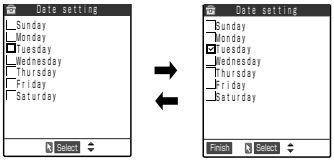
First press 0わをん+, and then enter the desired number.
Enter a 3-digit number in the same manner.

Marking a checkbox

Some functions may prompt you mark a checkbox on the screen. Such a screen mainly appears when selecting multiple items.

1 **Press ● to select ☐ (checkbox) to mark.**

2 **Press ● [Select].**



The checkbox changes from ☐ to ☑. This is the status of a selected checkbox. Press ● [Select] to toggle ☐ and ☑.

When “Finish” appears as a software key, pressing [Finish] selects the item selected.

Displaying your original menu

The following functions are registered in the original menu. You can start functions easily with the original menu since you need not select high-level item, middle item and detail item in order from the main menu.

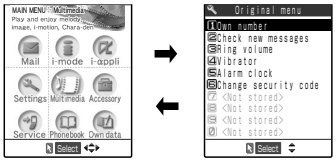
- Own number
- Check new message
- Ring volume
- Vibrator
- Alarm clock
- Change security code

- You can change original menu items in “Original menu” (p.425).
- The original menu is displayed in “List”.
- If you paste the original menu as a desktop icon on the standby display, you can quickly call up the function. →p.135

Continued on next page

Switching menu screens

1 (Menu) ▶ (Menu)



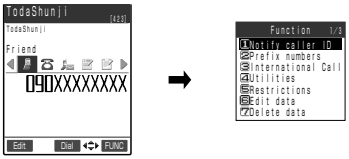
Pressing (Menu) switches between the main menu and the original menu.

NOTE

- When you return to the standby display from the original menu, or when you return to the standby display from the original menu after calling up a function from the original menu and performing operations, press (Menu) to display the original menu.
- If no function is stored in the original menu, a message asking whether you store functions to the original menu or not appears.

Selecting the function to be stored from the function menu

When operating a function in which you can perform storing, editing or deleting, "FUNC" appears as a software key. Press [FUNC] to display the function menu. Press to highlight the item which you desire from the function menu, and then press to select the item.



- When an item appears in multiple pages, "Current page/Total pages" appears in the upper right corner of the function menu. Press while the top item of the function menu is selected to display the previous page. Press while the bottom item is selected to display the next page.
  To scroll the display by page, press (or [Home]) for the previous page, press (or [Memo/Check]) for the next page.
- The displayed function menu differs depending on the function in operation.
- You may not select some functions due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable functions are grayed out.

Instructions for menu operations

In this manual, instructions for menu operations are described as follows:

■ **The notation for selecting function**
Example: How to select "Keypad sound" from "Settings".

The notation for this manual:

The high level item / The middle level item / The detailed level item (function)

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Keypad sound".

The actual operations:

1 Press (Menu) while the standby display is displayed.

2 Press on the main menu to select Settings, and then press [Select].

3 Press on the middle item selection screen to select “Other settings”, and then press [Select].

4 Press on the detailed item selection screen to select “Keypad sound”, and then press [Select].

■ The notation for setting function
Example: How to set “Restrictions” for your phonebook.

The notation for this manual:

3 Select the phonebook entry you want to check for the phone number.

The phone number of the selected entry appears.

To cancel the Restrictions setting

Select the phone number you want to cancel.

The actual operations:

1 Press on the list screen of the phonebook to select the phone number you want to check.

2 Press [Select].

■ The notation for selecting menus continuously
Example: How to add to phonebook

The notation for this manual:

2 Select “Add to phonebook” - “Phone”.

To store the phone number in the FOMA card

Select “UIM”.

The actual operations:

1 Press to select “Add to phonebook” and press [Select].

2 Press to select “Phone” and press [Select].

Using the FOMA Card

The FOMA card is an IC card that contains private information such as your phone number. By inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, you can carry out communications including a voice/videophone call, i-mode, mail exchange and packet data communication. In addition, you can use multiple FOMA terminals according to applications by switching your FOMA card.

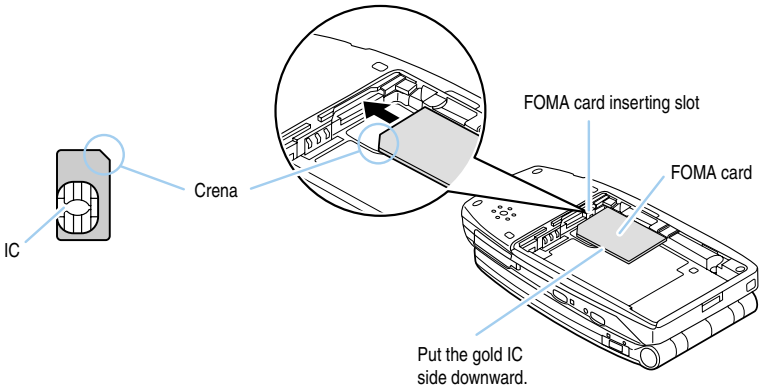
- You can also save data such as phonebook entries and SMS messages in the FOMA card.
- You can set “PIN1” and “PIN2” codes for the FOMA card. →p.153
- For detailed handling, refer to the manual for the FOMA card.

Inserting/Removing the FOMA card

When you insert or remove the FOMA card, first power off the FOMA terminal and remove the battery pack. Then, insert/remove the FOMA card holding it your hand. Be careful not to touch or scratch the IC by accident when inserting/removing the FOMA card.

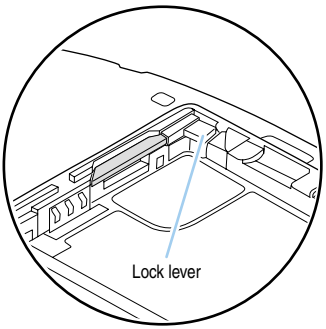
Inserting

1 Put the IC side downward and put the FOMA card into the card inserting slot as shown below.



2 Insert the FOMA card until it is fixed.

Check that the lock lever is located at the left edge as shown below.

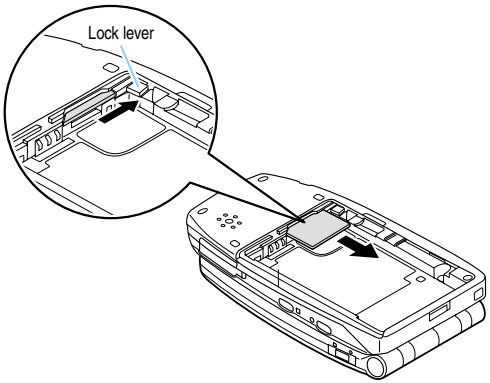


The FOMA card in the right position

Removing

1 Slide the lock holding the FOMA card.

Be careful not to touch the FOMA card with your fingers.



2 The FOMA card is ejected a little. Pull it out straight carefully.

Be careful not to drop the FOMA card when removing it.

NOTE

- Note that if the FOMA card is inserted forcibly, it may be damaged.
- Be careful not to lose the removed FOMA card.
- Do not remove the FOMA card forcibly. It may be deformed or damaged.
- If the FOMA card is difficult to remove, push it until it is fixed and then slide the lock again.

PIN codes for the FOMA card <PIN1/PIN2 codes>

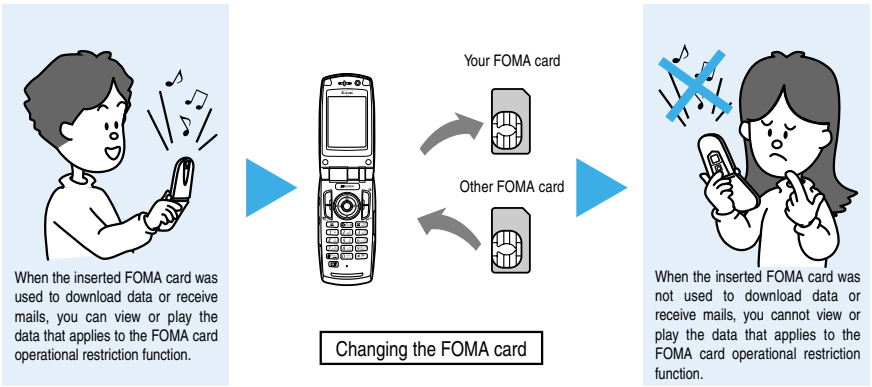
You can set two PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, for the FOMA card. →p.153
PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit PIN code to be entered every time the FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use by third parties. By entering the PIN1 code, you can make/receive calls and operate various communication functions.
N900iG does not have functions that require the use of PIN2 code.

- The default setting for the PIN1 and PIN2 codes is “0000”.
- You can change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes. →p.154
- When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card, use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set to the current card.

FOMA card operational restriction function

The FOMA card operational restriction function is a security function to protect your data and files. When you download data from sites or Web pages or receive files attached to i-mode mail, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set. Data and files with this function set are accessible for viewing, playing, editing and attaching to mail and transmitting data via the Infrared exchange function only when the FOMA card used for downloading such data or file is inserted.
If you replace the FOMA card with another one, the "" mark is attached with data and files with this function set and the operation above-mentioned does not work.

- Target data and files for the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
  - i-αppli, melody, image, Chara-den, downloaded dictionary downloaded from sites or Web pages
  - i-motion downloaded from sites or Web pages
  - Screen memo containing melody, image, i-motion, Chara-den, downloaded dictionary
  - File (melody/image/movie or i-motion) attached to or pasted in i-mode mail in Inbox
  - File (melody/image/i-motion, except for data created or shot with the FOMA terminal) attached to i-mode mail in Outbox/Draft
  - Msg. Request/Free with attached or pasted file (melody/image)
  - Image inserted in the message body of a Deco-mail
- You can move or delete data and files with this function set even when other FOMA card is inserted.
- The FOMA card operational restriction function is not set to the following data: data received via Infrared/ cable-connected communication, data received using miniSD memory card, and pictures (still images)/ continuous multiple pictures/movies shot with the built-in camera.



When the inserted FOMA card was used to download data or receive mails, you can view or play the data that applies to the FOMA card operational restriction function.

Changing the FOMA card

When the inserted FOMA card was not used to download data or receive mails, you cannot view or play the data that applies to the FOMA card operational restriction function.

NOTE

- When data or a file with this function set is set to "Display setting" or "Select ring tone", if you remove your FOMA card or replace it with another one, these settings are reset to the default settings. For example, even if "Melody A" that applies to the FOMA card operational restriction function is specified as a ring tone, the default ring tone sounds when you receive a call. When you reinsert your FOMA card, the FOMA terminal sounds "Melody A" for an incoming call.
- Pre-installed i-αppli can be subjected to this function when it is upgraded or re-downloaded from a site after deleted.
- If the FOMA card operational restriction function is set, you cannot activate i-αppli or download i-motion from the mail detail screen of i-mode mail.
- If you replace the FOMA card to another one, in "Image" or "i Motion", images or movies with which the FOMA card operational restriction function is set are displayed as the image on the right.



∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

FOMA card types

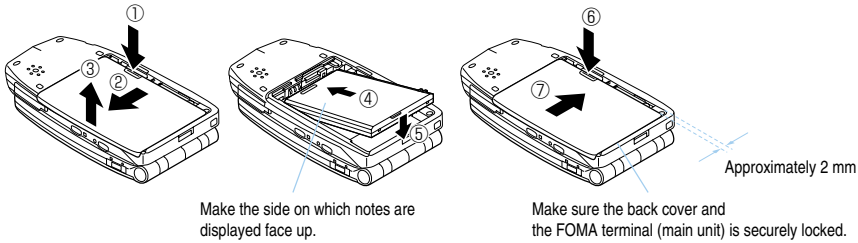
There are 2 versions in the FOMA card. Please note that there are the following functional differences from "FOMA card (green)" when you use "FOMA card (blue)" on the FOMA terminal.

Feature	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)	See page
Max number of digits for a phone number to be stored in the FOMA card's phonebook	20 digits	26 digits	p.106
International Roaming Service (WORLD WING)	Not available	Available	p.530
Service dial	Not available	"Network Operation Center" and "DoCoMo Information Center"	Backside of this manual

Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack

- Be sure to turn the FOMA terminal off before attaching/removing the battery pack. Moreover, hold the terminal when attaching/removing the battery pack.
- When the FOMA card is inserted, make sure that the FOMA card is correctly set before attaching the battery pack (p.46). If the FOMA card is not properly set, the battery pack cannot be attached. If the battery pack is attached forcibly, the FOMA card may be damaged.
- For details, refer to the manual for the Battery Pack N07.

Attaching



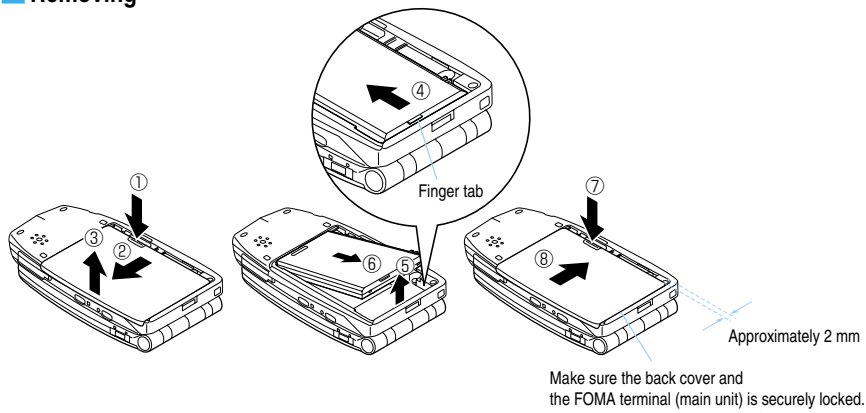
1 **While pressing down the knob of the back cover in the ① direction, slide the cover in the ② direction and then pull up in the ③ direction to remove it.**

2 **With the caution label on the battery pack facing upwards, insert it into the notches of the FOMA terminal (main unit) in the ④ direction and press the battery pack down in the ⑤ direction to clip it into the FOMA terminal. Check that the tabs on the battery pack are slotted into the notches of the FOMA terminal.**

3 **Place the back cover into the cavity in the FOMA terminal (main unit), keeping the back cover open in about 2 mm. Then push the back cover in the direction of arrow ⑥ to clip it into the FOMA body, and slide it in the direction of arrow ⑦ until you hear a click.**

Continued on next page

Removing



1 **While pressing down the knobs of the back cover in the ① direction, slide the cover in the ② direction and then pull up in the ③ direction to remove it.**

2 **While pressing down in the ④ direction, lift the tabs of the battery pack up in the ⑤ direction, and then remove it in the ⑥ direction.**

3 **Place the back cover into the cavity in the FOMA terminal (main unit), keeping the back cover open in about 2 mm. Then push the back cover in the direction of arrow ⑦ to clip it into the FOMA body, and slide it in the direction of arrow ⑧ until you hear a click.**

Charging Your Terminal

Getting the best out of your battery pack

To maintain full performance of the FOMA terminal, use the specified Battery Pack N07 for the FOMA terminal.

■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as it did when new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. Note that it may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.

Li-ion

To protect the environment, bring used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, or the recycle shop, etc.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on.

If you charge the battery pack for a long period with the FOMA terminal switched on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short time and the low-voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again for recharging.

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Battery usage time

(The battery duration varies depending on the charging time and the deterioration of the battery.)

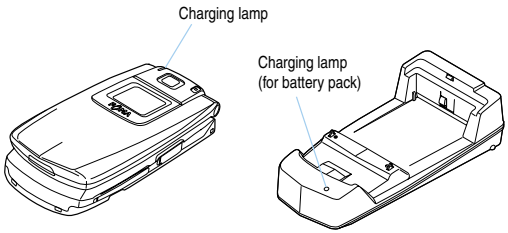
Network※	Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
FOMA/3G	Voice call: Approx. 105 min. Videophone call: Approx. 70 min.	Stationary: Approx. 150 hours Moving: Approx. 110 hours
GPRS/GSM	Voice call: Approx. 120 min.	Approx. 110 hours

※ : See p.530 for networks that can be accessed with the FOMA terminal and p.537 for available services.

- The continuous talk time is an estimated time you can talk while radio waves are strong enough to send and receive.
- The continuous standby time is an estimated time during moving over when radio waves are strong enough to receive properly with the FOMA terminal folded. Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery level, the function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves), network conditions in the country where you are. Using i-mode will decrease the talk (communication) and standby times. Even when you do not talk on the phone or use i-mode, creating i-mode mail or starting up downloaded i-αppli and i-αppli standby display will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.
- The standby time in stationary is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and standing still, while radio waves can be normally received.
- The standby time in moving is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded under condition of “stationary”, “moving”, and “out of service area” within the area where radio waves can be normally received.
- Loading the miniSD memory card, performing data communication or multi access, or using the camera or the light will also shorten the talk (communication) and standby times.

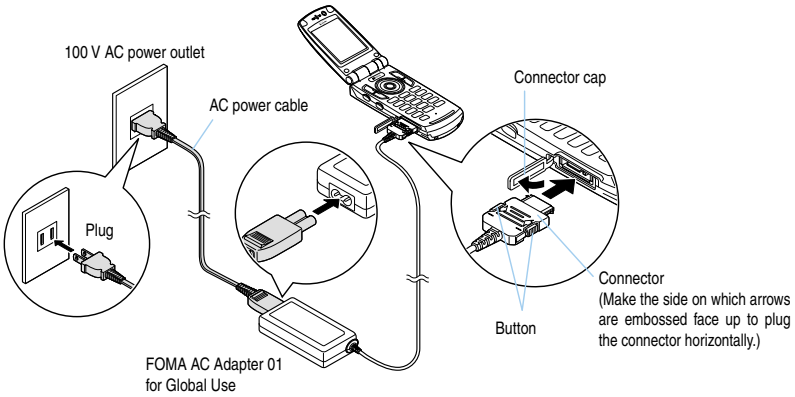
Notes on charging the battery pack

- For details, refer to the manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use, Desktop Holder N05 and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional).
- To charge the battery pack using the AC adapter or DC adapter, the battery pack must be attached to the FOMA terminal.
- If the charging lamp on the FOMA terminal (main unit) and “ ” on the display are turned off and an error message such as “Charge unusual Stop charge” appears, remove the AC adapter or DC adapter and battery pack from the FOMA terminal and attach them again to restart charging. If the same error occurs again, the AC adapter or DC adapter may have an anomaly or be damaged. In this case, call the phone number indicated on the back cover of this manual.
- You can make and receive calls during charging if the FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during the call and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if the “Display light” for “Charging” is set to “All time ON”.
  Since battery consumption increases when a function such as videophone call is used during charging, the battery may run out and operations such as a call may be cut off due to low battery depending on the battery level at the start of the operation.
- If the battery is dead or the power is off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charging lamp may not glow right away, but the battery charge has actually started.
- The AC adapter, DC adapter, FOMA terminal, battery pack or desktop holder may become warm during the battery charge, it is not abnormal.
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply an excessive force.
- During the battery charging, the charging lamp lights up on the FOMA terminal. When charging the simple battery pack using the desktop holder, the charging lamp of the desktop holder illuminates.



Charging the battery pack with the AC adapter

Connect the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use to the FOMA terminal to charge the battery pack.



1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.

2 Plug the AC adapter connector into the FOMA terminal's external connector in the direction as shown above.

3 Plug into a power outlet after connecting the AC power cable to the AC adapter.



When the FOMA terminal is turned off

Charging starts. The charge lamp lights in red and "" flashes. The charge lamp turns off and "" lights when the charging is finished.

Standard charging time
Approx. 150 min.

4 When charging is completed, pull the AC adapter connector out of the FOMA terminal horizontally while pressing the connector button. Then unplug the AC adapter from the power outlet.

5 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.

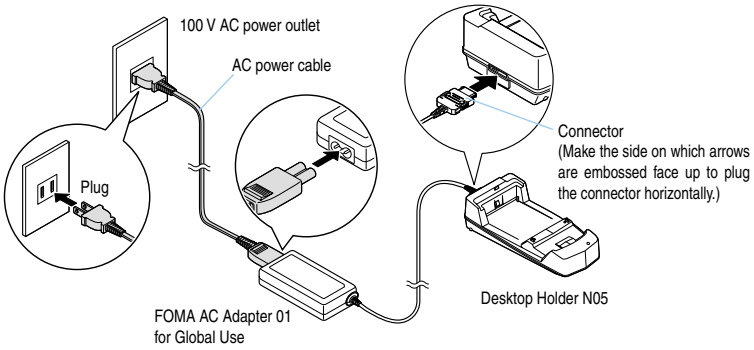
NOTE

- Although the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use itself can be used in a range of 100V to 240V AC, the accompanying AC power cord (the cord with the electrical plug) is for use with 100V AC (Japan domestic specification) only. When you use the AC adapter overseas, you need a conversion plug adapter and a power cord that are suitable for the local specification. Do not use a voltage converter for overseas use to charge your terminal.
- The standard battery charge time is for the FOMA terminal turned off. You can charge the battery with the power ON, but it takes longer to charge the battery than it does with the power off.

Charging the battery pack with the desktop holder

Use the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use and the Desktop Holder N05 to charge the battery pack. As you can charge the battery pack by simply placing the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder without opening its connector cap, it is convenient.

- You can place both the FOMA terminal main unit (the battery pack inserted) and another simple battery pack on the desktop holder for charging. In this case, charging starts with the FOMA terminal first, and then with the simple battery pack after the FOMA terminal completes charging. (Simultaneous charging is not available.)
- You can charge the Battery Pack N07 by attaching the FOMA terminal on the desktop holder.
- The desktop holder has a screw hole for tripod on the bottom.



1 Plug the AC adapter connector into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder in the direction as shown above.

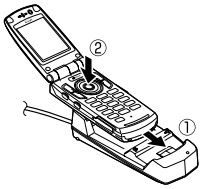
2 Plug into a power outlet after connecting the AC power cable to the AC adapter.

3 Place the FOMA terminal or the battery pack firmly in the desktop holder as shown above.

When placing the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder, make sure that the strap is not caught between the terminal and holder.

To charge with the FOMA terminal set in the desktop holder

Place the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder in the order of arrows ① and ② shown in the figure below. When the terminal is firmly placed in the holder, it clicks into place and charging starts. During charging, the charge lamp on the FOMA terminal lights in red and "" blinks. When charging has finished, the charge lamp turns off and "" lights.



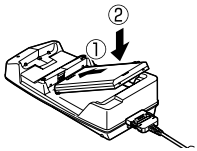


When the FOMA terminal is turned off

Standard charging time
Approx. 150 min.

To charge with the battery pack set in the desktop holder

Place the battery pack in the desktop holder in the order of arrows ① and ② shown in the figure below. When the terminal is firmly placed in the holder, it clicks into place and charging starts. During charging, the charge lamp of the desktop holder lights. The charge lamp turns off when the charging is finished.



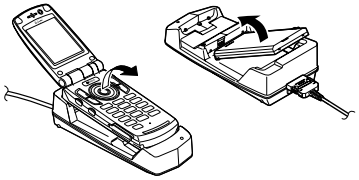
Standard charging time
Approx. 150 min.

Continued on next page

To set and charge both the FOMA terminal and the battery pack on the desktop holder

When the charging of the FOMA terminal is finished, the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal turns off and "" lights. Then, the charging of the battery pack starts, when the charge lamp of the desktop holder lights.

4 After charging ends, hold down the desktop holder, grip both sides of the FOMA terminal or the battery pack and lift it up in the arrow direction from the holder.



NOTE

- Although the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use itself can be used in a range of 100V to 240V AC, the accompanying AC power cord (the cord with the electrical plug) is for use with 100V AC (Japan domestic specification) only. When you use the AC adapter overseas, you need a conversion plug adapter and a power cord that are suitable for the local specification. Do not use a voltage converter for overseas use to charge your terminal.

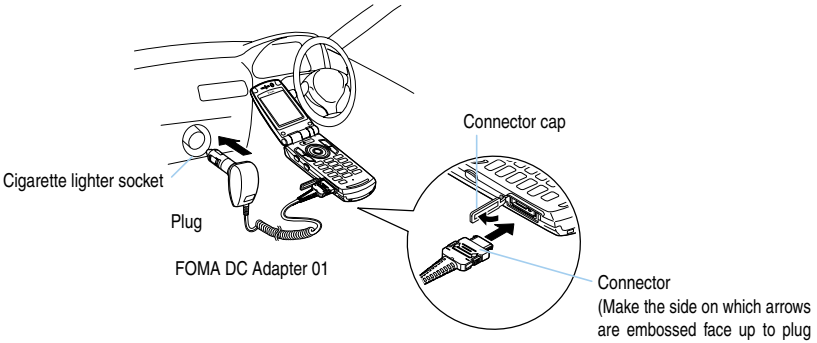
<To charge with the FOMA terminal set in the desktop holder>

- Be sure to put Battery Pack N07 into the FOMA terminal before you start charging the battery.
- The standard battery charge time is for the FOMA terminal turned off. You can charge the battery with the power ON, but it takes longer to charge the battery than it does with the power off.

Charging the battery pack with the DC adapter (optional)

Connect the FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional) with the FOMA terminal to charge the battery pack. The DC adapter supplies the power for charging from the cigarette lighter socket (12V/24V DC) in a car.

- The DC adapter is exclusively for negative-grounded vehicles. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.



1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.

2 Plug the DC adapter connector into the FOMA terminal's external connector in the direction as shown above.

3 Plug the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in your car.



When the FOMA terminal is turned off

Charging starts. The charge lamp lights in red and "" flashes. The charge lamp turns off and "" lights when charging is finished.

Standard charging time
Approx. 150 min.

4 When charging is completed, pull the DC adapter connector out of the FOMA terminal horizontally while pressing the connector button. Then unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in your car.

5 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- Depending on your car type, the DC adapter may not be connected.
- When the vehicle engine is not running, use of the DC adapter may drain the car battery. Always start the engine before using the DC adapter. Always disconnect the DC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal and unplug the DC adapter form the cigarette lighter socket when you are not using the DC adapter or when you are not in the car.
- The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.
- The standard battery charge time is for the FOMA terminal turned off. You can charge the battery with the power ON, but it takes longer to charge the battery than it does with the power off.

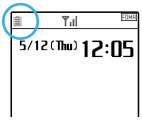
Battery level

How to Check the Battery Level

You can check the remaining battery level in the following two ways. The indicated battery level is reference only.

Checking the battery level with icon

When the FOMA terminal is turned on, the icon indicating the remaining battery level is automatically displayed. Check the current battery level with the displayed icon.



(green) : Full charge

(green) : Low charge

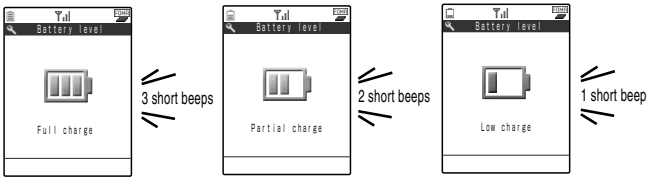
(red) : Almost empty. Charging the battery is recommended. →p.50

Checking the battery level with sound and graphics

The current battery level is indicated by sound and graphics (animation).

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Battery level”.

The battery level check screen is displayed, and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level graphics disappears in about three seconds.



Full　Low　Almost empty

※: Charging the battery is recommended.

Continued on next page

NOTE

● The beeps do not sound when “Keypad sound” is set to “OFF” or when being in the Manner mode.

When the battery runs out <Low-voltage alarm>

When the battery runs out, the screen as shown on the right flashes and the low-voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop this alarm, press any keys other than [Home] or [Memo/Check].



NOTE

● If the battery runs out during a call, the Recharge battery screen above is displayed and short tones “pip-pip-pip” sounds. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power turns off in about one minute.
● When “Ring volume” for “Phone/Video-phone” is set to “Silent”, the low-voltage alarm sounds at a constant volume.
● During the “Manner mode”, when the manner mode operation is set to “Manner mode”, “Super silent”, or “Silent” for “Phone vol.”, “OFF” for “LVA tone” in “Original”, no low-voltage alarm sounds.

Select language

Switching the Screen Display to English

Default setting | **Japanese**

You can switch the function name and messages showed between English and Japanese in the display or image window.

● When “Japanese” is set, “Language” appears as the function name, and if “English” is set, “Select language” appears.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ 各種設定 ▶ “ディスプレイ” ▶ “Language”.**

To switch the display from Japanese to English
Select “English”.

To switch the display from English to Japanese
Select “日本語”.

NOTE

● If the FOMA cards are replaced, the “Language” setting may be changed depending on the current card setting.

Power On/Off

- When you start using the FOMA terminal for the first time (or it has been left unused for a long period), charge the battery. Use the specified AC adapter or DC adapter (optional) for charging.
- No date and time is set by default. Set them in "Set local time". →p.58

Turning the power on

1 Hold down PWR HLD for 1 second or more.



The date/time and the battery level appear (the standby display).

When " " appears

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as " " lights. Even if the reception level is strong with " " icon displayed and you are not moving, a call may be disconnected.

When you try to use the phonebook, mail or other function immediately after the power on

A message notifying you that the FOMA terminal cannot start up such a function because it is presently loading FOMA card data may appear. In this case, retry the operation after a while.

When changing an image displayed on the standby display to another image or calendar

"Display setting" →p.140

When the PIN1 code entry is set to "ON"

The Enter PIN1 code screen is displayed. Enter the correct PIN1 code to display the standby display. →p.155

When "i-αppli stand-by display" is set

A message asking whether to start up "i-αppli stand-by display" appears.

NOTE

- Since your FOMA terminal supports the international roaming service, searching the corresponding radio wave may take time just after the terminal is switched on. During this time, " " may be displayed.

Turning the power off

1 Hold down PWR HLD for 2 seconds or more.



The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

When turning the power off during i-mode

" " flashes and it may take a little longer before the FOMA terminal turns off.

Setting the Date and Time

Setting date and time of the FOMA terminal <Set local time >

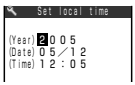
Default setting has no date or time. Set the date and time to Japan time in "Set local time".

- After setting the date and time, perform the setting of "Set remote time" to display the time of an oversea city. Since the date and time set under this function are used as the standard for the remote time, be sure to set the Japanese date and time.
- This function allows you to set the date and time between 00:00 in January 1, 2003 and 23:59 in December 31, 2099. The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 in December 31, 2099.
- If you set up the clock, the date and time will be displayed in functions such as Standby display, Image window, Redial record/Received calls record and Mail.
- If you set up the clock, you will be able to use functions to manage the date and time such as "Alarm clock" and "Schedule".

<Example: Setting May 12, 2005, 12:05>

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Clock" ▶ "Set local time".**

2 **Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format).**



Press ● to move the highlighted display, and then enter the numbers with the dial keys.
Press 2, 0, 0, 5, 0, 5, 1, 2, 1, 2, 0, 5.

3 **When you finished entering the date and time, press ● [Set].**

NOTE

- You can set the date and time during a call.
- If you do not set the date and time, you cannot use functions such as the (authentication) function of TLS/SSL communication and the function of automatic run of i-αppli, and you cannot acquire the i-motion within expiration and replay period.
- The FOMA terminal incorporates a built-in backup battery. The date and time you set are retained by the built-in backup battery, so the settings are not lost when you replace the battery pack. However, the date and time may be reset if the battery pack is removed for two weeks or more. In this case, charge the FOMA terminal, then set the date and time again. If the battery pack is charged with installed into the FOMA terminal, the backup battery is charged at the same time.

Setting the global clock <Set remote time>

Default setting	Time zone: GMT + 00 City name: London Summer time: OFF

In addition to the Japanese Standard Time set in "Set local time", you can display the time of another city in the world on your standby display. This is a convenient feature when traveling abroad. Summer time setting is also available.

- Set an accurate date and time in "Set local time" (p.58) before setting the Remote time.
- If you set Summer time, the Remote time is displayed in the time an hour earlier than the set time.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Clock" ▶ "Set remote time".

2 Select "Time zone".

To set Summer time
Select "Summer time" and then "ON".

3 Select a time zone you want to set for the remote time.

To change the time zone (city name)
Press [Change] and then select a time zone (city name).
Some time zones (city names) cannot be changed.

Displaying the remote time in the standby screen
To display the set remote time in the standby screen, perform the following settings:
<To display the remote time in the standby screen>
Set "Local&Remote" for "Object" in "Clock display". →p.149
<To display the remote time in the standby screen of the image window>
Set "Local&Remote" for "Clock type" in "Image window". →p.143

Notify caller ID

Notifying Your Phone Number to the Other Party

Default setting	OFF	Subscription	Unnecessary	Monthly charge	Free

If the other party's phone is a digital terminal that supports caller ID notification, the FOMA terminal can notify your phone number to the other party's phone when you make a voice/videophone call. Since the caller ID is your important information, please handle with care when you notify your caller ID.

- You cannot operate the notify caller ID service when the "圏外" icon is displayed.
- The notify caller ID service is available for videophones too.
- This function is available only when the other party's phone is a digital terminal capable of displaying the caller ID.
- When you hear the guidance requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone once. Then set "Notify caller ID" to "ON" or, add "186" or "✳31#" prefix and make the call again.
- You can set whether to use the Notify caller ID service every time you make a call. →p.64

Continued on next page

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶“Notify caller ID”.

2 Select “Change setting”.

To check the notify caller ID service settings
Select “Check setting”.

3 Select “ON”, and enter the NW security code.

NW security code →p.152

If you do not notify your caller ID
Select “OFF”, and enter the NW security code.

NOTE

- You can also set the notify caller ID to ON or OFF when you dial a phone number or display it from the “phonebook”, “Received calls” or “Redial”. →p.112

Own number

Checking Your Own Phone Number

You can display and check your phone number (own number) stored in your FOMA card.

1 Press (Menu) 0わを.



You can also display your own number by selecting Menu key - “Own data” - “Own number”. →p.38

NOTE

- Your data (name, home phone number, home address and mail address, etc.) can be stored. →p.426
- When an i-mode mail address is stored as your own data, press ○ to check the stored data.
- An i-mode mail address can be checked by selecting “iMenu” - “Options” - “Mail Settings” - “Confirm Mail Address”.

Making/Receiving a Call

■ **How to Make a Call**

Making a Call 62
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number ..... Redial 63
Notifying/Not Notifying Your Phone Number When Making a Call 186/184 64
Sending Push Signals Quickly ..... Pause dial 65
Attaching a Number Before the Phone Number ..... Prefix setting 66
Making International Calls ..... WORLD CALL 67
Setting a Subaddress to Make a Call ..... Subaddress setting 71
Automatically Connecting a Dropped Line ..... Reconnect control 71
Reducing Ambient Noise to Make Your Phone Conversation Clearer ..... Noise reduction 72
Using a Terminal without Using Your Hands <Optional> ..... Hands-free 72

■ **How to Receive a Call**

Receiving a Call 73
Setting to Answer a Call with Pressing Keys ..... Answer setting 74
Ending/Holding a Call by Folding the FOMA Terminal ..... Fold setting 75
Using Dialed or Received Calls Records 75
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume ..... Volume 78

■ **When You Cannot/Could not Answer Immediately**

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately ..... On hold 79
Setting an On Hold Tone/Holding Tone ..... Select hold tone 80
Setting Not to Receive Calls While Driving ..... Driving mode 80
Checking Missed Calls and New Mail 82
Having the Caller Leave a Message ..... Record message 83
Recording the Caller's Message during an Incoming Call ..... Quick record message 85
Playing/Deleting Record Messages and Voice Memos 85

Making a Call

Dialing a phone number to make a voice call.

● Make sure that the battery level is adequate and the radio wave reception level is sufficiently strong.

1 Dial the other party's phone number, starting with the area code.



Even if you are within the same area code as the number you are dialing, you must enter the full number, including the area code.
Area code - City code - Subscriber number

To call a mobile phone
090-XXXX-XXXX
or
080-XXXX-XXXX

To call a PHS phone
070-XXXX-XXXX

A number of up to 80 digits can be entered for making a call, although the numbers disappear from the display one by one from the beginning if a number of more than 26 digits is input. ("+", "*", "#" and "p" are included in the digit.)
Entering "+" →p.68

2 Press .

The phone number immediately disappears from the display and reappears from the right side of the screen, and then a call is made.
"" blinks during an outgoing call, and lights during a conversation.
You can also make a call by pressing ● [Dial].

If you hear a busy tone
The other party is engaged on the phone. Press PWR HLD and call again later.

If you hear an announcement saying that the call did not go through
The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not turned on or is in a location of no radio reception. Press PWR HLD and call again later.

If you hear an announcement requesting your phone number
The other party's Caller ID request service is set to "Activate". Set your FOMA terminal to notify your phone number and call again. →pp.59 and 64

3 When you finish the conversation, press PWR HLD.

NOTE

- You can still make a call even during i-mode or while you are sending or receiving mail.→p.404
- If you switch to a screen other than the talking screen during a call, press CLR to return to the talking screen.
- You can still make a call even if you switch the order of steps 1 and 2. If you have entered the wrong phone number, press PWR HLD to erase the display, and then dial again.
- Press [Hands-free On] while making a call or talking switches to the handsfree mode. When the handsfree mode is set, you can talk while listening to the other party's voice from the speaker. However, since the other party's voice will play over the loudspeaker during the handsfree mode, always move to a location where this will not bother others before switching to the handsfree mode. Pressing [Hands-free Off] again to cancel the handsfree mode.
- You can send a still image photographed with the built-in camera during a call to the other party (Speed photo mail). →p.263
- When the communication line is busy, "Please wait" may be displayed. In this case, call again later.

If you make a mistake when entering a phone number

■ To insert a number

Press ○ to move the cursor to the number on the right side of where you want to insert a number, and then press the number.

■ To delete a number

Press ○ to move the cursor to the number you want to delete, and then press CLR.
If you hold down CLR for 1 second or more, all numbers on the right of the cursor will be deleted with the cursor position included.

■ To correct the entire number

Position the cursor at the beginning or end of the number and hold down (CLR) for 1 second or more. The standby display will return.

Putting the current call on hold <Holding>

You can put the current call on hold.

1 Press (CLR) during a call.



The caller hears a hold tone. While a videophone call is made, an image that shows the call is on hold is sent to the other party's terminal.

To end a call while the call is on hold

Press (PWR HELP).

If the caller hangs up while the call is on hold

The call ends.

2 When you are ready to answer the call, press (CLR), (Talk) or ● [Answer].

NOTE

- You can set a hold tone which the other party hears during a call in the "Select hold tone". →p.80
- While a call is on hold, a hold tone sounds also through the speaker of the terminal that put the call on hold. However, a hold tone does not sound through the speaker under the following conditions: When "Phone/Video-phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent"; When the phone is in "Manner mode" and the manner mode operation is set to "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "Original" in which "Phone vol." is set to "Silent".
- If the "Fold setting" is set to except "End the call", you can put a call on hold with the FOMA terminal folded.

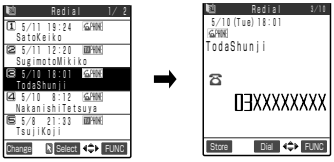
Redial

Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

You can redial previously dialed numbers in a voice/videophone call. This is useful for redialing someone whose phone was busy last time you called.

- The FOMA stores up to 30 numbers of voice/videophone call.
- If you call the same number in the same Phonebook more than once, that number is treated as one record and the most recent call is stored.
- Once the number of records exceeds 30, the record is deleted from the oldest one.
- Calls made by calling up the Phonebooks stored as secret data are not saved as Redial records.

1 Press ○ and select the number you want to redial.



The detail screen of the selected redial is displayed. The "current redial number/total number of redials" are displayed on the upper right side of the screen. The smaller the number is, the more recent the call was made.

To display the redial before and after the current one

Every time you press ○ on the detail screen of the redial, the redial before the current one is displayed like the 2nd redial, 3rd redial.... Every time you press ○, the redial after the current one is displayed like 30th redial, 29th redial....

For the telephone number registered in the phonebook

If a name has been registered, it is also displayed.

Continued on next page

2 Press ☎ or ● [Dial].

To make a videophone call
Press 📹.

3 When you finish the conversation, press PWR HOLD.

NOTE

- While “PIM lock” is set, only phone numbers are stored even in the case of calls to parties whose names or icons are stored in the Phonebook.
- Phone numbers you have dialed are also stored in the “Dialled calls”. In the “Dialled calls”, information on each call is recorded as a separate record even when you redialed the same phone number.
- No dialed date and time is displayed when the date and time is not set in “Set local time”.
- With redial, you can store recorded phone numbers in the phonebook or compose and send i-mode mails from the function menu in the same manner with dialed record/received call record. →p.75

Deleting a redial record <Redial record deletion>

Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the Redial records. To prevent other people from viewing your Redial records, you must delete them.

1 Display the Redial record you want to delete.

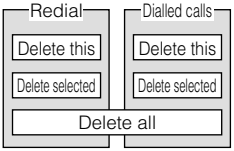
2 Select “Delete this” from the function menu.

To delete selected Redial records
Select “Delete selected” from the function menu, and then select the records you want to delete.

To delete all Redial records
Select “Delete all” from the function menu.

NOTE

- If you perform “Delete all”, both “Redial” and “Dialled calls” are deleted. Note that if you perform “Delete this” or “Delete selected” on the Redial, the Dialled calls record is not deleted.
  Dialed record →p.76



186/184

Notifying/Not Notifying Your Phone Number When Making a Call

Every time you make a call, you can prefix “186” to the other party’s phone number when you send your caller ID, or “184” when you send no caller ID.

- “186”/”184” is not valid when making international calls. Instead, prefix “✳31#”/“#31#” or use “Notify caller ID” (p.112).

■ Notifying your caller ID

Voice call : 186 - The other party’s phone number - ☎

Videophone call : 186 - The other party’s phone number - 📹

■ Notifying no caller ID

Voice call : 184 - The other party's phone number - (Voice call)

Videophone call : 184 - The other party's phone number - (Videophone call)

NOTE

- You can also use "✳31#" instead of "186" and "#31#" instead of "184".
- When you hear the guidance asking you to send your caller ID, make a call again with the prefix of "186" or "✳31#".
- If you make a call adding "186"/"184" to a phone number, that is stored as redial or dialed records with "186"/"184" added.

Pause dial

Sending Push Signals Quickly

You can send a message to the QUICKCAST*, make a ticket reservation or check your bank account balance by sending push signals from your FOMA terminal.

Storing dial data using the pause dial function

Store dial data to be sent as push signals in the pause dial in advance. Inserting a pause (p) allows you to send dial data with a pause where you pressed the pause key.

- You can store only one set of dial data, each can contain up to 128 characters.
- You can enter the following characters for dial data : 0 to 9, #, ✳ and a pause (p).
- You cannot insert a pause (p) at the beginning of dial data or successively.
- If you insert a pause (p) at the end of dial data, the pause will automatically be deleted when storing the dial data.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings " ▶ "Pause dial".

When dial data is already stored
The stored dial data is displayed.

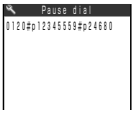
2 Press [Edit] and enter the dial data.

Press 0 to 9, # and ✳, and then enter the dial data.

To insert a pause (p)
Hold down ✳ for 1 second or more.

Sending dial data using the pause dial function

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Pause dial".



To delete dial data
Select "Delete" from the function menu.

*As of January 2001, the paging service provided by NTT DoCoMo is known as QUICKCAST.

Continued on next page

2 Press ● [Send] and enter the destination phone number.

To enter "+", press 0 for 1 second or more.



To enter the phone number from the phonebook

Enter part of the phone number, and then press ○ to search for the number.
Press ○ to select a search method from the phonebook search screen.
Press ○ to search the received call record, or ○ to search the redial record.

3 Press ☎ or ● [Dial].



A call is made to the entered phone number, and when connecting a line, the dial data before the first pause (p) is displayed. No pause (p) appears.

4 Press ☎ or ● [Send] to send the dial data.

Each time you press ☎ or ● [Send], dial data until the next pause (p) is sent. Once the last number is sent, the call screen reappears.

To send all dial data at one time

Hold down ○ for 1 second or more, and select "Send at one time" from the Send pause dial menu.

NOTE

- You can send dial data to the other party you are talking by displaying the pause dial screen during a call and pressing ● [Send].
- You can also send dial data by entering the pause dial directly on the standby display. In this case, first dial the other party's phone number, enter a pause (p), and then enter dial data you want to send. After entering, press ☎ to make the call. Once you are connected, press ☎ again to send the dial data until the next pause (p).
- The videophone call disables the pause dial and you cannot send dial data after the pause.
- The signal may not be received depending on the device of the called side.

Prefix setting

Attaching a Number Before the Phone Number

Default setting	"WORLD CALL" (009130010)

You can set the specific numbers (prefix) such as the international access code that you frequently use in advance. Once you have set, you can dial a phone number with a prefix at its head by using "Dialing", "Phonebook", "Received calls", "Dialled calls" or "Redial". The number for "Notify caller ID", etc. is useful if you have set it.

- Up to 7 prefixes can be stored.
- You can enter the following characters for a prefix number: 0 to 9, # and ✳.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Network setting" ▶ "Prefix setting".

2 Highlight <Not stored> and then press [Edit].

To change the contents of a stored prefix

Highlight the prefix you want to change and press [Edit].

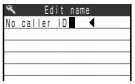
To delete a prefix

Highlight the prefix you want to delete, and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To delete all prefixes

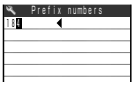
Select "Delete all" from the function menu.

3 Enter the entry name.



Up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters can be entered for a prefix name.
Entering characters →p.502

4 Enter the number (prefix).



The prefix number can be up to 10 digits long.

NOTE

- You can add a prefix to a phone number by selecting “Prefix numbers” from the function menu when dialing, or displaying the phonebook details screen, “Received calls”, “Dialled calls” and “Redial”.
- You can edit the preset “WORLD CALL” (009130010) stored at purchase.

WORLD CALL

Making International Calls

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service that is available from the NTT DoCoMo’s mobile phone.

- You can make calls to about 220 countries and regions around the world.
- Charges for “WORLD CALL” will be billed together with your monthly FOMA call charge.
- There is no application or monthly charge for this service.

※ FOMA subscribers are also subscribed for the “WORLD CALL” service when they apply for the FOMA service (except subscribers who have specified that they do not want the WORLD CALL service).

Changing the international call dialing procedure

The “My Line” service is not available for mobile communication devices such as mobile phones. For this reason, the “My Line” service is not available when you use the WORLD CALL service to make an international call from the FOMA terminal. The procedure to make an international call from your FOMA terminal has changed as mentioned below in accordance with the introduction of the “My Line” service. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (excluding “010” from the dialing numbers below) is not available.

For information about WORLD CALL, contact the DoCoMo Information Center indicated on the back cover of this user’s manual.

1 Dial 009130 - 010 - Country code - Area code - the other party’s phone number.

If the area code begins with “0”, omit the “0” when you dial. However, you may need “0” to make a call to some countries/regions including Italy.

2 Press .

3 Press to end the call.

Continued on next page

You can use the “International videophone call” by making a call to an overseas customer※1 who uses a certain 3G mobile phone terminal by pressing [i-mode] after following the above dialing method.※2

※1： As of October 2004, international videophone calls can be made to/from users of Hutchison3GUK (United Kingdom) and Hutchison3GHK (Hong Kong).

※2： Depending on the terminal the international videophone call is going to be connected to, the other party’s image displayed on the FOMA terminal may be disrupted or you may not be able to connect to it.

※1・2： See DoCoMo’s website for more information.

NOTE

- “009130-010” is already stored in the “Prefix setting”.
- If your international phone carrier is not NTT DoCoMo, call your international phone carrier for information on how to make international calls.

Making an international call with easy operations

For making an international call, an international access code such as “009130-010 (WORLD CALL)” and the country code of the country where the other party is must be added to the phone number to be dialed.
Your FOMA terminal supports the dialing assistance function, which is useful for making international calls to phone numbers that are registered in the phonebook.

- For more information about the dialing assistance function, see p.539.
- To make an international call to a country or region such as Italy, you may need to add “0” to the beginning of area code. Perform the operation of either “Making an international call using “+”” or “Making an international call using the prefix function”.

Make an international call using “+”

If you press “+” before dialing the original phone number, you can make an international call with the international access code (009130-010 WORLD CALL) which is automatically replaced with “+”.

- You need to set “Auto assist setting” to “AUTO” under “Int’l dial setting” (p.69) and also IDD Prefix Code in advance.

1 On the standby display, enter “+” (press and hold [0 わをん +−] for 1 second or more) - Country code - Area code - Local phone number.

When the area code starts with “0”, omit the initial “0” and enter the rest. However, you may need “0” to make a call to some countries/regions including Italy.

2 Press [Dial] or [●] [Dial].



“+” entered in Step 1 is replaced with the international access code and a message asking you whether to make an international call appears.

3 Select “Dial”.

The international call is made.
Select “Original phone No.” to dial the number displayed before “+” is replaced in Step 2.

To cancel calling
Select “Cancel”.

Make an international call by selecting the country name

You can make an international call only by selecting the country name you preset. You don't have to enter an international access number such as 009130-010 and a country code.

- Only "日本 (Japan)" is set by default. To add other country names and country numbers, set them in "Int'l dial setting".
- International calls are made using "IDD Prefix Code" set in "Int'l dial setting". The default settings is "WORLD CALL" (009130010).

1 Enter the phone number to call.

Enter Area code – Local phone number. If you enter the area code starting with "0", the first "0" will automatically be omitted when the international call is made.

To display the phone number to call that is stored in your phonebook

How to search the phonebook →p.114

2 Open the function menu and select "International Call" to select a country for the phone number to call.

Add in advance the country name and country code of the phone number to call. (Only "日本(Japan)" is registered by default.)

3 Press (☎) or (●) [Dial].

The international call is made.

Make an international call with the prefix function

The "Prefix setting" is set to "WORLD_CALL" by default to make it easy to place international calls.

1 Enter the phone number to call.

Enter Country code – Area code – Local phone number.
When the area code starts with "0", omit the initial "0" and enter the rest. However, you may need "0" to make a call to some countries/regions including Italy.

To display the phone number to call that is stored in the phonebook

How to search the phonebook →p.114

2 Open the function menu and select "Prefix numbers" - "WORLD CALL".

3 Press (☎) or (●) [Dial].

The international call is made.

Settings for easy international calls <Int'l dial setting>

Default setting	**Auto assist setting: AUTO Country Code setting: "日本" (Country Code: 81)** **IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010)**

You can change the "AUTO" setting for international calls, register the country name of the international phone number you often call to, change the international access number to use an international service other than "WORLD CALL".

- "Int'l dial setting" cannot be changed while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.

Continued on next page

Setting the Auto assist setting (Auto assist setting)

Perform this setting to add international access number automatically. If this item is set to "AUTO", as you dial "+" when making an international call, the "+" is automatically replaced with the international access number. →p.68

● If you set this item to "OFF", the "AUTO" setting for an international call made using the phonebook from abroad will be cancelled also. →p.540

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Network setting" ▶ "Int'l dial setting".

2 Select "Auto assist setting".

3 Select "AUTO".

The country name set in "Country Code setting" is displayed.

To not add "+"
Select "OFF".

4 Select "日本".

The country name setting is active when making a call in a foreign country using this function.
Making a call in another country →p.542

Setting the country code (Country Code setting)

This item allows you to register the country name and the country code of the phone number that you frequently call. As for the country code entry, up to 3 country codes can be registered.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Network setting" ▶ "Int'l dial setting".

2 Select "Country Code setting".

3 Select <Not stored> and press [Edit].

To edit an entry that is already set
Select an entry that is already set and press [Edit].

To delete a set entry
Highlight the entry to delete and open the function menu to select "Delete this".

To delete all the set entries
Open the function menu and select "Delete all".

4 Enter the country name.

Up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters can be entered as a country name.
Entering characters →p.502

5 Enter the country code.

A number of up to 5 digits can be entered as the country code.
Country code →p.531

NOTE

● You cannot delete the country code with "Auto assist setting" set to "AUTO". Moreover, you cannot perform "Delete all" when "AUTO" is set to any country code.

Changing the IDD Prefix setting (IDD Prefix setting)

You can change the international access number to use when making an international call from Japan.

● Only one international access number can be registered. If you want to register the international access number for an international call service other than "WORLD CALL", set the IDD Prefix Code.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Network setting” ▶ “Int’l dial setting”.

2 Select “IDD Prefix setting”.

The IDD Prefix name and code currently set is displayed.

3 Press [Edit] and enter the IDD Prefix name.

Up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters can be entered as an IDD Prefix name.
Entering characters →p.502

4 Enter the IDD Prefix Code.

A number of up to 10 digits can be entered as IDD prefix code.

Subaddress setting

Setting a Subaddress to Make a Call

Default setting	ON

You can use “*” in a phone number as the delimiter and set the number after “*” as a subaddress. A subaddress is used for specified communication to a certain communication device through ISDN or the content selection from the “M-stage V Live”.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Subaddress setting”.

To activate the Subaddress function
Select “ON”.

To deactivate the Subaddress function
Select “OFF”.

NOTE

- In the following cases, “*” does not work as the subaddress delimiter and is recognized an ordinary phone number including “*”.
  - “*” is placed at the beginning of a phone number.
  - “*” is placed immediately after the prefix number “186/184”.
  - When there is a “*” mark right after the numbers entered in “Prefix setting”.

Reconnect control

Automatically Connecting a Dropped Line

Default setting	No tone

Even if your connection drops out due to poor radio wave condition during the voice/videophone calls, the FOMA terminal automatically tries to reconnect to the dropped phone number as soon as reception is restored. You can also set the alarm tone ringing pattern when a call is reconnected.

- During i-mode operation, no alarm sounds regardless of the “Reconnect control” setting.
- The wait time for call reconnection differs depending on radio wave condition and how the phone is used. In general, reconnection is possible in about 10 seconds.
- If radio wave condition suddenly becomes bad, a call may be disconnected with no alarm.

Continued on next page

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Reconnect control”.

To not sound an alarm
Select “No tone”.
To sound a high-tone alarm
Select “High tone”.
To sound a low-tone alarm
Select “Low tone”.

NOTE

- Waiting for call reconnection (in about 10 seconds at the longest) is also charged.
- The other party hears no sound during disconnection.

Noise reduction

Reducing Ambient Noise to Make Your Phone Conversation Clearer

Default setting	ON

The Noise reduction is a function that reduces ambient noise. This function enables to send your clear voice to the other party during a voice or videophone call even in the noisy place.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Noise reduction”.

To activate the Noise reduction
Select “ON”.
To deactivate the Noise reduction
Select “OFF”.

Hands-free

Using a Terminal without Using Your Hands <Optional>

By connecting your FOMA terminal with a handsfree compliant device (such as a car navigation unit), you can perform operations such as making or receiving voice/ videophone calls from a handsfree compliant device.
For the operation of handsfree compliant devices, refer to each device’s manual.

- The ring tone and displays during an incoming call operate in accordance with the settings of the FOMA terminal.
- If a handsfree compliant device and the FOMA terminal are connected and the handsfree compliant device is set to emit sounds, the ring tone sounds from the handsfree-compliant device when a voice/ videophone call comes in or you receive a mail, even though the FOMA terminal is in the manner mode or the ring volume is set to “Silent”.
- In the driving mode, the operation during an incoming call follows the “Driving mode” settings.
- When the Record message is set, the operation during an incoming call follows the “Record message” settings.
- If a handsfree compliant device and the FOMA terminal are connected and the FOMA terminal is set to emit sounds, the operation upon folding the FOMA terminal during a call depends on the setting of “Fold setting”. If your setting is to emit sounds from the handsfree compliant device, folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call status regardless of the setting of “Fold setting”.

※ This is an optional function that will become available when a handsfree compliant device is released. As of October 2004, no handsfree-compliant device has been released.

Receiving a Call

Receiving an incoming voice call.

1 When a call comes in, press [Answer] or [Answer] to receive it.



When a call comes in, the phone rings and the incoming call lamp flashes.
If the "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF", the phone vibrates.
The image window notifies you of the call as well by displaying the caller's identification. →p.35

To reject an incoming call intentionally
Select "Call rejection" from the function menu.

To forward an incoming call
Select "Call forwarding" from the function menu.
The call will be connected to the forwarding number whether the "Call forwarding" service is set to "Activate" or "Deactivate".

To connect an incoming call to the voice mail service center
Select "Voice mail" from the function menu.
The call will be connected to the voice mail service center whether the "Voice mail" service is set to "Activate" or "Deactivate".

To switch to the handsfree mode
Press [ON] during a call.

2 When you finish the conversation, press [PWR HLD].

NOTE

- Press , [Answer] or even any of the following keys to answer an incoming call (Any key answer): to , , , or . However, pressing [Home] with the FOMA terminal folded puts the terminal on hold during a call. You can set to stop the ring tone by pressing any key. →p.74
- If you press or [Memo/Check] during an incoming call, the FOMA terminal enters into the "Manner mode" and activates "Record message" so that you can record the other party's message. →p.85
- When the caller notifies the caller ID and the caller's name has already been stored in the phonebook, both the phone number and name appear. If you store an image in the phonebook, the image appears. However, if the caller's phonebook entry was stored as secret data (p.161), only the caller's phone number appears with no name and no image. When the caller does not notify the caller ID, the reason for no caller ID informed appears.
- You can set to not receive calls from callers that are not stored in your phonebook. →p.168
- You can set the time how long until the notification actions (informing you of the incoming call) take place when you receive a call from a caller that is not stored in the phonebook. →p.167
- You cannot receive calls from callers that you set for "Call rejection". You cannot receive calls from callers other than those who set for "Call acceptation". →p.164
- Up to 30 incoming calls can be stored in the "Received calls". When the caller notifies the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears. If the caller's name has already been stored in the phonebook, both the phone number and name appear.
- If you subscribe to the "Call waiting" service and you set "Arrival call act" to "Answer" and "Call waiting" to "Activate", you will hear a signal tone during a call when another call arrives while you are talking. In this case, you can perform any of the following:
  - ·Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
  - ·Forward the incoming call to the voice mail center if you subscribe to the "Voice mail" service.
  - ·Forward the incoming call to the specified forwarding number if you subscribe to the "Call forwarding" service.

  For details, see p.448.
- When you receive a forwarded call, the phone numbers of the forwarding phone and the caller are displayed. Some source numbers may not be displayed.
- You cannot make calls to a FOMA terminal from internal office numbers, etc. which those do not allow you to enter an area code.

Setting to Answer a Call with Pressing Keys

Default setting | Any key answer

You can perform the setting for answering a call by pressing a key other than [Call]. You can also set the ring tone to quickly stop. It is useful for answering an incoming call in a place where this may bother people around you.
You can set the following operations:

Item	Description
Any key answer	You can press any of the following keys to answer an incoming voice call: [0] to [9], [*], [CLR], [Navigation], [Side Up] or [Side Down] as well as [Call] and [●] [Answer]. However, videophone calls are not supported.
Quick silent	You can stop the ring tone and vibrator by pressing any of the following keys or opening the FOMA terminal when a voice or videophone call comes in: [0] to [9], [*], [CLR], [Navigation], [Side Up] or [Side Down]. Even if the ring tone has been muted, the other party still hears the ring tone. For an incoming voice call, you can answer the call by pressing [Call] or [●] [Answer]. For an incoming videophone call, you can answer the call by pressing [Videophone] with the camera view or by pressing [Call] or [●] [Answer] with a substitute image.
OFF	For an incoming voice call, you can answer the call only by pressing [Call] or [●] [Answer]. For an incoming videophone call, only by pressing [Videophone], [Call] or [●] [Answer] (When you press [Call] or [●] [Answer], you can respond to the videophone call with a substitute image.).

1 Select [Menu] ▶ [Settings] ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Answer setting”.

To answer a call with the any key answer mode
Select “Any key answer”.

To answer a call with the Quick silent mode
Select “Quick silent”.

To answer a call by only pressing [Call], [●] [Answer] or [Videophone]
Select “OFF”.

NOTE

- Even if you set to “Quick silent”, when the “Manner mode” is on, the FOMA terminal operates during the “Any key answer” mode.
- Even if this function is set to “Quick silent”, a message saying “Quick silent...” will not appear in case a call comes from the caller in which images are stored in the phonebook when the videophone and “Display phonebook image” are set to “ON” or when setting the Chaku-motion.

Ending/Holding a Call by Folding the FOMA Terminal

Default setting | End the call

You can set how your FOMA terminal operates when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.
You can set the following operations:

Item	Description
No tone	During a voice call, voice is muted. During a videophone call, voice is muted and the “Camera off” (p.96) is sent to the other party. No hold tone sounds. Unfolding the FOMA terminal returns to the previous conditions. However, folding the terminal during hold and opening it again restores the calling status.
Tone on	A call is put on hold (holding). During a voice call, the other party hears the hold tone set in the “Select hold tone” while your FOMA terminal is folded. The hold tone can also be heard from your FOMA terminal speaker. During a videophone call, the hold tone set in the “Select hold tone” is played and the “Holding” image (p.96) is sent to the other party. Unfolding the FOMA terminal returns to the previous conditions. However, folding the terminal during hold and opening it again restores the calling status.
End the call	A call is terminated. This has the same effect as pressing PUSH HOLD.

- When the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, this function is disabled. Folding the FOMA terminal during a call does not change the call status. However, during a videophone call with camera view, folding the FOMA terminal switches to the substitute image.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Fold setting”.**

To mute voice when the FOMA terminal is folded
Select “No tone”.

To play a hold tone when the FOMA terminal is folded
Select “Tone on”.

To ends a call when the FOMA terminal is folded
Select “End the call”.

NOTE

- Even if you set to “No tone” or “Tone on”, this function is disabled while a voice memo is recorded.
- Even if you set “Tone on”, when you fold the FOMA terminal while you are talking to a 2nd person using “Call waiting”, your terminal works as when “No tone” is set.

Using Dialed or Received Calls Records

Information such as a phone number you called, the caller’s phone number and date and time is recorded as the dialed or received call record. If you cannot answer a call, the call is recorded as the missed call record. Voice calls, international voice calls, videophone calls, international videophone calls and packet communication for the dialed/ received/ missed call records are distinguished with their icons so that you can see the type of a record at a glance.

- Up to 30 dialed voice/videophone calls (including international voice/videophone calls) and up to 30 sent packet communication for a total of 60 records can be recorded in the dialed record.
- When the number of records exceeds the maximum number, the records are deleted in order from the oldest one.
- The dialed/received call record cannot be displayed during a videophone call.
- The access point (APN) of the sender is displayed for received packet communication.
- No date and time is recorded when the date and time is not set in “Set local time”.
- You can check the Missed call records on the image window without opening the FOMA terminal. →p.37

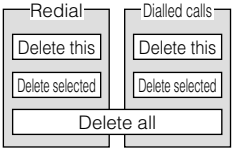
Continued on next page

The differences between Dialled calls record and Redial

There are the differences between Dialled calls record and Redial.

	Dialled calls record	Redial
Type of record that is stored	Voice call, international voice call, videophone call, international videophone call, packet communication	Voice call, international voice call, videophone call, international videophone call
When you call the same phone number	Stored as a separate record	Stored as the most recent call after the old Redial is deleted

※: When you perform “Delete all”, both “Redial” and “Dialled calls” will be all deleted. Even if you perform “Delete this” or “Delete selected” for the Dialled calls, the redial is not deleted. Note that the records of the redial remain.
Deleting the redial →p.64



<Example: Using the received calls>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ “Received calls”.

You can also call up “Received calls” by pressing .

To use the dialled calls record
Select “Dialled calls”.

2 Select the display type of received calls.

To display all received call records
Select “All calls”.

To display missed calls records only
Select “Missed calls”.
“Unknown calls” shows the number of records which have not been checked.

3 Select the record that you want to see.



To delete a record
Highlight the record you want to delete, and select “Delete this” from the function menu.

To delete multiple records
Select “Delete selected” from the function menu, and then select the records you want to delete.

To delete all records
Select “Delete all” from the function menu.

To display the ringing time for missed calls from all calls list screen
Select “Ringing time” from the function menu.
Only missed calls with each ringing time are displayed on the list screen. Press CLR to return to the received calls list screen.

4 Check the contents of a record.



"Current record number/Total record number" appears in the upper right corner of the screen.
The smaller the record number, the newer the record.
In case of missed calls, the ringing time is displayed next to the date and time.

To check the previous and next records

Press ● or ●.

Press ● to display the previous (later) record, ● to display the next (older) record.

However, for the dialed calls record, press ● to display the previous (later) record, ● to display the next (older) record.

To make a voice call to the displayed phone number

Display the record for which you want to make a voice call and press ●.

To make a videophone call to the displayed phone number

Display the record for which you want to make a videophone call and press ●.

To set an image to be sent during a videophone call

Select "Select image" from the function menu.

If you select "Me", the image of the in-camera will be sent. About other substitute images, see p.96.

To store the displayed phone number in the phonebook

Display the phone number you want to store, and select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu.

Storing data in the phonebook →p.104

To send an i-mode mail from a record

Display the record from which you want to send an i-mode mail, and select "Compose message" from the function menu.

Displays a new mail creation page with the mail address stored in a phonebook entry entered in the address field.

Composing i-mode mail →p.248

Dialled/Received calls record icons

PHONE : Indicates that you made a voice call or had an incoming voice call.
INT'L PHONE : Indicates that you had an incoming/outgoing international voice call.
PHONE : Indicates that you made a videophone call or had an incoming videophone call.
INT'L PHONE : Indicates that you had an incoming/outgoing international videophone call.
REMOTE : Indicates that you had an incoming videophone call for the remote monitor.
PACKET : Indicates that you made a call for the packet communication.
PACKET : Indicates that you had an incoming call for the packet communication.

Missed calls record icons

MISS : Indicates that you did not answer a voice call.
INT'L MISS : Indicates that you did not answer an incoming international voice call.
MISS MSG : Indicates that you did not answer a voice call, and the caller left the message in "Record message".
INT'L MISS MSG : Indicates that you did not answer an incoming international voice call and the caller's message is recorded in "Record message".
MISS : Indicates that you did not answer a videophone call.
INT'L MISS : Indicates that you did not answer an incoming international videophone call.
MISS MSG : Indicates that you did not answer a videophone call, and the caller left the message in "Record message".
INT'L MISS MSG : Indicates that you did not answer an incoming international videophone call and that the caller's message is recorded in "Record message".
MISS REMOTE : Indicates that you did not connect to a videophone call for the remote monitor.
MISS : Indicates that you did not answer an incoming call for the packet communication.
MISS NO CONNECT : Indicates that you did not receive an incoming call for the packet communication when the external devices such as PC are not connected.
MISS : Indicates that it is an unchecked missed call.
INT'L MISS : Indicates that it is an unchecked international missed call.
INT'L MISS NO CONNECT : Indicates that you had an incoming videophone call while using a GSM/GPRS network.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Common>

- Switching the terminal off does not delete Dialled calls records/Received calls records. If you do not want other people to see the Dialed/Received phone numbers, either delete the record or set “Received calls” and “Redial/Dialled calls” in “Record display set” to “OFF”.
- When you receive a call while displaying Received calls, the record data will be updated and a message “Updating info” may appear. You cannot switch to other record displays while this message is showing.
- While “PIM lock” is set, only phone numbers are recorded even for calls to/from parties whose names are stored in the phonebook.

<Dialled calls record>

- When making calls by calling up a phonebook stored as secret data in the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”, these calls are not recorded in the dialed record.
- When you set “PIM lock”, “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing”, all the dialed records until then are deleted. The dialed calls after these functions are set will be recorded in the dialed record.

<Received calls record>

- “Missed calls” and “Unknown calls” are not displayed if there are no missed calls.
- The number of missed calls which have not been checked in yet will decrease as you check in.
- When the caller notifies his/her phone number, and the caller’s phone number has already stored in the phonebook, both the phone number and name are recorded in the received call record. If the caller does not notify the phone number, the reason for no caller ID appears (p.166).
- When you set “PIM lock” or “Keypad dial lock”, all the received call records are deleted. After these functions are set the received calls will be recorded in the received call record.
- When a call comes from a party that is not in the phonebook set in “Restrict dialing” if “Restrict dialing” is set, only the phone number is recorded.
- If you set “Missed calls display” to “Not display” under “Ringing time”, Missed calls during mute time for call alert operations are not listed in Received calls records. →p.167
- When the other party uses the dial-in service, the different phone number from its dial-in number may appear.
- You cannot use the received call record for packet communication for storing data in the phonebook or composing a new mail.

Volume

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting | **Level 4**

You can adjust the volume of the other party’s voice to any of 6 different levels from “Level 1” (min.) to “Level 6” (max.).

- You can also adjust the volume during a videophone call or in the handsfree mode.
- You cannot adjust the volume when a call is coming in.
- The volume level that is set during a call or standby is retained even after the power is turned off.

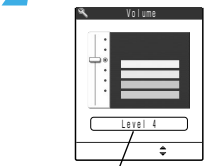
Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call

<Example: During a voice call>

1 Press [▲] [Home] or [▼] [Memo/Check] during a call.

A short beep sounds and the Volume screen is displayed.
You can display the Volume screen by pressing and holding down ◎ or ○ for 1 second or more.

2 Adjust the earpiece volume.



Volume level at the moment

To increase the volume by one level
Press [▲] [Home].
To lower the volume by one level
Press [▼] [Memo/Check].
Hold down [▲] [Home] or [▼] [Memo/Check] for 1 second or more to adjust the volume continuously.
If you do not perform any operation for more than 2 seconds or while the earpiece volume display is shown, the volume adjustment is terminated, returning to the call display.

NOTE

- During a videophone call, press ○ or ○ to display the earpiece volume screen and then press ○ or ○ to adjust the earpiece volume.

Adjusting the earpiece volume during standby

1 Hold down ○ or ○ for 1 second or more during standby.

2 Press ○ or ○ to adjust the earpiece volume.

To increase the volume by one level
Press ○.
To lower the volume by one level
Press ○.
Hold down ○ or ○ for 1 second or more to adjust the volume continuously.
If you do not perform any operation within 2 seconds after displaying the Volume screen, the volume adjustment is terminated, and then the standby display reappears.

On hold

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When you cannot answer a call immediately during an incoming call, you can put the call on hold to keep the other party for a moment.
●The caller is charged for the time that the call is put on hold.

1 Press [PWR HLD] when a call comes in.



Voice call

3 short tones “pip-pip-pip” sound and the call is put on hold.
The announcement informing the caller that you cannot answer the call now is played and the call is put on hold.
To terminate a call while the call is on hold
Press [PWR HLD].
If the caller hangs up while the call is on hold
The call ends.

2 When you are ready to answer the call, press [☎] or ● [Answer].

When “Answer setting” is set to “Any key answer”, you can answer the call by pressing [0] to [9], [*], [#], [CLR], [📷], [●], [☎], [▲] or [▼].

Continued on next page

NOTE

- You can set an announcement the other party hears while the call is on hold in the “Select hold tone”.→below
- When “Ring volume” for the “Phone/Video-phone” is set to “Silent”, or the Manner mode is set to ON, no 3 short tones “pip-pip-pip” sounds. However, if the manner mode operation is set to “Original” and other than “Silent” is set to “Phone vol.”, the FOMA terminal sounds.
- “Voice mail” or “Call forwarding” service subscribers can connect to the voice mail center or forward a call to the forwarding destination by selecting “Voice mail” or “Call forwarding” from the function menu in while you are being called.
- If you put a call on hold, the animation indicating you have a call on hold is displayed on the image window.

Select hold tone

Setting an On Hold Tone/Holding Tone

Default setting	On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody

You can select a guidance message to be played while an incoming voice/videophone call or the current call is put on hold.
You can set the following guidance messages:

Item	Type of guidance	Guidance description
On hold tone	Tone 1	“Sorry, unable to respond now. Wait or call later.” (in Japanese)
	Tone 2	“Sorry, unable to respond now. Call later.” (in Japanese)
	Voice announce 1※, Voice announce 2※	Your message recorded with the “Voice announce” →p.128
Holding tone	Melody	—
	Voice announce 1※, Voice announce 2※	Your message recorded with the “Voice announce” →p.128

※ : Voice announce 1 or Voice announce 2 cannot be set unless you record voice with the “Voice announce”.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Select hold tone”.

2 Select the item you want to set.

To set an on hold tone
Select “On hold tone”.

To set a holding tone
Select “Holding tone”.

3 Select a guidance message you want to set.

To hear a guidance message
Press [Play].
You will hear guidance once.
Press CLR to stop the guidance.

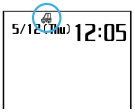
Driving mode

Setting Not to Receive Calls While Driving

Driving mode (In-car answering function) is an automatic answering service that helps to ensure your safety while driving. When you set the FOMA terminal to the driving mode, the caller hears an announcement saying that you cannot answer the voice/videophone call because you are driving, and the call is ended.

- You can set or cancel the driving mode only while the standby display is displayed. Even when “車外” is displayed, you can set or cancel the driving mode.
- You can still make calls as usual when the FOMA terminal is in the driving mode.

1 Hold down (*) for 1 second or more while the standby display is displayed.



The message indicating that the driving mode is set is displayed and "🚗" appears on the standby display.

To cancel the driving mode

With the driving mode set, hold down (*) for 1 second or more while the standby display is displayed.

The message indicating that the driving mode is displayed and "🚗" disappears.

When the driving mode is set

While in the Driving mode, even if you have an incoming voice or videophone call or receive a new mail or message, the incoming call action such as the ring tone, the incoming call lamp and vibrator does not work. Incoming voice/videophone calls are recorded as a "Missed call" record in the "Received call" records and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display. When you have a new mail, the "New mail" desktop icon appears on the standby display.

Voice callers hear an announcement saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving, and the call ends. For videophone callers, the message is displayed notifying the caller that you cannot answer the call because you are driving, and the call is ended. However, when the power is off or "圏外" appears on the screen, the caller receives no announcement/message about driving but hears the same announcement when "圏外" is displayed.

When the network services are set and the driving mode is activated

When you receive an incoming voice/videophone call in your FOMA that sets both driving mode and the network service, the terminal operates as follows:

Service	When receiving voice calls	When receiving videophone calls
Voice mail	A message is taken after playing the guidance telling the other party that you are driving.※1	You cannot use the voice mail service with the videophone call. The call is terminated after displaying to the other party a message saying that you are driving.
Call forwarding	The call is transferred to the forwarding destination after playing the guidance telling the other party that you are driving.※2	You can use the call forwarding service with the videophone call. The call forwarding service is given priority and an incoming videophone call is immediately forwarded to the forwarding destination.※3
Bar nuisance call	・For the telephone number registered in Reject Nuisance Calls, the call is terminated after playing the guidance telling the other party that the incoming call is rejected. ・For any other telephone numbers, the call is terminated after playing the guidance telling the other party that you are driving.	You can use the bar nuisance call service with the videophone call. ・For the telephone number stored in Reject Nuisance Calls, the bar nuisance call service is given priority and the call is terminated without playing the guidance telling the other party that the incoming call is rejected. ・For any other telephone numbers, the call is terminated after playing the guidance to the other party that you are driving.

(cont'd)

Continued on next page

Service	When receiving voice calls	When receiving videophone calls
Caller ID request	・If the other party does not notify you of his/her telephone number, the call is terminated after playing the guidance asking the other party to notify you of his/her telephone number. ・If the other party notifies you of his/her telephone number, the call is terminated after telling the other party that you are driving.	You can also use the caller ID request service for videophone calls. ・If the other party does not notify you of his/her telephone number, the call is terminated without playing the guidance asking the other party to notify you of his/her telephone number. ・If the other party notifies you of his/her telephone number, the call is terminated after displaying the message notifying the other party that you are driving on the other party's terminal.

※1: When the ringing time of the voice mail service is set to 0 second, no driving mode announcement is played.
※2: When the ringing time of the call forwarding service is set to 0 second, no driving mode announcement is played.
※3: The videophone call cannot be transferred unless the forwarding setting is compatible with 3G-324M (p.88).

NOTE

- When the Manner mode and Driving mode are set, the Driving mode is prioritized.
- If you set the "Record message" (p.83) to "ON", the announcement of the driving mode is given priority so that the "Record message" function is temporarily disabled.
- If you make an emergency call (110, 119 and 118) during the driving mode, the message notifying of the cancellation of the driving mode is displayed, and then the driving mode is canceled.
- When the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, the tones for the following events do not sound.
  - Incoming voice/videophone call
  - Incoming Msg. Request/Free
  - Schedule alarm
  - Low voltage alarm
  - i-αppli software sounds
  - Incoming mail
  - Alarm clock
  - ToDo alarm
  - Charge sound

Checking Missed Calls and New Mail

With the FOMA terminal folded, you can check whether you have received missed calls and new mail with sound, vibration, lighting/flashing of the incoming call lamp.

※ The voice function is available only when the display language is set to Japanese.

- This function notifies you of the receiving when the "Missed call" or "New mail" desktop icon appears on the standby display. →p.139
- You cannot use this function to check a missed call or a new mail in the following cases:
  - All lock
  - PIM lock
  - When the Side keys guard is "ON"
  - When the Info notice setting is "OFF"

Setting notification of missed calls or new mail <Info notice setting>

Default setting | **ON**

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Info notice setting".

To notify with sound
Select "ON".

To disable "Info notice setting"
Select "OFF".

Checking Missed Calls and New Mail

When you press [Memo/Check] with the FOMA body folded, you can check missed calls and new mails. Checking operation is as follows:

Info notice setting	When there are missed calls or new mail		When there are neither missed calls nor new mail	
	Sound/vibration	Color of the incoming call lamp	Sound/vibration	Color of the incoming call lamp
ON	Short double tones "pipip-pipip" sound with about 1 second vibration.	The incoming call lamp lights in the color set in "Phone" or "Mail" of the "Illumination" for about 5 seconds. When there are both missed calls and new mails, each color※ lights up alternately.	Short tones "pip-pip-pip" sound with about 0.2 second vibration.	The incoming call lamp flashes in "Color 12" for about 5 seconds.

※: If the incoming call lamp is set to "Gradation", the lamp flashes in "Color 5" for missed calls and "Color 1" for new mail.

NOTE

- This function cannot check if the i-mode center has stored new mail.
- When the "Vibrator" for the "Phone" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- While the manner mode is set, the FOMA terminal notifies you of missed calls and new mail with vibration without sound. However, if the manner mode operation is set to "Original" and other than "Silent" is set to the "Phone vol.", the FOMA terminal sounds. If the "Vibrator" is set to "OFF" in "Original", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

Record message

Having the Caller Leave a Message

Default setting	Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 seconds

When you are unable to answer voice or videophone calls, you can set the FOMA terminal to record a message from the caller.

- You can set an answer message to be played before a caller leaves a message.
- You can record up to 5 voice messages, each lasting about 20 seconds.
- You can start the record message by using "Quick record message" even if the record message is not set.

Setting the record message

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "Record message".**

2 **Select the item you want to set.**

To set "Record message"
Select "ON"
Go to Step 3.

To not set "Record message"
Select "OFF"

Continued on next page

3 Select an answer message.

Japanese 1 : The message “I cannot answer your call right now. Please leave your name and message within 20 seconds after the beep. Even for a videophone call, only voice message can be received.” is played in Japanese.

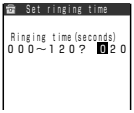
Japanese 2 : The message “Thank you for your call, but I can't take your call right now. Leave me a message after the beep. Only voice message even for a videophone call. Sorry.” is played in Japanese.

English : The message “I can't take your call now. Please leave the message. When you call by videophone, you can leave a voice message.” is played.

Voice announce 1, 2 : The voice you recorded in the “Voice announce” (p.128) is played. If no announcements are recorded, these are not displayed.

Highlight Answer message and press [Play], then the message comes out from the speaker.

4 Enter the ringing time (000 to 120 seconds).



Enter the duration by 3 digits. If you enter a number other than 000-120, a message appears notifying you that the number cannot be specified. Once you enter 3-digit duration, the record message is automatically specified and “ ” is displayed on the standby display.

To set the display time

Press ● [Set] without entering time.

NOTE

- The ringing time of the record message cannot be set to the same time as that of the “Remote monitor” or “Automatic answer”.
- To give a higher priority to the record message function over the “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service when the service is activated together with this function, set the shorter ringing time for the record message than that for the voice mail service or call forwarding service.
- You can set different answer messages for a specific phone number or group in the “Utilities”.

To set the record message



After the specified time passed, the record message function is activated and the caller hears the set answer message. When receiving a videophone call, the caller also receives the “伝言メモ/Record Msg. ＜音声録音中/Voice Only＞” message image.



When a record message starts being recorded, the Recording screen is displayed. You can hear the other party's voice from the earpiece speaker of the FOMA terminal during the recording.

To answer a voice call

Press or ● [Answer].

To answer a videophone call

If you answer the call with the camera view mode, press , while with a substitute image, press or ● [Answer].



When recording ends, the screen returns to the standby display with the “Missed call” and “Record message” desktop icons.

The “ ” icon changes to “ ” when there is 1 recorded message, to “ ” when 2 recorded messages, and to “ ” when 3 recorded messages.

Playing/Deleting Record Messages and Voice Memos →p.85
Playing a Record message from the “Record message” icon on the standby display →p.139

NOTE

- Even if “Record message” is set to “ON”, the Driving mode setting is prioritized and “Record message” is brought to invalid.
- You cannot use Record message when “ 圏外” is displayed.
- When receiving a videophone call, only a voice message is recorded.
- During “PIM lock” , even if the record message is set to “ON”, this setting is changed to “OFF”. In this period, “ ” and no “Record message” desktop icon appears.
- Once there are 5 recorded messages on your FOMA terminal, the terminal can no longer record messages from callers and the callers hear no answer message. To record more messages, you must erase recorded messages. →p.86
- If the manner mode is set with “Original” set to “Manner mode set”, the setting of “Record msg.” of “Original” has priority over this function setting. When the manner mode is set with “Record msg.” of “Original” set to “ON”, a caller can record a message even if this function is not set to “ON”. If there are already 5 messages, the FOMA terminal works according to the manner mode setting.
- When you activate the “Voice mail” service, new voice messages are stored in the voice mail service center even if 5 record messages are already recorded.
- You cannot receive an incoming call while the FOMA terminal is recording a message. The caller hears a busy tone.
- If the caller notifies the caller ID, it is displayed on your FOMA terminal display. If the caller’s name has already been stored in the phonebook, both the phone number and name appear.

Important

The contents of the messages may be lost if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise handled in a way that causes such information in memory to be lost. It is the user’s responsibility to keep a separate record of all information recorded in voice messages. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your FOMA terminal.

Quick record message

Recording the Caller’s Message during an Incoming Call

Even if the “Record message” is not set to “ON”, you can start recording the other party’s message by pressing a key during an incoming call.

1 Press (#) or (▼) [Memo/Check] during an incoming call.

Message recording starts and the manner mode is set at the same time.

NOTE

- This function provides message recording for each incoming call. This operation can be valid only once. You cannot set “Record message” to “ON”. To record messages automatically, use the “Record message” function.
- If the manner mode operation is set to “Original” and the “Record message” to “OFF”, the “Record message” is activated.
- If there are already 5 messages, the FOMA terminal works according to the manner mode setting without activating the “Record message”.
- When the call ends, the terminal is still in the manner mode. Hold down (#) for 1 second or more to cancel the setting.
- While “PIM lock” is set, even if you set the manner mode, the “Record message” is not activated.

Playing/Deleting Record Messages and Voice Memos

You can play or delete a message recorded with the “Record message” or “Voice memo”.

Continued on next page

Playing record messages and voice memos

For record messages of voice calls, “ PHONE ” appears; for record messages of videophone calls, “ TV PHONE ” appears. When a voice memo is recorded, “★” appears.

- If the caller notifies his/her caller ID, the caller's phone number appears while playing the record message. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name also appears.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Play/Erase msg.”.

2 Select the item you want to play.

A short beep sounds and playing starts. When playing ends, a short double beep “pippi” sounds and “Playing” disappears.

To play the next message
Press [▼] [Memo/Check].
Pressing [▼] [Memo/Check] plays the next new message. The voice memo is played next to the oldest record message.

To cancel the playing after it has started
Press C or [●] [Stop].

To make a voice call to the displayed phone number during playing a message
Press [📞].

To make a videophone call to the displayed phone number during playing a message
Press [📹].

To delete the message being played
Press [Erase].

NOTE

- You can also play a message by pressing [▼] [Memo/Check] while the standby display is displayed.
- If no “Record message” and no “Voice memo” is recorded, a message notifying you that there is no message recorded appears.

Deleting record messages and voice memos

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Play/Erase msg.”.

2 Highlight the item you want to delete, and select “Delete this” from the function menu.

To delete all record messages
Select “Delete rec. msg.”.

To delete all record messages and a voice memo
Select “Delete all”.

NOTE

- Press [Erase] during playing a message to delete the message being played.

Important

The contents of the messages may be lost if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise handled in a way that causes such information in memory may be lost. It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all information recorded in voice messages. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your FOMA terminal.

Making/Receiving a Videophone Call

About a Videophone Call 88
Making a Videophone Call 89
Receiving a Videophone Call 91
Using a Chara-den 93
Setting the Image to be Sent to the Other Party 94
Setting the Image to be Displayed During a Videophone Call 97
Changing Videophone Settings 98
Setting the Remote Monitor ..... Remote monitor 98

About a Videophone Call

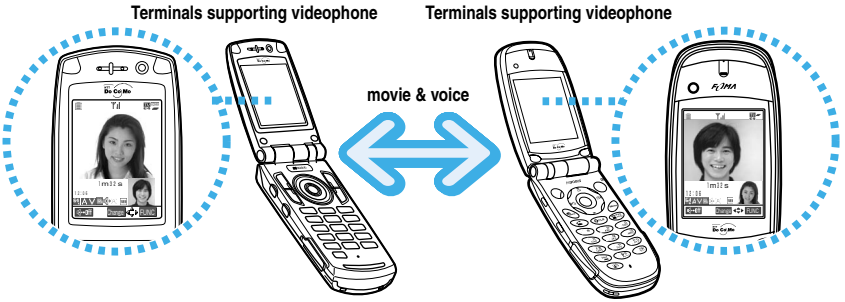
You can use the videophone function with another DoCoMo videophone enabled terminal. You can also send substitute images such as still images and messages and Chara-den instead of your self-portrait.

- The videophone function can be enjoyed between the terminals which support the DoCoMo videophone function even if their models differ from each other.
- DoCoMo videophones conform to "3G-324M ※1, the international standard established by the 3GPP※2". You cannot connect with the videophone-support terminal that operates on a different system from the DoCoMo videophone.

※1： 3G-324M
An international standard for the third generation videophones.

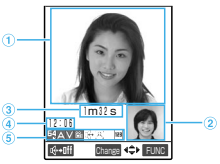
※2： 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standard organization established for the development of common technological specifications related to the third-generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000).

- Communication speed of the videophone call is 64Kbps.



How to view displays during videophone calls

① Main display (displays the camera view of the other party by default).
② Sub display (displays the camera view of your own by default).
③ indicates call time
④ indicates current time
⑤ indicates the setting status for videophone calls



- Videophone communicating
- Voice transmitting
- Voice transmitting failure
- Video transmitting
- Video transmitting failure
- Camera image transmitting
- Substitute image set in the "Select image" transmitting
- Chara-den transmitting
- Handsfree OFF
- Handsfree ON
- Photo mode/Close-up
- Photo mode/Scenery
- Photo mode/Portrait
- Key operation/DTMF mode※

※:For details of DTMF, see p.556.

- Key operation/Emot'n action
- Key operation/Parts action

Making a Videophone Call

If you make a videophone call, an in-camera image will be sent to the other party. You can also switch it to the out-camera to send the image by pressing ● [Change]. You can set it to send other image (a substitute image, etc.) instead of the camera image as well. →p.96

- To visually communicate with the other party, switch to the handsfree mode or use the earphone/microphone with switch. Please see p.435 for the earphone/microphone with switch.
- You can use DoCoMo's International Dialing Service "WORLD CALL" to have an international videophone call. →p.67
- If the voice or video transmitting fails, the call does not recover automatically. Make a videophone call again.

<Example: Switching to Handsfree mode>

1 Dial the other party's phone number, starting with the area code.



Even if you are within the same area code as the number you are dialing, you must enter the full number, including the area code.

Area code - City code - Subscriber number

To call a mobile phone

090-XXXX-XXXX
or
080-XXXX-XXXX

To call a PHS phone

070-XXXX-XXXX

2 Press (videophone) and make a videophone call.



"64" flashes while a videophone is being dialed and lights during a call.

The digital communication charge is incurred when this screen is displayed.

3 After the videophone call is connected, press [On] to switch to the handsfree mode.

"" appears and you can hear the voice of the other party over the speaker. When you press [Off] again, the handsfree mode is turned off and "" changes to "".

The voice of the other party can be heard around your FOMA. Choose the place where the sound does not bother other people to use the handsfree mode.

When sending the out-camera view

Press ● [Change].
Pressing ● [Change] switches between the in-camera and out-camera (Camera Switch).

To put a videophone call on hold

Press CLR.
The other party will hear the hold tone and view the image for a held call on the videophone display . To cancel putting on hold, press CLR. To answer an on-hold videophone call with a camera view, press (videophone). To answer with a substitute image, press .

To use an earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

You do not have to switch to the handsfree mode. You can hear the voice of the other party over the earphone.

Continued on next page

4 When you finish the conversation, press ☎ PWR HLD.

The call duration appears, and then the videophone call ends.

Videophone call functions

You can make various settings on videophone calls such as the size and quality of images you send.

Handsfree※1 : Sounds the other party's voice from the speaker.

Front camera/Rear camera※1 : Sends the image to the other party by switching between Front camera/Rear camera during a videophone call.

Zoom※1 : Zooms in and sends your camera view to the other party. →p.94

Camera/Other image : You can change the view of the displays during a videophone call. →p.94

Image quality※2 : Selects the image quality with emphasis on quality or motion. →p.95

Brightness : Adjusts the brightness of your camera view. The setting operation is the same as that of the camera. →p.187

White balance : Adjusts your camera view to natural colors according to the light source. The setting operation is the same as that of the camera. →p.188

Color mode set※1 : Sends your camera view in sepia (dark brown) or black and white. The setting operation is the same as that of the camera. →p.188

Photo mode※1 : Sets the shooting mode according to the situations. The setting operation is the same as that of the camera. →p.187

Chara-den※2 : Select the character displayed in Chara-den, display a list of actions and switch the action mode. →p.93

Display light : Sets the display light for the display during a videophone call. →p.97

Disp. Setting V-phone : Sets the image and its size to be displayed on the main screen. →p.97

Call time disp. : Switches ON/OFF of the call time display shown on the screen during a videophone call.

Send DTMF tone※1 : Sets/cancels the Send mode of the push signal during the Chara-den. The FOMA terminal always enters the Send mode of the push signal during a videophone call except Chara-den.

Own number※1 : Displays your own phone number during a videophone call.

※1 : Goes back to the default values when you finish the videophone call.

※2 : On exiting a videophone call, the "Image quality" setting is returned to the value set via (Menu) - Settings - "Videophone" - "Image quality". Likewise, the "Chara-den" setting is returned to the value set via (Menu) - Multimedia - "Chara-den" on exiting a videophone call.

When failing to make a videophone call

When a videophone call fails, the reason for the failure is displayed. However, depending on the situation, the reason for the failure may not appear. Depending on the type of the phone you are connected to or on your network service subscription status, the actual state of the other party and the displayed message may differ.

Message	Reason
Check the number and retry	You have dialed a wrong phone number.
Busy	The line is busy.
Out of service area or power off	The other party's phone is out of the service area or is turned off.
Driving mode	The other party's phone is in the driving mode.
Failed to connect	Reasons other than above.

NOTE

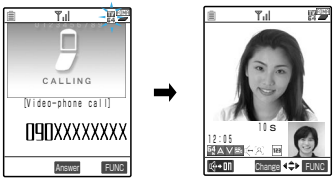
- You can make a videophone call with steps 1 and 2 reversed. In this case, if you call a wrong number, please press (PWR/CLR) to delete the display and then dial the correct number.
- When making a videophone call, you can use an entry in the phonebook, “Redial” or “Received calls” as well a voice call.
- When you can make an emergency call (110, 119, and 118) on the videophone from the FOMA terminal, your call is automatically switched to a voice call. However, such calls cannot be made when “All lock” is set.
- Connection is not made if you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support the videophone function, the other party’s videophone is out of the service area or is turned off. If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support the videophone function with the “Voice call auto switch” (p.98) set to “ON”, your call is rejected before videophone connection is activated and is automatically redialed as a voice call. Note that this operation may not work when you make a wrong call, a call to the access points for ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS, or a call to an ISDN videophone that does not support 3G-324M (p.88) (as of October, 2004). Be aware that you may be charged for a communication charge in this case.
- Once the videophone call is connected, it is not redialed as a voice call.
- You cannot make a voice call or connect to i-mode during a videophone call.
- When you receive a voice or videophone call during a videophone call, the call is recorded as a “Missed call” record in the “Received calls” (p.75) and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free cannot be received during a videophone call and are once stored in the i-mode center. Receive these stored i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free by “Check new message” after the videophone call ends.
- You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- When “Recharge battery”, indicating low voltage alarm, is displayed during a videophone call, the other party sees the message “カメラオフ Camera Off” and the videophone call is disconnected after approximately 20 minutes. Even if you recharge the battery before the call is disconnected, the “カメラオフ Camera Off” message remains on the screen.
- When no image is sent due to the other party’s setting, a substitute image is displayed.
- Even when a substitute image is displayed during a videophone call, the digital communication charge is charged.
- You cannot switch to Handsfree operation until “ON” is displayed after making a videophone call.
- Ending a videophone call turns the handsfree operation OFF.
- You can adjust the “Volume” even when the Handsfree mode is set.
- During the Handsfree operation, if you increase the “Volume” level, it may cause noise depending on your surrounding.
- If the background noise is loud during the Handsfree operation, you may not be able to talk in a good condition such as intermittent voice reception. In this case, use the earphone/microphone with switch.
- The videophone call duration is calculated as the “Digital” communication time. →p.430
- You can switch to the handsfree mode when the manner mode is set. You return to the manner mode when you select “OFF” in the handsfree mode or disconnect the call. The handsfree mode can be retained even if you set the manner mode when the handsfree mode is set.

Receiving a Videophone Call

This section explains how to answer an incoming videophone call.
When you cannot answer a videophone call immediately, you can receive the call with a substitute image without allowing your own camera view to be displayed on the other party’s screen.

- You cannot receive a videophone call during a voice call, i-mode operation, i-mode mail transmission and packet data communication.

1 When a videophone call comes in, press (TALK) to answer it.



Continued on next page

To answer with a substitute image

Press (📞) or (●) [Answer].

The substitute image is displayed on the other party's display.

Even after answering with the substitute image, you can switch to the camera view by pressing (📷).

When using the earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

Press the switch of the earphone/microphone with switch.

You can answer the videophone call with a substitute image. When "Automatic answer" is "ON", you can automatically answer a videophone call with a substitute image after the specified ringing time has elapsed.

To switch between the camera view and a substitute image

Press (📷).

While the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, the same operation can be performed.

To put an incoming videophone call on hold

Press (PWR HOLD).

The image for a held call is displayed on the other party's video screen. Press (📷) to answer the videophone call put on hold with a camera image, and (📞) or (●) [Answer] to answer it with a substitute image.

To reject an incoming videophone call intentionally

Select "Call rejection" from the function menu.

To forward an incoming videophone call

Select "Call forwarding" from the function menu.

A subscription to the "Call forwarding service" is required. The call will be connected to the forwarding number whether the "Call forwarding" service is "Activate"/"Deactivate".

2 After the videophone call is connected, press [ON] to switch to the handsfree mode.

"" appears and you can hear the voice of the other party over the speaker. When you press [Off] again, the handsfree mode is turned off and "" changes to "".

The voice of the other party can be heard around your FOMA. Choose the place where the sound does not bother other people to use the handsfree mode.

To send the out-camera view

Press (●) [Change].

Pressing (●) [Change] switches between the in-camera and out-camera (Camera Switch).

To put a videophone call on hold

Press (CLR).

The other party will hear the hold tone and view the image for a held call on the videophone display of one's terminal. To cancel putting on hold, press (CLR).

To answer an on-hold videophone call with a camera view, press (📷). To answer with a substitute image, press (📞).

When using an earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

You do not have to switch to the Handsfree mode. You can hear the voice of the other party over the earphone.

3 When you finish the conversation, press (PWR HOLD).

The call duration appears, and then the videophone call ends.

NOTE

- You cannot take a videophone call by the “Any key answer” function even when the “Answer setting” is set to “Any key answer”. (If “Answer setting” is set to “Quick silent”, pressing any key stops the ring tone only.)
- Even while a substitute image is displayed during a videophone call, the digital communication charge is charged to the videophone caller.
- You can change a substitute image in the “Select image” (p.96).
- Even if the “Voice mail” service is “Activate”, an incoming videophone call cannot be connected to the voice mail service center. An incoming videophone call is continued.
- Even if “Call forwarding” service is “Activate”, an incoming videophone call cannot be forwarded unless the destination is a videophone-support device that conforms to 3G-324 M (p.88). Make sure the forwarding destination before making the forward setting. The videophone caller cannot hear the guidance for forwarding calls.
- When no image is sent to your FOMA terminal due to the other party’s setting, a substitute image is displayed.
- You cannot switch to the handsfree operation while receiving a videophone call.
- Ending a videophone call turns the handsfree operation OFF.
- You can adjust the “Volume” during the handsfree operation.
- When the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, you can answer a videophone call with the camera view by pressing (i) or with a substitute image by pressing (talk) as same as the case with no earphone connected.
- If you have an incoming videophone call from a person you have registered to reject through the bar nuisance call service, such a call will be disconnected without call rejection guidance to the caller.

Using a Chara-den

When you make a videophone call, send a substitutive animated image instead of your image.
You can put expression on a Chara-den substitutive animated image by moving its mouth in reaction to sound or moving its limbs with key operation.

- Please set up the following functions in advance in order to enjoy Chara-den:
  - ·Set the “Camera off” to “Chara-den”. →p.96
  - ·Set the “Camera image sending” to “OFF”. →p.95
- For details of Chara-den operations, see p.359.
- The following 3 Chara-dens are pre-installed.



©BVIG

Dimo

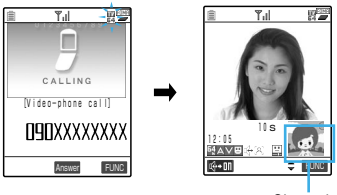


Chica



Nino

1 When a videophone call comes in, press (talk) or (●) [Answer] to answer it.



Chara-den

To switch the camera view to Chara-den during a videophone call

Press (i).

Continued on next page

2 Press the dial key to operate Chara-den.

Pressing the dial key expresses the action assigned to that particular key.

To switch the Action mode

Select “Chara-den”-“Change action” from the function menu.
Every time when you select “Change action”, you can switch the “whole action” and “parts action”.
The “whole action” is an action mode to express movements of the whole Chara-den such as feelings.
Press 1 to 9 or #(1) to #9 to express them.
The “parts action” is an action mode to express partial movements of Chara-den such as a face and arms and legs. Press 1 1 to 9 9 to express them.



Action list

To confirm the action

Select “Chara-den”-“Action list” from the function menu.
The actions that can be operated and the keys assigned to those actions are displayed.
You can select an action using ● to execute it.
※ : Press * to display the list of actions.

To switch to another Chara-den

Select “Chara-den”-“Switch Chara-den” from the function menu.

NOTE

- If “Send DTMF tone” is selected from the function menu, pressing a key sends the push signal so that you cannot move Chara-den with key operation. Selecting “DTMF tone OFF” from the function menu enables to move Chara-den with key operation.
  DTMF →p.556

Setting the Image to be Sent to the Other Party

You can set the image to be sent to the other party during a videophone call.

Zooming in the image to be sent

You can enlarge and send your camera view to the other party during a videophone call.

- The maximum magnification is about 2 times (2 steps) for sending the in-camera view and about 6.6 times (16 steps) for sending the out-camera view.
- If you switch the in-camera and out-camera during a videophone call, each zoom ratio remains. When you exit the videophone call, the zoom returns to the normal.
- When sending a substitute image, you cannot zoom in the image during a videophone call.
- You cannot zoom in the other party’s camera view.

1 Press ● during a videophone call to display the zoom bar.

2 Adjust the zoom ratio.



To zoom in

Press ●.

To zoom out

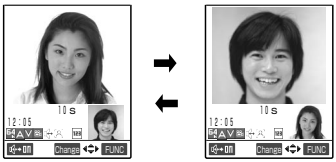
Press ●.

Switching camera images on the other party’s and your own sides

Default setting	Main screen : The other party’s camera image Sub screen : The camera image on your own side

You can switch the main screen to the camera image on your own side and the sub screen to that on the other party’s side during a videophone call. It will be convenient to use this function if you want to check the image being sent to the other party on the main screen, etc.

1 Select “Camera image/Other image” from the function menu during a videophone call.



Every time you select “Camera image/Other image”, the images on the main and sub screens switch.

Setting the video quality during a videophone call

Default setting	Normal

You can select the video quality during a videophone call with emphasis on image quality or motion.

● Even though a videophone call is finished, the settings of this function are kept.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Video-phone” ▶ “Image quality”.

2 Select the image quality during a videophone call.

Normal : Displays image quality and motion at standard settings.
Prefer quality : Displays images with fine quality. Effective when significantly motionless.
Prefer motion : Displays images in smooth motion. Effective when significantly active.

NOTE

●You can also set the image quality during a videophone call by selecting “V-phone settings”-“Image quality” from the function menu. However, after the videophone call ends, this temporary setting returns to the default setting.

Setting whether to send a camera view image while making a call

Default setting	ON

You can select the image to be sent to the other party from between the camera view and a substitute image when making a videophone call.

● Even though a videophone call is finished, the settings of this function are kept.

● To use “Chara-den”, set this function to “OFF” beforehand.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Video-phone” ▶ “Camera image sending”.

To send the camera view
Select “ON”.

To send a substitute image
Select “OFF”.

NOTE

● Regardless of the setting of this function, you can switch between the camera view and a substitute image during a videophone call.

● You can change a substitute image to be sent in the “Select image” settings.

Setting the image to send during a videophone call <Select image>

Default setting	On hold, Holding, Record message: Pre-installed Camera off : Chara-den

You can set an image to send instead of your camera view.

- The image that can be set for this function is a JPEG file with the VGA size (640×480 dots) or less. Please note that if you set up an image exceeding the Mail (Large) size (176×144 dots), it is reduced to the Mail (Large) size (176×144 dots).
- Even though a videophone call is finished, the settings of this function are kept.

<Example: Setting a substitute image>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Video-phone" ▶ "Select image".

2 Select "Camera off".

Set a substitute image to send instead of your camera view during a videophone call.

To set an image to send while a call is on hold
Select "On hold".

To set an image to send while a call is holding
Select "Holding".

To set an image to send while an answer message for record messages is playing
Select "Record message".

3 Select an image to send.

To send a message only
Select "Pre-installed".

To send a message with an image
Select "Original" and then select the image to send.
How to set an image →p.340

To send Chara-den
Select "Chara-den".
The Chara-den set in the "Substitute image" (p.359) for Chara-den is sent.

To check the set image
Highlight the item you want to check, and then press [Play].

Messages to be sent

Messages to be sent are as follows:

While a call is on hold	: "応答保留中 On Hold"
While a call holding	: "保留 Holding"
When a substitute image is sent	: "カメラオフ Camera Off"
While an answer message is operating	: "伝言メモ/Record Msg. <音声録音中/Voice Only>"

NOTE

- When an image of the Mail (Large) size or larger is reduced, the aspect ratio may be changed.
- The image is reduced only on the display with no influence on the original image data.
- You can set an image to send by selecting "Select image" from the function menu in the details screens of the dial input screen, phonebook, redial, and dialed/received calls. You can also set it by selecting "Select image" in the "Phone To function". However, when the videophone call ends, this temporary setting return to the original setting.
- Even if a substitute image is set to "Chara-den", while shooting in the continuous mode or displaying the check mode screen, the Chara-den is not sent but the "Pre-installed" image is sent.

Setting the Image to be Displayed During a Videophone Call

You can set the image to be displayed during a videophone call and the display light.

Setting the image and its size to be displayed on the main screen <Disp. Setting V-phone>

Default setting	Main display: Other image Change display size : Main display size

● Even though a videophone call is finished, the settings of this function are kept. In addition, if you change the settings of this function during the videophone call, the changed settings are reflected.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Video-phone” ▶ “Disp. Setting V-phone”.**

2 **Select the item you want to set.**

To switch the camera view between main and sub screens
Select “Main display”.
Select the main screen image from the other party’s image (Other image) or your own image (Camera image).

To set the image display size
Select “Change display size”.
Select the image display size from “Main display size/Real size”.

NOTE

● You can also make the above settings during a videophone call by selecting “Image disp. set” from the function menu. In that case, the original setting is also changed.
● If the display is not in motion smoothly during the videophone call, “Real size” is recommended to set “Change display size”.

Setting the display light during a videophone call

Default setting	All time ON

● Even though a videophone call is finished, the settings of this function are kept.

1 **Select “Display light” from the function menu during a videophone call.**

2 **Select the item you want to set.**

To turn the display light on all the time during a videophone call
Select “All time ON”.

To turn the display light on for 15 seconds during a videophone call
Select “15 seconds ON”.

NOTE

● The setting of this function is given priority over that in the “Display light” for the “Display” during a videophone call.

Changing Videophone Settings

You can perform a setting to have videophone calls that could not be placed switched to voice calls.

Automatically redialing a failed videophone call as a voice call <Voice call auto switch>

Default setting	OFF

When the other party you call cannot answer your videophone call because the phone is not a videophone terminal or because the other party is a "Dual network service" subscriber and currently on the mova service, you can redial the number automatically for a voice call.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Video-phone" ▶ "Voice call auto switch".**

To redial automatically as a voice call
Select "ON".

To not redial automatically as a voice call
Select "OFF".

NOTE

- When redialing a failed videophone call as a voice call, you are charged for a voice call charge.
- When redialing the same number more than once, that number is recorded as one record and the most recent call in the "Dialled calls".
- Once a videophone call is connected, redialing to the same phone number as a voice call is not performed.
- Even though "Voice call auto switch" is set to "ON", automatic redial may not be performed depending on network or the other end's condition, such as when the other party is out of service area or on another call.

Remote monitor

Setting the Remote Monitor

Default setting	Other ID: Not stored	Ringing time: 5 seconds	Set: OFF

Through the camera view of your FOMA terminal, you can check the behavior of your pet in your home from outside. You can also check local conditions such as a plant or operation status from a remote location. Remote monitoring can be activated between a videophone-support terminal conforming to 3G-324M (p.88) and a FOMA terminal, or between FOMA terminals. Your FOMA terminal can work as a terminal for both sending and receiving remote monitor data.

- You can carry out remote monitoring only if the recipient of the remote monitor has the telephone number of the person who monitors registered in advance and the remote monitor setting is "ON".
- You can keep the FOMA terminal stable for remote monitoring by placing a tripod on the desktop holder.

Preparing the called side terminal

At the receiving terminal of remote monitoring (the called side), perform the remote monitor settings such as the calling side's phone number (Other ID) and the time until remote monitor operation starts (Ringing time).

- Up to 5 phone numbers can be stored for the Other ID.
- If the "Manner mode" or "Driving mode" is set to the called side, remote monitor data cannot be received.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Video-phone" ▶ "Remote monitor", and then enter the security code.**

Security code →p.152

2 **Select "Other ID".**

3 Select the item <Not stored>.

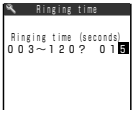
To change previously stored Other ID
Select the Other ID to be changed.
To enter from the "Phonebook", "Dialled calls" or "Received calls"
Select "Look-up address" from the function menu, then select the item.
To delete one Other ID
Highlight the one you want to delete and select "Delete this" from the function menu.
To delete all the Other IDs
Select "Delete all".

4 Enter the Other ID.



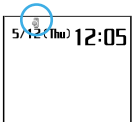
If you enter, the list of the Other ID reappears. Press (CLR) to return to the remote monitor screen.

5 Select "Ringing time" and enter the ringing time (003 to 120 seconds).



Enter the time in 3 digits. After entering a 3-digit time, the ringing time is set.
To set the displayed time
Press ● [Set] without entering a number.

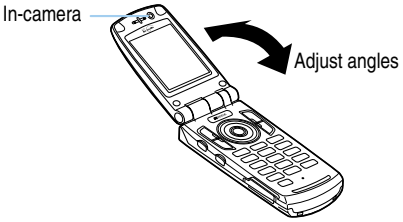
6 Select "Set" on the Remote monitor screen, and select "ON".



The remote monitor is set and the " " appears on the standby display.
To receive no remote monitoring
Select "OFF".

7 Set up the FOMA terminal.

In remote monitoring, the in-camera view is transmitted to the calling side.
Therefore, set up the FOMA terminal of the called side with the power on and opened.
If set with folded, the remote monitoring incoming call is disabled and the call is rejected.



NOTE

- The ringing time cannot be set to the same time as that for the "Record message" or "Automatic answer".
- If the ringing time for the "Call forwarding" service set at the called side is shorter than that set for remote monitoring, "Call forwarding" is given priority. To give a higher priority to remote monitoring , set the shorter ringing time than that set for the "Call forwarding" service.
- If you set the remote monitoring setting to "ON" and then delete all the other side numbers, you cannot perform remote monitoring although the "Set" remains "ON" and " " remains displayed.
- To use the FOMA terminal of the caller side overseas (such as when remotely monitoring a FOMA terminal located in Japan from where you are staying), before performing the remote control settings, check the phone number to be called by making a call with the FOMA terminal of the caller side to the FOMA terminal of the receiver side. If the phone number to be called starts with "+81", the same number (with "+81" added) must be registered, since the "Other ID" must match the phone number to be called. If the caller ID is not notified from the FOMA terminal of the caller side ("Not supported" is displayed), the remote control is not available.
(Example: "090-XXXX-XXXX" dialed by the caller-side terminal is received as "+8190XXXXXXXX" at the receiver-side terminal. → Register "+8190XXXXXXXX".)

Make a videophone call to the called side FOMA terminal to check the camera view of the called side.

- To perform remote monitoring, you must make a videophone call from the FOMA terminal that is stored at the called side terminal as Other ID with caller ID informed.
- At the called side, no camera view of the calling side appears and no voice sounds.
- On remote monitoring, the FOMA terminal at the monitored side cannot switch the camera image to a substitute image.
- When the called side terminal is set to the “Manner mode” or “Driving mode”, no remote monitoring is performed.

1 Make a videophone call to the side to be monitored.



Screen of the called side

After the ringing time set at the called side has elapsed, the remote monitor starts. The camera view of the called side is displayed at the calling side and voice sounds. If you switch to the Handsfree mode by pressing [ ], you can hear the called side’s voice from the speaker. When the earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, you can hear the called side’s voice from the earphone without switching to the Handsfree mode.

To answer a videophone call at the called side without receiving remote monitoring

Press (i) to display your camera view or press (📞) or (●) [Answer] to display a substitute image before the ringing time is over.

To end remote monitor

Press (☎ PUSH HOLD).

The call duration appears, and then the remote monitor ends.

Pressing (☎ PUSH HOLD) at the called side also ends the remote monitor.

NOTE

- You can receive an incoming call from the number stored in the Remote monitor while All lock is set.
- When the caller ID is not notified, the remote monitor does not start and the incoming call is treated as a usual videophone call.
- When “Call acceptation” is set at the called side for a phone number other than Other ID, or “Call rejection” is set for a phone number of Other ID, incoming videophone calls are rejected and the remote monitor cannot be performed.
- You cannot perform the remote monitor when you set the remote monitor and the following functions at the same time:
  · Driving mode · Manner mode · Call rejection/acceptation · Reject unknown
- When you set the Remote monitor and Record message at the same time, the Remote monitor is given priority even if the ringing time of Record message is set shorter than that of the remote monitor setting.
- When the earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, the ring tone sounds through both the earphone and speaker regardless of the “Earphone” setting.
- The FOMA terminal emits the ring tone exclusively for the remote monitor and you cannot change it.
- The ring tone for the remote monitor sounds at the level set in the “Ring volume”. If you set it to “Silent”, “Level 1” or “Step”, the ring tone sounds at the “Level 2”.
- The flashing color and pattern become “Gradation” and “Standard” respectively regardless of the “Illumination” setting when a remote monitoring incoming call comes.
- You cannot put a call on hold while a remote monitoring incoming call comes. Press (☎ PUSH HOLD) to end the remote monitor.
- When the remote monitor setting is “ON” at the called side, an incoming videophone call from a phone number stored as Other ID is recorded as a received call record of the remote monitor. If the remote monitor is not performed, the call is recorded in the “Received calls” as a missed call record of the remote monitor.
- Folding the FOMA terminal of the called side during remote monitoring causes the following behavior according to the setting in “Fold setting”※1.
  · No tone : The substitute image※2 is sent to the calling side.
  · Tone on : The holding image is sent to the calling side.
  · End the call : Remote monitoring is terminated.
  ※1: While an earphone/microphone with switch is connected, a substitute image is displayed regardless of the “Fold setting” setting.
  ※2: If a substitute image is set to “Chara-den”, the Chara-den is not sent and the message “Camera off” is sent.
- During remote monitoring, both the calling and called sides cannot receive a voice or videophone call. If you receive a voice or videophone call during remote monitoring, the call is recorded as a missed call record in the “Received calls” and the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- During remote monitoring, Msg. Request/Free and i-mode mail are not received at both of the calling and called sides, and are stored in the i-mode center instead. After remote monitoring ends, receive these message by “Check new message”. However, you can receive SMS during remote monitoring.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones. If you are seriously inconvenient to others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

Phonebook

Phonebook Available with the FOMA Terminal 102
Storing an Entry in the Phonebook of FOMA Terminal (Main Unit) ..... Add to phonebook 104
Storing an Entry in the FOMA Card Phonebook 106
Storing Data in the Phonebook from Redial or Dialled Calls 107
Changing a Group Name ..... Group setting 108
Distinguishing Incoming Calls for Each Phone Number and Group ..... Utilities 109
Setting Up the Functions to Be Stored in the Phonebook 112
Making a Call Using an Entry Stored in the Phonebook ..... Search phonebook 114
Editing the Phonebook ..... Edit data 117
Deleting an Entry in the Phonebook ..... Delete data 117
Saving the Phonebook in the FOMA Card ..... UIM operation 118
Checking the Storage Status of the Phonebook ..... No. of phonebook 120
Making a Call with Minimum Key Operation ..... Two-touch dialing 121

Phonebook Available with the FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal provides the following two types of phonebooks: the FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook to which various functions can be set and the FOMA card phonebook that can be used in any FOMA terminal. Use these phonebooks properly according to your applications.

● The FOMA terminal has the dialing assist function that is helpful when making an international call to a number stored in the phonebook. See p.539 for details.

Differences between the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card phonebooks

Stored entries

The stored entries to the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card are shown as follows:

	FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook	FOMA card phonebook
Phonebook entries※1	Maximum 700	50
Storing name	By family name and first name separately	By full name
Groups※2	00-19	00-10
Storing phone number※3	Up to 4 phone numbers can be stored per phonebook entry, and up to 700 phone numbers in the phonebook. You can store a person's mobile phone number and office phone number, etc. as a single phonebook entry.	One phone number can be stored per phonebook entry.
	You can select and store an icon from 24 icons such as " " and " " for phone numbers, so that categories such as "mobile phone number" and "office phone number" can be seen at a glance.	These icons cannot be selected. The icon "☎" is automatically stored.
Storing mail address	Up to 3 mail addresses can be stored per phonebook entry, and up to 700 mail addresses in the phonebook. You can store a person's home mail address and office mail address, etc. as a single phonebook entry.	One mail address can be stored per phonebook entry.
	You can also select and store an icon from 5 icons such as " " and " " for mail addresses, so that categories such as "home mail address" and "office mail address" can be seen at a glance.	These icons cannot be selected. The icon " " is automatically stored.
Storing image	One still image and one movie can be stored per phonebook entry. Up to 100 still images and 100 movies can be stored in the phonebook.	—
Storing other data	One postal code, address and memo can be stored per phonebook entry. They can be stored as a single phonebook entry together with phone number and mail address, etc.	—

※1: The maximum number of the phonebook entries may be actually decreased depending on the stored content of each phonebook data.

※2: You can change a group name of "Group 01" - "Group 19" ("Group 01" - "Group 10" in the FOMA card phonebook). Assigning your favorite group name before storing is useful. →p.108

※3: You can enter 0-9, #, +, ✳, p in the phonebook. If you use a subaddress (p.71), enter ✳. You cannot make a call correctly with a phone number in which #, +, ✳ or p are placed between the area code, city code and subscriber code.

Characteristics of the phonebook of FOMA terminal (main unit)

If you register information into the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (main unit), you can use the following convenient functions:

- If you specify Memory Number “000” to “009”, you can use the “Two-touch dial” in which you can make a phone call by pressing 2 keys. →p.121
- You can use “Utilities” and “Group utilities” in which you can set the incoming call setting by telephone number, by mail address and by group. →p.109
- You can use “Restrictions” to put restrictions on outgoing and incoming calls by telephone number. →p.164
- You can register a phonebook which you don’t want other people to know as secret data in the “Secret mode” and “Secret only mode”. →p.161
- You can set the “Secret code”. →p.113

Characteristics of Phonebook of FOMA card

Since data on the phonebook is registered in the FOMA card, you can use the same phonebook in another FOMA terminal by inserting the FOMA card into it. It is convenient if you want to use multiple FOMA terminals for different purposes.

Name display

Voice/Videophone calls

When a call comes in with the caller ID informed and the caller’s name has already been stored in the phonebook, both the phone number and the name are displayed.



If a still image or movie is stored in the phonebook and the “Disp. PH-book image” setting is “ON”, the still image or movie is also displayed. There may be a display delay depending on the image and data sizes.



The caller’s name is also displayed in the “Received calls”, “Dialled calls” and “Redial”.

i-mode mail/SMS

When an i-mode mail/SMS comes in and the sender’s i-mode mail address/phone number has already been stored in the phonebook, the sender’s name appears on the received mail list screen and details screens. If you send an i-mode mail/SMS to that party, his/her name also appears on the sent mail list screen and details screens.
In addition, the other party’s name also appears on the “Received address” and “Sent address”.

NOTE

- When a phonebook entry is stored in the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”, only the caller/sender’s phone number/mail address is displayed without the name.
- When “Restrict dialing” is set, if the caller’s phone number is not specified under the “Restrict dialing”, only the phone number is displayed without the name.
- If the same phone number/mail address is stored in multiple phonebook entries with different names, the phonebook is searched by reading (p.114) and the name of the first displayed phonebook entry is displayed.

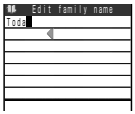
Storing an Entry in the Phonebook of FOMA Terminal (Main Unit)

- You must enter a “family name” or “first name”. If no family name and no first name are entered, a phonebook entry cannot be stored in the phonebook.
- To register in the FOMA card’s phonebook →p.106

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook ▶ “Add to phonebook”.

2 Select “Phone”.

3 Enter the family name.



Enter the family name using kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers, symbols and pictographs.
Up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for the full name.
You can enter only the first name without entering the family name.
Entering characters →p.502

4 Check the reading of the entered family name.

If the reading is incorrect

Enter the correct reading using half-pitch katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
Up to 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for the full name.
The -reading search of the “Search phonebook” searches entries by using the combination of the family and first names’ readings entered in this step.

5 Enter the first name.

Enter the first name in the same manner as the family name.
You can enter only the family name without entering the first name.

6 Check the reading of the entered first name.

If the reading is incorrect, correct it in the same manner as the reading of the family name.

7 Set the respective items.

- Group : Select the group to be stored from “00” to “19”. Group “00” is automatically stored if you do not select any group.
- Telephone number : Enter the phone number and select the icon.
  Up to 26 digits can be entered as a phone number, including the “+”, “X”, “#”, and “p”.
  After registering a first phone number, “ <Not stored>” is displayed on the phonebook edit screen. By selecting this item, you can register an additional phone number. When you register a landline phone number, be sure to enter the phone number including the area code even though the person lives in the same area as you.
  To register overseas phone numbers →p.105
- Mail address : Enter a mail address and select the icon. You can enter up to 50 characters including half-pitch alphabetical characters, numbers and symbols.
  If you register the first mail address, “ <Not stored>” is displayed on the edit screen of the phonebook. You can select this item to register a new mail address.
  Entering characters →p.502
- Address : Enter a postal code and address. Enter 7 half-pitch numbers for the postal code. You can enter up to 46 full-pitch or 93 half-pitch characters including Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphabetical characters and numbers for the address.
- Memo : Enter a memo. You can enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters including Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphabetical characters and numbers.
- Still image : Select a still image to be displayed for incoming calls from data stored in the “Image”.
  How to select a still image →p.338
- Movie : Select a movie to be displayed for incoming calls from data stored in the “i Motion”.
  How to select a movie →p.349
- Memory no. : Memory number is assigned when you store an entry in the phonebook. You can also change the memory number to your favorite number between 000-699. For entries registered under a memory number from “000” to “009”, the two-touch dial function can be used. →p.121

8 Press [Finish] to store a phonebook.

To register overseas phone numbers

If an overseas phone number is registered with "+" (by pressing and holding 0 for 1 second or more) and "country code" added at the beginning beforehand, you can make an international call to the phone number by simply displaying the data in the phonebook and pressing (dialing assistance function). →p.539

If the area code of the phone number starts with "0", exclude this "0" for registration. (However, this "0" may be needed for the phone numbers of some countries and regions such as Italy.)

Country codes →p.531

(Example: "01-XX-XX-XX-XX" → "+331XXXXXXXX")

NOTE

- If you enter "ﾜ(full-pitch lower case character)" for the first or family name, "ﾜ (half-pitch upper case character)" is displayed for reading. If you enter symbols and pictographs, entered characters are not reflected to readings. Characters entered with Kuten code are changed to spaces. However, when characters entered with Kuten code are also listed in a half-pitch character (katakana or alphabet), they are reflected to readings.
- If you enter the family name and the first name and press ● [Set] and then re-edit the family name and first name again, this change does not affect the reading.
- The phonebook stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed properly when you perform data exchange etc.
- Enter the mail address correctly including a domain name.
  Domain name is to the right of the @ (at mark) in a mail address.
  (Example) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
  You cannot use the following functions if the whole mail address including the domain name is entered incorrectly:
  - Utilities and Group utilities →p.109
  - Displaying the mail sender's name →p.281
  - Automatically sorting received mail →p.291
- If a person's mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store only the phone number for the mail address.
- If original data of still images and movies registered in the phonebook are updated and/or deleted, the still images and movies in the phonebook are also updated and/or deleted.
- To display the stored still image or movie for an incoming call, set the "Display phonebook image" to "ON".
- When a stored still image or movie exceeds the image display area in the phonebook details screen, the image or movie is reduced with the same aspect ratio. If the still image or movie is smaller than the image display area, the display is centered.
- When a call comes in from a phone number stored in the phonebook with a still image or movie, if the image or movie exceeds the image display area set for "Calling" in the "Display setting", the image or movie is reduced with the same aspect ratio. If the still image or movie is smaller than the image display area, the display is centered.

When phonebook editing is interrupted

When the "Low-voltage alarm" rings or the tool group task is newly started by Multi task during an edit of the phonebook, the editing of the phonebook is suspended. The phonebook that you are editing is automatically saved as temporary editing data. To restart the edit, call up the editing data.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook ▶ "Add to phonebook".

2 Select "Phone" or "UIM".

3 Select "Recall".

You can resume editing the phonebook entry that was interrupted.

If you resume editing the phonebook entry and stop editing without storing the editing data, the data will be erased.

To store a new phonebook entry

Select "New".

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Only the most recent data is saved as the data being edited.
- Even if the editing of Phonebook data is interrupted by "Low-voltage alarm" and then the power is off, the data under editing is saved temporarily. However, if the Phonebook data under editing is in the FOMA card and the battery pack is removed, the data under editing is lost.
- When you receive a voice or videophone call during phonebook editing, you can answer the call while keeping the phonebook data as it is.
  During a voice call, you can return to the phonebook edit screen by pressing (MULTI) to open the task menu and select the item you were editing. Once the voice/videophone call ends, the phonebook edit screen you were at automatically reappears.

Important

- When you use the FOMA terminal for the first time after purchasing it, or if the FOMA terminal has been left for a month or more with no battery pack fitted or a run out battery pack fitted, you must recharge the internal backup battery. Charge the FOMA terminal with the battery pack fitted. This also charges the internal backup battery.
- It is recommended to take notes and/or use the miniSD memory card to keep a backup copy of the data stored in the phonebook. You can also save the phonebook data in a PC using the Data Link Software (p.569) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook data will be retained for up to a month even if the battery pack is left removed from the terminal. However, the stored data may be lost if the FOMA terminal is left for longer periods with no power. The stored data may also be lost if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, replaced, or otherwise handled in a way that causes such data to be lost.
- “The first phone number”, “Kana•Kanji full name”, “Group setting”, “The first mail address”, “Bookmark” and “Secret setting” can be copied to the new terminal at a DoCoMo service counter. Please note that it may not be possible to copy data which is stored in the FOMA terminal, depending on specifications of the new terminals.

Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data such as the phonebook data in your FOMA terminal.
In addition, you can forward the content of the phonebook to a PC and keep it by using Data Link Software (p.569) .

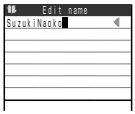
Storing an Entry in the FOMA Card Phonebook

- You must enter “name”. If no “name” entered, a phonebook entry cannot be stored in the phonebook.
- To register in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (main unit) →p.104

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook ▶ “Add to phonebook”.

2 Select “UIM”.

3 Enter a name.



Enter a name by using kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
Up to 10 full-pitch characters or 21 half-pitch alphanumeric characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be entered.
Entering characters →p.502

4 Check the readings of the entered name.

If the reading is incorrect

Enter the correct reading by using katakana (full-pitch only), alphabets, numbers and symbols.
Up to 12 full-pitch characters or 25 half-pitch alphanumeric characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be entered.
The “-reading search” of the “Search phonebook” searches entries by using the readings of the name stored in this step.

*The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

5 Set the respective items.

Group	: Select a group to be stored from “00” to “10”. “00” is automatically used if you do not select any group.
Telephone number	: Enter a telephone number. You can enter up to 20 digits for the blue FOMA card and up to 26 digits for the green FOMA card. Even if “+”, “*”, “#”, or ”p” are entered, those are included as digits. The incorrect location of “+” is automatically corrected for registration. To register the telephone number of a general telephone machine, be sure to enter the area code in front of the telephone number even if it has the same area code as yours. To register overseas phone numbers →p.105
Mail address	: Enter a mail address. You can enter up to 50 characters including half-pitch alphabetical characters, numbers and symbols. Entering characters →p.502

6 Press [Finish] to store a phonebook.

NOTE

- If you enter “ﾜ (full-pitch lower case character)” for the name, “ワ (full-pitch upper case character)” is displayed for reading. However, you can enter “ﾜ (full-pitch lower case character)” in reading input. If you enter symbols, entered characters are not reflected to readings. Characters entered by using Kuten code are changed to spaces. However, when characters entered with Kuten code are also listed in a half-pitch character (katakana or alphabet), they are reflected to readings.
- If you enter the family name and the first name and press ● [Set], and then re-edit the family name and the first name again, this change does not affect the reading.
- The phonebook stored using symbols may not be displayed properly when you perform data exchange, etc.
- Enter a mail address including a domain name correctly. Domain name is a character string that follows @ (at mark).
  (Example) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
  You cannot use the following functions if the mail address including the domain name is not entered correctly:
  · Displaying the mail sender’s name →p.281
  · Automatically sorting received mail →p.291
- If a person’s mail address is “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, store only the phone number for the mail address.

Storing Data in the Phonebook from Redial or Dialled Calls

You can store phone numbers directly to the phonebook from the “Received calls”, “Dialled calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” and “Sent address” or store a new phone number to the phonebook after dialing it.

- To add new phone numbers/mail addresses to an existing entry in the phonebook, call up the entry and then you can add new data to it.

<Example: Adding a new phone number to the FOMA terminal (main unit) Phonebook from the “Received calls”>

1 Display the Received calls screen for the phone number you want to store.



How to display the received calls →p.76

2 Select “Add to phonebook”-“Phone” from the function menu.

To store the phone number in the FOMA card

Select “UIM”.

Continued on next page

3 Select “Add”, and search the phonebook entry where you will store the number.

How to search the phonebook →p.114

To store a phone number in a new phonebook entry
Select “New”.

When storing in the FOMA card
Select “New” or “Overwrite”.

4 Display the phonebook details screen, and then press ● [Select].



The phone number is automatically entered and the Edit phonebook Screen appears.
How to correct phonebook →p.117

5 When you finish editing, press [Finish].

When a message asking you whether to overwrite is displayed
Select “YES”.

NOTE

- The caller ID setting (“Notify”/“Not notify”) displayed in the “Dialled calls” and “Redial” are not stored in the phonebook.
- Received addresses that cannot be used for reply cannot be stored in the phonebook.

Group setting

Changing a Group Name

Default setting	FOMA terminal (main unit): Group 01 to Group 19 FOMA card: Group 01 to Group 10

You can separate the phonebooks by use. For example, you can group them by category like “Companies” and “Friends” or hobby like “Baseball” and “Pottery”.
Groups whose names can be changed and maximum number of characters are as follows:

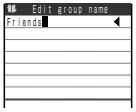
	Groups whose names can be changed	Maximum number of characters
FOMA terminal (main unit)	Group 01 to Group 19	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters
FOMA card	Group 01 to Group 10	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters

- You cannot change the group name “Group 00”.
- You can set the “Utilities” functions for Group 01 to Group 19 in the FOMA terminal (main unit). →p.109

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook ▶“Group setting”.

2 Select the group you want to change the name.

3 Enter a group name.



"" is attached to the groups in the FOMA card.
If you assign the same group name to the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card, the group is displayed as different two groups.
Entering characters →p.502

Resetting a group name

You can reset group names you have changed to their default settings.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook ▶"Group setting".

2 Highlight the group name to reset, and select "Reset group name" from the function menu.

NOTE

● If you reset a group name, the "Utilities" setting set to the group is not canceled.

Utilities

Distinguishing Incoming Calls for Each Phone Number and Group

Default setting	All canceled

You can set a different ring tone or answer message of the record message for each phone number, mail address or group in the phonebook. It is useful when distinguishing the caller of an incoming call by only a ring tone.
You can set the following Utilities functions:

Purpose		Utilities	See page
To distinguish the callers of incoming calls by a ring tone, image, etc.	By a ring tone	Ring tone	p.124
	By the flashing color of the incoming call lamp	Illumination	p.147
	By an image	Image	p.140
To set a different answer message for each phonebook entry when the record message is activated		Answer message	p.83
To distinguish the senders of incoming mail by a ring tone, etc.	By a ring tone	Mail ring tone	p.124
	By the flashing color of the incoming call lamp	Mail illumination	p.147

※ You must set the "Record message" to "ON" beforehand.

● You can set these functions for all phone numbers, mail addresses and all groups except "Group 00" stored in the FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook.
● You cannot set these functions for the phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card.
● You cannot set these functions for the phonebook entries stored in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
● When the caller restricts the phone number display, the Utilities are invalid. "Caller ID request" setting is useful. →p.452

Making incoming setting for each phone number or mail address

Following steps below enables notification with the Utilities function set for the phone number or the mail address from which you receive a voice/videophone call or SMS, or i-mode mail, respectively.

● "Mail ring tone" or "Mail illumination" to be set for the phone number starts operation when receiving SMS or the mail from the address "phone number@docomo.ne.jp"

1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry you want to set the Utilities functions.

Display the phone number or mail address you want to set.
How to search the phonebook →p.114

When several phone numbers or mail addresses are stored on the same phonebook
Press ○ to display the phone number or mail address you want to set.

2 Select "Utilities" from the function menu.

3 Select the functions you want to set, and set the contents of each functions.

"★" is attached to the function you have set.

To cancel the set function
Select the function with "★".
The function is canceled and "★" disappears.

When you set the Utilities functions

Icons to check the Utilities functions are displayed on a phonebook details screen.



: Indicates that "Ring tone" is set.
: Indicates that "Illumination" is set.
: Indicates that "Image" is set.
: Indicates that "Answer message" is set.
: Indicates that "Mail ring tone" is set.
: Indicates that "Mail illumination" is set.

NOTE

● Note that the Utilities functions are canceled if you change a phone number or mail address.
● To change the Utilities functions you have set, first cancel the current settings.

Making incoming setting for each group

You can follow the same procedure to set the incoming utilities to groups stored in the phonebook.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook ▶ "Group setting".

2 Highlight the group which you want to set, and select "Utilities" from the function menu.

3 Select the functions you want to set, and set the contents of each function.

"★" is attached to the function you have set.

To cancel the set function
Select the function with "★".
The function is canceled and "★" disappears.

NOTE

- If the same phone number or mail address has been stored in multiple groups, the priority is given to the settings specified for the group that contains the phone number or mail address found first in the reading search order (p.114).
- You can set the Utilities functions for groups containing both phonebook entries (Secret data) stored in the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode” and ordinary phonebook entries and groups containing secret data only. However, note that these functions are disabled for incoming calls from callers stored as secret data.
- To change the items you have set, first cancel the current settings.

Operational priority when settings are overlapped

When the Utilities settings are overlapped with other function settings, or multiple mail or Msg. Request/Free with different settings are received, the FOMA terminal operates as follows:

Operations of incoming call lamp if incoming call settings overlap

The priorities are as follows. ① has the highest priority.

① Illumination settings of the Utilities
② Illumination settings of the Group Utilities
③ Illumination settings

Operations of ring tone if ring tone settings overlap

The priorities are as follows. ① has the highest priority.

① The ring tone of the Utilities
② The ring tone of the Group Utilities
③ Select ring tone

Incoming call display if incoming call settings overlap

The priorities are as follows. ① has the highest priority. However, if an i-motion operates as a ring tone, the i-motion will appear.

① i-motion of the phonebook registration image
② The image of the Utilities
③ The image of the Group Utilities
④ The image of the phonebook registration image
⑤ Display settings

When receiving multiple mails or Msg. Request/Free simultaneously

	Ring tone/Illumination operations
Only multiple mail is received	Operate according to the conditions set for the last received mail.
Msg. Request and Msg. Free are received simultaneously	Operate according to the conditions set for Msg. Request.
Mail and Msg. Request/Free are received simultaneously	Operate according to the conditions set for the last received mail.

Checking the Utilities settings

You can check the phonebook entries and groups for which the “Utilities” functions are set, function by function. At the same time, you can also cancel each setting.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook ▶ “Utilities”.

2 Select the function with “★”.

The items of the function you selected are displayed.
“★” appears on the items that are set in Utilities.

To cancel the settings of the function at once

Highlight the function with “★”, and select “Release settings” from the function menu.

Continued on next page

3 Select the item with "★".

The list screen listing the names of phonebook entries and groups for which the selected settings have been specified appears.
"GR" is prefixed to the group names.

To cancel the settings of the function at once by item
Highlight the item with "★", and select "Release settings" from the function menu.

4 Check the phonebook entries and groups for which the Utilities function is set.

To display a phonebook entry details screen
Select the phonebook entry you want to display.

To cancel the Utilities function set for a phonebook entry
Select the phone number and mail address you want to cancel on the details screen.

To cancel the Utilities function set for a group
Select the group you want to cancel.

Setting Up the Functions to Be Stored in the Phonebook

Setting Notify/Not notify caller ID to a phonebook entry <Notify caller ID>

You can set whether to notify the other party of your caller ID or not every time you make a voice or videophone call.

● The setting of this function is not stored in the phonebook. You must make this setting for each voice or videophone call you make. If you omit this setting, the "Notify caller ID" service setting (p.58) applies.

1 Display the phonebook details screen you want to set.

How to search the phonebook →p.114

When multiple phone numbers are stored in a single phonebook
Press ○ to display the details screen for the phonebook entry for which you want to set.

2 Select "Notify caller ID" from the function menu.

3 Select an item you want to set.

To not notify the other party of your caller ID
Select "OFF".
"Not notify" appears.
When selecting a phone number prefixed with "186/184", "186/184" is deleted.

To notify the other party of your caller ID
Select "ON".
"Notify" appears.
When selecting a phone number prefixed with "186/184", "186/184" is deleted.

To cancel the Notify caller ID
Select "Cancel prefix".
When selecting a phone number prefixed with "186/184", "186/184" is deleted and the "Notify caller ID" service setting (p.59) applies.

NOTE

● When you make a call with "Notify"/"Not notify" set, your phone number is stored in the "Dialled calls" and "Redial" with the same "Notify"/"Not notify" attached.
● When you dial a phone number or display it from the "Received calls", "Dialled calls" or "Redial", you can also set Notify caller ID in the same way.

Setting the FOMA terminal to display a phone number by just unfolding <Automatic display>

Default setting	OFF

You can set up the FOMA terminal to automatically display a specified phone number when you unfold it while the standby display is displayed. You can then call the displayed phone number by simply pressing [call]. When you do not call the number, press [PWR HLD], [CLR] or [●] to return to the standby screen.

- You can specify one phone number for the automatic display. No mail address can be specified.
- You cannot specify phone number for the phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card.
- You cannot specify phone number for the phonebook entries stored in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- The specified phone number is not displayed when you fold the FOMA terminal and open it again while operating other functions or entering characters, or in the Secret only mode.
- You cannot select other phone numbers stored in the same phonebook entry during the automatic display.

Activating the automatic display

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Display" ▶ "Automatic display".

To display a specified phone number automatically
Select "ON".

To display no phone number automatically
Select "OFF".

Selecting a phone number to display automatically

1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry for which you want to set this function.

How to search the phonebook →p.114

When multiple phone numbers are stored in a single phonebook
Press [○] to display the desired phone number.

2 Select "Automatic disp." from the function menu.

"★" is attached to "Automatic disp.".

To cancel the automatic display
Select "Automatic disp. ★" from the function menu.
The automatic display function is canceled, and "★" disappears.

NOTE

- In the following cases, the Utilities settings are invalid.
  - While PIM lock is set
  - While All lock is set
  - While Secret only mode is set
  - While Restrict dialing is set
  - During a voice call

Setting a secret code in a mail address

To send i-mode mail to a recipient who has stored a secret code with his/her mail address (p.243), you must add the secret code to the mail address. If you have set a secret code with the recipient's mail address, the code is automatically added when you send a mail to that address.

- You can also set a secret code for a phone number to send i-mode mail to an i-mode terminal only by referring to its phone number.
- Secret codes are attached to mail addresses only when the destination mail address is a "phone number" or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp". For other kinds of mail addresses, secret codes cannot be added.
- You cannot set a secret code for the phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card.

Continued on next page

1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry for which you want to set a secret code.

How to search the phonebook →“Search phonebook” below

When multiple phone numbers or mail address are stored in a single phonebook

Press ○ to display the desired phone number or mail address.

2 Select “Secret code” from the function menu, and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152

3 Select “Set code”.

To check the set secret code

Select “Check code”.

To cancel the set secret code

Select “Release code”.

4 Enter the 4-digit Secret code.



“0000” cannot be set.

Search phonebook

Making a Call Using an Entry Stored in the Phonebook

You can call up a phonebook entry by using any one of 7 search methods: reading, name, phone number, mail address, memory number, group and column of reading (Japanese syllabary: order of a, ka, sa, ta and na).

- Phonebook entries stored as secret data are not displayed unless you set the FOMA terminal to the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.
- For how to make a call using the phonebook overseas, see p.539.

Search result display

Except for memory number search, the phonebook entry is searched in the following order according to the reading entered when data is stored in the phonebook and the results are displayed.

Japanese syllabled [reading beginning with a space, ア, ァ, イ, ィ, ...ン]

↓

Alphabets [A, a, B, b, ...Z, z]

↓

Numbers [0 to 9]

↓

Symbols

↓

Entry without reading

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook ▶ “Search phonebook”.

You can display the phonebook search screen by pressing ○ to select “Search phonebook” or pressing ○.

2 Select the search method.

To display the search method with priority

Highlight the search method you want to display with priority, and then press [Prefer].

When you press ○ while the standby display is displayed at the next search, the set search method screen is displayed.

To cancel the search method with priority

Highlight the search method with “★” and press [OFF].

3 Search the phonebook.



To search by reading

Enter part of the reading and then press ○ or ○.

Enter the reading from the first in the order of the family and first name. You do not have to enter the entire reading you are searching for.

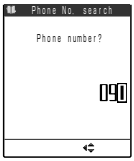
Entering characters →p.502



To search by name

Enter part of the name and then press ○ or ○.

Enter the name from the first in the order of the family and first name. You do not have to enter the entire name you are searching for.



To search by phone number

Enter part of the phone number and then press ○ or ○.

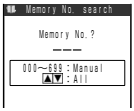
You only need to enter a first few digits or part of the phone number to search the entry.

You can also search phonebook entries that include “+” by pressing 0 for 1 second or more.



To search by mail address

Enter part of the mail address and then press ○ or ○.



To search by memory number

Enter the 3-digit memory number.

The FOMA card phonebook cannot be searched by memory number.

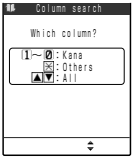


To search by group

Select the desired group.

Groups of the phonebook of the FOMA card are different from those of the phonebook of FOMA terminal (main unit).

Continued on next page



To search by column (in the order of Japanese syllabary)

Press the key corresponding to the column you want to search.

- 1 : Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ア (A)
- 2 : Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of カ (Ka)
- 3 : Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of サ (Sa)
- 4 : Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of タ (Ta)
- 5 : Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ナ (Na)
- 6 : Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ハ (Ha)
- 7 : Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of マ (Ma)
- 8 : Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヤ (Ya)
- 9 : Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ラ (Ra)
- 0 : Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ワ (Wa), ヲ (Wo) or ン (N)
- * : Displays all other entries

When the search ends, a list of phonebooks that meet the searching conditions is displayed. "" is displayed for the FOMA card phonebook entries on the search result list screen.
If no phonebook entry that satisfies the search conditions is stored, a message notifying you that there is no data is displayed.

To display a list of all phonebooks registered

Press ○ or ○ without entering any searching conditions.

Please note that you cannot display a list of all phonebooks if the searching method is "Group search".

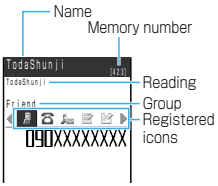
4 Press ☎ or 📠 after highlighting the desired phonebook entry.



A voice call will be made if you press ☎, and a videophone call will be made if you press 📠. If multiple telephone numbers are registered in the highlighted phonebook, the telephone number on the top of the list will be called.

To display the detail screen of a phonebook.

Press ● [Select] in Step 4 above, and the detail screen will be displayed.



To make a call from the detail screen of the phonebook

Display the telephone number to call and press ☎ or 📠.

A voice call will be made if you press ☎, and a videophone call will if 📠.

If multiple telephone numbers are registered in the same phonebook

If you press ○, you can switch the telephone number displays.

NOTE

- If you do not set the search method with priority, the phonebook search screen appears when you press ○, and the search method selected last will be highlighted.

Editing the Phonebook

Follow the procedure below to edit entries in the phonebook.
You can store an edited entry as a new phonebook entry.

1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry you want to edit, and then press [Edit].

How to search the phonebook →p.114

2 Edit the respective items.

Edit the items you need to change in the same operation as described for “Add to phonebook”.
How to add to phonebook →p.104

To store the edited entry under a new memory number.
Select “No.” and enter the unused memory number (000 to 699).
The original entry remains unchanged, and the edited entry is stored under a different memory number.

3 When you finish editing, press [Finish] and select “YES”.

To store the edited entry in the FOMA card phonebook
Press [Finish] and select “Overwrite”/“Add”.
If you select “Overwrite”, the existing entry is overwritten with the edited data.
If you select “Add”, the original entry remains unchanged, and the edited entry is stored as a new entry.

NOTE

- You cannot modify the phonebook when “PIM lock”, “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” is set.
- You can only modify the phonebook of secret data in “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.

Deleting an Entry in the Phonebook

Follow the procedure below to delete each one of the entries stored in the phonebook. You can also select and delete only a phone number, mail address, address, memo, still image or movie from an entry.

● To delete all the entries or the selected ones →p.119

1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry you want to delete.

How to search the phonebook →p.114

To delete only a phone number, mail address, address, memo, still image or movie
Press ○ to display the item you want to delete.

2 Select “Delete data” from the function menu.

To delete a phonebook entry
Select “This phonebook”.

To delete only item displayed in Step 1
Select “Phone No./Mail address/Address/Memorandums/Delete image/Delete movie” according to the item to be erased or deleted.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- You cannot delete the phonebook data when “PIM lock”, “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” is set.
- You can only delete the phonebook data of secret data in “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.
- When multiple phone numbers are registered, if you delete any of the 1st to 3rd phone numbers, a later numbered phone number(s) will be moved up and displayed.

Saving the Phonebook in the FOMA Card

Data in the phonebook and SMS can be transferred between the FOMA terminal (main unit) and the FOMA card. You can also delete data in the phonebook and SMS stored in the FOMA terminal (main unit) and the FOMA card.

- During data copying or deleting, you cannot make or receive a voice/videophone call, or send or receive mail. In addition, you cannot activate other functions.
- Even in the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”, phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied or deleted with this function.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the phonebook of the FOMA card.
  For items and the total number of stored items that can be copied, see p.102.

Copying data between the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card

Follow the procedure below to copy data in the phonebook and SMS between the FOMA terminal (main unit) and the FOMA card.

- Original data in the FOMA terminal (main unit) or the FOMA card remains after data copying.
- This function is not available when the FOMA card is not inserted.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “UIM operation”, and then enter the security code.

After the security code is entered, the terminal’s communication function such as receiving a call is disabled and the “圏外” icon appears.
If you receive a communication such as an incoming call before the security code is entered, the UIM operation ends.
Security code →p.152

2 Select “Copy”.

3 Select the place where to copy.

To copy data stored in the FOMA terminal (main unit) to the FOMA card
Select “Phone→UIM”.

To copy data stored in the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal (main unit)
Select “UIM→Phone”.

4 Select the data type you want to copy.

To copy phonebook data
Select “Phonebook”.
Search the phonebook, and then display the phonebook list screen.
How to search the phonebook →p.114

To copy SMS data
Select “SMS”.
Select “Inbox” or “Outbox”, and then display the SMS list screen.

5 Select the data to copy, and then press [Finish].



Phonebook

A message is displayed asking you whether to copy the data.

To copy all data

Select “Select all” from the function menu.

6 Select “YES”.

When you do not copy the data

Select “NO”.

NOTE

- When there is data that cannot be copied, when the digits of a phone number is not compatible with the FOMA card, or when “+” is not entered properly, a message is displayed asking you whether to copy that data.
- If the stored (saved) entries exceed the maximum number in the destination phonebook while copying, a message is displayed informing you that the maximum data capacity has been reached at the destination. Delete unnecessary entries among the stored (saved) data, and retry copying the entries that were not copied successfully.
- The number of phone numbers or mail addresses that can be stored as a single phonebook entry differs between the FOMA terminal (main unit) and the FOMA card. Therefore, the phone numbers or mail addresses stored as the second or subsequent ones in the FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook cannot be copied to the FOMA card. Only the first phone number or mail address is copied and “☎” or “✉” icon appear.
- Since character types available with the FOMA terminal (main unit) and that with the FOMA card differ, some characters may be converted to spaces or different characters as follows.
  - When you copy the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (main unit) to the FOMA card, pictographs will be converted to spaces.
  - When you copy the SMS of the FOMA terminal (main unit) to the FOMA card, the pictographs other than “♥” and “📳” will be converted to spaces.
  - When you copy the phonebook of the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal (main unit), “ﾜ” (full-pitch/lower case character) will be converted to “ﾜ” (half-pitch/upper case character).
- When copying the FOMA card data that was stored using another FOMA terminal, the following characters are converted to spaces: the Latin and Greek characters and some symbols that are not half-pitch alphanumeric characters (excluding 。「」、・ー゛゜), and full-pitch characters that are not in the Kuten code list.
- You cannot copy only “SMS report”. However, when the SMS report of a sent SMS is in the Inbox, if this sent SMS is copied, the SMS report saved in the sent SMS can also be copied.
- Display the phonebook details screen, and select “Copy to UIM” (or “Copy from UIM” when copying from the FOMA card) from the function menu to copy one entry at a time.
- Display the SMS details screen or highlight an SMS to copy on the SMS list screen, and select “UIM operation” from the function menu to transfer or copy one SMS at a time. →p.307

Deleting data in the phonebook and SMS

Follow the procedure below to delete data stored in the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card. You can delete all the data or the selected multiple one at a time.

- To delete each one of data in the phonebook →p.117

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “UIM operation”, and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152

2 Select “Delete”.

Continued on next page

3 Select the destination in which you want to delete the data.

To delete the data in the FOMA terminal (main unit)
Select “Phone”.

To delete the data in a FOMA card
Select “UIM”.

4 Select the item you want to delete.

To delete phonebook data
Select “Phonebook”.
Search the phonebook, and then display the phonebook list screen.
How to search the phonebook →p.114

To delete SMS data
Select “SMS”.
Select “Inbox” or “Outbox”, and then display the SMS list screen.

5 Select the data you want to delete, and then press [Finish].

A message is displayed asking whether to delete the data.



Phonebook

To delete all the data
Select “Select all” from the function menu.

6 Select “YES”.

When you do not delete the data
Select “NO”.

No. of phonebook

Checking the Storage Status of the Phonebook

You can check the storage status of the phonebook such as the total number of entries stored and the remaining number of entries that can be stored.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook ▶ “No. of phonebook”.



Phone (Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA terminal)

Phonebook : Displays the number of entries stored.
Number of stored entries/700 (Maximum number of entries that can be stored)

Secret : Displays the number of entries stored as secret data. Displayed only in the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.

Image : Displays the number of images stored in the phonebook.
Number of stored images/100 (Maximum number of images that can be stored)

Movie : Displays the number of movies stored in the phonebook.
Number of stored movies/100 (Maximum number of movies that can be stored)

Rest : Indicates the remaining number of phone numbers that can be stored.

: Indicates the remaining number of mail addresses that can be stored.

UIM (Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card)

Phonebook : Displays the number of entries stored.
Number of stored entries/50 (Maximum number of entries that can be stored)

NOTE

● The number of entries stored in the Phone (FOMA terminal) phonebook include the number of secret data entries.

Making a Call with Minimum Key Operation

If you assign phone numbers to the memory numbers “000” to “009”, you can dial quickly those phone numbers by simply pressing two keys: one of 0わをん to 9wxyzら, and ☎ or ● [Dial] (📹 for a videophone call).

1 Press the key between 0わをん and 9wxyzら that corresponds to the memory number.

2 Press ☎ or ● [Dial].

A call is made to the phone number that is registered to the memory number.

To make a videophone call

Press 📹.

Sound and Display Settings

■ Sound Settings

Changing a Ring Tone Set ..... Select ring tone 124
Adjusting the Ring Volume ..... Ring volume 126
Editing Sound Effect to i-motion Playback Sound ..... SRS-WOW setting 127
Using Vibration to Notify You Incoming Calls and Alarm ..... Vibrator 127
Recording/Playing a Ring tone or Hold Tone ..... Voice announce 128
Turning Off the Keypad Sound ..... Keypad sound 129
Setting the FOMA Terminal to Emit the Charge Sound ..... Charge sound 130
Setting Alarm Notification of a Bad Connection ..... Quality alarm 130
Setting the Time for Ringing a Tone of Mail or Msg. Request/Free ..... Mail/Msg. ring time 131
Setting for Sounding Only from the Earphone <Optional> ..... Earphone 131
Turning Off Sounds Emitted by the FOMA Terminal ..... Manner mode 132
Changing the Manner Mode Setting ..... Manner mode set 133

■ Display Settings

Using the Desktop Icons ..... Desktop icon 135
Changing the Standby Display ..... Display setting 140
Displaying the Image Set in the Phonebook at Incoming Calls ..... Disp. phonebook image 143
Setting How to Display the Image Window ..... Image window 143
Setting Whether to Turn On/Off the Display Light for the Display and Keys ..... Display light 145
Selecting the Display Color ..... Color pattern 146
Setting the Incoming Call Lamp to Flash at Incoming Call ..... Illumination 147
Setting the Incoming Call Lamp to Flash During a Call ..... Illumination in talk 148
Changing the Font Setting ..... Font 148
Setting the Clock Display ..... Clock display 149

Changing a Ring Tone Set

Default setting	Phone: Pattern 1 Video-phone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2 Msg. Request: Pattern 3 Msg. Free: Pattern 3

You can set a different ring tone for incoming voice calls, videophone calls, mail, Msg. Request and Msg. Free. You can also set each different ring tone for calls/mail from a specific phone number/mail address/group in the phonebook. →p.109

- You can set i-motion downloaded from a site or Web page to the ring tone (Chaku-motion).
- You cannot set "i-motion" to the ring tone of the mail and the Msg. Request/Free.
- To set "Voice announce 1" and "Voice announce 2", you must first record your message with the "Voice announce" (p.128).
- While "PIM lock" is set, data other than pre-installed patterns, sound effects and melodies cannot be set. You cannot set your ring tone to a Chaku-motion either while "PIM lock" is set.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Select ring tone".

2 Select the item for which you want to set a ring tone.

Phone	: Sets a ring tone for voice calls
Video-phone	Sets a ring tone for videophone calls
Mail	: Sets a ring tone for i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication
Msg. Request	: Sets a ring tone for Msg. Request
Msg. Free	: Sets a ring tone for Msg. Free

3 Select a ring tone category.

Melody	: Select from the 3 preset patterns, 8 sound effects, and 10 melodies in "Pre-installed" folder or a maximum of 160 melodies downloaded from sites and Internet websites located in the "Inbox" or your original folder.
i-motion	: Select an i-motion downloaded into the FOMA terminal from the "Inbox", "Camera" or your original folder. When a call comes in, sounds and movies are played in accordance with the selected i-motion (Chaku-motion function). Chaku-motion function →p.200
Voice announce	: Select a ring tone from "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" recorded with the "Voice announce" function. When a call comes in, your recorded voice plays.
Random melody	: Select a folder in which melodies are saved. When a call comes in, the stored melodies are randomly selected and played.
OFF	: No ring tone sounds.

4 Select a melody to be set as a ring tone.

Highlight the melody to play it. Press any key of [0], [1], [*], [#], [Play] or [Stop] to stop.

When selecting i-motion

Press [Play] to play the selected i-motion.

Pre-installed ring tone/melody list

Display
Pattern 1-3
Melody 1
Melody 2
Melody 3
Melody 4
Melody 5
Melody 6
Melody 7
Melody 8
Melody 9
Melody 10

Display
Alarm 1
Alarm 2
Alarm 3
Alarm 4
Alarm 5
Alarm 6
Alarm 7
Alarm 8

Recording License No.: T-0400180 JASRAC

Pre-installed Chaku-motion list

Display
Dare To Dream*

Music: Provided by Toryumon Corporation

* This Chaku-motion is stored in the "Inbox" folder in "i Motion". If you have deleted this Chaku-motion, you can download it from "iMenu" - "メニューリスト" - "ケータイ電話メーカー" - "みんなNらんど" to restore the Chaku-motion.

NOTE

- You can only set the preset ring tone while the "PIM lock" is set. The preset Chaku-motion cannot be set.
- When you receive a call during "PIM lock", if the ring tone is set to data or file other than pre-installed ring tones, the ring tone of the default setting sounds.
- When the vibration pattern is set to "Melody linkage" in "Vibrator", if a melody with vibration pattern specified is set to the ring tone, the FOMA terminal vibrates in accordance with the pattern of the melody. However, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate in accordance with Chaku-motion.
- When the flashing pattern is set to "Melody linkage" in "Illumination", if a melody with illumination pattern specified is set to the ring tone, the incoming call lamp flashes in accordance with the pattern of the melody. Chaku-motions do not operate with the Illumination.
- If "Set as ring tone" is set in the "Melody" function menu, the same setting applies to "Ring tone" of the "Select ring tone". →p.366
- If "Ring tone" for "Phone" and "Video-phone" are set in the "i-Motion" function menu, the same setting applies to "Phone" and "Video-phone" of the "Select ring tone". →p.351
- When data or a file with the "FOMA card operational restriction function" (p.48) set is set to the ring tone, if you remove the FOMA card or replace it with another one, the ring tone setting is reset to the default setting (The settings such as the ring tones will not change, so if you put the FOMA card back in, your set ring tone will play again).
- The ring volume that sounds during ring tone selection is the same volume as set in the "Ring volume" for "Phone/Video-phone" or "Mail/Message". If the "Ring volume" is set to "Silent", no ring tone sounds.
- The play part may have already been specified in the melodies with "♩" or "♩". If it is set to a ring tone, etc. only the specified part will be played.
- The i-motion unavailable for a ring tone is grayed out.
- If you set i-motion having an image and sound to the ring tone, an image set in "Display setting" is not displayed but the i-motion image is displayed.
- The ring tone for voice calls with no caller ID, you can set it in the "Call setting w/o ID". The ring tone for the videophone call with no caller ID is subject to the "Video-phone" setting of this function.
- When the functions of the mail ring tone are set at the same time, they are prioritized as follows. ① has the highest priority.
  ① The mail ring tone of the Utilities
  ② The mail ring tone of the Group Utilities
  ③ The mail ring tone of the Select ring tone

Adjusting the Ring Volume

Default setting | **Phone/Video-phone: Level 4 Mail/Message: Level 4**

You can adjust the ring volume that notifies you incoming voice/videophone calls, mail or Msg. Request/Free to any of 6 different levels. You can also mute the ring tone or set it to gradually ring louder (Step).

- You cannot adjust the ring volume during an incoming call.
- The ring volume for the “Phone/Video-phone” set by this function also applies to the volume of the “i Motion”, “Melody”, “Select ring tone” for voice/videophone calls, the alarm tone for “Schedule” or “ToDo”, melody play upon downloading from the site.
- The ring volume for “Mail/Message” set by this function also applies to sound volumes that can be heard from the list of ring tones including the “Select ring tone” for mail and Msg. Request/Free and the “Mail ring tone” in the Utilities.

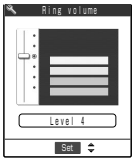
1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call ” ▶ “Ring volume”.

2 Select the item you want to set.

To adjust the ring tone for incoming voice/videophone calls
Select “Phone/Video-phone”.

To adjust the ring tone for incoming i-mode mail, SMS, Msg. Request/Free and packet communication
Select “Mail/Message”.

3 Adjust the ring volume.



To increase the volume by one level
Press ○.

To lower the volume by one level
Press ○.

To set up Step Tone (to turn up the tone gradually)
Press ○ at Level 6.
If you receive an incoming call during the Step Tone setting, the ring volume becomes louder every 3 seconds from Silence, Level 1 to 6.

To silence the ring tone
Press ○ at Level 1.
If the setting is silent, no ring tone will sound.

You can check which functions have been set to “Silent” by the icon displayed on the standby display.
: Set to “Phone/Video-phone” only
: Set to “Mail/Message” only
: Set to both “Phone/Video-phone” and “Mail/Message”

NOTE

- Even if the ring volume is set to step tone, an i-motion set as ring tone (Chaku-motion) is played at fixed volume (Level 2).

Editing Sound Effect to i-motion Playback Sound

Default setting	ON

You can perform the setting to add a sound effect to i-motion when it is played or it is played as a Chaku-motion during an incoming call.

- When this function is on, you can hear edited sounds such as “crisp and distortion-free sound of instruments and voices” from the speakers and “natural stereophonic sound”, “rich bass sound” and/or “crisp and distortion-free sound of instruments and voices” from the earphones.
- The setting of this function is applied when the i-motion for which “”, “”, “” (blue note) is displayed before the title is set as a ring tone and the i-motion is played. →p.369

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “SRS_WOW setting”.

To set sound effect
Select “ON”.

To cancel the sound effect setting
Select “OFF”.

Using Vibration to Notify You Incoming Calls and Alarm

Default setting	OFF

You can set each vibration pattern for incoming voice calls, videophone calls, mails, Msg. Request and Msg. Free.

- When the manner mode is set to “Original” and the vibrator in the “Original” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Vibrator”.

2 Select the item for which you want to set the vibrator.

3 Select the vibration pattern.

Highlight the vibration pattern. The FOMA terminal vibrates in the highlighted pattern.
Pattern 1 to 3 : The FOMA terminal vibrates in a specific pattern.
Melody linkage : The FOMA terminal vibrates in accordance with the pattern of the melody set to the ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is set to the melody or i-motion is set to the ring tone, the terminal vibrates in Pattern 2.
OFF : The FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
The icon at the standby display indicates the items where the vibrator is set.
: Indicates that the vibrator is set to a voice call and videophone call.
: Indicates that the vibrator is set to mail.
: Indicates that the vibrator is set to a voice call, videophone call and mail.
Vibrator settings for Msg. Request/Free cannot be confirmed with icons.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When “Mail/Msg. ring time” is set to “OFF”, no “” appears and the FOMA terminal does not vibrates for incoming mail, Msg. Request/Free.
- When the sound effect of the Flash image emits, even if the vibrator is set, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- If you have set the vibrator to ON, be careful that the FOMA terminal will not approach fire (e.g. a heater) or fall from a desk due to vibration for incoming calls.

Recording/Playing a Ring Tone or Hold Tone

You can record your voice and set it as an original ring tone or answer message.

- You can record 2 voice messages: “Voice announce 1” and “Voice announce 2”.
- The maximum recording time is about 15 seconds.
- You can set your voice messages recorded with this function for the following functions:
  - · Ring tone
  - · Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID
  - · On hold tone
  - · Holding tone
  - · Answer message for Record message
  - · Alarm tone for Alarm clock
  - · Alarm tone for Schedule
  - · Alarm tone for ToDo

※ : “Melody” can also play recorded voice. →p.365

Recording voice data

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Voice announce”.**

2 **Select the item you want to record.**

3 **Select “Record” to start recording your voice.**

A short beep sounds and recording starts. Talk to the mouthpiece. A short beep sounds again about 5 seconds before the recording time (about 1 to 15 seconds) ends.
When recording ends, a short double beep “pippi” sounds, “Recording” disappears and the previous display reappears.

To cancel the recording after it has started

Press ● [Stop], CLR or 電話/PUSH.
If you press 電話/PUSH during recording, the standby display reappears, but the recorded voice is saved.

NOTE

- When there is recorded voice data, a message notifying you that the voice data has already been recorded appears. If you select “YES” and record new voice data, the existing voice data is overwritten.
- If you receive a voice/videophone call or an alarm for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo”, or you use other functions during recording, the recording stops.

Playing recorded voice data

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Voice announce”.**

2 **Select the item you want to play.**

3 Select “Play” to start playing voice data.

To cancel the playing after it has started
Press ● [Stop], CLR or PWR HOLD.

To delete voice data
Select “Erase”.

To set whether to emit the start tone before alarm notification
Select “Set start tone”.
Specify whether or not to emit (ON/OFF) the start tone before alarm notification.
If “ON” is set, “★” is displayed and a short double beep “pipip” sounds before the recorded voice plays as an alarm tone for the “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo”.

NOTE

- If you delete the voice data set to the ring tone, alarm tone, answer message or hold tone, the setting of each function returns to the default setting. In case of “Melody”, the program editing data will be deleted.

Keypad sound

Turning Off the Keypad Sound

Default setting	ON

You can mute the keypad sound when the key is pressed to avoid disturbing other people around you.

- When the Keypad sound function is set to “OFF”, the following tones will not sound:
  - Various alarm tones
  - Volume adjustment startup tone
  - Battery level indication tone
  - Snooze cancel tone for Alarm clock
- Regardless of this function setting, the following operations plays the keypad sound:
  - When you press [Memo/Check] with the FOMA terminal folded
  - When you take a picture/movie with the camera
  - When the low-battery alarm sounds
  - When the messages are played/ended (through the earpiece speaker)
  - When you start/stop recording a voice memo during standby (through the earpiece speaker)
  - When you start/stop recording your message with the Voice announce function (through the earpiece speaker)
- The volume of the Keypad sound will not change, regardless of the settings made at “Ring volume”.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Keypad sound”.

To sound the keypad sound
Select “ON”.

To turn the keypad sound off
Select “OFF”.

Charge sound

Setting the FOMA Terminal to Emit the Charge Sound

Default setting	ON

To avoid leaving the FOMA terminal with the power charged, you can set it to emit the charge sound “pippi” when charging starts and ends.

● Regardless of this function setting, the FOMA terminal does not emit the charge sound during the following situations:

- When a screen other than the standby display is displayed
- While the manner mode is set
- While the “Phone/Video-phone” in “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”
- While the driving mode is set
- When the power is off

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Charge sound”.**

To emit the charge sound
Select “ON”.

To turn the charge sound off
Select “OFF”.

Quality alarm

Setting Alarm Notification of a Bad Connection

Default setting	High tone

The FOMA terminal notifies you with an alarm tone immediately before a call is to be disconnected due to an exceedingly weak radio wave while you are talking on the voice call. It is useful for taking appropriate countermeasures such as moving to a place where radio wave conditions is good or ending the call and redialing with the other party’s permission before the call is disconnected.

● If radio wave condition suddenly becomes bad, a call may be disconnected with no alarm.

● This function does not work with a videophone call.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Quality alarm”.**

To not sound an alarm
Select “No tone”.

To sound a high-tone alarm
Select “High tone”.

To sound a low-tone alarm
Select “Low tone”.

Setting the Time for Ringing a Tone of Mail or Msg. Request/Free

Default setting	5 seconds

You can choose whether to set off ring tone when you receive mail or Msg. Request/Free (ON/OFF). If you choose ON, select length of time.

<Example: To set ring tone>

1 (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Mail/Msg. ring time”.

Current settings of Mail/Msg. ring time screen will be displayed.

2 Select the item and then select “ON”.

To turn off ring tone

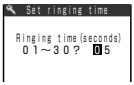
Select “OFF”.

When the ring tone is set to “OFF”, no ring tone, vibrator, blinking of multi-function keys or backlight is used for notifying you of mail or Msg. Request/Free reception. When the ring tone for mails is set to “OFF”, “S✉” or “S✉” is displayed on the screen. When the ring tone or Msg. Request/Free is set to “OFF”, those icons are not displayed.

To finish or cancel the setup

Press (CLR).

3 Enter length of ring time (01-30 seconds).



Use 2 digits to enter the length of time. For example, if you want to enter 1 to 9 seconds, press (0) first and then press the number ((1) to (9)).

If you enter a number other than 01 through 30, a message appears to inform you that the number is not acceptable.

Setting for Sounding Only from the Earphone <Optional>

Default setting	Earphone+Speaker

You can mute the speaker when the earphone/microphone with switch (optional), etc. is connected by “Earphone”.

- Even if you mute the speaker, both the earphone and the speaker emit the sound after a ring tone or an alarm tone for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” continue to sound for twenty seconds.
- Regardless of the FOMA terminal setting, the ring tone of the remote monitor and the shutter sound of the camera will be out of the speaker.
- When the earphone/microphone is connected, the speaker does not emit the sound even if you switched to the handsfree mode regardless of this function setting.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “External option” ▶ “Earphone”.

To hear the sound from both the earphone and the speaker

Select “Earphone+Speaker”.

To hear the sound only from the earphone

Select “Earphone”.

NOTE

- Even if this function is set to “Earphone”, the sound emits from the speaker when the earphone/microphone is not connected.
- When this function is set to “Earphone+Speaker”, if the earphone/microphone is inserted and extracted repeatedly, the quality of the sound emitted from the speaker may be changed.

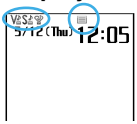
Turning Off Sounds Emitted by the FOMA Terminal

Manner mode provides a quick and convenient way of muting the FOMA terminal's ring tones and keypad sound to avoid disturbing people around you.

- Regardless of the manner mode setting, the shutter sound for taking a still image, the starting/ending sounds for recording movie and the Auto timer starting sound are emitted.
- In the manner mode, vibration is used in place of the following sounds:
  - Ring tone※
  - Alarm tones for Alarm clock, Schedule and ToDo※
  - Missed calls Tone/New mail tone when the FOMA terminal is folded.

  ※ : The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern specified in the "Vibrator" setting. If the "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".
- You can select any of the following 3 types of manner mode operation from the "Manner mode set": "Manner mode", "Super silent" and "Original". →p.133
- If the manner mode operation is set to "Original", the settings determine whether the alarm or tone sounds.
- Setting the Manner mode while a call is coming in →p.85

1 Hold down (#) for 1 second or more while the standby display is displayed or during a call.



The manner mode is set and "" appears.
While talking, a short double beep "pippi" sounds and a message is displayed notifying you that the manner mode is set.
While the manner mode is set, "" appears. In addition, the contents you have set in the "Manner mode set" also appears.

: Indicates that the "Vibrator" notifies you of an incoming call and mail.

: Indicates that the "Ring volume" has been set to "Silent".

: Indicates that the "Record message" has been set to "ON". The number indicates the number of messages recorded.

To cancel the manner mode

With the manner mode set, hold down (#) for 1 second or more while the standby display is displayed or during a call.
Manner mode is canceled and "" disappears.
While talking, a short double beep "pippi" sounds and a message is displayed notifying you that the manner mode is canceled.

Changing the Manner Mode Setting

Default setting | Manner mode

You can select the FOMA terminal operation of when the manner mode is set.

● The default setting for “Original” is as follows:

- Record msg. : OFF
- Mail vol. : Silent
- Keypad sound : OFF
- Vibrator : ON
- Alarm vol. : Silent
- Mic sensitiv. : Up
- Phone vol. : Silent
- VM tone : ON
- LVA tone : OFF

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Manner mode set”.

2 Select the item you want to set.

Proceed to step 3 when “Original” is selected.

Manner mode : Mutes all sounds emitted through the FOMA terminal’s speaker. The ring tone and other tones are notified with the vibrator (vibration). However, confirmation tones (when you press [Memo/Check] in the Voice memo or Play/Erase msg.) emitted through the earpiece speaker are not muted.

Super silent : Mutes all sounds emitted through the FOMA terminal’s speaker and confirmation tones emitted through the earpiece speaker. The ring tone and other tones are notified with the vibrator (vibration).

Original : You can customize the way the FOMA terminal operates in the manner mode. For example, you can specify in advance how the terminal responds to incoming calls in the manner mode and the alarm volume for the alarm clock.

3 Specify the setting for each item.

Record msg. : Specify whether the record message function activates (ON/OFF) when a call comes in. Record message →p.83

Vibrator : Specify whether to use the vibrator (ON/OFF) to notify you of incoming calls or alarms. Vibrator →p.127

Phone vol. : Set the ring volume for incoming voice/videophone calls. Ring volume →p.126

Mail vol. : Set the ring volume for incoming mail or Msg. Request/Free. Ring volume →p.126

Alarm vol. : Set the alarm volume for the alarm clock. Alarm clock →p.412

VM tone : Specify whether to mute confirmation tones (ON/OFF) for the “Record message” and “Voice memo”.

Keypad sound : Specify whether to mute the keypad sound (ON/OFF).

Mic sensitiv. : Specify whether to increase (Up/Normal) the sensitivity of the front mike during a call.

LVA tone : Specify whether to mute the Low-voltage alarm (ON/OFF).

4 Press [Finish] and set the original manner.

Continued on next page

In the manner mode

Each manner mode is set as follows:

	Manner	Super	Original
Low-voltage alarm	OFF		Setting value of “LVA tone” Even when this is set to “ON”, the Low-voltage alarm does not sound if the “Phone vol.” in this function is set to “Silent”.
Front mike sensitivity during a call※	Up		Setting value of “Mic sensitiv.”
Ring volume for voice and videophone calls	Silent		Setting value of “Phone vol.”
Ring volume for mail and Msg. Request/Free	Silent		Setting value of “Mail vol.”
Vibrator	ON		Setting value of “Vibrator”
Hold tone during a call or on hold	OFF		Setting value of “Phone vol.” If this is set to other than “Silent”, the tone sounds little.
Activating record message	Setting value of “Record message” (p.83) of “Accessory”		Setting value of “Record msg.” of this setting
Missed calls tone/New mail tone when the FOMA terminal is folded	OFF		Setting value of “Phone vol.” If this is set to “Step”, the tones sound at a constant volume.
Keypad sound	OFF		Setting value of “Keypad sound”
Alarm tone for alarm clock	Silent		Setting value of “Alarm vol.”
Alarm tone for schedule/ ToDo	Silent		Setting value of “Phone vol.”
Starting/ending sounds for voice memo or record message	ON	OFF	Setting value of “VM tone”

※ : When the Mic sensitiv. is set to Up, your voice can be heard clearly by the other party even when you speak quietly during a call. However, when filming movies with the “Camera”, the mike sensitivity is set to “Normal”.

NOTE

- When you have set the vibrator notification for events that occurred in the Manner mode, be careful that the incoming call vibration does not cause the FOMA terminal to move near a flame (e.g. a heater) or fall from a desk by accident.
- You cannot set the ringing time for Record message in the Original Manner mode. When you set “Record message” to “ON” in the Original manner, the ringing time for the Record message event is the time set in “Record message” in Accessory (p.83). However, if the “Record message” in Accessory is set to “OFF”, the ringing time is 8 seconds.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Using the Desktop Icons

You can paste a phone number or function frequently used as a desktop icon on the standby display. The desktop icons allow you to display a phone number or call up a function with a quick operation.

- The icons you can paste on the desktop are as follows:
  - Phone number, Mail address, URL, Melody, Image, Movie, i-motion, Chara-den and i-αppli software
  - Camera, ToDo list screen, Bar code reader, Dictionary and each function in the Original menu
- You can paste up to 15 desktop icons.
- You cannot paste a melody or image pre-installed in the FOMA terminal or an original animation on the desktop.

Pasting desktop icons

<Example: Pasting phone numbers in the phonebook>

1 Display the phone number you want to set.

How to search the phonebook →p.114

When multiple phone numbers are stored in a single phonebook

Press ○ to display the desired phone number.

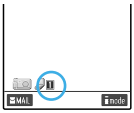
When pasting a phone number from the "Received calls", "Dialled calls" or "Redial"

Highlight the phone number you want to display on the list screen or display the detailed screen.

2 Select "Add desktop icon" from the function menu.

A message is displayed asking you whether to paste the desktop icon.

3 Select "YES".



NOTE

- You cannot paste a phone number from a phonebook which is stored as a secret data.
- You cannot paste a phone number, mail address, URL, image, movie or i-motion saved in the miniSD memory card as a desktop icon.
- During "PIM lock", you cannot check the details of a desktop icon, edit a title, delete a desktop icon or reset a desktop.

Continued on next page

Pasting other desktop icons

Mail address

To paste the mail address in the phonebook

Display the details screen of the mail address you want to paste.

To paste the received mail sender or sent mail destination

Display the mail details screen of the received mail sender or sent mail destination you want to paste.

The sender's address with "Fm" cannot be pasted.

To paste the mail address in the received address list or sent address list

Highlight the mail address you want to paste on the list screen.

SMS address (phone number)

To paste the received SMS sender or sent SMS destination

Display the mail details screen of the received mail sender or sent mail destination you want to paste.

To paste the SMS address in the received address list or sent address list

Highlight the SMS address you want to paste on the list screen.

SMS address cannot be pasted from a phonebook.

URL

To paste a URL of a site

Display the page you want to paste its URL.

To paste a bookmark URL

Highlight the title you want to paste on the bookmark list screen.

To paste a URL in the URL history

Highlight the URL you want to paste on the URL history screen.

Up to 256 characters can be pasted for one URL.

If the URL of a site that contains images or melodies is pasted, it may not be possible to display this site from the desktop icon.

Image, movie, i-motion, melody and Chara-den data

Highlight the image you want to paste on the "Image" list screen.

Highlight the movie or i-motion you want to paste on the "i-Motion" list screen.

Highlight the melody you want to paste on the "Melody" list screen.

Highlight the Chara-den you want to paste on the "Chara-den" list screen.

i-αppli software

Highlight the software you want to paste on the software list screen.

"Camera" function

Display the camera menu screen.

"ToDo" list

Display the "ToDo" list screen.

"Bar code reader" function

Display the "Bar code reader" list screen.

"Dictionary" function

Display the "Dictionary" list screen.

"Original menu"

Display the "Original menu" addition screen.

Select "Add desktop icon" from the function menu.

Title of pasted desktop icons

Icon displayed	Type	Title
	Phone number	Name stored in phonebook (if not, phone number)
	Mail address	Name stored in phonebook (or mail address if the name is not stored or pasted from the mail detail screen)
SMS	SMS address	Name stored in phonebook (or phone number if the name is not stored or pasted from the mail detail screen)
	URL	Page title (if not, URL without “http://” or “https://” is displayed)
	Melody	Melody title (if not, “Melody”)
	Image	Image title (if not, “Image”)
	Movie or i-motion	Movie or i-motion title (if not, “i-motion”)
	Chara-den	Chara-den title (if not, “Chara-den”)
	i-αppli software	Software name
	Camera	Each function name
	ToDo	
	Bar code reader	
	Dictionary	
	Original menu	

※ : When a desktop icon is selected, the first 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters will be displayed for the title.

Calling up the data or function from desktop icons

1 Press ● while the standby display is displayed.

2 Position the cursor over the desktop icon you want to use.



The desktop icon title at the cursor point is displayed.

If there are more than 6 desktop icons stored

You will see “◁ ▷” on both sides of the display. Press ◎ to scroll across the desktop icons.

3 Press ● [Select].

: The dialed other party’s phone number that is pasted is displayed. Press ☎ or 📹 to make a voice call or videophone call.

: The New mail composing screen is displayed with the pasted mail address entered. →p.248

: The New SMS composing screen is displayed with the pasted SMS address (phone number) entered. →p.302

: The page is displayed by connecting to that pasted URL site. →p.205

: The pasted melody is played with the “Melody”. →p.365

: The pasted image is displayed with the “Image”. →p.338

: The pasted movie or i-motion is played with the “i Motion”. →p.349

: The pasted Chara-den is played with the “Chara-den”. →p.359

: The pasted i-αppli software started. →p.315

: The “Camera” is started. →p.170

Continued on next page

: The “ToDo” list screen is displayed. →p.421
: The “Bar code reader” is started. →p.193
: The “Dictionary” is started. →p.434
: The “Original menu” is displayed. →p.43

NOTE

- When “PIM lock” is on, you will see no desktop icon for phone number, mail addresses, SMS addresses, URLs, melodies, images, movies or i-motions, Chara-dens, or i-αpplis. Cancel “PIM lock” to bring them back.
- The pasted data can only be played or displayed from the melody, image, movie, i-motion, Chara-den or i-αppli desktop icons.
- If you paste data, such as a melody or image, as a desktop icon and delete the original data, you cannot also call it up from the desktop icon.

Checking the information of a desktop icon

You can check information such as the detail and title you have pasted on the desktop icons.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Desktop icon”.**

2 **Select the desktop icon title you want to check.**

NOTE

- On the desktop icon details screen, press to scroll the screen and check all the URL.

Changing the title of a desktop icon

You can change the title you have pasted on the desktop icons.

- Your title can be up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. However, the title that will be displayed when you select the desktop icon will only be up to the first 11 full-pitch characters or 22 half-pitch characters.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Desktop icon”.**

2 **Highlight the title you want to change and select “Edit title” from the function menu.**

3 **Change the title.**

Entering characters →p.502

NOTE

- Even if the desktop icon title is changed, the title of the pasted original data remains unchanged. Moreover, even if the original data title is changed, the desktop icon title remains unchanged.

Deleting a desktop icon pasted on the standby screen

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Desktop icon”.

2 Highlight the desktop icon you want to delete and select “Delete this” from the function menu.

When you want to delete all
Select “Delete all”.

Resetting the desktop icons to the default setting <Reset desktop>

You can delete all the desktop icons other than the camera desktop icon, which is included at the time of purchase.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Desktop icon”.

2 Select “Reset desktop” from the function menu.

Information notified by the desktop icons

A desktop icon appears to notify you of information such as an incoming new mail. You can make an access to the related function with the same operation as a pasted desktop icon.

Icon	Information	What is displayed/started after operation	See page
New	Notifies you that there is a new mail.	The received mail list screen in the Inbox containing the latest mail will appear.	p.268 p.305
Miss	Notifies you that there is a missed call.	The “Missed calls” will appear.	p.76
Msg	Notifies you that there is a recorded message.	The “Play/Erase msg.” will be started.	p.85
VM	Notifies you that there is a voice mail stored in the voice mail service center.	The “Voice mail” will be started.	p.446
Miss	Notifies you that there is a missed alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or ToDo.	The latest missed alarm information will appear.	p.411
Not run	Notifies you that an i-αppli software could not automatically startup.	The Auto start info screen will appear.	p.322
APPLI	Notifies you that i-αppli standby screen was abnormally ended.	The Security error history will appear.	p.329
UPDATE	Notifies you that the “Software update” has completed.	After entering the security code, the update result display screen will appear.	p.585

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Even when the "VM" is not displayed, you may have some messages left in the Voice Mail Service Center.
- Selecting "Miss" displays the "Missed calls" record and an icon shows whether it was a voice call or a videophone call that you missed.
  For details about the icons displayed in the missed calls record. →p.77
- When the "PIM lock" is set while "New", "Msg", "Miss", "Notnm", "APPLI" are displayed, these desktop icons disappear, but the icons will reappear after canceling the "PIM lock".
  If you receive a mail during PIM lock, "New" will appear after canceling the PIM lock.
- To delete a desktop icon notifying information, hold down CLR for 1 second or more. (This clears only the icon but the contents are not deleted.)
- The desktop icons notifying information are not deleted even though the power is turned off, but deleted when the battery pack is removed.
- If you access from each desktop icon to each function or from the menu to each function, the desktop icon disappears. However, "Msg" do not appear unless the record message is played or erased.

Changing the Standby Display

Default setting	Stand-by display: Dolphin Wake-up display: crest Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard Checking: Standard

You can set your favorite image such as a photographed still image or downloaded image on the display.
You can set an image as follows:

Item (Display)	What can be stored
Stand-by display	Set a calendar or image※ to be displayed on the standby display. You can also set a movie, i-motion or i-αppli standby display, or set no image (OFF).
Wake-up display	Set a message or image※ to be displayed when the power is turned on. You can also set no message/image (OFF).
Dialing	Set an image※ to be displayed when you make a voice/videophone call.
Calling	Set an image※ to be displayed when you receive a voice/videophone call.
Mail sending	Set an image※ to be displayed when you send a mail.
Mail receiving	Set an image※ to be displayed when you receive a mail or Msg. Request/Free.
Checking	Sets an image※ to be displayed when you perform the Check messages, the Check new message or the Check new SMS.

※ : In addition to a still image, an animation and an original animation are also available.

- Images, movies and i-motions stored in a miniSD memory card cannot be set in this function.

Setting the display for the standby display

- You cannot select a "Calendar" when the date and time is not set in "Set local time".

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Display" ▶ "Display setting".**

2 **Select "Stand-by display".**

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

3 Select the item you want to set.

To display no image
Select “OFF”.

To display a calendar
Select “Calendar”.
Select “Background”/“No background”.
When you set to “Background”, select a background image.
How to select an image →p.338

To display an image
Select “Image” and select an image.
How to select an image →p.338

To display a movie or i-motion
Select “i Motion” and select a movie or i-motion.
Some i-motion may not be available for the display.
How to select a movie/i-motion →p.349

To set the i-αppli standby display
Select “i-αppli” and select software.
When “i-αppli” is set, “★” appears.
For the details of “i-αppli standby display” →p.325

When the calendar is set to the standby display
The calendar appears on the standby display. You can check the previous or next month calendar or set your schedule with a quick operation.

To check the previous or next month calendar
While the standby display is displayed, press ● or slide ● to have the pointer on a calendar so that you can select the calendar. Press ● [Select] again or select the calendar with the pointer. Then press ○ to display the previous month calendar or ○ to display the next month calendar.
When a “Desktop icon” has been pasted on the standby display, pressing ● [Select] selects the Desktop icon or calendar used last. If the Desktop icon is selected, select the calendar. And press ● [Select] again or select the calendar with the pointer. Then press ○ or ○ to display the previous or next month calendar.

When you want to start up Schedule function.
Select a calendar and press ● [Select] to start the Schedule function, so that you can enter the schedules for the displayed month.

Public holidays are based on the “国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律（平成13年法律第59号）(Law Partially Revising the National Holidays Law and Old-Age Welfare Law)”.

NOTE

- When a Pre-installed animation or an animation stored in the Image is set and the FOMA terminal is opened, the first frame of the animation appears as the standby display. However, in case of SWF※, pressing either CLR or POWER stops playing the animation and the stopped animation is displayed as a standby display.
  ※：SWF is a file format of Flash image. →p.207
- If a movie and i-motion is your standby display, that movie or i-motion will be played when you open your FOMA terminal. Press CLR or POWER to stop playing the movie or i-motion. Also, when the terminal is set to the manner mode, you will only see the image. During movie/i-motion replay, icons that are supposed to be displayed in the second line on the standby display such as “”, “” and “”, clocks, and desktop icons are not displayed.
- You cannot use the “Phone To function”, “Mail To function” and “Web To function” from the i-motion standby display.
- When “Automatic display” is set, the setting of “Automatic display” is given priority over this function. Opening the FOMA terminal displays no image.
- The setting of “i-αppli standby display” is given priority over this function setting if the “i-αppli standby display” is set.
- If you delete an image, movie or i-motion that is set to the standby display, the standby display setting will be cancelled and returned to the initial setting.
- The size of image that can be set is up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high. You can use an image of 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high and of 1280 dots wide x 960 dots high to set under this function by reducing the image size through “Trim away” (p.347).

Setting the display for the Wake-up display

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Display setting”.

2 Select “Wake-up display”.

3 Select the item you want to set.

To display no image
Select “OFF”.

To display a message
Select “Message” and enter a message.
Up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters can be entered.
Entering characters →p.502

To display an image
Select “Image” and select an image.
How to select an image →p.338

Setting an image for incoming/outgoing calls or mail

1 Select ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Display setting”.

2 Select the item for which you want to set an image.

Dialing : It will set the image displayed when you make a voice/videophone call.
Calling : It will set the image displayed when you receive a voice/videophone call.
Mail sending : It will set the image displayed when you send an i-mode mail or SMS.
Mail receiving : It will set the image displayed when you receive an i-mode mail, SMS, Msg. Request/Free.
Checking : It will set the image displayed when you perform the Check messages, the Check new message or the Check new SMS.

3 Select the item you want to set.

If there are your original folders, you can select an image from them.
How to select an image →p.338

To check the image
Highlight the item to be checked and press [Play].
Press CLR to return to the list screen of images.

NOTE

● If the Called settings confront with each other, the priority of the image displays is as follows. ① has the highest priority. However, if an i-motion operates as a ring tone, the i-motion will appear.
① i-motion set in the phonebook registration image
② The incoming call image of the Utilities
③ The incoming call image of the Group Utilities
④ The image of the phonebook registration image
⑤ “Display setting”

Displaying the Image Set in the Phonebook at Incoming Calls

Default setting	ON

When you receive a voice call or videophone call from a telephone number registered with a still image or movie, you can set whether or not to display the image.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Disp. phonebook image”.

To display the image stored in the Phonebook
Select “ON”.

To display the image set in “Display setting”
Select “OFF”.

NOTE

- If the Called settings confront with each other, the priority of the image displays are as follows. ① has the highest priority. However, if an i-motion operates as a ring tone, the i-motion will appear.
  - ① i-motion set in the phonebook registration image
  - ② The incoming call image of the Utilities
  - ③ The incoming call image of the Group Utilities
  - ④ The image of the phonebook registration image
  - ⑤ “Display setting”
- Regardless of the settings made in this function, you will not see any images on the secret data (p.161) phonebook.
- When the caller does not notify the phone number, the image is not displayed.

Setting How to Display the Image Window

Default setting	Setting: ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Analog 1 (Pictograph: ON) Image set: Pre-install (Dolphin) Called: ON (Image+phone number) Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Display light: OFF)

You can set the message display, wallpaper and clock display on the image window.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Image window”.

2 Select how you want the display.

ON : Sets the image window settings.
OFF : The image window displays nothing.

3 Specify the setting for each item.

Stand-by : Sets to fix/not fix items to be displayed on the image window (ON/OFF). When “ON” is set, the display light of the image window does not lights up when a call, etc., comes in. The image window does not display the incoming message or the animation for an alarm notification.
Clock type : Sets the type of clock to display and the pictograph display of icons including the battery icon (ON/OFF). When “local&remote” is selected, the time set in “Set remote time” in the standby screen of Image window.
Image set : Sets the background image to the image window ON/OFF. When “ON” is set, you can select one image as the image window’s background from the images in the “Pre-installed” folder, pictures (images) taken with the built-in cameras and downloaded images.
Called : Sets display/not display of the caller’s phone number when a call comes in (ON/OFF). When “ON” is set, you can select a display pattern from “Image+phone number”, “Image” and “Phone number”.

Continued on next page

Mail : Sets display/not display of the sender, sent date and time and subject when a mail comes in (ON/OFF).

Connection : Sets display/not display of an image or animation indicating the connection status when a voice/videophone call comes in, or during a voice/videophone call, Infrared exchange or data communication (ON/OFF). When “ON” is set, you can further set the display light ON/OFF.

NOTE

- When “Called” is set to “ON”, the caller’s name (stored name) and the icon are displayed if the caller’s phone number is stored in the phonebook. If an image is registered or “Image” is set to “Utilities” (Phonebook or Group), the image is displayed when a call comes from the caller registered in the Phonebook. When the caller does not notify his/her caller ID, the reason for no caller ID appears. If “Called” is set to “OFF”, “Calling” is displayed.
- When you receive a new mail, “Received message” appears. Depending on the “Mail” setting, the display changes as follows:
  - When the “Mail” is set to “ON”
    “Received message” is displayed with the sender’s mail address, sent date and time, and subject for a while and then the display changes to the “New mail” icon. Pressing [Home] displays the sender’s mail address, sent date and time and subject again. If you press [Home] once again, the display returns to the standby display. When the sender’s mail address is stored in the phonebook, the sender identification is displayed by the (stored) name. When there are multiple received mails, the sender’s mail address or name, sent date and time, and subject for the latest 3 mails are displayed (p.37). However, when you receive a mail in a folder with “Security” setting from a sender whose address is set for “Auto-sort”, the sender’s identification, sent date and time, and subject are not displayed.
  - When “Mail” is set to “OFF”
    “Received message” is displayed for a while and then the display changes to the “New mail” icon. Even if you press [Home], the sender’s mail address, sent date and time, and subject are not displayed.
- The “New mail” icon will also disappear if you erase the “New” in desktop icon.
- If [Home] is pressed when receiving a mail from the sender who has been stored in the phonebook as secret data in the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”, the sender (name), the subject and the received date and time are displayed. The sender (mail address), the subject and the sent date and time are displayed for the usual time.
- The clock display of “Analog 1-2” set under “Clock type” is for reference.
- When “αImage disp.” is set to “Depend on software”, if you further set an i-αppli supporting image window display setting to the standby display, the image window follows the i-αppli software’s display settings.
- When “Stand-by” is set to “ON”, icons such as “Missed call” or “New mail” are not displayed. Animations for alarm notification of “Schedule”, “Alarm clock” and “ToDo” are not displayed either.
- The display light ON/OFF setting for the image window is subject to the “Lighting” setting in “Display light”. While charging with the external power source such as an AC adapter, the display light setting for the image window is subject to the “Charging” setting in “Display light”.
- Even when “Lighting” under “Display light" is set to “OFF” to keep the display light of the image window off, if you set “Connection” to “ON” and “Display light” to “ON” in this function, the display light of the image window lights when a voice/video call comes in or during a call, Infrared exchange session or data communication.
- If you set “Clock type” to “Digital 1” or “Digital 2” under this function, the setting of “Clock display” becomes active for the display style and size.

Setting Whether to Turn On/Off the Display Light for the Display and Keys

Default setting	Lighting: ON+Saver (Light time: 5 minutes) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2

You can set how the display light for the display, image window and keypad is turned on/off. You can set the following items:

Purpose	Item		Description
Display light on/off setting	Lighting	ON	When the FOMA terminal is opened, the display light for the display and keypad※ is ON for about 15 seconds. When a call or mail comes in while the FOMA terminal is folded, the display light of the image window lights up.
		OFF	The display light for the display, image window and keypad is OFF.
	Charging	Standard	The same setting as “ON” for “Lighting”.
		All time ON	When the FOMA terminal is opened, the display light for the display and keypad※ is ON all the time. While the FOMA terminal is folded, the display light of the image window lights up.
Power saver mode setting	Power saver mode (Set from the “Lighting” setting)	ON	After the specified light time elapses, the standby display and the image window is turned off (Power saver mode).
		OFF	The power saver mode will not be activated.
Display light area setting	Area	LCD+Keys	The display light for the display, image window and keypad is ON.
		LCD	The display light for the display and image window is ON.
Display light brightness setting	Brightness		Selects from “Level 1” (dark), “Level 2” (normal) or “Level 3” (bright).

※ : If the “Area” is set to “LCD”, the display light is OFF.

<Example: Setting the display light for the usual time>

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Display light”.**

2 **Select “Lighting”.**

To set the display light during charging
Select “Charging”.
Select the display light setting from “Standard”/“All time ON”.

To set the area where the display light is ON
Select “Area”.
Select the display light area from “LCD+Keys”/“LCD”.

To set the brightness of the display light
Select “Brightness”.
Select the brightness of the display light from “Level 1”, “Level 2” and “Level 3”.

Continued on next page

3 Select the item to be set.

To turn the display light on

Select “ON”.

Select the power saving mode from “Valid/Invalid” (ON/OFF).

If it is set to “ON”, you set up the time shifting to the power saving mode in the range between 02 and 20 minutes.

If you do not want to turn the display light on

Select “OFF”.

“” is displayed on the standby display.

NOTE

- During a videophone call, the “Display light” setting in the videophone is given priority.
- When the Power saver mode starts with the FOMA terminal opened, the display light for the display is turned off, and , , “Multi function key”, and flash at intervals of 5 seconds. Press keypad and the Power saver will be disabled.
- If the FOMA terminal goes into the Power saver mode while it is folded, the display light of the image window turns off.
- Even when “Charging” is set to “All time ON”, if no operation is made on the FOMA terminal for about 15 seconds, the display light only lights at the “Level1” brightness while charging, to maximize the charging efficiency.
- Even if you set “Charging” to “All time ON” and “Area” to “LCD+Keys” in charging during a videophone call, the display light for the keypad is turned off with no operation for about 15 seconds.
- Hold down 5 for 1 second or more to turn on/off the display light.
  However, you cannot switch on/off during character entry, videophone call, remote monitoring or running i-αppli.
  If you perform these operations during charging, the “Charging” setting in Display light setting will not be changed.
- When the standby display is displayed from the task menu while any of the menu functions is running, or when “i-αppli standby display” is set, the power saver mode is not activated.

Color pattern

Selecting the Display Color

Default setting | **Pattern 1**

You can select the display color pattern such as characters and background.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Color pattern”.

2 Select a color pattern.

While selecting a color pattern, the display color pattern changes to the selected color pattern.

NOTE

- Icons and images will not change even if this setting is changed. In addition, there are some data or functions, such as i-mode site screen, which have color pattern that will not change even if this setting is changed.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Setting the Incoming Call Lamp to Flash at Incoming Call

Default setting	Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Msg. Request: Color 1 Msg. Free: Color 1 Set pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1 to 12

You can set the flashing color and flashing pattern of the incoming call lamp that alerts you to incoming voice/videophone calls, mail or Msg. Request/Free. You can also change the flashing color name or adjust the color tone. You can set the following items:

Item		Description
Set color	Phone	Select the flashing color※1 of the incoming call lamp when a voice call comes in.
	Video-phone	Select the flashing color※1 of the incoming call lamp when a videophone call comes in.
	Mail	Select the flashing color※1 of the incoming call lamp when receiving i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication.
	Msg. Request	Select the flashing color※1 of the incoming call lamp when receiving Msg. Request.
	Msg. Free	Select the flashing color※1 of the incoming call lamp when receiving Msg. Free.
Set pattern	Standard	Set the incoming call lamp to flash in fixed intervals.
	Melody linkage	Set the incoming call lamp to flash in accordance with the melody※2.
Adjust color	Edit color name	Change the color name for Color 1 to 12.
	Adjust color tone	Adjust the color tone for Color 1 to 12.

※1：Select the flashing color from Color 1 to 12 or Gradation.
※2：When no flashing pattern is set to the melody or in the case of Chaku-motion, the incoming call lamp flashes in "Standard".

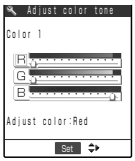
- The flashing pattern of , , and is the same as that of the incoming call lamp, but their flashing color is orange only.
- You can set a flashing color for incoming calls or mail from each specified phone number, mail address or group. →p.109

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Illumination".

2 Specify the setting for each item.

Set color:
Sets the flashing color of the incoming call lamp at incoming calls or mail.
Select the item which you want to set from "Phone", "Video-phone", "Mail", "Msg. Request" and "Msg. Free", and then set a flashing color.
While selecting a flashing color, the incoming call lamp flashes in the selected color.

Set pattern:
Select the flashing pattern of the incoming call lamp from "Standard" and "Melody linkage".



Adjust color:
Sets "Edit color name" and "Adjust color tone" for the incoming call illumination.
In "Edit color name", select a color you want to change and enter a new color name.
Up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters can be entered.
Entering characters →p.502
In "Adjust color tone", select a color you want to adjust and adjust its color tone. As the color types of Color 1 to 12 are different, they cannot be adjusted to the same color tone. The gradation cannot be adjusted.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When a voice message recorded with the “Voice announce” function is set to the ring tone, the incoming call lamp flashes in a fixed pattern regardless of this setting.
- When “Pattern 1”, “Pattern 2” or “Pattern 3” is set to the ring tone, the incoming call lamp flashes in accordance with the melody regardless of this setting.
- When remote monitoring is received, the flashing color is “Gradation” and the flashing pattern is “Standard” regardless of the settings of this function.
- When exchanging data between a miniSD memory card and FOMA terminal, the light will flash in “Color 5”, regardless of the settings made here.
- During charging and shooting, the lighting color and flashing color of the incoming call lamp is red regardless of the “Adjust color tone” setting.

Illumination in talk

Setting the Incoming Call Lamp to Flash During a Call

Default setting	OFF

You can set the flashing color of the incoming call lamp during a voice or videophone call.

- You can select the flashing color from seven kinds of colors and three kinds of gradations.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Illumination in talk”.**

2 **Select the flashing color you want to set.**

When you do not want to flash the lamp during the call

Select “OFF”.

Font

Changing the Font Setting

Default setting	Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

You can change character font displayed on the display or image window to your favorite font (typeface).

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Font”.**

2 **Select the item you want to set.**

To select the font type

Select “Type”.

Select font type between “Font 1/Font 2”.

Example of Font 1:

あいうABC123

Example of Font 2:

あいうABC123

To set the font thickness

Select “Thickness”.

Select the font thickness from “Thin”, “Medium” and “Bold”.

NOTE

- Characters which can be switched to “Font 2” are alphabets (full- and half-pitch), numbers (full- and half-pitch), hiragana, katakana (full- and half-pitch), some symbols, Greek characters and Russian characters only. All other characters such as kanji are displayed in “Font 1”. The characters of entered phone number and clock display and others cannot be switched to “Font 2”.
- Characters are displayed in “Thin” on the screens such as the i-mode site screen, the detail screen of the Deco-mail, the characters of the image window, and the i-αppli software screen regardless of the Font setting.

Setting the Clock Display

Default setting	Display: ON Size: Big Object: Local

You can set the clock display and change the clock display size and type in the standby display. You can also set the standby display to display no date and no time.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Clock” ▶ “Clock display”.

2 Select the item you want to set.

To set the way the clock display is displayed
Select “Display”.
Select the display from “ON” and “OFF”.

To set the clock display size
Select “Size”.
Select the display size from “Big” and “Small”.

To change the clock to display
Select “Object”.
Select the clock(s) to display from “Local” and “Local&Remote”.

NOTE

- If “Display” is set to “OFF”, when “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” is set, “ ” and “ ” which appear in the standby display are not displayed.
- You cannot set “Size: Big” in combination with “Object: Local&Remote”.
- If “Digital 1” or “Digital 2” is set to “Clock type” of “Image window”, the settings of this function are activated for how to display a clock in the image window, the size of the displayed clock, and so on.

Security Settings

■ **Security Settings**

Security Code in This FOMA Terminal 152

Changing Your Security Code ..... Change security code 153

Setting PIN Codes 153

Canceling PIN Lock 155

■ **Restricting Operations and Functions of a FOMA Terminal**

Lock Function 156

Preventing Other People from Using Your FOMA Terminal ..... All lock 156

Prohibiting Incoming/Outgoing Communication ..... Self mode 157

Locking the Functions such as Phonebook or Schedule ..... PIM lock 158

Prohibiting a Call by Dialing ..... Keypad dial lock 159

Preventing the Side Keys from Being Pressed Accidentally ..... Side keys guard 160

■ **Restricting Incoming/Outgoing Calls and Sending/Receiving Mails**

Setting the Redial or Received Call Record Display ..... Record display set 160

Preventing Other People from Seeing Your Phonebook and Schedule ..... Secret mode/Secret only mode 161

Keeping Other People from Viewing Your Mail in Inbox/Outbox ..... Security 163

Restricting Incoming/Outgoing Calls to/from Each Specified Number ..... Restrictions 164

Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID ..... Call setting w/o ID 166

Setting the Time Until the Ringing Operation Starts ..... Ringing time 167

Rejecting Calls from Caller Not Registered in the Phonebook ..... Reject unknown 168

■ **Other Security Settings**

Other Security Settings 168

Security Code in This FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal provides you with many convenient functions. To use some functions, you must enter the security code. Also, there is an i-mode password and NW security code that you will use in network services. Please set or activate them to suit your purpose to utilize the FOMA terminal.

- Note that if you forget any of these security codes, you will have to bring your FOMA terminal and your personal ID (e.g. your driver's license) to a DoCoMo service counter.
- To prevent unauthorized use by others, change these security codes (excluding the NW security code) to your desired numbers after purchase. Be sure to remember your new security codes by keeping a separate record.

Security code

A security code is a 4- to 8-digit security code that is required when setting a security function, deleting data, or resetting. You can change this code to the number of your choice using your FOMA terminal. →p.153

NW security code

The NW security code is a 4-digit security code used for the various network services and procedures at the DoCoMo e-site, and is set at the time of subscription. Avoid setting a NW security code that consists of easy-guessable numbers such as the last four digits of the phone number, and keep your NW security code confidential.
If you forget your NW security code, contact the DoCoMo Information Center indicated on the back cover of this manual. When signing up at a DoCoMo shop, we will need some identification such as a driver's license. If you already have a "User ID" and "Password", you can proceed through the DoCoMo e-site using PC.
※For details about the "DoCoMo e-site", see the back cover of this manual.

PIN <PIN1/PIN2 codes>

You can set PIN1 code and PIN2 code for the FOMA card.
For details of PIN1 code and PIN2 code, see p.153.

i-mode password

An i-mode password is a 4-digit password that you have to enter to register or delete sites from My menu, use message services, and to subscribe/cancel any paid i-mode services. See p.214 for details. At the time of purchase, the i-mode password is set to "0000" (four zeros) by default. You can change this number to the number of your choice.
In addition to your i-mode password, other information service providers may also require passwords of their own to use their services.

Session number

The session number is a 4-digit password to be used for all data transfer using infrared exchange or cable connection. Determine the 4-digit number before data transfer and enter the same number at the sending side and reception side.
Data transfer with the infrared exchange/cable connection →p.393

Changing Your Security Code

Default setting	0000 (four zeros)

To protect your important data stored in your FOMA terminal and enjoy your FOMA terminal more effectively, you can change your own security code (4- to 8-digit).

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Change security code”, and then enter the security code.

2 Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code.



A message is displayed asking you whether to change the security code.

3 Select “YES”.

To cancel the security code change

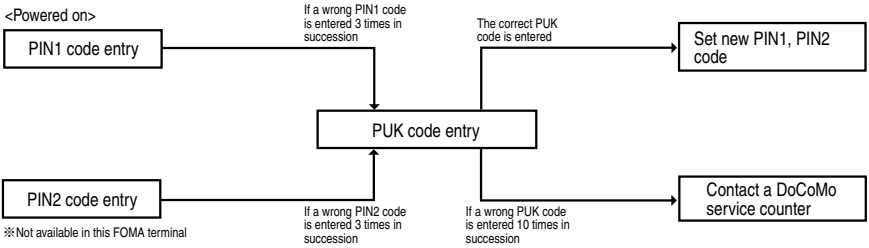
Select “NO”.

Setting PIN Codes

Default setting	PIN1 code: 0000 (four zeros) PIN2 code: 0000 (four zeros)　PIN1 code entry set: OFF

The PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) to be entered each time when the FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use of your FOMA card.

- The PIN2 code function is not available in this FOMA terminal.
- When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and use it by inserting your current FOMA card in it, you can keep your current PIN1 and PIN2 codes.
- The PIN1 code and PIN2 code are stored in the FOMA card.
- If you fail to enter PIN1 code/PIN2 code for a total of 3 times, the PIN will automatically be locked, and you cannot use the PIN code anymore. Be sure to keep a separate record of your codes in case you forget them.
- Your copy of the FOMA subscription application form contains your PUK code. A PUK code is an 8 digit number to cancel the PIN lock when PIN1 code/PIN2 code is locked.
- If the PUK code is entered incorrectly 10 times in succession, the FOMA card will be locked completely. Keep your copy of the FOMA subscription application form in a safe place.
- If you forget your PUK code or your FOMA terminal is completely locked, contact a DoCoMo service counter.



Setting the PIN1 code entry when the power is turned on <PIN1 code entry set>

To prevent any unauthorized use of your FOMA card, set the FOMA terminal to prompt to enter the PIN1 code when the power is turned on.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "PIN setting", and then enter the security code.**

2 **Select "PIN1 code entry set".**

3 **Select the item you want to set.**

To enter PIN1 code when the terminal is turned on
Select "ON".

To not enter PIN1 code when the terminal is turned on
Select "OFF".

If the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed after "ON" or "OFF" is selected, enter a 4- to 8- digit PIN1 code.

Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code

● To change the PIN1 code, "PIN1 code entry set" must be set to "ON".

<Example: Changing the PIN1 code number>

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "PIN setting" and enter security code.**

2 **Select "Change PIN1 code", and enter your current 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code.**



To change the PIN2 code
Select "Change PIN2 code", and enter your current 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code.

3 **Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code.**

To change the PIN2 code
Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code.

4 **Enter the new PIN1 code again.**

To change the PIN2 code
Enter the new PIN2 code again.

Entering the PIN1 Code When the Power is Turned On

When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON", turning on the power displays the PIN1 code entry screen. Enter your PIN1 code.

● Note that if you do not enter the PIN1 code and leave the entry screen displayed, you cannot use the FOMA terminal and the following operation is not available.

- Incoming voice and videophone calls
- Alarm notification for "Schedule" or "ToDo"
- Receiving mail and Msg. Request/Free
- Activating i-αppli software automatically
- Reserved update of software

1 Turn the FOMA terminal on.

2 Enter your 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code.



When the correct PIN1 code is entered, the standby display appears.

Canceling PIN Lock

If you enter a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code three times in the PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen, the PIN1/PIN2 code will be locked. In this case, cancel the PIN1/PIN2 code lock, and then set a new PIN1/PIN2 code.

● For the PUK code, check with (your copy of) the FOMA subscription application form supplied to you when you subscribe to the FOMA service.

<Example: Canceling the PIN1 code lock>

1 Enter the 8-digit PUK code.



2 Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code.

To cancel the PIN2 code lock

Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code.

3 Enter the new PIN1 code again.

To cancel the PIN2 code lock

Enter the new PIN2 code again.

Lock Function

The FOMA terminal has the lock function to prevent other people from using it without permission or viewing your phonebook and mail.
The functions you can set are as follows.

Purpose	Description	Function	See page
To prevent other people from using the FOMA terminal	Disables all operations except for turning the power ON/OFF and receiving the remote monitoring.	All lock	Below
To use the FOMA terminal without being concerned about an incoming voice or videophone call	Disables voice/videophone call dialing/ receiving, i-mode connection and mail transmission.	Self mode	p.157
To prevent other people from seeing or rewriting your private information	Disables the display and editing of private information such as “Phonebook”, “Schedule” and “Mail”. The “i-mode” and “i-αppli” software start-up are also disabled.	PIM lock	p.158
To prevent personal calls from being made	Disables call making and mail sending by dialing. Only phone numbers and mail addresses stored in the phonebook, Dialed calls and Sent address are available.	Keypad dial lock	p.159
To prevent unintentional key operation	Disables the side key functions.	Side keys guard	p.160
To prevent other people from seeing the dialed/ received call records	Disables the display of “Received calls”, “Dialled calls” and “Redial”.	Record display set	p.160
To prevent other people from viewing data such as “Phonebook” and “Schedule”	Stores data such as “Phonebook” and “Schedule” as secret data that cannot be called up unless the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode” is set and calls up such data (The “Secret only mode” calls up secret data only).	Secret mode/Secret only mode	p.161

All lock

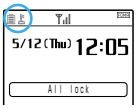
Preventing Other People from Using Your FOMA Terminal

Default setting | Canceled

When the All lock is set, all operations except for turning the power ON/OFF are unavailable. This function prevents other people from using your FOMA terminal without permission.

- During the All lock, you cannot make and receive voice/videophone calls.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel the All lock.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “All lock”, and then enter the security code.

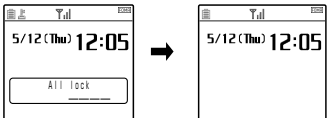


When the All lock is set, “All lock” and “ ” are displayed.
Security code →p.152

Canceling the All lock

● If you fail to cancel the All lock 5 times in succession, your FOMA terminal is turned off. However, you can turn it on again.

1 Enter the security code in the security code entry screen during the All lock and press ●.



The All lock is canceled and "" disappears.
Security code →p.152

NOTE

- During the All lock, you cannot make even an emergency call (e.g. 110, 119, and 118).
- If you set an animation for the standby display, only the first frame of the animation appears when the FOMA terminal is opened during the All lock.
- During the All lock, no ring tone sounds for incoming voice/videophone calls. After canceling the All lock, the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- "Remote monitor" is available even when All lock is on.
- When All lock is on, you will receive no alarm notification even if you set them in "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo". After you cancel All lock, you will see the desktop icon "Missed alarm" on the standby display.
- When the All lock is on, you can receive automatically the Msg. Request/Free, i-mode mails and SMS, but you will not see receiving display and the receiving result. Cancel the All lock and you will see the icon that indicates the type of message you have received.
- Even if you enter an incorrect security code when canceling the All lock setting, the error message is not displayed. Press [CLR] and enter the correct security code again.

Self mode

Prohibiting Incoming/Outgoing Communication

Default setting	Canceled

You can set to disable voice/videophone call dialing/receiving, i-mode connection and mail transmission. It is useful for using your FOMA terminal without concerning about an incoming voice or videophone call.

- If a voice or videophone call comes in during the Self mode, the caller hears an announcement informing that you are out of the service area or the power is off. When you are using the "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service, you can use these services in the same manner as when the FOMA terminal is turned off.
- During the Self mode, no desktop icons such as "Missed call" appears.
- During the Self mode, data communication with the Ir exchange or an external device is not possible.
- "Reset settings" cannot be performed during the Self mode.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel the Self mode.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Self mode".

A message is displayed asking you whether to execute setting.

2 Select "YES" and press ● [Select].

The Self mode will come on and you will see " self ".

To not set the Self mode

Select "NO".

To cancel the Self mode

Perform the same procedure as described above during the Self mode.
The self mode is canceled and " self " disappears.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Even if the “Self mode” is set, you can make a voice call to emergency numbers (e.g. 110, 119, and 118). The self mode is canceled when a voice call to an emergency number is made.
- If you perform a prohibited operation during the Self mode, a message indicating that the Self mode is being set appears.
- Msg. Request/Free and i-mode mail received during the Self mode are stored in the i-mode center, and SMS are stored in the SMS center instead. After canceling the Self mode, receive these Msg. Request/Free, i-mode mail and SMS stored in these centers by “Check new message” and “Check new SMS”.
- During the Self mode, some i-αppli software that requires communications may not work.

PIM lock

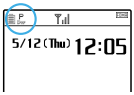
Locking the Functions such as Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting	Canceled

To prevent other people from seeing or rewriting your private information, you can lock the functions such as “Phonebook”, “Schedule” and “Mail”.

- When the PIM lock is set, “Received calls”, “Dialled calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” and “Sent address” up until the entry are all deleted. i-mode and i-αppli cannot activate as well. Phone numbers/mail addresses recorded after this function is set, however, the caller/sender’s name does not appear even if he/she is stored in the phonebook.
- You cannot use “Utilities”, “Restrictions”, name display for incoming/outgoing voice/videophone calls and “Automatic display” set to phonebook entries.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel the PIM lock.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “PIM lock”, and then enter the security code.



When the PIM lock is set, “ P ” appears. If “Keypad dial lock” is already set, “ P ” appears.
Security code →p.152

To cancel the PIM lock

Perform the same procedure as the setting during the PIM lock.
The PIM lock is canceled and “ P ” disappears.

NOTE

- If you perform a prohibited operation during the PIM lock, a message indicating that the PIM lock is being set appears.
- When the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, the PIM lock setting may become invalid. To prevent other people from using the phonebook, store data in the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”. →p.161
- When the PIM lock is on, you will receive no alarm notification even if you set them in “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” and “ToDo”. After you cancel the PIM lock, you will see the desktop icon “Missed alarm” on the standby display.
- When the PIM lock is on, you can automatically receive the Msg. Request/Free, i-mode mails and SMS, but you will not see receiving display and the receiving result. Cancel PIM lock and you will see the icon that indicates the type of message you have received.
- While the PIM lock is on, you cannot display or replay movie/i-motion files and melody, image and Chara-den files except for pre-installed files. When you have set a movie/i-motion file or a non pre-installed melody/image file to the ring tone or the standby display, the FOMA terminal operates following the initial setting while the PIM lock is on.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Prohibiting a Call by Dialing

Default setting	Canceled

When this function is set, voice or videophone calls by dialing with the keypad are prohibited. Dialing from previously stored "Phonebook" entries before setting keypad dial lock and from "Dialled calls" or "Redial" entries after setting keypad dial lock is possible. If the FOMA terminal is used for business, private use can be prevented by previously storing necessary phone numbers in the Phonebook and by setting this function.

- When "Keypad dial lock" is set existing, "Received calls", "Dialled calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address" are all deleted. However, "Received calls", "Dialled calls" and "Redial" for calls received/dialed and "Received address" and "Sent address" for mail received/sent after this function is set are recorded. For unsent mail stored with address and body entered, the address is deleted but the body is left. Unsent mail stored with the address only is deleted.
- While the Keypad dial lock is set, you cannot make a voice/videophone call or compose i-mode mail/SMS via the following functions/operations.
  - Dialing · Received call records · Received mail list · Mail member
  - Desktop icons · Bar code reader · "Record message" replay
- When the Keypad dial lock is on, the following operations cannot be done.
  - Storing/editing※/deleting Phonebook entries
    ※: Depending on the i-αppli DX (p.310), the names for group 01 to 19 in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (main unit) can be changed.
  - Using "Phone To" or "Mail To" functions
  - Entering mail addresses using keypads
  - Replying to mail addresses that are not stored in your phonebook
  - Phonebook data transfer using Ir exchange
  - Copy/Delete of the phonebook by "UIM operation"
  - Import of phonebook from miniSD memory card
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel the Keypad dial lock.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Keypad dial lock", and then enter the security code.



The Keypad dial lock is set and " D " appears. If the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" is already set, " D/S " appears. If the "PIM lock" is already set, " D/P " appears.
Security code →p.152

To cancel the Keypad dial lock

Perform the same procedure as described above for the Keypad dial lock.
The Keypad dial lock is canceled and " D " disappears.

NOTE

- Even if the Keypad dial lock is set, you can make a voice call to emergency numbers (e.g. 110, 119, and 118) by dialing with the keypad.
- If you perform a prohibited operation during the Keypad dial lock, a message indicating that the Keypad dial lock is being set appears.
- The FOMA card inserted while setting the Keypad dial lock enables storing of phonebook entries when it is inserted into another FOMA terminal. Note that calls can be made from the other FOMA terminal to phone numbers not stored in the phonebook.

Preventing the Side Keys from Being Pressed Accidentally

Default setting	OFF

The Side keys guard function is useful for preventing the side keys from being accidentally pressed when the FOMA terminal is folded and placed in your bag, etc..

- Under the following conditions, the side key function is enabled regardless of the setting made here. However, holding down [Memo/Check] for 1 second or more does not start up the camera.
  - When the FOMA terminal is open
  - When the earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal
  - When an external device such as a PC is connected to the external connector or "" is displayed on the display.
- The setting for Side keys guard remains unchanged even if the terminal power is turned off.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Side keys guard".

To enable the side key functions
Select "OFF".

To disable the side key functions
Select "ON".
" SIDE " appears on the standby display.

NOTE

- To switch between ON and OFF, press (Menu) and hold down for 1 second or more.
- When this function is set to "ON", you cannot check missed calls or new mail with your FOMA terminal folded even if the "Info notice setting" is set to "ON". In addition, you cannot check "Missed calls" as well.
- Even if this function is set to "ON", pressing the side key turns on the display light for the image window.
- When this function is set to "ON", you cannot take pictures (still images) (using the shutter and light) with your FOMA terminal folded.

Setting the Redial or Received Call Record Display

Default setting	Received calls: ON Redial/Dialled calls: ON

You can set your FOMA terminal not to display the "Received calls", "Dialled calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address". It is useful for preventing other people from viewing your dialed or received call records.

- Even after the FOMA terminal is set not to display record, the information of "Received calls", "Dialled calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address" are recorded.
- The settings for the Record display set remain unchanged even if the terminal power is turned off.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Record display set", and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152

To set the display of "Received calls" or "Received address"
Select "Received calls".
Select "display the Received calls/not display the received calls" (ON/OFF).

To set the display of "Redial", "Dialled calls" or "Sent address"
Select "Redial/Dialled calls".
Select "display the Redial/Dialled calls/not display the Redial/Dialled calls" (ON/OFF).

NOTE

- When “Received calls” is set to “OFF” and a call is missed, the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby display. If you try to display “Received calls” from the “Missed call” desktop icon, a message indicating you that the “Received calls” is set to “OFF” appears. In this case, the desktop icon does not disappear. To delete the “Missed call” desktop icon, hold down (CLR) for 1 second or more.
- Even while the “Received calls” is set to “OFF”, “Record message” can be played.

Secret mode/Secret only mode

Preventing Other People from Seeing Your Phonebook and Schedule

Default setting	Secret mode: Canceled Secret only mode: Canceled

You can store data such as data in the “Phonebook” and “Schedule” that you do not want other to know as secret data, which cannot be called up without entering the security code. To make secret data, register “Phonebook” or “Schedule” in Secret mode or Secret only mode.
In Secret mode, you can call up all data in “Phonebook” or “Schedule” including secret data. In Secret only mode, you can only call up secret “Phonebook” or “Schedule” data.

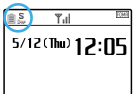
- If you perform operations for setting the Secret mode or Secret only mode during the Secret mode or Secret only mode, the current mode is canceled.
- If you make or receive a voice/videophone call during the Secret mode or Secret only mode, the current mode is canceled.
- You cannot store phonebook entries as secret data in the FOMA card.
- The Secret mode or Secret only mode is canceled when (PWR HLD) is pressed.

Storing data in the phonebook and Schedule as secret data

- The operation method for the “Phonebook” and “Schedule” in the Secret mode and Secret only mode set is the same as that without the Secret mode and Secret only mode set.

<Example: Storing data in the Secret mode>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret mode”, and then enter the security code.



When the Secret mode is set, “S” appears. If “Keypad dial lock” is already set, “D/S” appears.
Security code →p.152

To cancel the Secret mode

Press (PWR HLD).
The secret mode is canceled and “S” disappears.

2 Store data in “Phonebook” or “Schedule”.

The data is stored as secret data.
How to store entries in Phonebook →p.104
How to store entries in Schedule →p.415

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When the “Phonebook” or “Schedule” is called up in the Secret mode, “S” flashes for secret data.
- “Phonebook” and “schedule” entries stored as secret data cannot be called up, corrected or deleted unless you set the FOMA terminal to the Secret mode or Secret only mode. For the “schedule”, alarm notification is given in the normal mode but no alarm message appears.
- If you store phonebook entries in the memory number “000” to “009” as secret data, you cannot dial these numbers by using the “Two-touch dialing” unless the Secret mode or Secret only mode is set.
- When the caller whose phone number and name are stored in the phonebook as secret data makes a call with his/her caller ID informed, the stored name is not displayed even during the Secret mode or Secret only mode. In addition, the caller’s phone number is recorded in the “Received calls”, but his/her stored name is not recorded.
- The following functions cannot be set for Phonebook entries stored as secret data:
  - Automatic display →p.113
  - Restrictions →p.164
  - Utilities →p.109
- When you modify “Phonebook” or “Schedule” in Secret mode, the modified data becomes a secret data. Moreover, if you modify even 1 phone number or mail address, all the rest of the numbers and addresses stored in the modified memory number will become secret data.
- When a phonebook entry with the “Utilities” function set is stored as secret data, the “Utilities” setting for the entry is canceled.
- When a phonebook entry with the “Utilities” for group set is stored as secret data, the “Utilities” setting becomes invalid. If you change the Phonebook entry stored as secret data to the normal “phonebook” entry, the “Utilities” for group setting becomes valid.

Displaying secret data only <Secret only mode>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret only mode”, and then enter the security code.



When the Secret only mode is set, “S” flashes and the number of secret data is displayed. If “Keypad dial lock” is already set, “D/S” flashes.
After a few seconds the standby display will reappear.
Security code →p.152

To cancel the Secret only mode

Press (PWR/HOME).
The secret only mode is canceled and “S” disappears.

2 Search the phonebook or check the schedule.

How to search the phonebook →p.114
How to check the schedule →p.417

NOTE

- If you make a call by calling up secret data, the call is not recorded in the “Dialled calls” and “Redial”.

Changing secret data to normal data

You can change data stored as secret data to normal data.

1 Call up a phonebook entry or schedule you want to change in the Secret mode or Secret only mode.

How to search the phonebook →p.114
How to check the schedule →p.417

2 Select “Release secret” from the function menu.

The secret is canceled. During the Secret mode, “S” stops flashing and changes lighting.

Keeping Other People from Viewing Your Mail in Inbox/Outbox

Default setting | No security

You can activate security for Inbox, Outbox and Draft box to prevent others from viewing content of these boxes. Once security is activated for a box, your security code will be required to open the box.

- “” icon will be displayed for the box with security.
- Once security is activated for Inbox and Outbox, mail address can not be recorded to sent address list and received address list.

Composing/Sending i-mode mail

1 Select [MAIL] ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Security” and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152

2 Select the box that you want to make the security setting.



The selected box is marked.
When you select the marked box again, it is unmarked.

3 When the setting is completed, press [Finish].

Activating security for a folder

You can activate security for a folder. Once security is activated for a folder, your security code will be required to open the folder.

- For folders with security, “” or “” icons etc. will be displayed at the beginning of the folder name on the folder list screen.

1 On the folder list screen, highlight the folder you want to activate security and select “Security ON/OFF” from the function menu.

2 Enter the security code and select “YES”.

Security code →p.152

When you selected the folder that is already specified for security setting

A message appears asking if it is OK to cancel the security. Select “YES” to cancel the security.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- If security is imposed on the entire box, you need to enter the security code (p.152) when opening the box. Entry of the security code is not required when you open the folder with security in the box again.
- Once you open a box or folder that is security protected, you can open other security protected boxes or folders without entering the security code until the mail function ends.
- A mail-connected i-αppli may not be downloaded while the box or folder is security protected.

Restricting Incoming/Outgoing Calls to/from Each Specified Number

Default setting	All canceled

To prevent personal calls from being made or to prevent nuisance calls, you can set restrictions for incoming calls and outgoing calls for each phone number stored in the phonebook.
You can set the following Restrictions functions:

Object		Function	Function description
Restrict outgoing calls	Prevent personal calls from being made.	Restrict dialing	You can only call specified phone numbers.
Restrict incoming calls	Prevent nuisance calls.	Call rejection	You cannot receive calls from specified phone numbers. “Call rejection” is also valid for videophone.
		Call acceptation	This setting is done to allow incoming calls from specified phone numbers only and prohibit incoming calls from all other phone numbers. It is also valid for videophone calls.
	Set specified numbers to automatically be forwarded to a specified number or voice mail center.	Call forwarding	You can automatically forward calls from specified phone numbers to a specified phone number regardless of whether the “Call forwarding” is “Activate” or not. The videophone call cannot be forwarded unless the destination is set to a videophone-support terminal that conforms to 3G-324M (p.88).
		Voice mail	You can set calls from specified numbers to automatically be forwarded to the voice mail service center regardless of whether the “Voice mail” is “Activate” or not. The incoming videophone call continues without being connected to the voice mail service center.

- You can specify up to 20 phone numbers for each function.
- You cannot set the restrictions functions for the phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card.
- The incoming call restriction is only valid when the caller makes a call with a caller ID.
- You cannot set both the “Call rejection” and “Call acceptation”, or the “Call forwarding” and “Voice mail” to the same phone number at the same time.
- You cannot set this to the phonebook saved in “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.
- Changing or deleting specified numbers on phonebook will cause the Restriction functions to cancel. However, if “Restrict dialing” has been set, you cannot change or delete any numbers in your Phonebook.

Setting restrictions to phone numbers for incoming/outgoing calls

The procedures to set restrictions to phone numbers stored in the phonebook for incoming/outgoing calls are the same way.

1 Display the phonebook details screen you want to set.

How to search the phonebook →p.114

2 Select “Restrictions” from the function menu, and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152

3 Select the function you want to set.

The “★” mark is attached to the set function.

To cancel the set function

Select the function with the “★” mark.
The function is canceled and the “★” mark disappears.

To set each function of restricting incoming/outgoing calls to multiple phone numbers

Press (CLR) to go back to the phonebook details screen and display the phone number you want to set by pressing ●, and then follow Steps 2 and 3.
If you go back to the standby display by pressing (PIM/HOLD), you cannot additionally set the “Restrictions”. In that case, first cancel all the “Restrictions” settings from the phone numbers already set, and then specify it to an additional one as well as to the canceled ones.

NOTE

<Restrict dialing>

- When you set “Restrict dialing”, the following operations are disabled: storing, modifying, copying between FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card, phonebook operation using the “UIM operation”, all the dial calling including the specified phone numbers, and calling from the received calls.
- When you set “Restrict dialing”, the “Dialled calls” and “Redial” are deleted. The dialed calls after this function is set will be recorded in the “Dialled calls” or “Redial”.
- If you want to use the “Automatic display” together with “Restrict dialing”, set this function to the phonebook entry specified for the “Automatic display”.
- Note that “Restrict dialing” may become invalid when you send data from an external device such as a PC.
- Even if “Restrict dialing” has been set, you can make an emergency call (e.g. 110, 119, and 118).

<Call rejection/Call acceptation>

- “Call rejection” and “Call acceptation” become valid only when the caller notifies you his/her caller ID. It is recommended that you should set the “Caller ID request” service and “Call setting w/o ID”.
- You can receive i-mode mail or SMS regardless of “Call rejection” and “Call acceptation” functions.
- When “PIM lock” is set, the call rejection and call acceptation are disabled.
- When receiving a call from the caller whose phone number is set to Call rejection or is other than those set to Call acceptation, this call is recorded as “Missed call” in “Received calls” and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- When you are receiving a call from the caller whose phone number is set to Call rejection or is other than those set to Call acceptation, even if you set the “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service to “Activate”, the call is rejected. However, if you set the ringing time to 0 second for the “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service, or if you are outside the service area or the power is turned off, the “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service is activated. Note that this call is not recorded in “Received calls” and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- If, when “Call acceptation” is set, all the set phone numbers are canceled, the “Call acceptation” setting itself is also canceled and incoming calls are not rejected.

<Call forwarding/Voice mail>

- “Call forwarding” and “Voice mail” become invalid when the “PIM lock” is set.
- If you have a call from the caller whose phone number is set to Call forwarding or Voice mail, the ring tone sounds for 1 second and then the call will be forwarded to the specified phone number or voice mail service center. In this case, the call is recorded as “Missed call” in “Received calls” and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby display. Note that the operational priority is given to “Call forwarding” and “Voice mail” over the “Call waiting” service and “Arrival call act”.
- When the forwarding number is not set, or if you do not subscribe to the “Call forwarding” service or “Voice mail” service, the call from the number set to the “Call forwarding” or “Voice mail” will be a “Missed call”.

Checking the Restrictions settings

You can check the phone numbers on which "Restrictions" have been set for each function. You can also cancel the functions that have been set while checking the restrictions settings.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook ▶ "Restrictions", and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152

When no phone number is set

A message notifying you that there is no set phone number appears.

2 Select a function with the "★".

The phonebook list screen for the selected set function appears.

To cancel all the phone numbers on which the function has been set at once

Highlight the function with "★", and then select "Release settings" from the function menu.

3 Select the phonebook entry you want to check for the phone number.

The phone number of the selected entry appears.

To cancel the Restrictions setting

Select the phone number you want to cancel.

Call setting w/o ID

Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

Default setting	Accept/Same as ring tone

When a call comes in without notifying the caller ID, you will be notified why the caller ID is not notified (Reason of no caller ID). There are 3 reasons, "User unset", "Payphone" and "Not supported", for each of which accept/reject can be set.

● When a call with the reason of no caller ID that is set to "Reject" comes in, such a call is recorded as a "Missed calls" record in "Received calls". On the standby screen, a desktop icon that indicates "Missed call" is displayed.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Call setting w/o ID", and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152

2 Select the reason for no caller ID you want to set.

Not supported : Set whether to connect (Accept) or not connect (Reject) an incoming call from the person who cannot send the caller ID, such as a call from overseas or a forwarded call from a general phone. (However, depending on the intermediary phone companies, the caller ID may be informed.)

Payphone : Set whether to connect (Accept) or not connect (Reject) an incoming call from a phone such as a pay phone, etc.

User unset : Set whether to connect (Accept) or not connect (Reject) an incoming call from a caller who deliberately notifies no caller ID.

3 Select the item you want to set.

To accept incoming calls from phone numbers those do not notify the caller ID
Select “Accept”, and select a ring tone from the Select ring tone screen.
Selecting a ring tone →p.124

To reject incoming calls from phone numbers those do not notify the caller ID
Select “Reject”.

NOTE

- If you receive a call with no caller ID whose no caller ID reason has been set to “Accept”, the reason for no caller ID appears.
- If you set “Same as ring tone” to a ring tone when “Accept” is set, the ring tone specified in “Phone” of “Select ring tone” sounds.
- If you receive a videophone with no caller ID, the ring tone specified in “Video-phone” of “Select ring tone” sounds.
- You can receive i-mode mail or SMS regardless of this functions.

Ringing time

Setting the Time Until the Ringing Operation Starts

Default setting	Set mute seconds: 0 second	Missed calls display: Display

You can set a mute time for incoming calls from callers whose phone numbers are not stored in the phonebook or callers without caller ID between receiving the call and starting the ringing operation (notifying an incoming call). You can also set the FOMA terminal to not record such calls in missed calls to prevent unintentional callback from received calls to a nuisance call or malicious call with a short ringing time.

- The incoming call screen is displayed when a call comes in until the time specified in “Set mute seconds” has elapsed. No other call alert operations (playing a ring tone, vibrator, turning the incoming call lamp on) are performed. However, press [Clear] before the ringing operation starts to answer the call.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Ringing time”.

2 Select the item you want to specify.

To set a mute time until the ringing operation starts
Select “Set mute seconds”.
Set the start time in the range of 00 to 99 seconds. Enter the start time as 2 digits.

To set whether missed calls during the mute time are displayed
Select “Missed calls display”.
Select the Missed calls display setting from “Display/Not display”.

NOTE

- While in PIM lock, the incoming call actions do not take place until the time set in “Set mute seconds” elapses, even for incoming calls from someone who is stored in the phonebook.
- When several functions for restricting incoming calls are set at the same time, they are prioritized as follows. ① has the highest priority.

<When the call comes in identifying the caller’s number>
① Bar nuisance call service
② Call rejection/Call acceptance/Reject unknown
③ Driving mode
④ Ringing time

<When the call comes in without identifying the caller’s number>
① Bar nuisance call service
② Call setting w/o ID
③ Driving mode
④ Ringing time

Rejecting Calls from Caller Not Registered in the Phonebook

Default setting | Accept

You can set the FOMA terminal to reject incoming calls from phone numbers not stored in the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card phonebooks.

- This function is active only when the caller notifies the phone number. It is recommended that you set "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" as well.
- When "PIM lock" is set, this function is disabled.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Reject unknown", and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152

To accept incoming calls from phone numbers not stored in the phonebook
Select "Accept".

To reject incoming calls from phone numbers not stored in the phonebook
Select "Reject unknown".

NOTE

- When this function is set to "Reject", if you receive a call from the caller whose phone number is not stored in the phonebook, this call is recorded as "Missed call" in the "Received calls" and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- When several functions for restricting incoming calls are set at the same time, they are prioritized as follows. ① has the highest priority.

<When the call comes in identifying the caller's number>
① Bar nuisance call service
② Call rejection/Call acceptance/Reject unknown
③ Driving mode
④ Ringing time

<When the call comes in without identifying the caller's number>
① Bar nuisance call service
② Call setting w/o ID
③ Driving mode
④ Ringing time

- i-mode mails and SMS are received regardless of this function's setting.

Other Security Settings

The following security settings that are not described in this chapter are available:

Purpose	Detail	Function name or service	Refer to
Receive necessary mails only.	You can select mails you want to receive from those stored in the i-mode Center.	Receive option	p.269
Change the mail address to a new one to make it difficult for spam mails to reach you.	You can change your mail address. It is recommended to increase the number of characters and combine alphabetic and numeric characters when setting a new address, in order to prevent it from being guessed easily.	Change Mail Address	FOMA i-mode User's Manual
Receive mails from specific senders only or reject mails from specific senders.	You can receive or reject mails only from i-mode terminals.	Receive/Reject only i-mode mail	
	You can specify the mail addresses from which you want to receive/reject mails.	Receive/Reject Selected Mail	
	You can specify the companies you want to receive mail from, from the following: au, Vodafone, TU-KA, DDI Pocket	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	
	You can register a secret code for the mail address with phone number so that you can reject mails from people who do not know your secret code.	Register a Secret Code	
	You can reject the 200th or later i-mode mails sent from an i-mode terminal in the same day.	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
	You can reject advertising mails distributed without the consent of the recipients.	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
Use i-mode in times of disasters.	If there is a disaster, you can enter or check safety information using i-mode.	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" Service	
Reject calls from specific callers.	You can automatically block nuisance calls or frequent malicious calls.	Bar nuisance call service	p.452
Keep software in the FOMA terminal up to date.	You can update the software in your FOMA terminal as necessary.	Software update	p.585

Camera

Before Using the Camera 170
Taking a Still Image ..... Shooting still image 174
Shooting a Movie ..... Shooting movie 180
Changing the Settings for Shooting 183
Changing the Camera Settings 186
Using the Bar Code Reader ..... Bar code reader 193

Before Using the Camera

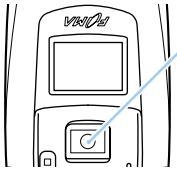
You can use the built-in camera in the FOMA terminal to shoot a picture (still image) and movie.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, it can be purchased at various locations such as mass retailers of consumer electronics. →p.376
- The out-camera, with 1.24 mega pixel capability, enables you to shoot a large still image of 1280×960 dots by selecting “Mega pixel mode”. We recommend you to take a still image in this mode when you operate the image on a PC.
- You can print out or edit an image with the printer that supports “Exif Ver2.2” or “PIM II (PRINT Image Matching II)” and software as you like, utilizing the shooting information stored in the still image.
- Because FOMA supports DPOF (Digital Print Order Format), you can store the specific information about still images you want to print out and the number of images in a miniSD memory card. →p.389
- You can save a picture or movie shot by the built-in camera to the miniSD memory card and use them on your PC. You can also send the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.569).
- For shooting movies, you can select recording images only or recording audio only other than recording images and audio. →p.189
- You can also shoot a still image/movie with the Auto timer. The Auto timer can prevent camera shake during shooting. →p.184
- You can attach a commercially available tripod on the backside of the desktop holder. Set the FOMA terminal on the desktop holder to shoot a still image/movie using the tripod.
- FOMA is equipped with out-camera (installed on the rear panel of the body) and in-camera.

How to use the camera

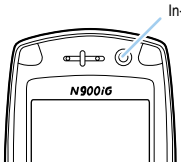
Out-camera

This is useful for shooting somebody else, animals and scenery. The screen shows the shot that will be captured. (The shot will be taken in the orientation displayed on the screen.) When you take an image from a short distance of approximately 5 to 9 cm, you can focus the camera by using the out-camera and switching to the macro lens. (p.184)



In-camera

Can be used to shoot yourself. The image is displayed in the mirror orientation (shot in the symmetrical orientation shown on the display).



- Although the cameras incorporates extremely high-precision technology, there may be some lines or dots on the screen that appear permanently dark or bright. Note also that the amount of noise in the image (white lines, etc.) may increase noticeably when you take pictures in dimly-lit places.
- Wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth before taking pictures. Fingerprints or grease on the lens can result in focusing problems or dark images.
- Take care not to apply force to the lens when folding your FOMA terminal. This could damage the lens.
- The image quality may be degraded after the FOMA terminal has been left for a long period in a hot place.
- Do not expose the lens to direct sunlight or shoot the sun or extremely bright lamps directly. This could cause the discoloration of the shot images or damage the camera.

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Shooting still images

- You can store up to 400 shot still images. These numbers may vary depending on the amount of image data.
- The approximate number of storable images are as follows:

Mode	Format setting	Storage setting	The number of storable images	
			FOMA terminal (main unit)	miniSD memory card (16MByte)
Mega pixel mode	1280×960	Unrestricted	approx. 6 images	approx. 54 items
Photo mode	640×480	Unrestricted	approx. 20 images	approx. 163 items
		Restricted (Large)	approx. 20 images	approx. 163 items
Photo mode/ Continuous mode	352×288	Unrestricted	approx. 40 images	approx. 327 items
		Restricted (Large)	approx. 40 images	approx. 327 items
	Stand-by (240×269)	Unrestricted	approx. 40 images	approx. 327 items
		Restricted (Large)	approx. 40 images	approx. 327 items
	Mail (L) (176×144)	Unrestricted	approx. 200 images	approx. 1,638 items
		Restricted (Large)	approx. 200 images	approx. 1,638 items
		Restricted (Mail)	approx. 222 images	approx. 1,820 items
	Mail (S) (128×96)	Unrestricted	approx. 400 images	approx. 3,276 items
		Restricted (Large)	approx. 400 images	approx. 3,276 items
		Restricted (Mail)	approx. 400 images	approx. 3,276 items

Movie shooting

- Up to 100 recorded movies can be stored. However, you may not be able to store up to 100 movies due to the image size setting, etc.
- The size of a movie depends on its recording duration. This may influence the maximum number of movies that can be stored. The maximum recording duration may differ depending on the setting (such as “Format setting” and “Storage setting”) and condition during recording.
- Some examples of the maximum recording duration※1 when shooting a movie with the camera mode set to “Movie mode” are listed in the following table.

Storage setting	Normal (Image and Voice)		Image only		Voice only
	Large (176×144)	Small (128×96)	Large (176×144)	Small (128×96)	
Normal	Approx. 14 sec. (Approx. 120 sec.)	Approx. 17 sec. (Approx. 140 sec.)	Approx. 19 sec. (Approx. 160 sec.)	Approx. 24 sec. (Approx. 200 sec.)	Approx. 60 sec. (Approx. 520 sec.)
Fine mode	Approx. 10 sec. (Approx. 84 sec.)	Approx. 14 sec. (Approx. 120 sec.)	Approx. 12 sec. (Approx. 100 sec.)	Approx. 19 sec. (Approx. 160 sec.)	
Long dur. mode	Approx. 19 sec. (Approx. 165 sec.)	Approx. 33 sec. (Approx. 280 sec.)	Approx. 24 sec. (Approx. 200 sec.)	Approx. 46 sec. (Approx. 400 sec.)	

※1: ( ) indicates the values for the case where the “Local playback” is set under “File size setting”.

- Some examples of the maximum recording duration※2 when shooting a movie with the camera mode set to “Long duration mode” are listed in the following table. In the “Long duration mode”, recorded movies are saved to the miniSD memory card.

Format setting	Storage setting	32MB	16MB
Large (176×144)	Normal	Approx. 74 min.	Approx. 35 min.
	Fine mode	Approx. 48 min.	Approx. 24 min.
	Long dur. mode	Approx. 94 min.	Approx. 47 min.
Small (128×96)	Normal	Approx. 84 min.	Approx. 42 min.
	Fine mode	Approx. 70 min.	Approx. 35 min.
	Long dur. mode	Approx. 154 min.	Approx. 77 min.

※2: The maximum straight recording duration in the “Long duration mode” is approx. 60min. The above values are examples of the maximum duration when “Movie type set” is set to “Normal” (image and voice) (initial setting). The maximum duration differs depending on the miniSD memory card manufacturer.

How to view the shooting display

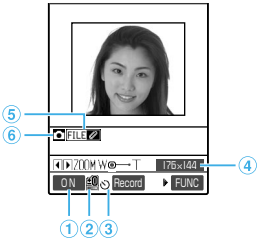
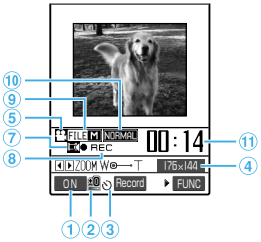


Photo mode/Continuous mode/Mega pixel mode



Movie mode/Chance capture/Long duration mode

① Turns ON/OFF the light. It is displayed when the out-camera is used for shooting.
② Indicates the brightness of the image. The icon (178) appears showing the number of shot images and shoot-enable images during shooting in "Continuous mode" (manual).
③ Displays when the Auto timer is set.
④ Displays the size of the image to be shot.

- 1280×960 : 1280×960
- 640×480 : 640×480
- 352×288 : 352×288
- 176×144 : "Mail (L) (176×144)" in Photo mode/Continuous mode, "Large (176×144)" in Movie mode
- 128×96 : "Mail (S) (128×96)" in Photo mode/Continuous mode, "Small (128×96)" in Movie mode

⑤ Indicates the Photo mode.

- : Mega pixel mode
- : Photo mode
- : Continuous mode
- : Picture voice
- : Movie mode/Long duration mode
- : Chance capture

⑥ Indicating the detail of "Storage setting".

- FILE STD : Unrestricted
- FILE : Restricted (Large)
- FILE : Restricted (Mail)

⑦Displays "Movie type set".

- : Normal
- : Image
- : Voice

⑧ Displays camera status.

- STAND BY : Standby
- REC : Recording

⑨ Displays "File size setting".

- FILE M : Mail attachment
- FILE L : Local playback

While shooting in Long duration mode, "FILE ∞" is displayed.

⑩Displays "Storage setting".

- NORMAL : Normal
- FINE : Fine mode
- LONG : Long dur. mode

⑪Displaying remaining time in "minutes:seconds" format. (Not displayed before shooting.)

NOTE

● When "Format setting" is set to "Stand-by (240×269)", the guidance field is not displayed in the shooting screen.

Notes on using the camera

Precautions when taking pictures

- The tone of the color and the brightness of the still image/movie shot with the built-in camera may differ from the actual object.
- Note that if you attempt to shoot directly into a strong light source, such as the sun or bright light, the image may turn dark or be disrupted.
- Make sure that your finger, hair or strap is not covered over the lens during shooting.
- While using the camera, battery power is drained quickly. Turn off the camera function as soon as you are finished. The screen may become dim or distorted if you use the camera with little battery power left.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

●When the following actions occur while you are continuously shooting multiple photos or movies, the camera operation is suspended and the camera screen is switched to the appropriate action screen. When you close the screen, you can return to the camera screen, allowing you to store the data shot before switching to the other screen such as an incoming call and alarm notification. If the following actions occur while you are setting the zoom or brightness adjustment, the value upon the action becomes effective and return to the camera menu. When the following actions occur during Auto timer operation, it will be canceled.

- When receiving a voice or videophone call
- When executing alarm notification of “Schedule”, “Alarm clock” and “ToDo”
- When operating other functions

Not canceled in the following cases;

- When you receive a mail or Msg. Request/Free during shooting with camera (including while the shooting screen displayed), the shooting operation continues without the received result screen displayed, regardless of the setting of “Receiving display”.
- If you set “Alarm setting” for “Operation preferred”, camera operations/settings and Auto timer will not be interrupted when alarm which you have set is activated.

●The volume of shutter and timer activation sound is not controlled by the “Ring volume” setting, and will maintain a certain volume.

●The shutter sound and timer start tone can be heard even the FOMA terminal is set to “Manner mode” or “Driving mode”. And they can also be heard from the speaker even when the “Earphone” is selected in the “Earphone” setting.

●Moving the FOMA terminal when you take a picture will result in a blurred image. Hold the camera firmly to keep it still when you take a picture or use the Auto timer to take the shot.

●The FOMA terminal download a picture or movie only after ● [Record] has been pressed. Fix the FOMA securely after releasing the shutter, until the check mode screen appears to indicate the completion of downloading.

●When you use the camera indoors, there may be screen glare from fluorescent lighting. It is recommended to set image tuning function in advance to avoid screen glare. Please note that it may not be possible to completely eliminate all screen glare when objects are of certain colors or if the lighting is especially dim or strong.

●Immediately after displaying the shooting screen, switching the cameras, or changing the camera setting, it may take a certain time to display the proper brightness and colors.

●If “Format setting” is set to “352 × 288” or larger, the image size is reduced for the preview screen displayed when a still image is shot.

●To save a movie or still image shot using the camera in the miniSD memory card, you can specify the folder for saving the movie or still image before shooting. However, the newest folder is set as the saving destination if the terminal is turned off and turned on again.

About Copyright information

●Changing, modifying and processing another’s portrait without permission is in breach of the “Right of portrait”. Therefore, refrain from copying, editing and processing photographs and movies taken, filmed or recorded with the FOMA terminal in an illegal fashion. Please be aware that in certain situations, filming or recording plays, performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even if for personal use.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Taking a Still Image

You can take a picture (still image) you like with the built-in camera. The shot still image is saved in JPEG format in the folder of "Image" selected at the time of saving.

- The shot still image can directly be saved in a miniSD memory card. In this case, insert a miniSD memory card in your FOMA terminal in advance. →p.377
- If you designate the place to store the still images in advance, they will be stored automatically at that destination. →p.191
- See p.186 when you want to utilize pre-shooting camera application functions, such as brightness adjustment and format setting.
- The saved still image picture can be displayed or edited in "Image". →pp.338 and 344

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶"Camera".

You can also startup the camera using the desktop icon for "Camera" that appears by default on your standby display.

To display the list of shot still image

Select "View photo" from the function menu.

2 Select "Photo mode" or "Mega pixel mode" to display the shooting screen.



Photo mode

You cannot startup "Mega pixel mode" while using Multi task function.

To check the memory

Select "Memory info" from the function menu.

To change the camera

Select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu.

Even when the camera is closed, the setting of the selected camera is retained.

You can use the out-camera only to take pictures in the Mega pixel mode or in Photo mode in the 640×480 image size.

You can take pictures in the "Mega pixel mode" and pictures for which the image size is set to "640×480" in the "Photo mode" only by using the out-camera.

3 Watch the display screen to display the subject you want to shoot.

Check the shooting screen by adjusting the opening angle of FOMA terminal body if necessary.

Make sure that your fingers do not cover the lens.

When you do not press any key for 3 minutes or more, the shooting screen is automatically closed.

When the screen is flickering →p.176

4 Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to keep it still and then select [Record] or press [Memo/Check].



The shutter sound emits at the time of shooting and the check mode screen appears. Check the picture you have shot.

If "Auto save set" is "ON", the images taken will be automatically saved at the storage destination ("Camera" folder of "Image" or miniSD memory card).

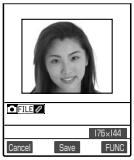
You cannot restart shooting, edit the shot still image, and compose an i-mode mail on the check mode screen after a still image is saved automatically.

To restart shooting

Press [Cancel] or CLR and then select "YES".

When the shooting is canceled, the screen returns to the shooting mode screen and restart shooting.

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376



Mirror display

To change the shot still image in Normal display/Mirror display

Select “Normal display” or “Mirror display” from the function menu.

Selecting “Mirror display” turns the image left side right.

Mirror display is selected when the in-camera is used. The check mode screen on the image window also sets Mirror display by default. Regardless of this display setting, if the still image is saved, it will be saved as Normal display.

To edit the shot still image

Select “Effector” from the function menu and press “YES”. Then, select “Phone” or “miniSD” as storage for the image. If you select “Phone”, select the folder to which you save the image.

The shot image is saved in the selected folder, allowing you to make a process.

Press “NO” to process the image without being saved. Select “Frame” or “Retouch” from the function menu on the displayed preview screen for process setting.

For details of operation procedure →p.344

You cannot manipulate unsaved still images in case of “Mega pixel mode” or in case that the image size is set to “640×480” in the “Photo mode”.

To attach the shot still image to an i-mode mail and send the message immediately

Select “Compose message” from the function menu.

A screen appears to compose an i-mode mail with the picture attachment. →p.264

You cannot be able to attach some pictures to an i-mode mail depending on the amount of data. →p.260

A picture taken in “Mega pixel mode” cannot be attached to the i-mode mail.

To set the shot picture to the standby display or the substitute image

Select “Set as display” from the function menu, and select “Phone”. Then, save a still image to a folder and select the destination to which you paste it.

You cannot select the miniSD memory card as a storage destination.

5 Press ● [Save] and select “YES”.

To save the shot still image as a mirror image

Instead of pressing ● [Save], select “Mirror save” from the function menu.

Even the still image taken on the check mode screen is shown in Normal display, the image is saved as a mirror image.

A picture that specifies a frame cannot be saved as a mirror image.

6 Select either “Phone” or “miniSD” as storage destination. If you select “Phone”, also select a folder.

The image will be saved in normal display regardless of the check mode display setting (normal display or mirror display).

To continue shooting, repeat Step 3 to 6.

For file name of saved still images →p.370

Selecting the saving destination folder when an image will be saved in the miniSD memory card →p.372

To switch to “Continuous mode” or “Movie mode” and shoot continuously

In the camera shooting screen, select “CHG camera-mode” and then the specific mode you want.

Continued on next page

To take still images with a set frame

On the shooting screen, select “Select frame” from the function menu and choose a frame you want to use.
Pre-installed frames →p.345
To cancel the frame you selected, select “Select frame” from the function menu and “OFF”.
After taking photos, you can change the frame by selecting “Change frame” from the function menu on the check mode screen, although this will not cancel the frame.
When the camera is in “Mega pixel mode” or if you choose an image size of “640×480” in “Photo mode”, you will not be able to take photos with frames.
You can display frame examples by pressing [Play] upon frame select.
After setting a frame, you can use the camera with your FOMA terminal folded. However, you cannot check the frame you set before shooting in the image window. After shooting, a still image for which the frame is set is displayed in the image window.

To take still images with your FOMA terminal folded

You can shoot using the image window as a finder for displaying an image caught by the rear camera.
While the standby display is displayed not using multi task function and with your FOMA terminal folded, hold down [Memo/Check] ( ) for 1 second or more.
Even if you fold your FOMA terminal when the shooting screen is displayed, the rear camera will be activated automatically and an image caught by the rear camera will be displayed in the image window. If you press [Memo/Check] for 1 second or more on the shooting screen, you can turn off the camera.
If you press [Memo/Check], you will hear the sound of a shutter and the image will appear in the image window. Open the FOMA terminal and go to Step 5 on p.175.
To automatically save the still image with the FOMA terminal folded, shoot with the “Auto save set” set to “ON” in advance.

- If “Auto timer” (p.184) is set to “ON”, the auto timer can be used for shooting with your FOMA terminal folded.
- If you set “Side keys guard” to “ON”, [Home] and [Memo/Check] will be inactive and you will not be able to use the camera or turn on the light (p.184).
- The image on the image window will be scaled down depending on the display, and will serve you as a guide upon shooting images.

When the screen is flickering

Select “Image tuning” from the function menu to change the scanning frequency to “Mode 1 (50Hz)” or “Mode 2 (60Hz)” depending on your area.
The setting of the Image tuning is retained even when the camera is closed. The setting at the time of purchase is “Mode 1 (50 Hz)”.

NOTE

- If the amount of data exceeds the limit set for “Storage setting”, a message appears to inform you that no additional data can be stored. Press [Select] to return to the check mode screen. If an error occurs while compressing data, a message appears to inform you of the image recording failure. Press [Select] to return to the shooting screen.
- With “Storage setting” set to “Unrestricted”, when you carry out “Compose message”, a message appears notifying you that i-mode mail cannot be created if the size is too big. Press [Select] to return to the check mode screen. Also, if an error occurs during a data compression, a message appears notifying you that the picture could not be taken. Press [Select] to return to the shooting screen.
- When the maximum number of saved data is reached in the saving destination folder or when there is no space, a message appears asking whether or not to delete the unnecessary images before saving. Select “YES” to save, delete unnecessary images until the remaining bytes of insufficient capacity becomes 0 and select the storage location. If you select the miniSD memory card as a storage location and there is not enough space in the miniSD memory card, a message appears notifying you that there is not enough space and the saving location selection screen reappears.

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

You can take still images as continuous multiple pictures using the continuous mode. You can save the continuous multiple pictures as original animation or you can save all or selected photos as still images. If you save them as an animation, it can be replayed using "Image".

- Press the shutter after setting "CHG cont. mode" to "Auto", and you can take continuous multiple pictures at the set interval or with Auto timer. When "CHG cont. mode" is set to "Manual", you can take still images continuously every time the shutter is pressed.
- If you designate the place to store the images in advance, they will be stored in that location automatically. →p.191
- If folding a FOMA terminal while shooting in the continuous mode, the shooting ends. When "CHG cont. mode" is set to "Manual", pressing the (CLR) can also end the shooting. The picture taken immediately before (CLR) is pressed will be saved.

<Example: To store all continuous multiple pictures when "CHG cont. mode" is set to "Auto">

1 Select "Continuous mode" to display the shooting screen. →p.174

2 Display the object you want to take on your display screen.

To take a continuous shooting manually

To press the shutter for each still images and take continuous multiple pictures, select "CHG cont. mode" from the function menu and then select "Manual".

To change the number of the continuous multiple pictures

To change the number of the continuous multiple pictures, select "Interval/Number" from the function menu and then select "Shot number". Enter the number of pictures.

If you enter wrong number of the continuous multiple pictures, a message appears notifying you that the number cannot be specified.

The number of continuous multiple pictures you can take for "Mail (L) (176×144)" and "Mail (S) (128×96)" is 5-20, and for "Stand-by (240×269)" is 5-10 pictures.

When "Format setting" is "352×288", the number of continuous multiple pictures is 4, not allowing you to specify "Shot number".

If the Shot number is set to 11 or more and "Format setting" is changed to "Stand-by (240× 269)", the Shot number is set to 10.

To change the intervals of the continuous multiple pictures

To change the speed of the continuous multiple shooting, select "Interval/Number" from the function menu and then select "Shot interval" to specify the interval.

You can change the speed from "0.5 seconds", "1.0 seconds" or "2.0 seconds". However, you cannot select "0.5 seconds" if "Format setting" is set to "352×288".

Using the zoom →p.183
Using the light →p.184

3 Hold the FOMA terminal steady and the press ● [Cont.] or ▼ [Memo/Check].



Do not move your FOMA terminal just after shooting.

The shutter sound emits for every shooting.

When pictures are manually taken in the continuous mode with "Format setting" set to "352×288", the message "Now processing" appears every time a picture is taken. Do not move the FOMA terminal while this message is displayed.

When the shooting is complete, the check mode screen is displayed.

Press ◆ to set the still image with a blue frame. If you press ● [Select], the color of the frame turns red, indicating you that the picture has been selected. When you want to select all still images, select "Select all" from the function menu.

To cancel selecting the still images, select the still images you want to release and then press ● [Select]. To cancel selecting all the still images, select "Release all" from the function menu.

Continued on next page



To display the details of the selected still image

Select the still image with ● and then press [detail].
The still image in the blue frame will be displayed.



Mirror display

To switch Normal display/Mirror display for the shot continuous multiple pictures

Select “Normal display” or “Mirror display” from the function menu.
All the still images will be displayed in the selected display mode. Selecting “Mirror display” turns the image left side right.
The check mode screen indicates “Mirror display” by default when the in-camera is used.

4 Select “Store all” from the function menu and then select “Save” or “Mirror save”. Select “YES”.

When you select “Save”, the pictures are saved normally. The pictures are saved according to how you selected in the Step 4 regardless of the Normal display/Mirror display on the check mode screen.

To save all the continuous multiple pictures as an animation

Select “Store all/anime” from the function menu.
Select “YES” to select a destination folder, and then select the items that you save a link file (animation file).
When “Store all/anime” is selected, you cannot store the pictures in a miniSD memory card.

To store the selected pictures only

Select the pictures and then press “Store selection” from the function menu. Select “YES” after choosing “Save” or “Mirror save”.
If you select “Save” from the function menu on the detail display screen and then select “YES”, you can save the still images that show the details. Stored still images will not be displayed on the check mode screen.

5 Select either “Phone” or “miniSD” as storage destination. If you select “Phone”, also select a folder.

Repeat the Step 2 to 5 when you want to continue shooting.
Selecting the saving destination folder when an image will be saved in the miniSD memory card →p.372

To switch to “Photo mode” or “Movie mode” and shoot continuously

In the camera shooting screen, select “CHG camera-mode” and then the specific mode you want.

NOTE

- If you change “352×288” to other sizes for “Format setting”, the number of the continuous multiple pictures is set to 5.
- If you select “Store all/anime” to save continuous multiple pictures, the still images will be stored in a folder of the “Image” that you selected and link files to the animation (animation files) will be saved in the “Original animation” folder of the “Image”. The title names for original animation and still images can be changed on “Image”.
- If you choose to save continuous multiple pictures as still images, they will be stored in a folder of the “Image” as individual photos. “Org. animation” allows you to replace still images in the continuous multiple pictures.
- If the continuous multiple pictures are saved as still images, you can edit them on “Image”.
- If the amount of data exceeds the limit set for “Storage setting”, a message appears to inform you that no additional data can be stored. Press ● [Select] to return to the check mode screen. Also, if an error occurs during a data compression, a message appears notifying you that picture could not be taken. Pressing ● [Select] to return to the shooting screen.
- When the maximum number of saved data is reached in the saving destination folder or when there is no space, a message appears asking whether or not to delete the unnecessary images before saving. Select “YES” to save, delete unnecessary images until the remaining bytes of insufficient capacity becomes 0 and select the storage location.
  If you select the miniSD memory card as a storage location and there is not enough space in the miniSD memory card, a message appears notifying you that there is not enough space and the saving location selection screen reappears.

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

You can add voice on a shot picture.

- A picture to which voice is added using this function is saved as a movie in the "i Motion" folder selected when saving. After saving, you can play that picture using "i Motion", edit it such as movie clipping, and send it as an attachment to an i-mode mail. →pp.349 and 354
- This feature can be applied only to pictures that are newly taken or saved in the View photo. This feature cannot be applied to downloaded pictures.

<Example: To add voice on a newly taken picture>

1 Select "Picture voice" - "Photo mode" to display the shooting screen. →p.174

To add voice on a picture saved in the FOMA terminal

Select "View photo".
The formats you can select on the list of images include "Mail (L) (176×144)", "Mail (S) (128×96)" only.
Selecting pictures →p.338

2 Press ● [Record] or ▼ [Memo/Check] to shoot a still image. →p.174



3 Press ● [Record] or ▼ [Memo/Check] to record voice.



The recording operation stops automatically when the total data amount of the picture and voice reaches 95 KB.

4 Press ● [Stop] or ▼ [Memo/Check] to finish the recording.

To send the picture attached to an i-mode mail

Select "Compose message" from the function menu. Edit the title if necessary and then press ● [Set].
The composition screen of i-mode mail with a movie attached is displayed. →p.264

5 Press ● [Save] and then select "YES". Edit the title if necessary and press ● [Set].

6 Select either "Phone" or "miniSD" as storage destination. If you select "Phone", also select a folder.

Selecting the saving destination folder when an image will be saved in the miniSD memory card →p.372

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When you change “Format setting” while this feature is running, only “Mail (L)” and “Mail (S)” are available. When “Format setting” is set to other than “Mail (L)” or “Mail (S)”, “Mail (L) (176×144)” is set when the function is startup.

Shooting a Movie

You can shoot a movie with voice with the built-in camera. The movie can be shot with either image or voice only. →p.189
Movie clipped with “Movie mode” is saved to a folder of “i Motion” you selected to save. By using the “Long duration mode”, the maximum continuous movie length that can be saved in the miniSD memory card is approx. 60 minutes.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, it can be purchased at various locations such as mass retailers of consumer electronics. →p.376
- The shooting time differs depending on shooting conditions such as the subjects.
- Shooting operation is terminated when you fold your FOMA terminal during shooting.
- If a key is pressed while shooting a movie, an operation sound or keypad sound may be recorded. To prevent such sounds from being recorded, set “Manner mode” or set “Keypad sound” to “OFF”.
- You can save a movie shot in the “Movie mode” directly in a miniSD memory card. When you save the movie into the miniSD memory card in the “Movie mode” or shoot the movie in the “Long duration mode”, insert a miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal in advance. →p.377
- In the “Movie mode”, the movie can be saved automatically if you shoot it after specifying the destination to save the image in advance. →p.191
- Movies shot with the in-camera are displayed with the check mode as mirror. However, if movies are played and stored, they are normally displayed. It is impossible to play or store movies as mirror.
- See p.186 when you want to utilize pre-shooting camera application functions, such as brightness adjustment and format setting.
- You can play the shot movie with “i Motion” and edit it.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ (Accessory) ▶“Camera”.

At purchase, you can also startup the camera by selecting the “Camera” desktop icon on the standby display.

To display the list of recorded movies
Select “View movie”.

2 Select “Movie mode” or “Long duration mode” to display the shooting screen.



If you are using the multitask function, you cannot start up “Long duration mode”.

To check the memory
Select “Memory info” from the function menu.

To change the camera
Select “Front camera” or “Rear camera” from the function menu.
Active camera remains the same even if you end the camera session.

Using the zoom →p.183
Using the light →p.184

3 Watch the shooting screen to display the subject you want to shoot.

When you do not press any key for 3 minutes or more, the shooting screen is automatically closed.
When the screen is flickering →p.176

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

4 Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to keep it still and then select ● [Record] or press ▼ [Memo/Check].



Start tone will sound when you start recording and the image you are recording will be displayed on your terminal screen.
While recording, incoming light will flash.
The data amount is different depending on the shooting conditions such as the subjects, and will serve you as a guide upon shooting time.
When the movie data reaches the limit, a message appears to inform you of the end of recording. Press ● [Select] to display the check mode screen for Step 5.

5 Press ● [Stop] or ▼ [Memo/Check] to stop the recording.



When the recording is completed, a beep sounds notifying you of the completion of recording operation and the check mode screen is displayed.
Press ♪ [Play] to play the recorded movie.
The microphone sensitivity during shooting is “Normal” regardless of the “Mic sensitiv.” setting in “Original” at Manner mode set.

To shoot a movie using “Long duration mode”
The shot movie is automatically saved in the miniSD memory card.
If “Auto save set” is “ON” in “Movie mode”, the shot movie will be automatically saved at the storage destination (“Camera” folder of “i Motion” or miniSD memory card).
You cannot restart shooting and compose an i-mode mail on the check mode screen after a still image is saved automatically.

To restart recording
Select “Cancel” from the function menu, and then select “YES”.
Restart recording when the display returns to the Shooting screen after canceling.

To attach the shot movie to an i-mode mail and send the message immediately
Select “Compose message” from the function menu. Edit the title if necessary and then press ● [Set].
A screen appears allowing you to compose an i-mode mail with the movie attached. →p.264
You may not be able to attach a movie to i-mode mail depending on its data size. →p.260
When you shoot a movie, by specifying “File size setting” to “Local playback”, you may not be able to send data as i-mode mail attachment due to size not allowable to i-mode mail attachment.

To set the shot movie to the standby display
Select “Set as stand-by” from the function menu and select “YES”. Edit the title if necessary, then select the save-to location.
You cannot set movies shot in “Long duration mode” and saved in a miniSD memory card as the standby display.

6 Press ● [Save] and then select “YES”. Edit the title if necessary and then press ● [Set].

File name of saved movies →p.370

7 Select either “Phone” or “miniSD” as storage destination. If you select “Phone”, also select a folder.

To continue recording, repeat Step 3 to 7.
Selecting the saving destination folder when an image will be saved in the miniSD memory card →p.372

To switch to “Photo mode” or “Continuous mode” and shoot continuously
Select “CHG camera-mode” from the function menu and select either “Photo mode” or “Continuous mode”.

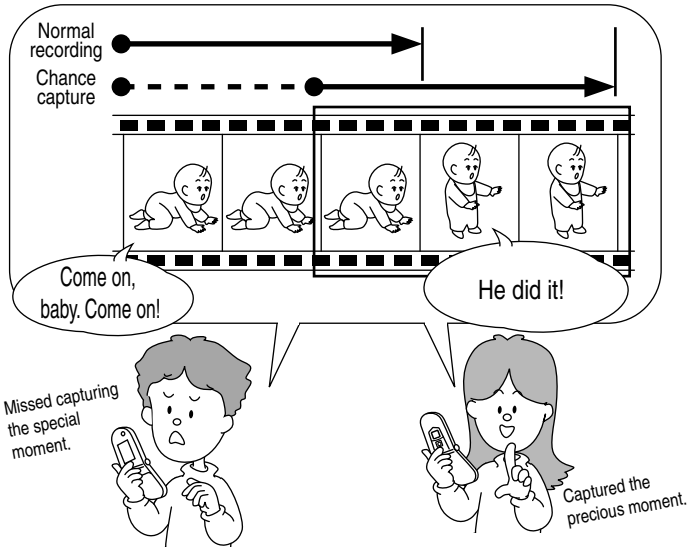
Continued on next page

NOTE

- Even if recording using the Long duration mode ended because no recording time left in a FOMA terminal, the miniSD memory card may still have free space. This depends on the movie size, which depends on the recording conditions such as the type of subject.

Recording a movie without missing the important scene <Chance capture>

When filming using the built-in camera, this function allows you to exceed the available saving time. This function will not let you miss filming an important scene.



- A movie shot is saved for saving time (approximately 15 seconds by default) back from the point at which you finish shooting, and the prior portion is not saved.
- If you have finished shooting a movie before exceeding the saving capacity, it is saved from the beginning to the end as the same way in the “Movie mode”.

1 Select “Chance capture” to display the shooting screen. →p.180



＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

2 Record the movie. →p.180



The unused recording time is displayed as "✳✳:✳✳" during recording once the maximum saving space exceeds.

Changing the Settings for Shooting

Using the zoom

To zoom in on the screen image by one level, press ○ on the shooting screen. Press ○ to zoom out on the screen image by one level. To set the zoom setting, press ● [Set]. When you do not press any keys for 2 seconds, the current zoom setting is automatically set.
The scaling factor for image enlargement is as follows:

For shooting still images

Rear/Front camera	Picture size	Zoom level	Maximum scaling (approximate)
Rear camera	640×480	16	2x
	352×288		3.3x
	Stand-by (240×269)		5x
	Mail (L) (176×144)		6.6x
	Mail (S) (128×96)		10x
Front camera	Mail (L) (176×144)	2	2x
	Mail (S) (128×96)		3x



- When setting the camera mode to "Mega pixel mode" or to "Photo mode" with the image size of "352×288" or "Stand-by (240×269)" for shooting using the front camera, you cannot enlarge the object with the zoom function.

For shooting movies

Rear/Front camera	Picture size	Zoom level	Maximum scaling (approximate)
Rear camera	Large (176×144)	16	6.6x
	Small (128×96)		10x
Front camera	Large (176×144)	2	2x
	Small (128×96)		3x

- When "Movie type set" is set to "Voice", you cannot enlarge the object with the Zoom function.
- If key operations such as zooming are performed while recording movies, the sound generated by such operation may be recorded.

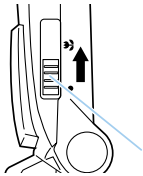
NOTE

- "Normal" is set when no adjustment is made. When you turn off the camera, it returns to the "Normal" setting.
- Zoom is not based on the optical but the digital system.

Close-up shooting

When you shoot an image from a short range of approximately 5 to 9 cm using the out-camera, you can focus the camera by shooting after setting the lens selection switch to (macro lens).

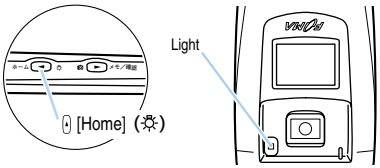
- (macro lens) can only be used with the out-camera.
- To configure the shooting mode suitable for close-up shooting →p.187



When you slide the lens selection switch, slide it all the way toward ● (standard lens) or (macro lens).
After shooting, it is recommended to return the switch to ● (standard lens).

Turning on the light

You can flash the light for shooting in low light such as interior of a room. When the light is ON, the out-camera is used for shooting. You can keep the light on for 30 seconds. On "Continuous mode" (Auto) and "Movie mode", if you start shooting while the light is flashing (for 30 seconds), you can keep the light on until the shooting ends. For switching the light "ON"/"OFF", press [ON] or [OFF], or [Home] (☼) on the shooting screen.



NOTE

- When you turn on the light and then display the function menu or make some setting on the function menu, the light turns off. When you exit the function menu or terminate the setting, the light turns on again.
- When you take a picture in the dark, the place may not be bright enough even if the light is ON. The color of photo may not look natural with some source of light. In this case, use "White balance" to adjust the color as you like.

Using the auto timer

If you set the Auto timer before shooting, you can automatically take pictures, continuous multiple pictures or record movies without pressing the shutter by yourself. This feature is useful for preventing camera shake as well as including yourself partying the picture.

- When "CHG cont. mode" is set to "Manual" for shooting in "Continuous mode", the Auto timer is not available.
- When completed, the Auto timer setting returns to "OFF". However, shutter delay time setting is retained even if the camera is switched off.
- If a FOMA terminal is folded while the auto timer is operating, the auto timer terminates and the count is cleared. However, the auto timer setting remains valid.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶“Camera”.

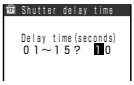
At purchase, you can also start up the camera by selecting the “Camera” desktop icon on the standby display.

2 Select the mode in which you want to shoot an image to display the shooting screen.

When you do not press any key for 3 minutes or more, shooting screen is automatically closed.

3 Select “Auto timer” from the function menu and then select “ON”.

4 Set the delay time (01-15 seconds) until the start of shooting.



Default setting is “10 seconds”.
Enter the time as 2 digits. To set a value in the range of 1 to 9 seconds, enter a number of “01” - “09”.
When a value other than 01 to 15 is entered, a message appears notifying you that the value cannot be set.

5 Watch the shooting screen to display the subject you want to shoot.

Place the FOMA terminal on a desk, etc. to be more stable.

6 Press [Record] or [Memo/Check] to start the shooting operation with the Auto timer.

When the start tone of the Auto timer sounds, the Auto timer operation starts progress.
“” flashes during the timer operation. A short double beep “pipip” sounds every second from 5 seconds before the start of shooting.
After the set time elapses, the start tone sounds and the shooting starts.

To cancel the Auto timer

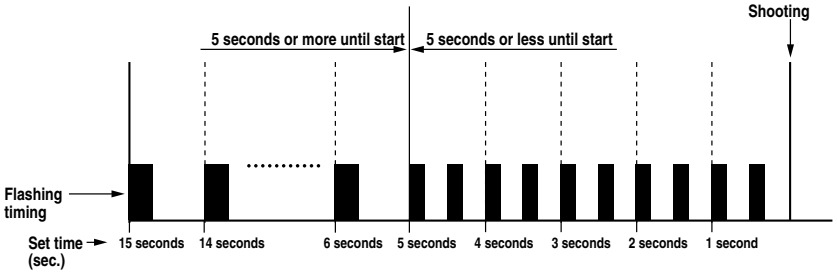
Press [Quit] or CLR during Auto timer operation.

To pause the Auto timer

Press and hold [Quit] or CLR during Auto timer operation.
When you stop holding [Quit] or CLR , the Auto timer restarts.

Incoming call lamp flashing until start

The incoming call lamp flashes in blue and and flashes in orange every second until 5 seconds before shooting. During the last 5 seconds, they flash every 0.5 seconds. When the timer is set to 5 or less seconds, the flashing occurs every 0.5 seconds from the beginning.



Changing the Camera Settings

You can set your personal preferences for the built-in camera.
The following settings are available:

Function	Setting description	Settable camera mode	Setting timing	Setting after camera off	See page
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the image	All camera mode	Before shooting	Not retained	p.187
Photo mode	Changes Photo mode according to the conditions	All camera mode	Before shooting	Not retained	p.187
White balance	Adjusts images to natural colors according to the light source at shooting	All camera mode	Before shooting	Retained	p.188
Color mode set	Enables shooting in sepia or monochrome	All camera mode	Before shooting	Not retained	p.188
Format setting	Changes the image size	Photo mode/Continuous mode	Before shooting	Retained	p.188
		Picture voice			
		Movie mode/ Chance capture/ Long duration mode			
Display size	Changes the display size	Photo mode/Continuous mode	Before/After shooting	Retained (Setting when shooting)	p.189
		Picture voice			
		Movie mode/ Chance capture/ Long duration mode			
Movie type set	Makes a shot with image or voice only	Movie mode/ Chance capture/ Long duration mode	Before shooting	Not retained	p.189
Storage setting	Changes the storage size of still images	Photo mode/Continuous mode	Before shooting	Not retained	p.190
		Picture voice			
Storage setting	Changes the movie quality	Movie mode/ Chance capture/ Long duration mode	Before shooting	Retained	p.190
File size setting	Changes the file size of movie	Movie mode/ Chance capture	Before shooting	Retained	p.190
Shutter sound	Selects the shutter sound	All camera mode	Before shooting	Retained	p.191
Auto save set	Changes the saving method after shooting	Mega pixel mode/Photo mode/Continuous mode	Before shooting	Retained	p.191
		Movie mode/ Chance capture			
Memory info	Checks the storage space of camera/downloaded images	All camera mode	Before shooting	—	p.192
File restriction	Disabling still images/movies being sent/forwarded by the receiver	Mega pixel mode/Photo mode/Continuous mode	Before/After shooting/ After saving※	Retained	p.192
		Picture voice			
		Movie mode/ Chance capture			

※: To set options after shooting and saving, use “Image” and “i Motion” for still images/continuous multiple pictures and movies, respectively.

Operational flow

This section describes the operation flow to set up the applied functions of the camera.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶“Camera”.

You can also startup the camera using the desktop icon for “Camera” that appears by default on your standby display.

2 Select the camera mode to display the shooting screen.

3 Select functions you want to set from the function menu.

Function name →p.186



Photo mode

Adjusting the brightness <Brightness>

Default setting	±0

1 Adjust brightness on the brightness control screen.



Press ◁ to decrease the brightness, and press ▷ to increase the brightness.
The brightness can be adjusted in 5 levels, from -2 to +2.

–2: Dark
–1: Slightly dark
±0: Normal
+1: Slightly light
+2: light

When you do not press any keys for 2 seconds during the adjustment, the setting is automatically set.

Selecting the Photo mode <Photo mode>

Default setting	Scenery

● Night mode is not available for “Continuous mode”, “Movie mode”, “Chance capture”, or “Long duration mode”.

1 Select Photo mode on the Photo mode selection screen.

Scenery : Suitable for shooting scenery.
Portrait : Suitable for shooting person.
Close-up : Suitable for shooting an object closely. When you shoot a close-up image, switch the out-camera lens to the macro lens. →p.184
Night mode : Suitable for shooting in the dark place. Selectable for shooting in Mega pixel mode or Photo mode.

When the camera is switched off, the setting returns to “Scenery”.

NOTE

● When “Night mode” is set, the screen may be flickering sometimes at the time of shooting.
● If camera shake occurs in “Night mode”, try to select other Photo mode instead of “Night mode”.
● If you change the camera mode to “Movie mode” or “Continuous mode” in the “Night mode”, the setting returns to “Scenery”, too.

Adjusting the white balance according to the light source <White balance>

Default setting	Auto

1 Select image quality on the white balance selection screen.

Auto : Adjusts the white balance automatically.
Fine : Selected for shooting outdoors in a sunny day.
Cloudy : Selected for shooting in a cloudy day, shaded area, or the evening hours.
Light bulb : Selected for shooting under the lighting with a light bulb.

NOTE

● When shooting subjects in the dark place or shooting with a light, the best color may not come out on the image. This mode enables you to adjust the colors as you like.

Shooting images in sepia or monochrome tone <Color mode set>

Default setting	Normal

1 Select image color on the color mode screen.

Normal : Shot in color.
Sepia : Shot in sepia tone.
Monochrome : Shot in black & white.
When the camera is switched off, the setting returns to “Normal”.

Changing image size of shooting <Format setting>

Default setting	Photo mode, Continuous mode, Picture voice: Mail(L) (176×144) Movie mode, Chance capture, Long duration mode: Large (176×144)

The following picture size is selectable:

Image size	Selectable camera mode	Setting description
640×480	Photo mode	The size is set to VGA (640 (W)× 480 (H) dots) with the out-camera.
352×288	Photo mode/Continuous mode	The size is set to CIF (352 [W] × 288 [H] dots).
Stand-by (240×269)	Photo mode/Continuous mode	The size is set to the size for the standby display (240 [W] × 269 [H] dots).
Mail (L) (176×144)	Photo mode/Continuous mode	The size is set to 176 (W) × 144 (H) dots.
	Picture voice	
Large (176×144)	Movie mode/Chance capture/Long duration mode	
Mail (S) (128×96)	Photo mode/Continuous mode	The size is set to 128 (W) × 96 (H) dots.
	Picture voice	
Small (128×96)	Movie mode/Chance capture/Long duration mode	

• In the “Mega pixel mode”, the image size is only set to 1280 × 960 so that the size cannot be changed.

1 Select the size of image on the format setting selection screen.

NOTE

- When the format setting is changed, the zoom setting returns to the “Normal”.
- When you startup another camera mode after starting up “Mega pixel mode”, “Format setting” returns to the default setting.
- Changes to the format setting are reflected to all the camera modes. For modes that do not support format setting, the format setting is returned to the default.

Changing the size of display <Display size>

Default setting	Actual size

- When “Format setting” is set to “Stand-by (240×269)” or larger size, the image is always displayed in the main display size, not allowing you to change the size of display.
- You can not change image size when “Mega pixel mode” is selected.

1 Select display size on the image display size setting screen.

Actual size : Displays the image in an actual size.
Fit in display : Displays the image based on the display size.

NOTE

- After shooting is completed in “Photo mode”, “Continuous mode”, “Picture voice”, “Movie mode”, or “Chance capture” you can display the function menu on the check mode screen and follow the above setting. However, the setting on the shooting screen is retained after the camera is closed.

Making a shot with image or voice only <Movie type set>

Default setting	Normal

- When “Voice” is set, you cannot specify “Brightness”, “Photo mode”, “White balance”, “Color mode set”, “Format setting”, “Display size”, “Storage setting” and “Image tuning” from the function menu. You cannot change the camera or flash the light, either.

1 Select movie type on the movie type setting screen.

Normal : Shoots an image and records voice.
Image : Shoots an image only.
Voice : Records voice only.
If you select “Voice”, the screen display tells you that the sound is currently being recorded.

Specifying file space at saving <Storage setting>

You can limit the file capacity for saving images to that in which mail can be attached.

- You cannot set this function when “Mega pixel mode” is set.
- You cannot set “Restricted (Mail)” when “Format setting” is set to “Stand-by (240×269)” or larger.

1 Select storage capacity on the storage setting screen.

Unrestricted	: Stores an image file of up to 600 KB.
Restricted (Large)	: Select this setting when you attach a large (up to 100KB) image to i-mode mail.
Restricted (Mail)	: Select this setting when you attach an image to an i-mode mail.

NOTE

- This function is set as following when the camera starts:
  - “Format setting” is set to “Mail (L) (176×144)” or smaller: “Restricted (Mail)”
  - “Format setting” is set to “Stand-by (240×269)” or larger: “Restricted (Large)”
- When Storage setting is set to “Unrestricted” and you try to attach a still image taken in “Photo mode” or “Continuous mode” to an i-mode mail to compose the message, the limit of file space may exceed. In this case, a message appears notifying you that the i-mode mail cannot be composed. Press ● [Select] to go back to the check mode screen. When an error occurs during the data compression, a message appears notifying you that the picture was not successfully taken. Press ● [Select] to go back to the shooting screen.
- If Storage setting is “Restricted (Large)” or “Restricted (Mail)”, image quality may be degraded.

Setting the image quality <Storage setting>

Default setting	Normal

You can set the image quality of movies.

- Image quality cannot be selected when “Movie type set” is set to “Voice”.

1 Select image quality on the storage setting screen.

Normal	:	Both image quality and shooting time are based on normal setting.
Fine mode	:	Although image/sound quality for each frame is high, the number of frames will be limited and movement will not be smooth. This option is suitable for movies with few movements.
Long dur. mode	:	The quality of the image becomes low for each frame, but the recordable time becomes longer. The number of frames becomes reduced.

Changing the file space of movies <File size setting>

Default setting	Mail attachment

You can set the file space for shooting in “Movie mode”. “Local playback” extends the shooting time.

1 Select file capacity on the file size setting screen.

Mail attachment	: Select this option when you attach a shot movie to an i-mode mail. You can store up to 95 KB per movie.
Local playback	: Select this option when you record a long movie. You can store up to 800 KB per movie.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Selecting the shutter sound <Shutter sound>

Default setting	Sound 1

You can set the shutter sound that can be heard at shooting.
The selectable shutter sounds for each Photo mode are as follows:

Photo mode		Shutter sound
Mega pixel mode/Photo mode/Picture voice		Start tone
Continuous mode	Auto	Start tone
	Manual	Start tone
Movie mode/Chance capture/Long duration mode		Start tone, End tone

- Start and end tones are set for Auto timer. However, the timer tone that sounds between the start of the Auto timer operation and shooting is not set (the timer tone is fixed).
- When you set the shutter sound for “Mega pixel mode”, “Photo mode”, “Picture voice” or “Continuous mode”, the setting is reflected for all of these modes. Also when you set the shutter sound for “Movie mode”, “Chance capture” or “Long duration mode”, the setting is reflected for all of these modes.

1 Select the shutter sound on the shutter sound selection screen.

Use ◯ to select Sound 1 to 3. The selected sound will be activated at the pre-set volume.

NOTE

- During the Manner mode, even if the shutter sound is selected, the shutter release sound for confirmation is not emitted. However, if operation during Manner mode set “Original”, the shutter release sound is emitted depending on the setting options.

Saving a picture (still image) or movie automatically <Auto save set>

Default setting	OFF

If “Auto save set” is “ON”, the images taken will be automatically saved in “Camera” folder of “Image”/“i Motion” or in miniSD memory card.

- When “Auto save set” is set to “ON” in “Continuous mode”, all of continuous photos are saved automatically by operating “Store all” but the linked files (animation file) is not saved.
- The still image is saved automatically as normal display even if taking a mirror display.

1 Select “ON” on the auto save setting screen.

Select “OFF” not to save automatically.

2 Select either, “Phone” or “miniSD” as storage destination.

Selecting the saving destination folder when an image will be saved in the miniSD memory card →p.372

NOTE

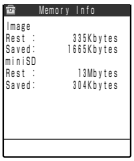
- If the amount of data exceeds “Storage setting” limit, a message appears to inform you that no additional data can be stored even if “Auto save set” is “ON”. Press ● [YES] to return to the check mode screen.
- If “Phone” is set to “Select to save” and the space of “Image” or “i Motion” is full, a message asking you whether to delete unnecessary still images or movies before the save operation appears. To save, select “YES” and select the still image or movie to be deleted. If “miniSD” is set to “Select to save” and the space in the miniSD memory card is full, a message notifying you the miniSD memory card is full appears and the “Select to save” screen is displayed again.

Checking memory information <Memory info>

You can check the information about unused/used data space for the FOMA folders and a miniSD memory card that store shot still images or recorded movies.

<Example: When Photo mode is selected>

1 Check capacity on the memory information screen.



When a miniSD memory card is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, the memory information for the miniSD memory card is not displayed.

Disabling still images/movies being sent/forwarded by the receiver <File restriction>

Default setting	File unrestricted

You can set this mode to disable shot still images/movies being sent/forwarded from the FOMA terminal of the recipient. When "File restriction" is set to "File restricted", the recipient cannot attach the shot still images/movies to an i-mode mail to output the message from one's FOMA terminal.

● Even if "File restriction" is set to "File restricted", the still images or movies sent by infrared exchange function or exported to miniSD memory card can be transmitted from FOMA terminal.

1 Select or unselect file restriction on the file restriction setting screen.

File unrestricted : Enables shot still images/movies being sent/forwarded from the FOMA terminal of the recipient.

File restricted : Disables shot still images/movies being sent/forwarded from the FOMA terminal of the recipient.

To select continuous multiple pictures and set up file restrictions

Select the continuous multiple pictures you want to set up on the check mode screen and select "File restriction" from the function menu and then select "File restricted".

Selecting "Restriction all" allows you to set file restrictions on all continuous multiple pictures.

NOTE

● You can set the same setting by displaying the function menu on the check mode screen after taking pictures or shooting movies. In this case, set it up before saving the picture, the picture contained in the continuous multiple pictures, or movie.

● When you want to set "File restriction" after shooting and storing is completed, select desired still images, still images included in continuous multiple pictures or movie on the list screen of "View movie" or "View photo", and then proceed the setting from the function menu. You can also proceed the setting from "Image" (for still images and continuous multiple pictures) or "i Motion" (for movies).

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Using the Bar Code Reader

The built-in camera enables you to scan bar code (JAN code), a character and number string included in QR code.
The scanned information can be used as follows.

Purpose	Characters to be highlighted	Usable/storable information
To add to the Phonebook	Phone number	Phone number
	Mail address	Mail address
To add all to the Phonebook	Add to phonebook	Name, reading, phone number, mail address, memo
To compose a mail	Mail address	Mail address
	Compose message	Mail address, subject, body
To display a site or Web page	URL	URL
To add URL as a bookmark	URL	URL
	Add bookmark	URL, site name
To start up i-αppli	Activate i-αppli	–
To make a voice call	Phone number	Phone number
To make a videophone call		
To display an image	Image	Image
To save an image		
To play a melody	♫	Melody
To store melody		

- Up to 5 sets of information can be registered.
- No bar code or 2-D code can be scanned except JAN code and QR code.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to keep it still during operation. The terminal can be more stable when you place the FOMA on your hand or a book.
- Depending on the scratch, dirt, damage, printing quality, how the light is reflected and the QR code version, the bar code may not be recognized properly.
- Depending on the type and the size of the code, it may not be able to be read.
- When scanning the code, maintain a distance of approximately 5 to 9 cm between the out-camera and the code.
- When you paste the bar code reader as the desktop icon on the standby display, you can call up this function quickly. →p.135

JAN code/QR code

■ JAN code

Bar code that represents numbers with various lines (bars) in size and space. 8- or 13-digit JAN codes can be scanned.



4942857113068

Example:4942857113068

■ QR code

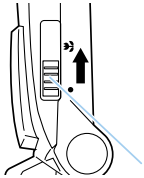
One of the 2-D codes that represents the data of alphanumeric and kana characters in a vertical/horizontal direction. Some QR code contains images and melody data. As another type, one piece of information is divided into several QR codes. You can scan the up-to-16-divided QR code as a single information.



Example:株式会社NTTドコモ(NTT DoCoMo, Inc.)

Switching the lens of the out-camera

●The lens of the out-camera needs to be switched to (macro lens) with lens selection switch when scanning the code.



When switching the lens selector, slide the switch firmly to the ● (standard lens) or (macro lens). Never leave it halfway.
After you have switched the selector to (macro lens) and taken shots, we recommend returning it to ● (standard lens).

Scanning code

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶"Bar code reader".

You can also start up "Bar code reader" from the function menu on the shooting mode screen in Photo mode. If there is any information registered, the bar code reader list screen will be displayed. Select "<New>" to capture code information. No code data is initially registered.

2 Display the code you want to scan within the scanning range.



Display the code to be scanned as large as possible within the scanning range. If the whole code is not fit within the scanning range or if it cannot be sharply focused, switch the lens of the out-camera to the normal lens with lens selection switch and try it again.

To switch the zoom

When you zoom in, press .
When you zoom out, press .

To use the light

Press [ON] or [Home] ().
Press [OFF] or [Home] to turn off the light.

3 Press [Record] to scan the code.

When the scanning is completed, the scanned information is displayed on the detail screen of the bar code reader.
If scanning is not performed within approximately 30 seconds after the start of scanning, a message notifying you that scanning has failed appears and scanning is canceled.

To restart scanning

Press .

To read information of a code divided into multiple ones

Select "OK" and repeat Steps 2 and 3 to read the code information.

4 Highlight the data you want to use and manipulate the data.



To store in the Phonebook

Select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu to store in the phonebook. →p.104

To display a site or Web page

Press [Select]. →pp.205 and 214

To save URL as a bookmark

Select "Add bookmark" from the function menu to save as a bookmark. →p.215

To start up i-αppli

Press [Select].

To make a voice/videophone call

Press ● [Select], and select “Voice-phone” or “Video-phone” and “Dial”. →pp.62 and 89

When a voice call or videophone call is made by selecting “Voice-phone” or “Video-phone” followed by “Dial”, whether to notify your caller ID depends on the setting of “Notify Caller ID Service” (p.59). If you want to select whether to notify your caller ID when making a voice or video call, select “Notify caller ID” and “ON” or “OFF”.

You can select an image to be sent during a videophone call by selecting “Dialing” and “Select image” when making a videophone call.

To make an international call

Press ● [Select], and select “Voice-phone” or “Video-phone”, “International Call” and “Dial” after choosing the country name. →p.69

This operation adds the international access code and the country code to the beginning of the original number and leads to the international call. (If the phone number starts at “0”, the first “0” is omitted.)

To compose a mail

Select ● [Select] to compose an i-mode mail. →p.264

To save an image

Select “Save image” from the function menu.

To play a melody

Press ● [Select]. →p.365

To store a melody

Select “Save melody” from the function menu.

Using all of the necessary information displayed in the bar code reader details screen:

To add all to the phonebook

Highlight “Add to phonebook” and select ● [Select] to add the information to the phonebook. →p.104

To compose a mail

Highlight “Compose message” and select ● [Select] to compose an i-mode mail. →p.264

To add URL as a bookmark

Highlight “Add bookmark” and select ● [Select] to add the URL as a bookmark. →p.215

NOTE

- You cannot make an international call using the bar code reader for the countries where the country code is not registered in the “Int'l dial setting” as well as for some country like Italy and some region.
- You can also read the information by starting up the bar code reader from the function menu on the character edit screen or i-αppli. However, you cannot display the registered information or save the information read. The image or melody information cannot be read correctly. A character that cannot be entered on the character editing screen is replaced with a space.
- When you try to connect the Internet with the character information that starts with characters other than “http://” or “https://”, a message appears notifying that the URL is incorrect.
- If the scanned information includes characters which are not available for the phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs, a warning message appears.
- When you compose new i-mode mail or register data in a Phonebook as a mail address, you can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. If you enter more than 50 characters, a message appears to inform you that the number of characters exceeds the limit and asks you whether or not you still want to register the data. Select “YES” to enter 50 characters. The surplus portion will be deleted.
- When dialing, you can enter up to 26 digits (including “+”, “*”, “#”, or “p”). If more than 26 digits are entered, the entered numbers will be deleted.
- When storing a phone number in the phonebook, up to 26 digits (including “+”, “*”, “#”, or “p”) can be entered for that phone number. If more than 26 digits are entered, a message indicating that the input characters exceed 26 and asking whether you wish to go ahead and store the number is displayed. If you choose “YES”, only the 26 digits will be stored and the exceeding digits will be discarded.
- If there are already 5 sets of information registered and you select “<New>” on the bar code reader list screen, a messages appears asking you whether or not you want to overwrite the data. Select “YES” to overwrite the oldest information with new data.
- When you do not press any key for 3 minutes or more on the screen of Step 2, you go back to the bar code reader screen.

Saving and using the scanned data

You can save the data scanned by a bar code reader and use it later.

Saving the scanned data

1 Select “Store” from the function menu in the detail screen of the scanned data (p.194).

The scanned data is saved.

To edit the title

After saving the scanned data, select “Edit title” from the function menu in the bar code reader list screen. Up to 9 full-pitch characters or 18 half-pitch characters can be entered as the title.
Entering characters →p.502

NOTE

- If another transmission/operation is conducted (such as a voice or videophone call or alarm notification of Alarm clock, Schedule or ToDo) before you register the information that you have read, the bar code information will be saved temporarily and the screen will be switched to the one used for such transmission/operation. Upon completion of the transmission/operation, you are returned to the screen displaying the data scanned by the bar code reader.
- You cannot change where to save the scanned data.

Displaying the scanned data stored in the terminal

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Bar code reader”.

The bar code reader list screen appears.

2 Select a title you want to display.

The bar code reader details screen appears.

To delete a title

Select the title you want to delete and select “Delete this” from the function menu.

To delete all titles

Select “Delete all” from the function menu.

3 Highlight the data you want to use and manipulate the data. →p.194

i-mode

About i-mode 198
Displaying the i-mode Menu ..... i-mode menu 204

■ **Displaying a Site**

Displaying a Site 205
How to View and Operate a Site 207
Adding a Site to My Menu ..... My Menu 213
Changing the i-mode Password ..... Change i-mode password 214
Displaying a Web Page ..... Go to location 214
Displaying Web Sites Quickly by Storing the Sites ..... Bookmark 215
Displaying Sites You View Often Simply ..... Home URL 218
Saving a Displayed Site ..... Screen memo 220

■ **Downloading an Image/Melody from a Site**

Downloading an Image from a Site or Message 222
Downloading a Melody from a Site 223
Downloading a Dictionary from a Site 224
Downloading a Chara-den from a Site 224

■ **Useful i-mode Functions**

Using the Phone To/Mail To/Web To Functions 225

■ **Making the i-mode Settings**

Making the i-mode Settings 227

■ **Using the Message Service**

Receiving a Message ..... Msg. reception 232
Inquiring about Received Message at the Center ..... Check new message 234
Displaying Messages in a Message Box ..... Msg. Request/Free 236

About i-mode

The i-mode Service allows you to use an i-mode-compliant FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) to access and use various online services, such as the site (program) connection service or the Internet connection service, and use i-mode Mail service.

■ Site (Program) connection service

This service enables you to view various sites provided by IPs (Information Providers) using simple key operations.

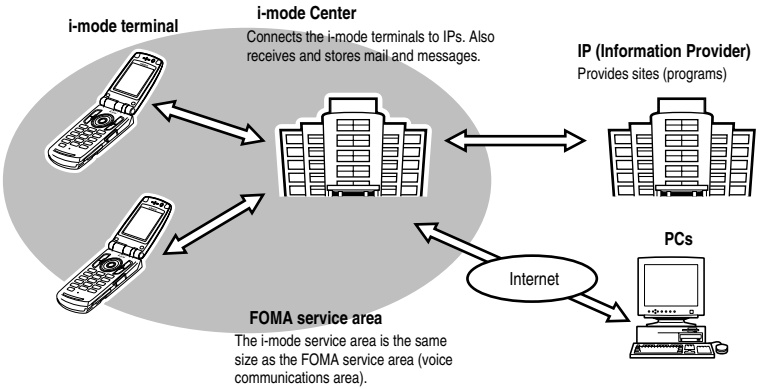
■ Internet connection service

This service enables you to use the i-mode terminal to connect to the Internet and access i-mode compatible Web pages.

■ i-mode mail service

This service enables you to exchange mail not only with the i-mode terminals, but also with Internet e-mail users.

Service Structure



i-mode is a paid service to which you need to subscribe. For application inquires, contact the DoCoMo Information Center indicated on the back cover of the manual.

NOTE

- Newly subscribing to FOMA service allows you to use all the services on the day of subscription.
- When you change your subscription from the mova service (signed for i-mode) to the FOMA service, the contents of "My Menu" you were using in the mova service can be carried over. However, some sites may not carry the contents of "My Menu" to the FOMA service. In this case, please make a subscription again. You can check the sites that support "My Menu" carry-over in the "お知らせ&ヘルプ(News & Help)" in the iMenu.
- When you change your subscription from the mova service (signed for i-mode) to the FOMA service, you can continuously use your i-mode mail address.
- You are charged for transmission according to the amount of data (packets) sent and received. There is no information on transmission fees in this manual. For details on the fee schedule and other information, refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribe to the i-mode Service.
- The contents of the i-mode Services are subject to change without prior notice. For detail information, refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".

Site (Program) connection service

You can use simple key operations to connect to sites provided by IPs (Information Providers) to use their various online services.
For instance, you can check your bank account balance, transfer money, reserve concert tickets, read news, use online dictionaries and/or download ring tones.

Displaying sites

When you connect to the i-mode Center, the iMenu screen appears. From this screen, you can access a variety of other sites as well as the "週刊iガイド (What's New!!)" screen.
How to display the sites →p.205



The above is a screen image. The actual screen may be displayed differently depending on your settings.

Item	Description
1 マイメニュー (1 My Menu)	Add frequently visited sites for easier access (p.213). The URLs of pay sites are automatically added upon subscription. Up to 45 sites can be stored.
2 週刊iガイド (2 What's New!!)	This site provides information on new or recommended sites. Updated every Monday through Friday.
3 メニューリスト (3 Menu List)	Sites are listed by category and area for your convenience. Select and connect to an interesting site from the menu.
4 とくするメニュー (Tokusuru menu)	Interesting sales campaign information, giveaways, discount coupons, and other information are featured here. This information is updated weekly (provided by D2 Communications).
5 iエリア (i-area)	Information on the area, such as weather and maps, etc. are provided here.
6 かんたん検索 (Simple search)	You can easily search a site with a keyword or some other search method from a category such as "ゲーム(Game)" and "待受画面(Standby display)". ・ i-αppli search Provides an overview of sites offering free information on i-αppli and gaming sites. Arranged by usage. ・ Useful site search Useful sites in daily life taken from Menu List are categorized by usage.
7 マイボックス (My box)	This member service requires advanced subscription with the service providers including stores and sites, allowing more convenient access. Once you make a subscription, you can access them easily.
8 オプション設定 (4 Options)	Set your i-mode mail preferences or i-mode password here.
9 お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)	Announcements from DoCoMo, help on how to use i-mode, and rules for using i-mode are available here.
料金&お申込 (Fee & application)	Check service fees, change payment or contract details and apply for services here.
English	Changes the iMenu screen in English.
日本語	Changes the iMenu screen in Japanese.

NOTE

- Some sites may charge information fees (i-mode pay sites).
- You may have to subscribe separately to use some of the services provided by IPs.
- A packet communication fee will be charged only for the communication with the i-mode Center, whether the i-mode icon flashes or not.
- If you subscribe to the "Dual network service", the iMenu screen, etc. may be displayed differently from those shown above.

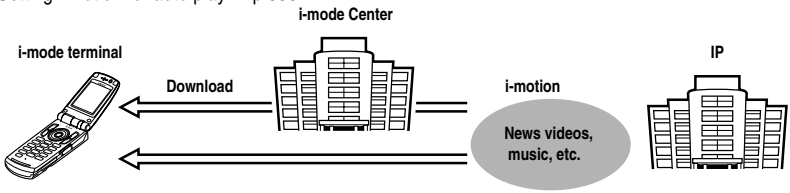
Continued on next page

Other features

■ i-motion

You can download videos and sound from i-mode sites to the i-mode terminal so you can set them to the standby display as well as enjoy playing the data.

- Downloading i-motion →p.332
- Playing i-motion →p.332
- Setting i-motion for auto play →p.336



To download i-motion, there are two communication methods available: packet communication that goes through the i-mode Center and digital communication that does not go through the i-mode Center.

■ Chaku-motion

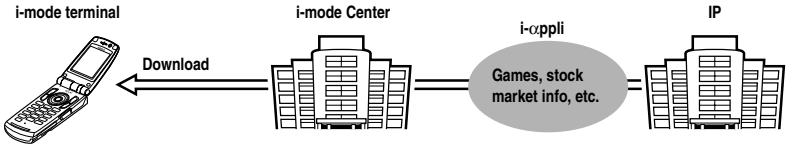
You can download i-motion from i-mode site to your i-mode terminal, and set it to a ring tone or incoming image. Not only melodies but also songs of your favorite singers can be used as the ring tone. You cannot set some i-motions that are not compatible with this function to Chaku-motion.

- Setting Chaku-motion →p.124

■ i-αppli

By downloading i-αppli from sites, you can make your i-mode terminal even easier to use. For example, you can download and play a range of games to an i-mode terminal or download an i-αppli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There are also mapping application that allows you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth.

- Downloading i-αppli →p.312
- Running i-αppli →p.315
- Launching i-αppli automatically →p.321



■ i-αppli standby display

On this display, i-αppli can be used as a standby display, and while running, mails can be received on it and phone calls can be made from it. In addition, it can display the latest news and weather on the standby display, it can notify you when mail arrives or an alarm goes off using your favorite cartoon character, making your standby display even more convenient.

- Setting i-αppli standby display →p.325

■ i-αppli DX

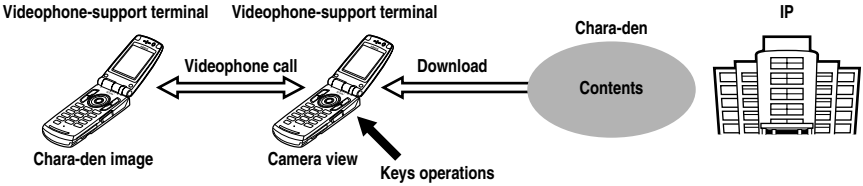
i-αppli DX links up with the information on the i-mode terminal (such as mails, dialed/received calls and Phonebook data) to make i-αppli even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes composing mail on your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character notify you of the sender of an incoming call or message, and linking with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or desired information such as share prices.

- i-αppli DX →p.310

■ Chara-den

When using the videophone, you can display a cartoon character instead of your image, in the other party's videophone-support terminal. The cartoon character moves his or her mouth, as if he or she were speaking, in response to your voice. Also, you can move the cartoon character in a certain way by operating a key. Furthermore, you can download your favorite cartoon character; set a still image or a movie file showing the cartoon character to the standby display; and send mail to which the image or file has been attached. You cannot send an image or movie file, if it is prohibited to attach the file to mail or output it to outside the FOMA terminal.

- Downloading Chara-den →p.224
- Checking Chara-den →p.359
- Setting Chara-den →p.359
- Operating Chara-den →pp. 93 and 360
- Recording Chara-den →p.361



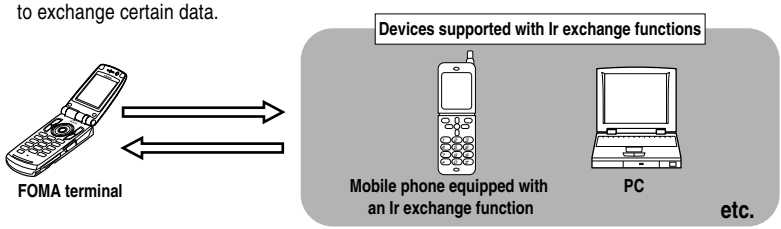
■ Infrared exchange function

Phonebook contents, mail and Bookmarks can be exchanged between mobile phones that are compliant with infrared exchange functions and PCs, etc.※

Furthermore, using an i-αppli in conjunction with an infrared exchange function makes it possible to link with other devices equipped with infrared exchange function which broadens your use.

- Using infrared exchange function →p.393

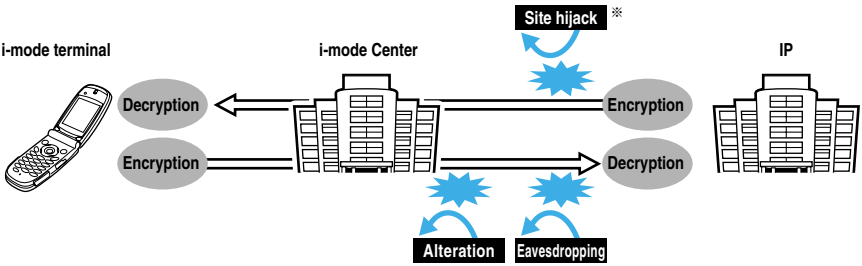
※: Even though the other device is equipped with an infrared exchange function, it may not be possible to exchange certain data.



■ TLS/SSL communication

TLS is an abbreviation for Transport Layer Security and SSL is an abbreviation for Secure Sockets Layer. They are encryption technology that are used to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from a TLS/SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site hijacking※ or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer.

- Using the TLS/SSL communication →p.212



※Site hijack : When a third party diverts web traffic to a fake Web page to illegally obtain users' personal information.

Continued on next page

■ FOMA card operational restriction function

This function restricts the files of melody or still images/movies downloaded from a site or retrieved from a mail, when the FOMA card that stores your information (phone number, Phonebook (in part), etc.) is inserted in the FOMA terminal. If the FOMA card is replaced with another FOMA card, or you power on your terminal without the FOMA card inserted, this function prohibits the received files from being played or viewed.

• FOMA card operational restriction function →p.48

■ i-melody

You can download the latest songs or music that you like to your i-mode terminal and use them as ring tones. →p.223
You can also set i-motion as the Chaku-motion. Furthermore, you can use not only a melody, but also the singing voice of, and a movie showing a singer you like as ring tone or image. →p.124

■ Flash™

Flash is an animation technology using images and sounds. By using Flash, you can view richly expressive animations and sites. You can also download images using Flash to the i-mode terminal and set them as your standby screen. →p.222

■ DL dictionary

You can download the dictionary files of dialects, technical terms, etc. from sites to the i-mode terminal, for use in conversion. →p.224

■ Message service

You can receive your desired information (messages) automatically with your i-mode terminal.
There are two kinds of message services, Msg. Request and Msg. Free.

Msg. Request	If you subscribe to a site which provides message service, your desired information will be delivered automatically as a message.
Msg. Free	You receive a message for free of packet communication charge.

• How to set Msg. Free
Select “iMenu” – “オプション設定” – “メッセージF設定” – “受信する”, enter the i-mode password (a 4 digit number) and then select “決定”.

• How to receive message service →pp.232 and 234

• If you have simultaneously subscribed to i-mode at the same time as FOMA on October 1, 2004 or later, the default setting for “メッセージF設定” is “受信する”. If you do not want the message service, you need to change “メッセージF設定” to “受信しない”.
※ Users who subscribed prior to October 1, 2004 and who wish to use the Msg. Free service must perform an option setting for receiving messages because the default setting is “受信しない”.
For details, refer to the “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” provided when you subscribe to i-mode service.

When you cannot receive Msg. Request/Free because the terminal is turned off or “圏外” is displayed, they are stored in the i-mode Center.

• The maximum length of time and the maximum number of messages that can be stored at the i-mode Center are as follows. When the number of messages exceeds the maximum capacity, messages will be deleted starting from the oldest message.

	Maximum Capacity	Retention Time
Msg. Request	300 messages	72 hours
Msg. Free	300 messages	72 hours

• Msg. Request/Free that are stored at the i-mode Center can be received by Check new message. →p.234

■ トクだねニュース便 (Read it and Reap News) (Japanese only)

DoCoMo delivers i-mode terminals information such as news and weather forecasts using the Msg. Request function. トクだねニュース便 (Read it and Reap News) (Japanese only) is a charged service for which you need to subscribe. After the subscription is completed, this service will be automatically registered in My Menu so that you can also see this information by accessing it from My Menu. For more information, see “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.

• Viewing the Msg. Request screens →p.236

■ i-mode password

You need your i-mode password to subscribe to pay sites, store release sites in “My Menu” and specify i-mode mail settings. The i-mode password is set to “0000” (4 zeros in figures) by default. Use your i-mode terminal to change the i-mode password as preferred →p.214.
Take care to keep your i-mode password private.

Internet connection

You can connect to the Internet and display an i-mode compliant Web page by entering its address (URL).

● For information on how to display a Web page →p.214

NOTE

- Note that Web pages that are not i-mode compatible may not be displayed properly. An i-mode compatible Web page refers to a Web page that is created with i-mode-compatible tags.
- Web pages may look different displayed on the FOMA compared to a PC.
- Web pages with URLs of over 256 half-pitch characters may not be displayed.
- If you happen to access a page with a large amount of information, you can interrupt communication by canceling download.

Useful functions

You can easily make voice/videophone calls, send mails and access web sites, using data, such as a phone number, mail address and URL, displayed on a Web page or in the mail text.

Function	Description	See page
Phone To	Allows you to make a voice/videophone call by easy operations, using a phone number displayed on a Web page or in a mail and Msg. Request/Free text.	p.225
Mail To	Allows you to display the new mail screen, using a mail address displayed on a Web page or in a mail and Msg. Request/Free text.	p.226
Web To	Allows you to access a Web page from a URL displayed on a Web page or in a mail and Msg. Request/Free text. Note that some sites are not compatible with this function.	p.227

● Moreover, you can perform the following operations: Download and save melodies (p.223) and images (p.222); download and save dictionaries (p.224); start i-αppli (p.323); download and save i-motion (p.332); and register phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook (p.212).

When you display pages stored in cache

- The cache is a location in the FOMA terminal where data on the Web pages you have displayed are saved temporarily. Pressing ○ to move to another page while a site or Web page is displayed, enables you to view the stored page as cached data that does not have to be downloaded. However, if the Website data is larger than the cache size of the FOMA terminal or if you display a Web page set to always download the latest information, communication starts even when you press ○. Even if the page is stored in the cache, communication runs and the latest information is displayed when the date-time information in this page is updated.
- Even when site data is downloaded from cache, the text and settings you entered on previous visits are not displayed.
- The cache is cleared when you disconnect i-mode.
- When you download TLS/SSL-compatible pages from cache, the “Displaying TLS/SSL page” message appears.

When using i-mode

- The information on sites (programs) or Internet Web pages is protected by copyright laws. Texts, pictures, and other data downloaded from these sites (programs) or Internet Web pages to your FOMA terminal are permitted only for your personal use. No data may be copied in part or in whole, whether modified or not, for resale or redistribution without prior permission.
- Note that all data saved (mail, Msg. Request/Free, screen memos, i-αppli and i-motion) or stored entries (e.g. Bookmarks) in your FOMA terminal is retained for about 1 month even if the battery pack is removed or is completely discharged. However, data may be lost after that period. Note also that the information stored in your FOMA may be lost when your FOMA is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. It is the user’s responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored in the FOMA. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your FOMA.
- When the FOMA terminal is repaired or handled in other ways, the information downloaded using the i-mode, i-αppli and i-motion will not be transferred to the new mobile phone according to the copyright law. Also, when the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power is turned on with the FOMA card removed, melodies, images, and i-motions downloaded from websites, screen memos with images and i-motions, and Msg. Request/Free with melodies and images, attached or pasted cannot be displayed or played.
- If you set a file or data whose display/replay is restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function (p.48) to the standby display or ring tone, these items operate according to the initial settings if you replace the FOMA card with another or power on the terminal without inserting the FOMA card.

Displaying the i-mode Menu

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode .

The i-mode menu screen appears. There are 8 items in this menu. The main operations in i-mode begin from this screen.

You can also display the i-mode menu by pressing [i-mode] while the standby display is displayed.

When "圏外"is displayed

The FOMA is either out of the i-mode service area or at a place where radio waves do not reach you. The i-mode service area is the same size as the FOMA service area (voice communication area). Move to a location where the radio wave level indicator "" lights up.

- i-mode is communication-based service, so it cannot be activated when "圏外" is displayed.
- You can display the i-mode menu even when "圏外" is displayed.

When "" flashes

You attempt to connect a site (p.205) or the Internet (p.214), or send an i-mode mail (p.248) although you are not receiving an i-mode service within the service area. It may take several minutes to start an i-mode session.

When "" flashes

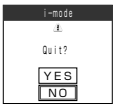
An i-mode session is in progress.



Item	Description	See page
1 iMenu	Initial page which appears when you connect your FOMA to the i-mode Center. You can access various sites (programs) and "週刊iガイド(What's New!!)" from this page.	pp.199 and 205
2 Bookmark	Once you add your favorite Web page addresses on your i-mode terminal, you can quickly access the sites next time.	p.215
3 Screen memo	Displays the i-mode screens stored in your i-mode terminal.	p.220
4 Last URL	Displays the last site or Web page you visited.	p.206
5 Go to location	Allows you to connect to i-mode compliant Web pages on the Internet by directly entering the addresses.	p.214
6 Message	Displays received Msg. Request/Free. Message service provides automatic delivery of desired information to your mobile phone.	p.236
7 Check new message	Inquires to the i-mode Center whether i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free is kept.	pp.234 and 270
8 i-mode settings	Makes settings for i-mode related functions on your FOMA terminal.	p.227

Exiting an i-mode screen

1 Press (PWR HLD) during i-mode and select "YES".



"" flashes, and "" turns off.

NOTE

- If you hold down (CLR) for 1 second or more while sending/receiving i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free, or making an inquiry to the center, the transmission and reception of i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free will be canceled. However, it may be sent/received depending on the timing of the cancellation.
- The power will be turned off when you hold down (PWR HLD) for 2 seconds or more.
- If i-mode mail, SMS or Msg. Request/Free is sent to you while "圏外" is displayed or when the FOMA terminal power is turned off, the i-mode Center will keep i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free, and the SMS center will keep SMS for you.

Displaying a Site

Various services are offered by IPs (Information Providers).
You can check your bank account or reserve a variety of tickets on the display of your FOMA terminal.

- Service lists vary depending on the sites. Some sites may require you to make a subscription.
- Some sites may charge subscription fees (i-mode pay sites).

Connecting to a site

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "iMenu".

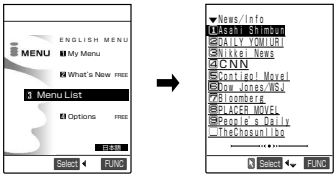


Starting i-mode →p.204
An animation appears, indicating you that the page is being loaded.

To cancel the operation of page receiving

Press [Quit].

2 Select "English" ▶ "Menu List" and then specify the site you want to access.

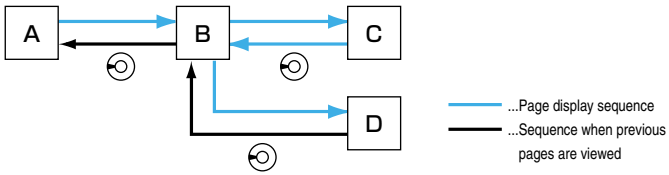


Displaying iMenu in English →p.206

NOTE

- You can select any underlined items on a page. The selected item will be highlighted.
- To view the page displayed before the current page, press ◁. Press ▷ to go back to the previous page and then view the next page.
- You can skip back to the first page displayed so far by continuously pressing the ◁. However, if you press ◁ to view the previous page at some point (to return from [C] to [B]) and then access a different page (from [B] to [D]) from there, pressing ◁ twice from page [D] does not display page [C]. Instead, pages [D], [B] and then [A] are displayed.

When sequence of pages displayed is [A]→[B]→[C]→[B]→[D]



- If a Flash image is displayed, display operation may differ.
- Depending on sites, since the screen color of a site may exceed the maximum display color of a FOMA terminal, the screen may be different from the real one.
- You can use Store schedule to add a schedule while viewing a displayed page. →p.528

iMenu in English

● The iMenu can be displayed in English.

<Changing to the iMenu in English>

1 Display the i-mode menu.

2 Select “iMenu”.



3 Press ● to select “English”, then press ● [Select].

4 iMenu in English will be displayed.



Select “日本語” to change back to the Japanese display.

NOTE

- The iMenu in English differs slightly from the iMenu in Japanese.
- とくするメニュー (Tokusuru Menu), iエリア (i-area), かんたん検索 (Simple search), マイボックス (My box), お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help) and 料金＆お申込 (Fee & application) are not shown on the English iMenu.
- Generally, the What's new!! site will be updated every other Monday.
- English sites are displayed after entering Menu List (sites differ from Japanese version).
- Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on What's New!!.

Reconnecting to the page you displayed last time <Last URL>

You can use the last URL function to display the last site or website you visited. The URL of the last Web page displayed on the screen can be stored in Last URL.

- Depending on the page type such as “Data received” screen, some URLs may not be stored by the last URL function.

1 Select “Last URL” from the i-mode menu.

i-mode menu →p.204

To cancel the operation of page receiving

Press [Quit].

NOTE

- If you select “Last URL” when you have just purchased the FOMA or after “Reset last URL” is processed, “iMenu” screen appears.
- The URL stored under Last URL is overwritten each time a page is displayed.

How to View and Operate a Site

Mobile phone information

When a site or Internet Web page is displayed on the FOMA’s screen and you select an item, a mobile phone information confirmation screen may appear.

- The message whether or not you send your mobile phone information will appear before mobile phone information is sent. The information is never sent automatically.



When you accept to send the information

Select “YES”.

When you want to withhold the information

Select “NO”.

To cancel the operation

Press (CLR).

You can go back to the previous screen before the screen showing mobile phone information.

NOTE

- When you send your mobile phone information (such as the manufacturing number of your FOMA terminal, identification number of the FOMA card), it is sent over the Internet to the IP (Information Provider) and may in some cases be disclosed to third parties.

Viewing images on sites

Images are sometimes displayed on sites or a Web page.

- The FOMA terminal can display images in GIF format, JPEG format, PNG format and WBMP format as well as Flash images (below). However, some images cannot be displayed.
- When you are receiving an image, “ ” is displayed. The image itself appears when the image data has been received.
- You can specify whether images are displayed or not in “Image display” (p.229). If the setting for “Display image” is set from “OFF” to “ON” from the function menu while a site page is being displayed, “Reload” (p.211) action will display the “ ” image.

  On the other hand, if you change the setting from “ON” to “OFF”, the already received image remains displayed.

About the displayed image icons

※ : Displayed when the FOMA is presently receiving an image or “Image display” is set to “OFF”.

: Displayed when the FOMA could not receive an image or cannot display it due to the image format.

※ : Grayed out when the image cannot be received.

Navigating Flash images

The FOMA supports a Flash image, incorporated by an animation technique that uses images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download Flash images and set them in the standby display.

Continued on next page

- You can select an item and view another page or select a menu option and perform the corresponding operation. You can also perform operations such as displaying linked pages by selecting the section containing the information.
- Flash images may look different from the appearance of the site when you play the Flash image saved as Save image. (p.222)
- Even when a Flash image is displayed, it may not run correctly.
- Even if "◀◆▶" is not displayed at the bottom of the screen, you may be able to operate Flash images. In addition, you may not use the Neuropointer for some screens using a Flash image. "↖" is not displayed at the bottom of such screens for which Neuropointer cannot be used.
- If "Image display" is set to "OFF" a Flash image is not displayed.

NOTE

- To execute a Flash image again, select "Retry" from the function menu.
- Some Flash images have sound effects. To turn the sound effect off, select "Sound effect" from the function menu, and set to "OFF". When the vibrator is set, it will not vibrate when the sound effect is being played.
- If you do not press any keys for 120 seconds or more during the play, the sound effect pauses. To resume, press any key.
- Saved Flash images may appear differently from its appearance on the site.

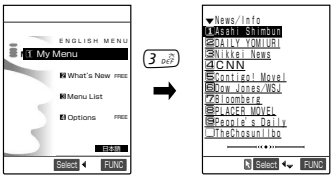
Selecting a link destination and item

There are 2 following ways of selecting a menu item:

- This section uses examples of selecting "Menu List" from the iMenu.

Selecting the item number with a dial key (Direct key selection)

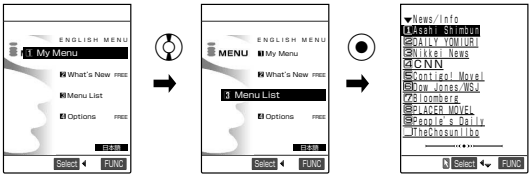
1 Press the dial key that indicates the same number as the item number.



Direct key selection may not be used for some sites.

Selecting the item with the Multi-function key

1 Press ◎ to highlight the item you want to select, and then press ● [Select].

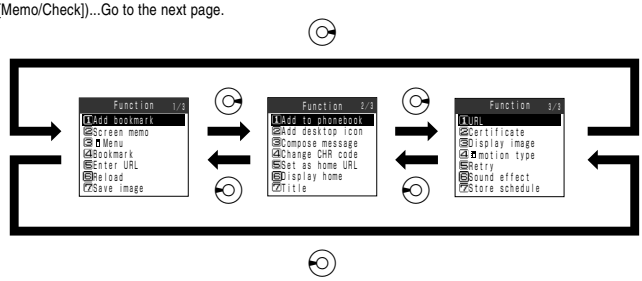


If the Function menu spans multiple pages

You can move to the previous or the next page by the following operations:

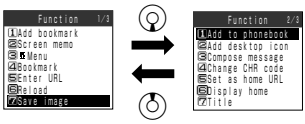
(or [Home])...Go to the previous page.

(or [Memo/Check])...Go to the next page.



With the bottom item highlighted, press ...Go to the next page (the top item will be highlighted).

With the top item highlighted, press ...Go to the previous page (the bottom item will be highlighted).



※: If there is only one page of the Function menu, press with the top item highlighted to go to the bottom item, or press with the bottom item highlighted to go to the top item.

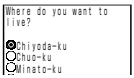
Entering characters on a site or Web page

You may find a frame for entering characters or keys to be selected in questionnaires or application forms on sites or Web pages.

● For details, refer to “FOMA i-mode User's Manual”.

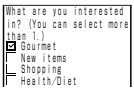
Radio button

Only one of the listed items can be selected. ◉ indicates the selected item.



Check box

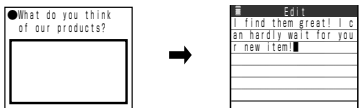
More than 1 of the listed items can be selected. ☑ indicates the selected item.



Text box

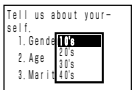
You can enter characters in the box. Select the text box to display a screen allowing you to enter characters.

Entering characters →p.502



Pull-down menu

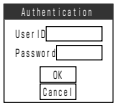
You can select an item from the list of options. You can see the part of options. Select the pull-down menu to display the multiple hidden options.



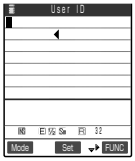
Entering User ID and Password

Some sites may display the authentication screen. The display varies depending on the sites.

1 Select the text box of “User ID”.



2 Enter your User ID and then press ● [Set].



Entering characters →p.502

3 Select the text box of “Password”.



4 Enter your password and then press ● [Set].



The entered password appears as “∗”.
When “Input method” is set to “Mode 2 (2-touch)”, enter your password in “Mode 2(2-touch)” as well. →p.527

5 Select “OK”.

Starts authenticating the User ID and Password.

To cancel the operation

Select “Cancel”.

When the authentication fails, a message “Password is not correct (401)” appears. Select “YES” to try the authentication again.

Viewing a subsequent screen <Scroll>

When a site, Msg. Request/Free, i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the whole contents of list or text may not be displayed. In this case, scroll the screen to view the continuation of the contents.

■ When scrolling line

(Q)···· Displays a continuation of the list or text by scrolling downward the line.

(O)···· Displays the previous line of the list or text by scrolling upward the line.

You can set the number of scroll lines to 1 line, 3 lines or 5 lines at a time when pressing (O) or (Q). →pp.230 and 295

■ **When scrolling screen**

▼ [Memo/Check] ·····Displays a continuation of the list or text by scrolling downward the screen.

▲ [Home] ·····Displays the previous page of the list or text by scrolling upward the screen.

Reloading the information <Reload>

You can update the current page to have the latest information.

1 Select "Reload" from the function menu while the page is displayed.

NOTE

● When "Reload" is processed on the screen notifying you that the data is successfully sent such as on the response of questionnaires, a message appears asking if you want to resend the data. Be aware that if you select "YES" on this screen, the same data will be sent again.

Displaying the URLs or titles of Web pages <URL/Title>

You can display and check the URLs or titles of Web pages.

● URLs of up to 512 half-pitch characters each can be displayed. Titles of up to 128 half-pitch characters each can also be displayed. When the page does not have a title, it is displayed as "No title".

● You cannot edit the URLs or titles.

1 Select the item you want to check from the function menu while the page is displayed.

To check the title
Select "Title".

To check the URL
Select "URL".

Where the screen does not display all the titles or URLs, press ● to display the cursor, and then move the cursor with ◇ to check the information.

When the cursor is displayed, press ● again and the cursor disappears.

Select "OK" to go back to the page screen.

Displaying characters properly <Change CHR code>

When the characters of pages do not appear properly, you can change the character code to display them again.

1 Select "Change CHR code" from the function menu while the page is displayed.

If the characters are not still displayed correctly, repeat the same procedure.

NOTE

● The characters may not appear correctly even you repeat changing the character code.

● After repeating to change the character code 4 times, the characters will return to the original.

● When you change the character code despite that the characters appear correctly, they may appear improperly.

Adding a phone number and mail address to the Phonebook <Add to phonebook>

You can add the information such as a phone number and mail address displayed on a site, screen memo or Msg. Request/Free to the Phonebook.

<Example: Registering the phone number that is displayed on a site>

1 Display the page that contains the information you want to add, and highlight the phone number to be added.



2 Select “Add to phonebook” from the function menu.

A message appears confirming if it is OK to add the phone number to the Phonebook.
Select “YES” to add the number to the Phonebook.

To cancel the operation

Select “NO”.

3 Adding the number to the Phonebook.

Add the number to the Phonebook. →p.104
If any name, reading or mail address information is attached to the phone number, it is entered together with the phone number. Enter appropriate items to complete the Phonebook.

NOTE

- If any name, reading, phone number or mail address information is attached to the information (e.g. phone number, mail address) highlighted in a site page, “Auto search” is displayed in the “Search phonebook” menu when adding the information to the Phonebook. You can search for the same name or reading in the Phonebook by pressing “Auto search”.
- Some phone numbers or mail addresses may not be added to the Phonebook.
- When the phone number or mail address includes any character that cannot be added to the Phonebook (such as pictographs symbol), the character is displayed as a space.

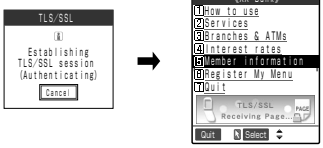
Displaying a page compatible with TLS/SSL <TLS/SSL communication>

You can use the FOMA to view sites supporting TLS/SSL communication and Web pages starting with “https://” (TLS/SSL pages).

Connecting TLS/SSL-compatible pages

A message appears when you connect TLS/SSL-compatible pages or display a normal Web page from a TLS/SSL-compatible page.

1 Viewing TLS/SSL-compliant pages.



When a TLS/SSL page is displayed, “SSL”appears on the screen.

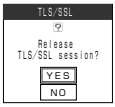
To cancel TLS/SSL session

Press ● [Select].

To cancel the receiving operation of session pages

Press [Quit].

2 Moving from a TLS/SSL page to a normal web page.



To display a normal web page

Select “YES”.

TLS/SSL communication ends, a normal web page is displayed, and “SSL” icon disappears.

NOTE

- A message may appear saying, “This site is not certified Do you connect?” while you are displaying TLS/SSL-compatible pages. This message appears when the TLS/SSL certificate for the site has expired or is not supported for the site. To connect the site, select “YES” and you can continue displaying the page. However, note that you cannot safely send your personal information (such as credit card number, contact information) on those sites. If you do not want to connect to the page, select “NO”. The message “TLS/SSL session was terminated” will appear. Press ● [Select] to return to the original screen.



Checking TLS/SSL certificates of the current page

You can check the information of the TLS/SSL certificate that was used to display the current page.

- Using the same procedure, you can check the certificate not only from a site page, but also from the screen memo.

1 Display the page of which you want to check the certificate.

On the site page

Display a TLS/SSL-compliant page →p.212

On the screen memo

Display the stored screen memo →p.220

2 Select “Certificate” from the function menu.



The TLS/SSL certificate will be displayed, allowing you to check the subject name, author, validity period and serial number of the certificate.

When the page has more than 1 certificates, press ○ to find the previous/next certificates.

My Menu

Adding a Site to My Menu

If you add a site you frequently visit to My Menu, you will be able to access the site more quickly and easily from the next visit.

- You can add up to 45 sites to My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be added to My Menu.
- A pay site that can be accessed by selecting “iMenu" - "Menu List” is automatically added to My Menu upon subscription.
- Your i-mode password is required to add a site to My Menu.
- For details, refer to “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.

Changing the i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit i-mode password to store or remove sites from My Menu, to subscribe to or cancel message services or pay i-mode sites, and to set mail preferences.

- The i-mode password is set to “0000” (4 zeros in figures) by default. Use your FOMA terminal to change the i-mode password as preferred.
- Make sure to keep your i-mode password private.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber must bring the FOMA terminal and a form of identification (such as a driver’s license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter to have it reset. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to “0000”.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “English” ▶ “Options” to select “Change i-mode Password”.



iMenu →p.205
For details, refer to “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.

Displaying a Web Page

You can enter a URL of your choice to display a Web page.

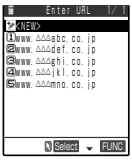
- URLs can contain up to 256 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols.
- Non i-mode compliant Web pages may not be displayed properly.

Entering URL to display web pages

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ “Go to location” ▶ “Enter URL”.

The screen for entering URLs is displayed.

2 Select “NEW” and then enter the URL.



“http://” is already entered.
Entering characters →p.502

3 Select “OK”.



The message “Pages could not be displayed” is displayed.
Press ● [Select] or CLR to connect a page of the URL you entered.

To cancel the operation
Select “Cancel”.

To cancel the operation of page receiving
Press [Quit].

If you enter a URL that does not start with “http://” or “https://” or do not enter anything, a message appears saying that the URL is incorrect.

Entering another URL while a Web page is displayed on the screen

If you select "Enter URL" from function menu while a site or Web page is displayed, you can display another page.

The URL of page that is currently being displayed appears in the field where the Internet address is entered. Select the entry field, and enter the URL of the page to be displayed.

NOTE

- You can conduct various operations from the function menu, such as storing the URL of displayed page in "Bookmark" or "Home URL" or saving a displayed page as "Screen memo".

Using the URL history to display Web pages

The FOMA stores the 10 most recently visited URLs that you entered in the URL history and displays the list. You can select a URL from the list to display the page.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "Go to location" ▶ "Enter URL".

2 Select the URL you want to display.

To edit the URL you selected

Select the entry field of Internet addresses and edit the URL.

3 Select "OK".

A message "Page could not be displayed" appears.

Press [Select] or CLR to connect a page of the URL you entered.

To cancel the operation

Select "Cancel".

To cancel the operation of page receiving

Press [Quit].

NOTE

- When the number of records in the URL history exceeds 10, the oldest record is deleted by the new URL.
- URL records for the same Web page are stored as separate records.

Deleting records in the URL history

1 Highlight the URL history you want to delete, and then select a deletion method from the function menu.

"Delete this" : Deletes one URL in the URL history.
"Delete selected" : Deletes URL in the URL history by marking the checkboxes.
"Delete all" : Deletes all the URLs in the URL history. Entering your security code (p.152) is required.

Bookmark

Displaying Web Sites Quickly by Storing the Sites

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmark allows you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can organize the stored pages, such as changing the titles or classifying your Bookmarks into folders.
- The "Confirm Mail Address" page is already bookmarked at the time of purchase. →p.243

Adding a Bookmark <Add Bookmark>

- You can Bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each stored Bookmark can contain up to 256 half-pitch characters. You cannot add a page of which URL contains over 256 half-pitch characters.
- Some sites cannot be marked with the bookmark function.

1 Display the page you want to Bookmark. Select “Add bookmark” from the function menu.

A confirmation message appears.

2 Select “YES” and then select the folder where you want to store the Bookmark.

A message appears notifying you that the page is added.

To cancel adding the Bookmark on the confirmation screen
Select “NO”.

To cancel adding the Bookmark when you select a folder
Select (CLR).

When 100 Bookmarks have already been stored
A message appears asking if you want to add new bookmarks after deleting stored ones.
If you want to store the Bookmark, select “YES”. Select a folder, and then select a Bookmark you want to delete.
To cancel adding the Bookmark, select “NO”.

NOTE

- When storing a bookmark, even when you are entering characters or selecting a setting item on the website screen, these characters or setting are not saved.
- The title of a bookmark can contain up to 12 full-pitch characters or 24 half-pitch characters. If the title exceeds 12 full-pitch characters or 24 half-pitch characters, excess characters will be deleted.

Displaying a bookmarked Web page

You can select a Bookmark from the “Bookmark” screen to display a marked page.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ “Bookmark”.

The folder list screen appears.
When the page does not contain a title or when you press ● [Set] without entering a title in “Edit title” (p.218), the URL without “http://” or “https://” is displayed.

2 Select a folder.



The Bookmark list screen appears.

3 Select the Bookmark you want to display.



To cancel the operation of page receiving
Press [Quit].

NOTE

- The page title that you displayed from the Bookmark list will appear on the top line of the first page when you next display the Bookmark list screen.

Using folders to manage Bookmarks

You can use folders to manage your Bookmarks.

- You can add up to 9 folders.
- "Bookmark" folder that is already set by default cannot be deleted or renamed.

1 Display the Bookmark folder list screen.→ p.216

2 Highlight the folder you want to operate, display the function menu and then select an item.

To add a folder
Select "Add folder" and enter the folder name.
You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for the folder name.

To rename a folder
Select "Edit folder name" and rename the folder.
You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for the folder name.

To delete the folder
Select "Delete folder"
The folder and the bookmarks in it are deleted. Entering security code (p.152) is required .

To delete all Bookmarks
Select "Delete all".
All Bookmarks will be deleted, while the folders will remain. Entering your security code (p.152) is required.

Entering characters →p.502

NOTE

- You cannot set security for Bookmark folders.

Managing a Bookmark

You can conduct various Bookmark operations from the function menu.

1 Display the Bookmark list screen.→ p.216

2 Highlight the title you want to control to display the function menu, and then select the item.

To change a title

Select “Edit title” and then enter the new title.
You can enter up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters for the title.
Entering characters →p.502

To delete a Bookmark

Select the deletion method.
“Delete this” : Deletes one Bookmark you highlighted.
“Delete selected” : Deletes Bookmarks by marking the checkboxes.
“Delete all” : Deletes all the Bookmarks in the folder. Entering your security code (p.152) is required.

To copy a URL of the Bookmark

Select “Copy URL”.
Move the cursor to the first character, use ⊕ to select the text, and then move the cursor to the last character.

To move a Bookmark to another folder

Select “Move this”.
Select the destination folder, select the checkbox of the Bookmark you want to move, and then press [Finish].

NOTE

- You can move “アドレス確認” from “Bookmark” folder to another one, and change the title and delete.
- Copying phonebook data, etc. from other phones deletes “アドレス確認” which is stored in the bookmark.

To check the number of stored Bookmarks

When you check the number of stored Bookmarks for all the folders
Display the Bookmark folder list screen

Checking the number of stored Bookmarks for each folder
Display the Bookmark list screen of the folder that you want to check

➡ **Select “No. of bookmarks” from the function menu**

Home URL

Displaying Sites You View Often Simply

You can store one Web page you view frequently in the Home URL. The “Display home” feature that helps you display a stored page easily can be utilized.

- To utilize “Display home”, store the Home URL and then set “Home URL” to “Valid”.
- URL that is stored in the Home URL can contain up to 256 half-pitch characters.

Storing the Home URL

1 Display the page you want to store and select “Set as home URL” from function menu.

A confirmation message appears.

When the Home URL is stored

A message appears asking if you want to overwrite the already set home URL.

2 Select “YES”.

A message appears notifying you that the Home URL has been stored.

To cancel storing the Home URL

Select “NO”.

To save a bookmarked page as the Home URL

From the i-mode menu, select “Bookmark” to open the Bookmark folder list, and then the Bookmark list. Highlight the bookmark to be saved.

To save the page from the URL history

From the i-mode menu, select “Go to location“, “Enter URL”, and highlight the URL history to be saved.

➡ Select “Set as home URL” from the function menu.

Setting the Home URL

You can set the Home URL to display the home.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ “i-mode settings” ▶ “Home URL”.

The Home URL field displays a URL that is stored as the Home URL.

When the Home URL is not stored

Select the Home URL field and then enter the URL you want to store.

Up to 256 half-pitch characters can be entered as the Home URL.

When no URL is stored as the Home URL, the Home URL field only displays “http://”.

Entering characters →p.502

2 Select “Valid”.

When you do not display home

Select “Invalid”.

Displaying a page stored as the Home URL <Display home>

1 Press [Home] while the standby display is displayed.

To cancel the operation of page receiving

Select [Quit].

Displaying the Home URL page while a page is displayed.

Display the function menu on the site and select “Display home”.

Displaying the Home URL page using the i-mode menu.

Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ “Go to location” ▶ “Display home”.

NOTE

- When the “Home URL” setting is “Invalid”, you cannot use any operations for Display home.

Saving a Displayed Site

Screen memo enables you to store a page that has once been viewed as a screen memo in your FOMA terminal, convenient for searching result such as public transportation guides or the data received screen of melody/i-motion. The feature saves the screen as it was displayed so you find it useful to check the information later.

- The FOMA can store up to 100 screen memos. The number of screen memos that can be saved varies within the range of 3 to 100, depending on the data volume of the page you save.
- You can store a schedule by performing reference entry of a schedule while viewing the screen memo. →p.528
- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, you will not be able to display screen memos with melodies, images, i-motions, Chara-dens or downloaded dictionaries. When the original FOMA card is inserted, you will be able to display the screen memos. →p.48

Saving a screen memo

1 Display the page you want to save. Select “Screen memo” from the function menu.

A confirmation message appears.

2 Select “YES”.

A message appears notifying you that the page is properly saved.

To cancel saving the page

Select “NO”.

When no more screen memos can be saved

A message appears asking if you want to save new screen memos after deleting screen memos.
To save screen memos, select “YES” to select the screen memos to be deleted.
To cancel the saving operation, select “NO”.

NOTE

- Any text you enter or any settings you make on the page are not saved in the screen memo.
- If you save a screen of the TLS/SSL-supporting page, the TLS/SSL certificate of the page will also be saved. →p.213
- The title of screen memo can save up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters. All characters that exceed this limit are discarded.
- In the screen memo, you can save not only characters, but images, Flash images and other data, as well as data receiving screens for i-motions, melodies, Chara-dens, etc. However, the data received screen for some i-motions such as i-motions for which a replay restriction is set, streaming-type i-motions, and i-motions that consist of incomplete data cannot be saved as a screen memo.
- If you have saved images, etc. in the screen memo, you can also save them in the FOMA terminal. →p.222
- When you save a page that is previously stored, it will be saved as a new screen memo instead of being rewritten over the previous page.

Displaying a screen memo

Titles of stored screen memos are shown on the screen memo list screen.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ “Screen memo”.

Screen memo list screen appears.
When the screen memo does not contain a title or when you press ● [Set] without entering a title in “Edit title” (p.221), it displays as “No title”.

2 Select the title you want to display.



The Screen memo details screen appears. If you press ● while the screen memo is displayed, the previous/next screen memo can be displayed.

To check a URL of the stored page

Display the function menu and select "URL".

You cannot select "URL" on the screen that notifies you of the completion of data received.

NOTE

- Even when you are displaying a page saved as a screen memo, the page does not connect to the i-mode session. Because the information shown in a screen memo is the information that was on the page when you saved it, the information may be different from the latest information.
- When a screen memo of TLS/SSL-compliant page is displayed, "SSL" appears on the screen →p.212

Managing a screen memo

You can protect an important screen memo or change the title of a screen memo.

- You can protect up to 50 screen memos. The maximum number of screen memos that you can protect varies from the data volume of the screen memos.

<Example: Use the Screen memo list screen to control operations>

1 Display the Screen memo list screen. → p.220

2 Highlight the title you want to control to display the function menu, and then select the item.

To protect/unprotect a screen memo

Select "Protect ON/OFF".

Unprotected screen memos are protected, while protected screen memos are unprotected. Protected screen memos cannot be deleted.

"🔑" appears on the left side of the title of a protected screen memo.

To change the title

Select "Edit title" and enter the new title.

You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters for the title.

Entering characters →p.502

To delete a screen memo

Select the deletion method.

"Delete this" : Deletes one screen memo you highlighted.

"Delete selected" : Deletes screen memo by marking the checkbox.

"Delete all" : Deletes all the screen memos. Entering your security code (p.152) is required.

To check the number of stored screen memos

Select "No. of screen memo".

When you use the Screen memo details screen to control operations

To select "Protect ON/OFF", "Edit title" and "Delete", you can also use the function menu on the Screen memo details screen.

- Display the screen memo you want to control to display the function menu, and then select an item.
- Select "Delete" to delete displayed screen memos.

Downloading an Image from a Site or Message

You can save an image displayed on a site, screen memo, i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free and set it for the standby screen.

- You can set a saved image or animation to the standby display or wake-up display.
- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, screen memos and Msg. Request/Free with melodies and images, etc. cannot be displayed. You will be able to display the screen memos and Msg. Request/Free when the original FOMA card is inserted.→p.48

<Example: Saving an image displayed on a site>

1 Display the page which includes the image you want to save, and select “Save image” from the function menu.

You cannot use “Save image” on the function menu if there is no image on the screen of the displayed site, or when the “Image display” setting (p.229) is set to “OFF”.

2 Select the image you want to save.



The selected image should be framed with ▭.
A message appears asking whether or not to save the image.
To save the image, select “YES” and specify the folder to save the image. A message will appear notifying you that the image has been saved.

If the number of saved images exceeds the maximum limit
A message appears asking whether or not you save the image after deleting unnecessary ones. To save the image, select “YES” and then select the images you want to delete.

To cancel saving the image
Select “NO”.

NOTE

- You can also set an image to the standby display on the screen displayed after the saving operation.
- Images can be saved as half-pitch alphameric file name (but, up to 36 characters in half-pitch). If a file name is not specified, the characters from the last “/” and “.” in the downloaded URL will be a file name. Otherwise, images will be saved as “imagexxx” (xxx: a three-digit number). The last three-digit number of a file name is a serial number to distinguish same file names.
- Images that satisfy the following conditions are saved as frame images:
  - Transparent GIF file (not animation GIF file)
  - File with “.ifm” extension
  - Image whose size is “352×288 dots”, “240×269 dots”, “176×144 dots” or “128×96 dots”
- You cannot save images of PNG or WBMP formats, and even other formats may not be saved depending on the type of images.
- When a Flash image is saved, part of the image may not be saved depending on the Flash image.
- If an error occurs while a Flash image is played, that image cannot be saved.

Downloading a Melody from a Site

You can save a melody downloaded and stored from a site or i-mode mail and set it to the ring tone.

- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, screen memos and Msg. Request/Free with melodies cannot be displayed. You will be able to display the screen memos and Msg. Request/Free when the original FOMA card is inserted.→p.48

1 Display the site that allows you to download a melody, and then select the melody.



When you select the melody, it starts downloading.
When the download is completed, the screen that notifies you of the completion of data received is displayed.

2 Select “Save”.



A message appears asking if it is OK to save the melody. Select “YES” to save the melody. A message appears notifying you that the melody has been saved.

When number of saved melodies reaches the maximum limit

A message appears asking whether or not you save the melody after deleting unnecessary ones. To save the melody, select “YES” and then select the melodies you want to delete.

To cancel saving the melody

Select “NO”.

Select “Play” to replay the melody.
Select “Property” to display the melody information.

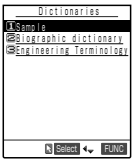
NOTE

- You can also make the ring tone setting on the screen displayed after the saving operation.
- Some downloaded melodies may have the preset part to be played. If you play such melody, all parts of the melody is played, but if you set the melody to ring tone, only the preset part is played.
- The downloaded melody may not be played properly.
- The URL of the screen that notifies you of the completion of data received is not recorded as “Last URL”. In this case, “Last URL” applies the URL of the screen that was displayed before the screen that notifies you of the completion of data received.
- The title of the saved melody appears at the top of the list. If the melody has no title, it is represented as “No title”.
- Melodies can be saved as half-pitch alphameric file name (but, up to 36 characters in half-pitch). If a file name is not specified, the characters from the last “/” and “.” in the downloaded URL will be a file name. Otherwise, melodies will be saved as “melodyxxx” (xxx: a three-digit number).
  The last three-digit number of a file name is a serial number to distinguish same file names.
- If “Manner mode” has been set, a message appears asking whether you want to play the downloaded melody even during the manner mode.
- Melodies cannot be played during a call.

Downloading a Dictionary from a Site

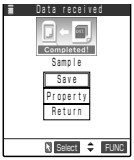
You can download dictionaries from sites and save them. You can select up to 2 dictionaries for conversion from the downloaded Japanese conversion dictionaries for the setting.
→p.519

1 Display the site that allows you to download a dictionary, and then select the dictionary.



When you select the dictionary, it starts downloading.
When the download is completed, the screen that notifies you of the completion of data received is displayed.

2 Select “Save”.



A message appears asking if it is OK to save the dictionary. Select “YES” and <Not stored> to save the dictionary. A message appears notifying you that the dictionary has been saved.

To overwrite the dictionary, or when the stored dictionaries are full

After selecting “YES”, a message asks you whether you will overwrite the dictionary or not when you choose an already stored dictionary. Choosing “YES” stores the dictionary and a message announcing that the saving process is complete is displayed. However, dictionaries already set for conversion cannot be overwritten.

To cancel saving the dictionary

Select “NO”.

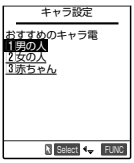
Select “Property” to display the dictionary information.

Downloading a Chara-den from a Site

You can download up to 3 Chara-dens that you like from a site to save them.

● You cannot register or save Chara-den from Msg. Request/Free.

1 Display the site page of Chara-den that you want to download.



2 Select and download the Chara-den.

When the data is successfully downloaded, the screen notifying you of the completion of data received is displayed.

To cancel the operation

Press [Quit].

3 Select “Save” on the display notifying you of the completion of data received.



A message appears asking whether or not you want to save the data.
Select “Play” to play the Chara-den that you downloaded.
Operation procedure of Chara-den →p.360

To save the data

Select “YES”.
A message appears notifying you that the data has been saved.

To cancel the operation

Select “NO”.
You can go back to the screen that notifies you of the data received without saving the data.

When the memory is full

A message appears asking if you want to delete unnecessary Chara-den and then save the new Chara-den.
To save the new Chara-den, select “YES” and then select the Chara-den that you want to delete.
To cancel saving the new Chara-den, select “NO”. When you select “NO”, you can go back to the screen that notifies you of the data received without saving the data.

Using the Phone To/Mail To/Web To Functions

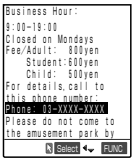
Calling a displayed phone number <Phone To Function>

By using the phone number that appears on a site or mail or the item that registers the phone number, you can make voice/videophone calls.

- The Phone To function for videophone calls is called the AV Phone To function.
- You cannot use the Phone To function to make a call when “Restrict dialing”, “Keypad dial lock” or “Self mode” is set.
- You may not be able to conduct the Phone to function in some of the sites.

<Example: Making a voice call>

1 Select the displayed phone number or the item registering the phone number.



From the mail detail screen, you can make a call by selecting a phone number or sender/recipient indicated as “phone number@...”.

2 Select “Voice-phone”.



Select “Video-phone” to make a videophone call.
When making a videophone call, you can select the image to send on “Select image”.

Continued on next page

3 Select “Dial”.



When a voice call or videophone call is made by selecting “Voice-phone” or “Video-phone” followed by “Dial”, whether to notify your caller ID depends on the setting of “Notify Caller ID” Service (p.59).

To make an international call

Select "International call", a country name and "Dial".
This operation adds the international access code and the country code to the beginning of the original number and leads to the international call. (If the phone number starts at "0", the first 0 is omitted.)



To make a voice call/videophone call with/without the caller ID notification set

Select “Notify caller ID” and select “OFF” or “ON”.
To make a voice/videophone call according to the setting of “Notify caller ID service”, select “Cancel prefix”.

To cancel making a call.

Select “Cancel”.

NOTE

- You cannot make an international call using the Phone To function to countries whose country code is not set under “Int'l dial setting”. The Phone To function may also not be available when making a call to some countries/regions, including Italy.
- The Phone To function is not available to make a videophone call during packet communication with a connection such as a PC.
- You can use the Phone To function to make a call if the number string in the body of mails, sites, or Msg. Request/ Free meets either of the following requirements:
  - 10 to 26-digit number starting with “+” or “0” (The beginning “+” is not included as a digit.)
  - 5 to 26-digit number preceded by “*” or “#” (“*” or “# ” in the beginning is counted in the number of digits)
  - 3 to 26-digit number starting with “tel:” or “tel-av:”.

※ Half-pitch characters “(”, “)”, “.”, or “-” are recognized as delimiters. When the number strings contain “+”, the part before “+” is recognized as a phone number.

Sending mail to a displayed mail address <Mail To Function>

You can send an i-mode mail to an e-mail address displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

- You cannot use the Mail To function to make a call when “Keypad dial lock” is set.
- Some sites may not allow you to use Mail To function.

1 Select the displayed mail address.



When multiple mail addresses are highlighted, the mail will be sent to the all addresses.

2 Compose and send an i-mode mail.



The title and message may be entered automatically.
For details, see “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” (p.248).

NOTE

- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 10 items of draft mail.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 mails or more addresses are displayed consecutively.
- This function only supports e-mail addresses up to 50 half-pitch characters long.

Accessing a displayed URL page <Web To Function>

You can view the Web page for a URL displayed on a site or an e-mail message, or using the URL registered item.

1 Select the displayed URL.



The Web page is displayed.

NOTE

- URLs are displayed in various ways, depending on the site.
- You can also display the page of the URL that starts with "http://" or "https://" which is displayed in the message of mail or Msg. Request/Free.

Making the i-mode Settings

Setting the waiting time for connection <Connection timeout>

Default setting	60 seconds

Sets the waiting time until the connection is automatically cut when you try to connect to a site or perform "i-mode checking" yet there is no response.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Connection timeout".

2 Select the connection timeout.

60 seconds : If there is no response within 60 seconds, the connection will be automatically cut.
90 seconds : If there is no response within 90 seconds, the connection will be automatically cut.
Unlimited : The connection is not cut automatically.

NOTE

- The connection is not cut automatically when "Unlimited" is selected. However, the communications may be disrupted depending on the radio wave conditions.

※Normally, you do not need to change the settings.

Default setting	iモード (i-mode)

You can set access points for using services other than i-mode service.
When no "i-mode" access point is set, i-mode and i-mode mail service cannot be used.
Also, i-αppli communication may not be used on some sites.

About the ISP communication

- You can access other information service providers (ISPs) by switching the access point of the FOMA terminal.※
  Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP communication. Packet communication charges incurred during ISP connection communication are not included in the flat-rate charge of the "Pake-Houdai" plan.
  ※: Additional sign-up for DoCoMo is not required.

About the sign-up for information service providers

- To start ISP communication, you need to sign up for an information service provider. For information about service details (accessing sites, Internet connection, mail functions, etc.) and the sign-up procedure, please contact the providers.
- Depending on the contents of the service provided by the ISP, an additional fee may be charged, which will not be included in DoCoMo's billing.
- Some sites you browse may notify the site provider of the information such as your phone number.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Host selection"

2 Highlight <Not stored>, press [Edit], and then enter your security code.

Security code →p.152
Up to 10 access points can be added as the user defined hosts.
Select "i-mode" to make the host setting to "i-mode".

3 Enter "Title", "Host name" and "Host address", and then press [Finish].

Title : You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.
Host name : You can enter up to 30 half-pitch characters.
Host address : You can enter up to 99 half-pitch characters.
Entering characters →p.502

"Finish" is not displayed unless "Title", "Host name" and "Host address" are all entered.

NOTE

- "User defined host" can be changed by using the same procedure as when added.
- To delete an added "User defined host", highlight the host you want to delete, and then select "Delete" from the function menu.
- You cannot make the settings during i-mode or ISP session.

Setting the character size <Character size>

Default setting	Standard

You can change the character size of the site screen and the Msg. Request/Free details screen to increase the number of characters that can be displayed on the screen or to enlarge the character size to make the screen easier to view.

● When you change the character size, the size of characters and pictographs as well as the character size of site entry or options. The size of images and lines is not changed.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Character size".

Standard : Displaying in the standard character size
Small : Making the character size smaller
Large : Making the character size larger

Setting to not display images <Image display >

Default setting	ON

You can specify image display setting for the site screens, screen memos or the Msg. Request/Free. When you select OFF, the page can be displayed more quickly as the image is not retrieved.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Image display".

ON : Displays the image.
OFF : Does not display the image.
The icon " " is displayed substitute for the image.

NOTE

● By selecting "Display image" from the function menu while browser is displayed, you can specify whether or not the image is displayed. In this case, the above setting is changed.
● If "Image display" is set to "OFF", no Flash images will appear.

Setting sound effects of a site or screen memo <Sound effect setting>

Default setting	ON

You can set whether or not sound effect of the Flash image on a site screen or screen memo will ring.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Sound effect setting".

ON : Sets the sound effect of the Flash image to ring.
OFF : Sets the sound effect of the Flash image not to ring.

NOTE

● The setting changes only the sound effect of the Flash image.
● You can also select ON/OFF by selecting "Sound effect setting" from the function menu when the site screen or screen memo is displayed. This will also change the above settings.

Setting the number of scroll lines <Scroll>

Default setting	1 line

The feature can allow you to specify how many lines the screen will scroll to display when you press ◎ on the site screen, screen memo, or the Msg. Request/Free screen.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Scroll".

1 line : Scrolls line by line.
3 lines : Scrolls 3 lines at a time.
5 lines : Scrolls 5 lines at a time.

Checking/setting the certificate

You can check the contents of TLS/SSL certificate.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Certificate".

2 Select the certificate you want to check.

3 Check the certificate.



Subject name, Author, validity period and serial number of the certificate will be displayed.

Setting the certificate to valid/invalid

Default setting	All "Valid"

You can switch the valid/invalid setting of TLS/SSL certificate.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Certificate".

2 Highlight the certificate you want to make the validity setting, and then select "Valid/Invalid" from the function menu.

You will be able to switch the validity of the certificate. When a valid certificate is chosen, it will become invalid, and likewise, if an invalid certificate is chosen, it will become valid.

Certificate is valid : The icon "" is displayed.
Certificate is invalid : The icon "" is displayed.

NOTE

- When "Invalid" is set to the certificate, TLS/SSL-compatible pages that maintain the certificate can no longer be displayed.

Checking the contents of i-mode settings <Checking i-mode settings>

You can check the contents specified in "i-mode settings".

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Check settings".

The current settings of the following items of "i-mode settings" are displayed.

- Scroll
- Character size
- Image display
- i-motion automatic replay
- i-motion type
- Message auto display
- Auto melody play
- Pasted melody/Msg.
- Message list display
- Home URL
- Sound effect setting

Resetting the last URL <Reset last URL>

You can reset the stored last URL. Reset last URL will be replaced by the URL on the iMenu screen.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Reset last URL".

A message appears asking if it is OK to reset the last URL. Select "YES" to reset the last URL.

Resetting i-mode settings to the default <Reset settings>

You can reset the "i-mode settings" to the default settings.
Reset items and subsequent status are as follows:

Items to be set	When the settings are reset
Scroll	1 line
Character size	Standard
Image display	ON
i-motion auto play	ON
i-motion type	Normal type
Message auto display	Msg. Req. preferred
Auto melody play	ON
Pasted melody message	Valid
Message list display	2 lines
Home URL	Invalid, Home URL reset (http://)
Sound effect setting	ON
Last URL	URL of the iMenu screen

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Reset settings" and enter your security code.

Security code →p.152
A message appears asking if it is OK to reset the settings. Select "YES" to reset the settings.

Receiving a Message

When FOMA terminal is in the service area, Msg. Request/Free is automatically sent by i-mode Center. The received Msg. Request/Free is saved in "Message" of the i-mode menu.

- Up to 100 of received Msg. Request/Free can be saved in FOMA terminal. The number of Msg. Request that can be saved varies within a range from 20 to 100 and the number of Msg. Free within a range from 10 to 100, depending on the amount of the data.
- The "Select ring tone" feature allows you to set a ring tone so that your favorite sound rings. Furthermore, you can change the flashing pattern of the illumination when you receive a Msg. Request/Free in "Illumination".

Auto display (default) setting

- When you do not want to maintain the auto display, Select "OFF" in "Message auto display" (p.234).
- You can change the setting to sound the ring tone and display the Msg. Request/Free receiving screen when you receive Msg. Request/Free during a call or i-mode. →p.296



"R" (green) or "F" (purple) flashes and "Msg. Request Receiving..." or "Msg. Free Receiving..." appears.

- When received, the icons start lighting.
- To stop receiving Msg. Request/Free, press CLR for one second or more. However, Msg. Request/Free may be received, depending on the timing.



- When received, the number of received mails or Msg. Request/Free is displayed on the received result screen for about 15 seconds. The time displayed depends on the settings in "Mail/Msg. ring time".
- If you select "Msg. Request" or "Msg. Free" and press ● [Select], the screen of Msg. Request list or Msg. Free list will be displayed.



- If you receive the Msg. Request/Free from the standby display, the received Msg. Request/Free appears for about 15 seconds. However, if you display the standby display via the task menu while any of the Menu functions are running, Msg. Request/Free is not automatically displayed. The FOMA does not automatically display a Msg. Request/Free that is received other than on the standby display.
- With the Msg. Request/Free displayed, you can scroll the screen to display the contents of the Msg. Request/Free.
- If you do not perform any operation for about 15 seconds, you will go back to the standby display.

Non auto display

When you received a Msg. Request/Free while you are performing some operation in your FOMA terminal, the receiving screen is not displayed by default so that you can continue the operation. The ring tone, incoming call lamp lighting, vibrator and display light flashing will be OFF but "R" (green) and "F" (purple) icons will indicate that you have received a Msg. Request/Free.

Icons of Msg. Request/Free

The "R" (red) (or "F" (red)) icon warns you that the FOMA terminal can no longer receive Msg. Request/Free. Read unread Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) until the icon disappears or select OFF for the protection setting (p.238). If Msg. Request/Free are read or unprotected, they will be deleted from the oldest Msg. Request/Free first when receiving a new Msg. Request/Free.

NOTE

- When the number of Msg. Request/Free saved in the FOMA terminal exceeds the maximum limit (100 items), Msg. Request/Free is automatically deleted in order from the oldest message first when a new message is received. However, unread messages and protected messages are not deleted. The necessary message should be protected.
- Messages being displayed (on the Msg. Request/Free list screen or details screen) are not deleted (including the case where the task is switched while messages are displayed). When you receive a Msg. Request/Free while the Msg. Request/Free list screen or details screen is displayed, messages are deleted in order from the oldest message first (excluding unread messages and protected ones) except the message being displayed.
- Even if Msg. Request/Free has been displayed automatically, it will be displayed as an unread message on the Msg. Request/Free list screen. However, if you scroll the display during the automatic display, the Msg. Request/Free will be displayed as a read message on the Msg. Request/Free list screen.
- Melody is not automatically played when the Msg. Request/Free is automatically displayed.
- If you received a Msg. Request and a Msg. Free at the same time, the ring tone specified in “Msg. Request” of “Select ring tone” is activated.
- The volume of the ring tone is based on the setting specified in “Mail/Message” of “Ring volume”.

Displaying a new message

- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, you will not be able to display the details screen of the Msg. Request/Free with attached or pasted melodies and images. You will be able to display the Msg. Request/Free when the original FOMA card is inserted.→p.48

<Example: Reading Msg. Request>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ “Message” ▶ “Msg. Request”.

To read Msg. Free

Select “Msg. Free”.

2 Select the message you want to display.



Press ● to display the previous or next Msg. Request on the Msg. Request details screen.

Press CLR on the Msg. Request details screen to return the Msg. Request list screen.

NOTE

- “OK” or “Cancel” key, radio buttons, checkboxes, text boxes or pull-down menus may appear in some Msg. Request/Free. In this case, follow the same procedure as you were on a site. →p.209
- When you turn on your FOMA terminal, press a key, or Msg. Request/Free is received, the backlight will light for about 15 seconds (The lighting period may change depending on the setting for “Mail/Msg. ring time”. However, when the screen displays the text of Msg. Request/Free, the lighting period may change depending on the length of displayed texts. If you select “OFF” for the “Lighting” setting in “Display light”, the backlight does not light.

Setting to display the message automatically <Message auto display>

Default setting	Msg. Req. preferred

You can set the way of auto display when Msg. Request/Free is received.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ “i-mode settings” ▶ “Message auto display”.

Msg. Req. preferred	: Gives priority to Msg. Request to be automatically displayed.
Msg. Free preferred	: Gives priority to Msg. Free to be automatically displayed.
Msg. Request only	: Automatically displays only Msg. Request.
Msg. Free only	: Automatically displays only Msg. Free.
OFF	: Does not automatically displays messages.

Check new message

Inquiring about Received Message at the Center

- Msg. Request/Free delivered to the i-mode center will be automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, Msg. Request/Free is stored at the i-mode center when the FOMA terminal is OFF, “” is displayed, the memory is full, you are making a videophone call or the remote is monitoring. If “” (blue and green, or blue and red) or “” (blue and purple, or blue and red) icons appear after Msg. Request/Free is stored in the i-mode center, go to “Check new message” to receive them. You can receive both the i-mode mail and the Msg. Request/Free stored in the i-mode center in this method.
- You can also check new messages by selecting “Check new message” on the mail menu or hold down [MAIL] for 1 second or more when the standby display is shown.
- The item which you inquire is set in “i-mode checking”.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ “Check new message”.

“” (blue), “” (green) and “” (purple) start lighting, displaying the message “Checking...” and you can receive i-mode mails and Msg. Request/Free.

To cancel the checking operation

Hold down CLR for 1 second or more.

When you cancel the checking operation, however, you may receive the message depending on the timing of cancellation.

2 Check how many new i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free you have received.



Icons of Msg. Request/Free

When “” (blue and green) or “” (blue and purple) is displayed, Msg. Request/Free are stored in the i-mode Center. When the memory is full to store Msg. Request/Free in the i-mode Center, “” (blue and red) or “” (blue and red) appears.

NOTE

- When “圏外” is displayed, you cannot check new messages.
- When “” (red), “R” (red), “F” (red), or “” (red) are displayed, your FOMA terminal can no longer receive i-mode mails or Msg. Request/Free. Delete unnecessary mails or Msg. Request/Free or read unread Msg. Request/Free until the icon disappears, or select OFF for the protection setting. If Msg. Request/Free are read or unprotected, they will be automatically deleted from the oldest Msg. Request/Free first when receiving a new Msg. Request/Free.
- The number of storable Msg. Request/Free and storage period in the i-mode Center is as follows:

	Number of storable messages (max.)	Storage period (max.)
Msg. Request	300	72 hours
Msg. Free	300	72 hours

When the above limit is exceeded, the messages will be deleted in order from the oldest message.

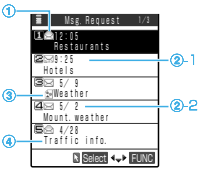
- Even when some Msg. Request/Free is stored in the i-mode Center, “” (blue and green, or blue and red) or “” (blue and purple, or blue and red) may not be displayed. (e.g. A message which is delivered when the FOMA terminal is OFF or “圏外” is displayed).
- i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free stored in the i-mode Center may not be included in the number of received i-mode mails or Msg. Request/Free that is displayed when checking for new messages.

Displaying Messages in a Message Box

Viewing the message list/details screens

Select (Menu) - " " - "Message" - "Msg. Request/Free" to display the Msg. Request/Free screen.

- You can also display the Msg. Request/Free screen by selecting [i-mode] - "Message" - "Msg. Request/Free" when the standby screen is displayed.
- The icons displayed on the Msg. Request/Free list screen are used on the Msg. Request/Free details screen as well, though some icons are not displayed.
- Msg. Request/Free screens are displayed as follows:



Msg. Request/Free list screen (2 lines)



Msg. Request/Free list screen (1 line)



Msg. Request/Free details screen

① Indicates the condition of the Msg. Request/Free.

- : Unread Msg. Request/Free
- : Read Msg. Request/Free
- : Unread and protected Msg. Request/Free
- : Read and protected Msg. Request/Free

② Indicates received date and time.

- ②-1 Any Msg. Request/Free received on the day indicates the time.
- ②-2 Any Msg. Request/Free received by the day before is indicated with the date.

③ Indicates attached or pasted files.

- : Indicates that melody is attached or pasted.
- : Indicates that multiple melodies are attached or pasted and that some of the data is incorrect.
- : Indicates that all the attached or pasted melody data is incorrect.
- : Indicates that an image is attached.
- : Indicates that multiple images are attached and that some of the data is incorrect.
- : Indicates that all the attached image data is incorrect. Also, it is displayed when "Image display" is set to "OFF".
- : Indicates that multiple data files are pasted.

The following icons are displayed when the list screen is set as 1 line.

- : Indicates that data is attached or pasted.
- : Indicates that data is attached or pasted and that some of the data is incorrect.
- : Indicates that all the attached or pasted data is incorrect.

④ Indicates the titles.

Changing the way Msg. Request/Free is displayed <Sort/Filter>

You can change the order of received Msg. Request/Free in accordance with the purpose or display only the Msg. Request/Free that can meet the specific condition.

Function	Type of display	Setting	Type of category
Sort	Switch the order of displayed Msg. Request/Free	Chronological ↑	Sorts in newer order.
		Chronological ↓	Sorts in older order.
Filter	Specifying the Msg. Request/Free list screen to only display Msg. Request/Free that match the specified conditions.	Unread	Displays unread messages only.
		Read	Displays read messages only.
		Protected	Displays protected messages only.
		Melody	Displays messages with attached melodies only.
		Image	Displays messages with attached images only.

- Even if you change the way Msg. Request/Free are displayed using the sorting or filtering function, the screen will return to the newer order (“Display all”) if you end that screen and display each list screen again.
- For the detailed operation procedures, see the Sort or Filter/Search mail for i-mode mail. (p.285).

<Example: Displaying Msg. Request in older order>

1 Select “Sort” from the function menu of the Msg. Request list screen.

Select “Display all” from the function menu to return to the original display (all messages are displayed from the newest to oldest).

2 Select “Chronological ↓ ”.

Messages are sorted in older order.

NOTE

- You can use the sorting display and the filtering function together. For example, to view only the unread messages in order from oldest to newest, select “Unread” in the Filter menu and then “Chronological ↓ ” in the Sort menu.

Reloading images in message <Reload image>

When “ ” is displayed, not loading the image in the text of Msg. Request/Free, reload the image to display it.

Image display on sites →p.207

1 Display the Msg. Request/Free details screen and then select “Reload image” from the function menu.

The “Reload image” feature allows you to reload only the images added to the text. Attached images cannot be reloaded.

NOTE

- Reloaded images may not be displayed correctly.

Setting for melody replay when Msg. Request/Free is opened <Auto melody play>

Default setting	ON

You can set whether or not an attached/pasted melody will be automatically played when Msg. Request/Free is opened.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Auto melody play".**

ON : Plays the melody automatically.
OFF : Does not play the melody automatically.

Setting the pasted melody <Pasted melody/Msg.>

Default setting	Valid

You can set whether or not the melody pasted on Msg. Request/Free can be played/saved.

● This setting applied only to melodies pasted on Msg. Request/Free (melodies with icon "♪"). It dose not apply to the melodies attached to Msg. Request/Free.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Pasted melody/Msg."**

Valid : The pasted melody can be played/saved.
Invalid : The pasted melody cannot be played/saved.
If "Pasted melody/Msg." is "Invalid", the melody with icon "♪" will be displayed by a character string.

Setting the number of lines on the list screen <Message list display>

Default setting	2 lines

You can switch the format of Msg. Request/Free list screen between 2 lines and 1 line.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Message list display".**

2 lines : Displays 2 lines per item.
1 line : Displays 1 line per item.

Protecting messages <Protect ON/OFF>

You can protect Msg. Request/Free you want to keep. The protected Msg. Request/Free cannot be overwritten or deleted.

● You can protect up to 50 (each) Msg. Request/Free in your FOMA terminal. The number of Msg. Request/Free that can be protected depends on the amount of data of Msg. Request/Free.

<Example: Protecting Msg. Request>

1 **Display the Msg. Request list screen.**

2 **Highlight Msg. Request you want to protect (or unprotect) and select "Protect ON/OFF" from the function menu.**

Unprotected Msg. Request will be protected ("🔑"/"✉" is displayed on the left side of time or date), while protected Msg. Request will be unprotected.

NOTE

- When the number of Msg. Request/Free saved in the FOMA terminal exceeds the maximum limit (100 items), unprotected and Msg. Request/Free is automatically deleted in order from the oldest message first when a new message is received.
- You can also protect/unprotect Msg. Request/Free even when you select “Protect ON/OFF” from the function menu on the Msg. Request details screen (or Msg. Free details screen).
- When you select “Unprotect all” from the function menu on the Msg. Request list screen (or Msg. Free list screen), protected Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) will be all unprotected.

Deleting messages <Message deletion>

You can delete received Msg. Request/Free. Select the following method to delete Msg. Request/Free. For detailed operation procedure, see “Deleting Mail” (p.287).

Type of deletion	Description
Delete this	Deletes one Msg. Request/Free.
Delete selected	Deletes Msg. Request/Free that has been selected.
Delete read	Deletes Msg. Request/Free that has already been read.
Delete all	Deletes all Msg. Request/Free.

<Example: Delete one Msg. Request>

1 Displaying the Msg. Request list screen.

2 Highlight the Msg. Request you want to delete, and then select “Delete this” from the function menu.

A message appears asking whether it is OK to delete the Msg. Request. Select “YES” to delete the Msg. Request and a message appears notifying you that the deletion has been completed.

To cancel the deleting operation

Select “NO”.

NOTE

- Protected Msg. Request/Free cannot be deleted.
- If you perform “Delete read” or “Delete all” while only Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) specified by filter function is displayed, all of the unprotected or read Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) are deleted from the displayed Msg. Request (or Msg. Free).
- You can also delete Msg. Request/Free by selecting “Delete” from the function menu on the Msg. Request/Free details screen.

Checking the number of saved Msg. Request/Free <No. of messages>

You can check the number of saved/unread/protected Msg. Request (or Msg. Free). The number of the following items can be checked:

Displayed item	Displayed contents
All	The number of all received Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) is displayed.
Unread	The number of unread Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) is displayed.
Protected	The number of protected Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) is displayed.

● Unread, as well as protected messages are counted in both Unread and Protected.

<Example: Checking the number of saved Msg. Request>

1 Select “No. of messages” from the function menu on the Msg. Request list screen.

To check the number of saved Msg. Free, select “No. of messages” from the function menu on the Msg. Free list screen.
When there are no messages, “No messages” will appear.

Messaging

Mail Functions for a FOMA Terminal 242
Displaying Mail Menu ..... Mail menu 248

■ **Composing i-mode Mail**

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail ..... Composing/sending i-mode mail 248
Composing and Sending a Deco-mail ..... Deco-mail 254
Composing and Sending Greeting Cards ..... Template 259
Attaching a File to an i-mode Mail 260
Sending Photo During Phone Conversation ..... Speed photo mail 263
Composing i-mode Mail Using Various Data 264

■ **Receiving and Operating i-mode Mail**

Receiving i-mode Mail ..... Automatic mail reception 266
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively ..... Receive option 269
Inquiring About New i-mode Mail in the Center ..... Check new message 270
Replying to i-mode Mail ..... Reply to i-mode mail 271
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Addresses ..... Forwarding i-mode mail 273
Storing the Mail Address in the Phonebook ..... Store address 274
Capturing Melody from i-mode Mail ..... Save melody 274
Displaying the Image Attached to a Mail 275
Capturing i-motion through i-motion Mail ..... i-motion mail 277

■ **Operating Mail Boxes**

Displaying Mails in Outbox/Inbox ..... Outbox/Inbox 278

■ **Using Sent/Received Address Record**

Using Sent/Received Address Record ..... Sent address/Received address 289

■ **Setting Mail Functions**

Setting Mail Functions of the FOMA Terminal ..... Mail settings 291

■ **Using SMS**

Composing and Sending SMS ..... Compose and send SMS 302
Receiving SMS ..... SMS reception 303
Setting SMS 306
Saving SMS in the FOMA Card ..... UIM operation 307

Mail Functions for a FOMA Terminal

With FOMA terminal, you can use both i-mode mail and SMS. To use i-mode mail, you need to subscribe to "i-mode" service. See p.248 and p.266 for sending and receiving i-mode mail.

● Transmitting SMS (transmitting text data) between FOMA terminals does not require i-mode subscription. See p.302 and p.303 for sending and receiving SMS.

About i-mode mail

i-mode subscribers can exchange mail messages with other i-mode terminals (included mova) as well as with PCs via the Internet.

Upon subscription, you will be assigned an address as follows:

If you are a new i-mode subscriber

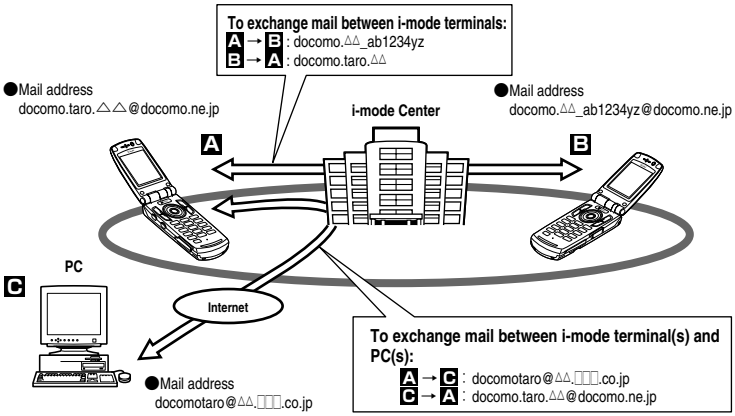
The part followed by the "@" symbol will be randomly chosen alphanumeric characters. Please check your mail address after i-mode subscription is completed.

Example: abc1234～789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<Checking your mail address>

Menu screen → "English" → 4 Options → 1 Mail Settings → "Confirm Mail Address"

- If you are sending mail to an i-mode terminal (included mova), you only need the part before "@".
- To send mail to an i-mode terminal from the regular e-mail system, you need the entire mail address including "@docomo.ne.jp".



- Sending i-mode mail →p.248
- Receiving i-mode mail →p.266

Receive option

You can check the subjects for mail you received at the i-mode Center and select which mail you want to download to your i-mode terminal. You can also delete mail at the i-mode Center before downloading. →p.269

Mail settings

Select “iMenu” - “Options” - ”Mail Settings” and select the item you want to set to make the settings listed below.

- Select “Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive)” or “Receiving Mail (Other Settings)” and select the item you want to set to restrict mail reception.

Item		Setting description
Change Mail Address		Changes your mail address. You can change the part before the “@” symbol of your mail address to your preferred alphanumeric string (e.g. docomo.taro_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp).
Mail Address (Other Settings)	Register a Secret Code	If you are using your phone number for your mail address, you can register a 4-digit secret code. Since mail without this secret code entered is rejected, you can avoid receiving spam mail.
	Reset Mail Address	You can change your mail address to “ (phone number)@docomo.ne.jp”.
Confirm Mail Address		You can check your current mail address.
Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	• You can specify the companies you want to receive mail from, from the following: au, Vodafone, TU-KA, DDI Pocket. • When you receive mail that is not from one of the companies above, you can receive mail from the domain(s) you specified. ※You will receive every mail from NTT DoCoMo’s i-mode, i-shot, Charge Notification Service, e-billing bill notification mail, and mail from M-stage Visual Net.
	Receive Selected Mail	• You can specify the addresses you want to receive/reject mail.
	Reject Selected Mail	
	Receive only i-mode mail	• You can specify to receive (reject mail via the Internet)/reject only i-mode mail from i-mode terminals.
	Reject only i-mode mail	
Receiving Mail (Other Settings)	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	• You can reject i-mode mails sent from the same terminal more than 200 times a day. Because the default setting is “Reject”, you do not need to make additional setup if you want to reject these mails.
	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	• You can reject advertising mail distributed without the consent of the recipients. These mail have “未承諾広告 (Unauthorized advertisement)※” at the beginning of the mail subject field. Because the default setting is “Reject”, you do not need to set this function if you want to reject these mails. (By law, senders of unsolicited advertising mail are required to include 未承諾広告※(Unauthorized advertisement) (6 full-pitch characters) at the beginning of the mail subject field).
	Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings	You can set to not receive any of the SMS or only SMS without a caller ID, or set to check the setting condition.
Confirm Settings		You can check mail settings currently specified.
Limit Mail Size		You can limit size of i-mode mail to receive.
Suspend Mail		You can deactivate mail functions at the i-mode Center.

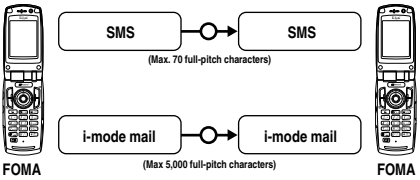
NOTE

- For more information, see the “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” given when you apply for i-mode.
- You cannot set “Receive Mail from Selected Domains”, “Receive Selected Mail”, “Reject Selected Mail”, “Receive only i-mode mail” and “Reject only i-mode mail” simultaneously.
- If “Register a Secret Code” is set and a mail is sent to an address belonging to a carrier other than DoCoMo, you may not receive an error message notifying you about the unknown address, etc.

3 types of mail transmission

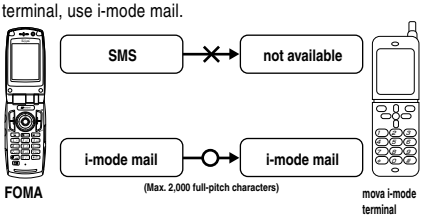
FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal

You can exchange SMS only with FOMA terminal.



FOMA terminal → mova i-mode terminal

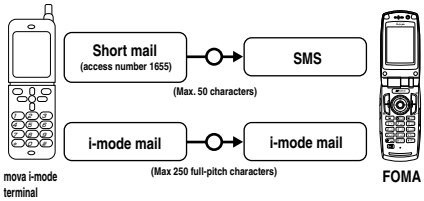
To send messages from FOMA terminal to mova i-mode terminal, use i-mode mail.



Continued on next page

mova i-mode terminal → FOMA terminal

Short mail※ sent from mova i-mode terminal will be received as SMS at FOMA terminal.



※ : Short mail is a mail service that allows you to exchange message texts between mova terminals.
- You cannot send Short mail from FOMA terminal even if you dial the access number 1655.
- When FOMA terminal receives Short mail from mova i-mode terminal, the mail will be converted to SMS.

Number of characters you can transmit

The following chart shows maximum number of characters you can send/receive by i-mode mail and SMS.

i-mode mail

Category	Full-pitch (e.g. kanji, hiragana and pictograph)	Half-pitch (e.g. alphabet, number and katakana)
Subject	15	30
Mail address	–	50
Message	5,000※	10,000※

※ In the event a file such as melody, images and i-motion is attached, the number of characters available for transmission will be reduced. For Deco-mail, the number of characters available to send is less than half the specified number.

SMS

Category	Full-pitch (e.g. kanji, hiragana and pictograph)	Half-pitch (e.g. alphabet, number and katakana)
Mail address	–	20 (numbers only)
Message	70	160※

※ You can use 160 characters in a message only if all characters are half-pitch (excluding symbols such as 。「」｛｝［］｜、・-゛゜＾｀ and ～). You are allowed to use 70 characters if both half-pitch and full-pitch characters are used in a message.

NOTE

<i-mode mail>

- Although i-mode mail message capacity is 5,000 full-pitch (10,000 bytes) characters, these numbers reduce depending on the size of attachments.
- If the length of i-mode mail message exceeds the limit, "/" or "//" will appear at the end and the excess characters will be deleted automatically.
- You can only send a maximum of 2,000 full-pitch characters at a time as an i-mode mail message to a mova i-mode terminal. The image file attached must be in the JPEG format, and only one file can be attached at a time (10,000 bytes max.). If you try to send a different format of file, it is only deleted. When an attached image is in correct specifications, it is received by a receiving terminal as i-shot mail. The maximum size of a sent message is 184 characters in full pitch. If the receiver sets his/her terminal to divide received mail, you can sent him/her a maximum of 2,000 characters in full pitch including the i-shot URL (a place where the image is stored).
- If the subject of i-mode mail subject is longer than the limit, the characters in excess are deleted.
- Except when exchanging mail between i-mode terminals (included mova), do not use half-pitch katakana and pictographs. These characters may not appear properly.

<SMS>

- Half-pitch katakana used in SMS message may not appear properly.

In the event you are not able to receive mail

Mail received at the i-mode Center will immediately be sent to your i-mode terminal. However, if your i-mode terminal is not turned on, out of the service area, or the “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”, your mail will be retained at the i-mode Center.
Mails kept at the i-mode Center will be resent to you up to 3 times in certain intervals.
You can also make specific settings to select which mail to download from the i-mode Center to your terminal.

NOTE

<i-mode mail>

- Retention period and mail capacity at the i-mode Center are as follows:

	Number of messages	Retention period
i-mode mail	207-1000 (up to 2MB)	720 hours

- Mail will automatically be deleted at the end of the retention period.
- Maximum number of mail messages that the i-mode Center is able to store for you depends on the size of data. When the number of mail messages reaches maximum, the i-mode Center stops receiving mail and returns incoming mail to the sender with an error message. In this case, “” (blue/red) is displayed in your i-mode terminal. However, if “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”, “” (blue/red) does not appear even when the number of mail messages reaches maximum.
- You can download the mail messages stored at the i-mode Center by “Check new message” or “Receive option” functions. When you download new mail, you can also download other mails and Msg. Request/Free stored at the Center.
- When you download mail from the i-mode Center to your i-mode terminal, that mail is deleted from the Center and saved in your i-mode terminal.
- The i-mode Center may not accept mail that requires an unusually large amount of memory.
- When you set to “Suspend Mail” functions, the i-mode Center will not store new mail.

<SMS>

- Retention period for SMS at the SMS Center is 72 hours. You can specify a retention period for SMS that have been sent out by “SMS validity period”.
- SMS will be automatically deleted after its retention period expires.
- You can download the SMS stored at the SMS Center by “Check new SMS”.
- When you download SMS from the SMS Center to your FOMA terminal, that mail is deleted from the Center and saved in your FOMA terminal.
  The SMS you have downloaded to your FOMA terminal can be moved/copied to FOMA card. →pp.118 and 307

Other useful functions

■ Mail with file(s) attached

- **Mail with melody attached**

  You can send and receive melody downloaded from an Internet website or homepage by attaching it to your i-mode mail (you cannot send melody of which mail attachments and exports from the i-mode terminal are prohibited).
  • Sending melody as an i-mode mail attachment →p.260
  • Receiving an i-mode mail with melody attached →p.274

- **Mail with image(s) attached**

  You can send and receive a still images taken with a built-in camera or images downloaded from an Internet website or homepage by attaching it to your i-mode mail (you cannot send images of which mail attachments and exports from the terminal are prohibited). The FOMA terminal can attach and display images in GIF format and JPEG format.
  • Sending image(s) as an i-mode mail attachment →p.260
  • Receiving an i-mode mail with image(s) attached →p.275

Continued on next page

■ Deco-mail

You can send/receive interesting decorative mail. You can create your own i-mode mail form by changing font size or background color or pasting images in your message. (If you receive decoration mail from a PC, it may include decorations not supported by the Deco-mail supported FOMA terminal. In that case the FOMA terminal may not operate as does the PC.)

• Creating/sending Deco-mail →p.254

• Deco-mail-support terminal: 90Xi series

■ Greeting card

Using the pre-installed templates, you can send greeting cards and fun mails as seasons greeting for summer, Christmas, New year and so on.

• Making and sending a greeting card →p.259

• Supported model: 90Xi series

■ Transmitting i-shot

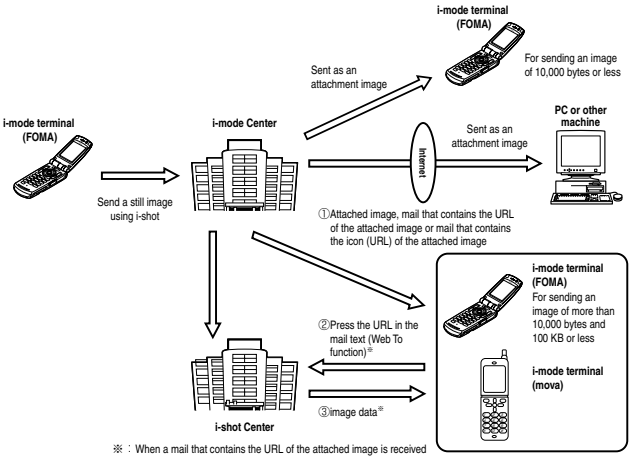
Still images taken with one of the built-in cameras can be sent to i-mode terminals (including mova), PCs, and non-DoCoMo mobile phones as attachment files. However, when an image of more than 10,000 bytes and 100 KB or less is sent to the FOMA or mova terminal, the image will not be sent as an attachment file, but instead a URL where the image can be viewed and its viewing expiration date will be automatically attached and sent. The recipient can see the image using the URL and executing the Web To function.

To send an image that is larger than 10,000 bytes and smaller than 100 KB, put "p." after the "@" of the mail address to which the image will be sent.

(Example) Address to which you will send a mail with a still image of 10,000 bytes or less attached:
docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
Address to which you will send a mail with a still image of more than 10,000 bytes attached:
docomo.taro.△△@p.docomo.ne.jp

The maximum size of a message that can be sent to a mova terminal is 184 full-pitch characters (369 bytes). If you attach more than one image, the attachment files will be deleted, and only the message will be sent.

• Sending i-mode mail with an image attached →p.260
• Receiving i-mode mail with an image attached →p.275



■ i-motion mail

You can send and receive movies taken with a terminal that supports i-motion mail or an i-motion downloaded from an website as an i-motion mail (you cannot send images of which mail attachments and exports from terminal are prohibited).

• Sending i-motion mail →p.260
• Receiving i-motion mail →p.277

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

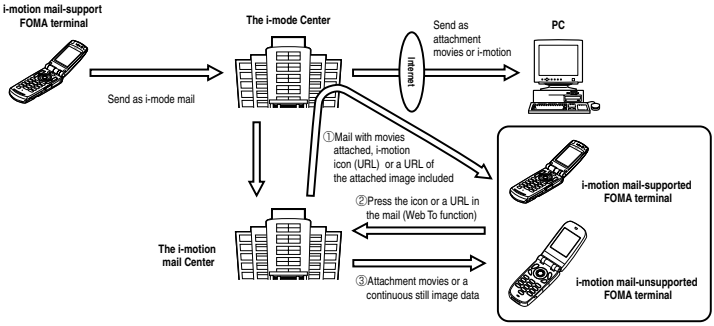
Service flow

Movie or i-motion files attached to i-motion mail are sent to the i-motion Center and stored at the Center. (If the destination is a PC, the file is sent directly as an attachment.)

If a terminal compatible with i-motion mail receives movie file (s), "動画あり(movie)" will appear in the mail. The receiver select the icon and press ● [Select] to download the movie (s) or i-motion (s).

When you send an i-motion mail to PCs, etc., it will be received as an attachment file.

If a terminal that is incompatible with i-motion mails receives a movie or i-motion file, that file is converted to a continuous still image and the terminal receives a mail with a URL. A recipient can then download the continuous still image by selecting the URL.



■ Broadcasting mail

One i-mode mail message can be sent to 5 different addresses at a time. →p.252

■ Cc and Bcc transmission

You can use To, Cc and Bcc to address for your i-mode mail in the same way as mail programs for PC. →p.252
However, you cannot send mail if you specify no address for To.

NOTE

<Mail with melody/Mail with image>

- You cannot attach melodies/images that are not authorized to be sent out from a FOMA terminal.
- Photos filmed with a built-in camera can be sent even if "File restriction" is set to "Restricted", but the recipient cannot output the received files to anywhere.
- If i-mode mail is sent to an i-mode terminal (except for 501 models, R691i and R209i) of the mova service, you can send only one image file at a time and that the file must be in the JPEG format (10,000 bytes max.).

<i-shot sending and reception>

- Images are saved in the i-shot Center for up to 10 days and images whose saving period has expired are automatically deleted.

<i-motion mail>

- You cannot send movies/i-motion that are not authorized to be attached to mail or sent out from FOMA terminal.
- Movies filmed with a built-in camera can be sent even if "File restriction" is set to "Restricted", but the recipient cannot output the received files to anywhere.
- Retention period and capacity for your mail at the i-motion Center are as follows:

	Maximum capacity	Retention period
i-motion	15 files	10 days

- To select and delete a movie at the i-motion mail center, select "iMenu" - "メニューリスト (Menu List) " - "iモーションメール動画削除 (Delete i-motion mail movie)".
- i-motion will be automatically deleted at the end of the retention period.
- When the number of files exceeds a maximum allowable number for storage at the i-motion Mail Center, the center does not accept any more i-motion mail, instead sending back to the sender an error message along with an error mail.
- When you download i-motion from the i-motion Center to your FOMA terminal, that i-motion is deleted from the Center.
- When sending an i-motion mail to an i-mode terminal (excluding all 501 models, R691i and R209i) or a FOMA terminal of the FOMA 2001/2002/2102V series, the mail contains a URL for viewing an image(s).

<Mail broadcasting>

- The communication charge for broadcasting mail is equal to sending mail to 1 address. However, the charge will be increased in proportion to the amount address data you have added.

Continued on next page

Important

- It is recommended that the contents of received mails, sent mails and saved mails be kept by means such as taking notes separately and using a miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (p.569) and FOMA USB Cable (optional) to save the contents of received mails, sent mails, and saved mails in your PC.
- The contents of received mails, sent mails and saved mails may be lost due to a malfunction, repair work, etc. Please note that DoCoMo shall not be held liable for such losses and that it is recommended to take notes of the contents of received mails, sent mails and saved mails separately to guard against accidental loss.

Mail menu

Displaying Mail Menu

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail.

Pressing [MAIL] on the standby display allows the display of the mail menu.



Menu item	Description	See page
1 Inbox	Displays the screen of the received folder list. In Inbox, mails can be sorted to folders. Mails received using mail-connected i-αppli are sorted to the dedicated folder. You can check lists and details of the received i-mode mails and SMS by opening these folders.	p.278
2 Outbox	Displays the sent folder list screen. Mails sent using mail-connected i-αppli are sorted to the dedicated folder. You can check lists and details of the sent i-mode mails and SMS by opening these folders.	p.278
3 Draft	Displays the saved mail list screen. You can check i-mode mails and SMS that are saved temporarily by opening Draft.	p.250
4 Compose message	Displays the screen for composing i-mode mails.	Below
5 Compose SMS	Displays the screen for composing SMS.	p.302
6 Check new message	Checks new i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center to receive them.	p.270
7 Receive option	Checks the titles of i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center to select mails to be received, and deletes i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center.	p.269
8 Check new SMS	Checks new SMS stored in the SMS Center to receive them.	p.304
9 Mail settings	Displays the mail setting screen. Settings related to i-mode mails and SMS can be made using this item.	p.291

Composing/sending i-mode mail

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

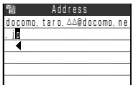
Follow the procedure below to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

- Attaching a melody, an image, a movie, or i-motion →p.260
- You can decorate your message text by changing the color and size of characters in your message text, giving motion to the text, and inserting images and lines.
  Deco-mail →p.254

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶“Compose message”.



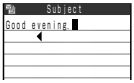
2 Select “To”, type in the recipient and press ● [Set].



For an address, you can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.
Entering characters →p.502

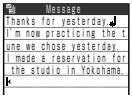
You can send a mail by just entering characters before @ of the mail address if the terminal that will receive the mail supports i-mode.
You cannot send a mail to an address that includes “, ” (comma) or a space. If you attempt to send a mail to an address using a phone number that begins with “186”/“184” or “✻31#”/“#31#”, a message confirming that the Notify caller ID setting will be deleted for sending appears. If “YES” is selected, “186”/“184” or “✻31#”/“#31#” is deleted before the i-mode mail is sent.

3 Select “Subject”. Enter the subject and press ● [Set].



You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters for subject.
Entering characters →p.502

4 Select “ ”. Enter the message and press ● [Set].



You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters for a message. You can linefeed in the message. “ ” will be counted as a full-pitch character. A full-pitch space is counted as 1 full-pitch character and a half-pitch space as 1 half-pitch character.

To put a common phrase in a message

Select “Common phrases” from the function menu. Choose a common phrases you want to enter from the Common phrases folder.
Common phrases →p.514

To quote data in a Phonebook into a message

Select “Quote phonebook” from the function menu and choose information you want to quote.
Quote phonebook →p.514
Press ● [Set] to get back to the message entry screen.

To decorate the body text

By using a pre-installed template, you can create a greeting card (p.259) and make it look more gorgeous with Decorations (p.254) such as colorful fonts.

Continued on next page

5 Check the message and press [Send].



An animation appears, telling you that the i-mode mail is being sent. Press "OK" to get back to the Mail menu develop.
You can do the same by letting the Preview screen appear and selection "Send" from the function menu there. No mail can go unless you invoke the Preview screen at least once.

To cancel transmission

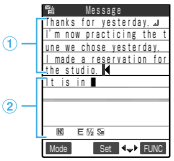
Press CLR longer than a second.
Whether you can cancel or not depends on timing.

To change your message text

Display the Preview screen. Press ● [Set] to go back to the New mail screen to edit the message.
Press CLR to return to the New message screen, and you can edit the message. After editing, press ● [Set] to go back to the Preview screen. To send, press [Send].

About a screen while you enter i-mode mail message

While you input i-mode mail message, the screen is displayed as follows:

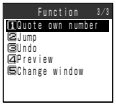


① Mail message input screen: Displays the message you confirmed.
② Character entry (edit) screen: Displays character entry area, operation guidance area and information display area. Characters that have not been confirmed yet are displayed here.
You can use the prediction function to enter the characters on the character entry (edit) screen. →p.510

The following screens are the function menus shown at ① message input screen (when ② is not displayed).







Decorate mail : Decorates the message to compose Deco-mail. →p.254
Property : Displays the file name and file size of an image inserted in the message.
Undo : Returns the entry of a character and message decoration to one step before.
Preview : Displays the message preview screen.
Change window : Switches the screen between reference screen and message input screen while entering message of Reply with ref. mail. →p.272

For other functions, refer to p.502.

Switching character input method

Select "CHG input method" from the function menu in the character input (edit) screen (②) or hold down [Mode] for more than one second to switch the input method.
Character input method →p.520

Composing i-mode mail from the Phonebook display

Search a mail address you need in a Phonebook. Display it and press ● [MAIL].



For the details of search in a Phonebook →p.114
The mail address on display retrieved from the Phonebook is pasted in the address box on the New mail screen.

Saving unfinished i-mode mail

During composing mail, select "Save" from the function menu.
The mail message you have been writing will be saved in Draft. You can save up to 10 (including SMS) mail messages. If the number of saved mails reaches 10, you cannot compose i-mode mail and SMS newly. You can open this message later and edit if needed before sending it.

Re-editing and sending i-mode mail

You can send i-mode mail you sent before or you've kept unsent after re-editing it.
Take notice that if i-mode mail you're going to re-edit has an attached file, it is kept with the mail, not deleted.
On the Details display for sent mail to be re-edited, select "Edit" from the function menu. Edit the recipient, subject, and message. Then send it.

NOTE

- When the number of sent mail stored in your FOMA terminal (a total of i-mode mail and SMS) exceeds the maximum limit (400 items), the stored sent mail, from the oldest, is automatically deleted by the current mail. Protected sent mail, however, is not deleted. It is advisable to protect sent mail you want to keep.→p.287
- When "Keypad dial lock" is set, you can use recipients in the Phonebook, Sent address record and Dialing record only, or have to use the redialing function.
- Half-pitch katakana characters and pictographs included in subject or message may not be displayed properly. Do not use these characters for mail transmission other than between i-mode terminals.
- If you press (CLR), (PUSH HOLD) without sending the mail, a message appears to ask you if you want to erase the content and end the edit session. If you select "YES", all data you have entered will be erased. If you do not want typed characters to be deleted, select "NO". The display gets back to the original.
- Radio wave condition may cause insufficient character display for the receiver. Moreover, "Transmission failed" may be displayed even if a mail is normally sent.
- If the recipient subscribes to i-mode, you can send i-mode mail from your FOMA terminal to an i-mode terminal of the mova service.

Searching an address in the Phonebook <Phonebook>

1 From the function menu in the New mail screen, select "Look-up address" - "Phonebook" so as to search in the Phonebook.

Phonebook search →p.114
You can also enter mail recipients:
- by typing them manually →p.249
- by choosing from the Address list →p.252
- by choosing from the Mail member →p.253

2 On the details screen of the searched Phonebook, select the mail address of the recipient.



Changing an entered recipient

Select a recipient on the New mail screen and retype his/her correct address.
You can change (overwrite) a recipient by selecting "Look-up address" from the function menu on the New mail screen.

Adding a recipient or change a recipient type →p.252

3 Edit the subject and text, and send the mail.

For more detailed procedure, see Steps 3 to 5 on p.249.

NOTE

- When "Restrict dialing" is set, you cannot invoke from the Phonebook those phone numbers that are not specified to "Restrict dialing".
- When entering a recipient from the Phonebook set to "Secret code", a secret code is automatically added to the mail being sent. At the recipient, however, the secret code attached to the sent mail is not stored.
  The secret code will only be added if the recipient's address is phone number or "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp".

Entering a recipient from the address list <Sent address/Received address>

You can enter a recipient from the sent address or received address record invoked on display.

<Example: Invoking the sent address record>

1 On the New mail display, select “Look-up address” - “Sent address” from the function menu.

For the sent address/received address →p.289

2 Choose the sent address record to be used as the recipient. Check the mail address and press ● [Select].

A new mail screen is displayed with the address entered.

3 Edit subject and message and send.

For further operations, see Steps 3 to 5 on p.249.

NOTE

- In the Sent address or Received address list, you can store a maximum of 30 i-mode mail addresses, sent and received alike, and SMS phone numbers.
- When the number of items in the sent address or received address record exceeds 30, the entries are automatically deleted from the oldest.
- Once you set the “PIM lock” and “Keypad dial lock”, all entries in the sent address and received address records are deleted.

Adding receiver <Add receiver>

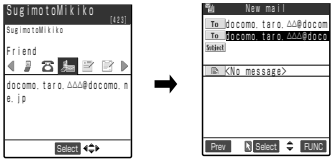
- You can specify up to 5 recipients’ addresses. If there are already 5 addresses entered or there is no addresses entered, you cannot select “Add receiver” from the function menu.
- A recipient can be classified into three types, “ To ”, “ Cc ” and “ Bcc ”. Enter a recipient to which to send mail into “ To ”. You cannot send mail in whose “ To ” no recipient is entered.

<Example: Adding an address using Phonebook>

1 On the New mail screen, select “Add receiver” - “Phonebook” from the function menu to search the Phonebook.

For searching a Phonebook →p.114

2 On the details screen for the searched Phonebook, select the mail address of the recipient.



To add recipients, repeat Step 1 and 2.

To change a recipient entered

Choose a recipient you want to change and enter a new mail address.

You can do the same by selecting “Look-up address” from the function menu, to change (overwrite) the recipient.

To change the type of a recipient added

Highlight a recipient you want to change. Select “Change rcv. type” from the function menu and choose an item.

To : A recipient to which to send mail.

Cc : A recipient to which to broadcast. The mail address entered in the Cc recipient is displayed at other recipients. Use this when sending others copies of the mail that you are sending to the recipient.

Bcc : A recipient to which to broadcast. The mail address entered in the Bcc recipient is not displayed at other recipients.

To delete a recipient

Highlight a recipient you want to delete. Select “Delete receiver” from the function menu and select “YES”. If one or more recipients follow the deleted recipient, those are displayed, moved up.

If only one recipient is entered, you cannot delete it.

3 Edit subject and message and send.

For further operations, see Steps 3 to 5 on p.249.

NOTE

- All addresses entered into “ To ” and “ Cc ” are displayed on the receiving side. Some types of terminal, devices and e-mail software, however, are not able to display them. Addresses entered into “ Bcc ” are not displayed on the receiving side.
- You can see if transmission to a recipient you specified succeeded on the Sent mail details screen. →p.280
- When you’re going to send mail for which more than one entry is made about the same recipient, a confirmation message appears, asking if you send it, deleting the overlapping recipients.

Entering address using mail member <Mail member>

By using Mail member function, you can specify multiple addresses at the same time.

- To use this function, the mail addresses need to be registered in the Mail member group in advance. →p.297
- All recipients stored in Mail member are entered into “ To ”. You can change the recipient type to “ Cc ” or “ Bcc ”. →p.252

1 On the New mail display, select “Look-up address” - “Mail member” from the function menu.

2 Select the Mail member.

When you select a Mail member, those members' addresses will be entered.

3 Edit subject and message and send.

For further operations, see Steps 3 to 5 on p.249.

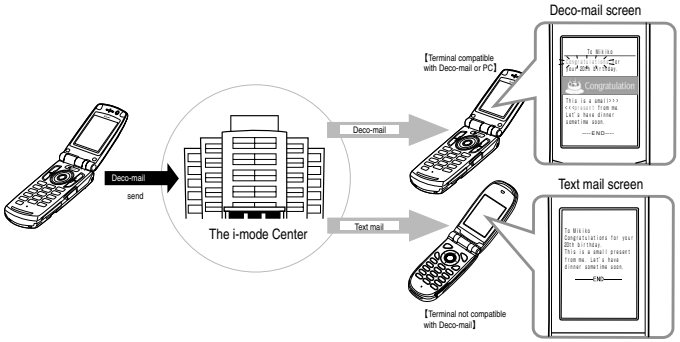
NOTE

- If “Keypad dial lock” is active, you cannot use Mail member to enter addresses.
- If there are any other addresses already entered when you try to use Mail member, a message appears to tell you that all such pre-entered addresses will be overwritten. If you select “YES”, all pre-entered addresses will be deleted and those addresses registered in Mail member will be entered. However, if a Mail member is already entered for the address, you can add other addresses without deleting the entered Mail member.

Composing and Sending a Deco-mail

Deco-mail allows you to change the character color, size and background, create animated characters and insert lines and images in the message of the i-mode mail (text mail), enabling the creation of more richly featured mail.

- Note that decorating a text decreases the number of characters you can use for a message in simple text.
- If you send Deco-mail to a terminal not compatible with Deco-mail, it is received with the decoration deleted (text mail). Also, an image inserted by “Insert image” is received as an attached file on the FOMA terminal and as i-shot mail or with the inserted image deleted on the mova terminal.



■ Decorations you can use for Deco-mail

Decoration	Description	Name of function
Decorating characters	Changing character colors	Font color
	Changing character size	Font size
Inserting images in text	Inserting images in text※	Insert image
Animating characters	Letting characters to blink※	Blink
	Displaying characters as subtitles from right to left※	Ticker
	Letting characters to swing to right and left※	Swing
Changing character position	Changing lateral position	Word alignment
Inserting lines in text	Inserting partitioning lines	Insert line
Changing background color	Changing background color	Background color

※: Movements stops automatically when a given time is passed (When image of animation GIF is inserted).

■ Pre-registered Deco-mail images


Thank You


Big Catch



Congratulation


Love


Bye Bye


Sorry


Pig


See You Tomorrow


Chick


Dance

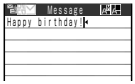
1 Select [Decorate mail] from the function menu when entering the mail body.



Icons for the decoration menu items will be displayed on the lower half of the screen.
Entering characters →p.502

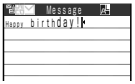
2 Select a function from the decoration menu and conduct each operation.

To return to the message entry screen, select a function for decoration.
On the function selection screen of Decorate mail, the decoration name last selected is highlighted with a frame.



Changing font color

Select "1 A F.Color" and select a font color from the color pallet.
To return to the original color, select "Default" (Black).
If you change the font color, inserted pictographs are displayed in the color that you have specified.



Changing font size

Select "2 A Size" and select the font size from "1 A large" "2 A standard" and "3 A small".



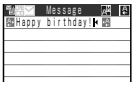
Inserting images

Select "3 Image" and select a folder containing images and select the image that you want to insert. You cannot select images that cannot be inserted. Also, you cannot insert any images if you have already attached 10 files.
If you change the character position before inserting the image, the inserted image line appears on the character position that you have specified. If you insert the images in the message, the each inserted image is in the same state as 1 file attached to the message.
Each image inserted in the message is regarded as 1 file attached to the message.



Blinking characters

Select "4 A Blink" and select "1 begin". Input message and select "Decorate mail" - "1 A Blink" - "2 end" from the function menu.
The message with "1 A Blink" set appears highlighted.



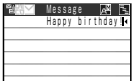
Displaying characters as ticker

Select "5 A Ticker" and select "1 begin". Input message and select "Decorate mail" - "1 A Ticker" - "2 end" from the function menu. The message with "Ticker" set appears enclosed by "A" and "A".
If you insert a line feed in a text line with "Ticker" set, the set ticker covers up to the line feed. You can set a new ticker setting for the next line.



Swinging characters

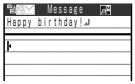
Select "6 A Swing" and select "1 begin". Input message and select "Decorate mail" - "1 A Swing" - "2 end" from the function menu.
The message with "1 A Swing" set appears enclosed by "A" and "A".
If you insert a line feed in a text line with "1 A Swing" set, the set swing covers up to the line feed. You can set a new swing setting for the next line.



Changing word alignment

Select "7 Align" and select a word alignment from "1 left", "2 center" and "3 right".
The word alignment is set to center by selecting "center".
If the selected text is displayed across multiple lines in the screen, the word alignment is changed for multiple lines of the text.

Continued on next page



Inserting lines

On the row where you want to insert a line, select "Line" from the decoration menu. If you change the font color before inserting the line, the inserted line is also displayed in the color that you have specified.



Changing background color

Select "Color" and select a background color from the color pallet.
To return to the original color, select "Default (White)".

Reset to the last decoration

On the message entry screen, select "Undo" from the function menu. The decoration you have just set will be canceled.
If the last operation is pasting characters or deleting characters by pressing CLR for a second or more, you can also cancel these operations.

3 Confirm the message.



After entering the message, the decorated text appears with "DECO" displayed at top left and with the following decoration details icon at top right.

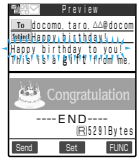
: Appears when you select the Font color.
/ / : Appears when you set the Font size to "large", "standard" and "small" respectively.
: Appears when you change the Word alignment to "center" or "right".
: Appears when you set Blink.
: Appears when you set Ticker display.
: Appears when you set Swing.



Previewing messages that you decorate

Select "Preview" from the function menu.
You can preview the message decoration.

4 Press ● [Set] on the message entry screen.



The sending preview screen is displayed.
If a phone number, a mail address or a URL is entered in a message, those are displayed with underline etc., but you cannot use the "Phone To", "Mail To", or "Web To" function.

5 Press [Send].

To continue editing

Press ● [Set].

NOTE

- You can insert up to 10 images. However, in some operations an insufficient memory message may be displayed even when the number of inserted images does not exceed 10. When an insufficient memory warning message is displayed, press ● [Select] to close the message and then delete unnecessary images.
- When you execute "Add header" in the compose message screen, the header will be added without decoration. Therefore, depending on background colors, you may not be able to see header. In addition, if you execute "Add signature", a signature will be pasted in the color of the end of message and with its character size. To change decoration of a header and a signature, edit decoration after pasting them.
- When you insert the same image, it is regarded as single image. But when you insert the same image after returning to the new mail screen or saving the composing mail, it is regarded as different image. Therefore, the number of characters that can be entered decreases as long as the capacity of the image increases.

Decorate an entered message

Even after typing in a mail message, you can change the font color, size and position and can set for Blink, Ticker and Swing. You can change the settings of the decorated message as well.

● You cannot change the background, insert neither an image or line in the Edit decoration.

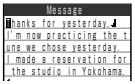
1 Select [Decorate mail] from the function menu when entering the mail body.

Icons for the decoration menu items will be displayed on the lower half of the screen.

2 Select "Edit" from the decoration menu.

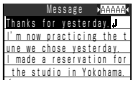
The message entry screen will be displayed.

3 Press ◉ to highlight the first character of a string whose decoration you want to change. Press ● [Start].



To decorate all of mail
Press [All].

4 Press ◉ to highlight the entire string whose decoration you want to change. Press ● [End].



5 Select an item you want to set from the decoration menu and then press ● [Select].



Decorating method →p.255

To blink, display as ticker or swing characters
Select each item from the decoration menu and then select "Select".

Canceling Decorations

You can specify the range of message to cancel the decorations that you set such as font color, font size, ticker, blink and swing of characters.

● Word alignment, background color, and inserted line and image cannot be canceled separately.

● To cancel the word alignment, background color and inserted lines or images → p.258

1 Select "Decorate mail" from the function menu when entering the mail body.

Icons for the decoration menu items will be displayed on the lower half of the screen.

2 Select "Edit" from the decoration menu.

The message entry screen will be displayed.

Continued on next page

3 Press ● at the starting point where you wish to cancel the decoration and then press ● [Start].

To decorate all of mail
Press [All].

4 Press ● at the ending point of the decoration cancellation and then press ● [End].

Icons for the decoration menu items will be displayed on the lower half of the screen. In this case, only icons for the decoration functions that can be changed in the selection part will be displayed.

5 Select "Reset" from the decoration menu.



6 Press CLR.

The decoration will be canceled.

Canceling all decorations in mail body

You can cancel all decorations including such as the word alignment, background color and inserted lines or images that you set in the mail body.

● To cancel only decorations such as font color, font size, ticker, blink and swing of characters. ➞ p.257

1 Select "Decorate mail" from the function menu when entering the mail body.

Icons for the decoration menu items will be displayed on the lower half of the screen.

2 Select "Reset All" from the decoration menu.



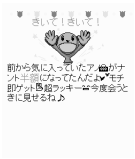
A message appears confirming you that you cancel all decorations of the mail. Selecting "YES" cancels all current decorations, bringing you back to the New mail display. If an image is inserted, a message appears notifying you that the inserted image is deleted. The icon "" at top left disappears.

Creating and Sending Greeting Cards

With Deco-mail, you can use previously registered templates to create birthday cards and other greeting cards.

- In the case of greeting cards, the text is decorated using templates, which uses up more capacity than straight text. Therefore, the number of characters that can be entered in the main body of text mails is lower.
- If decorating the main body of the mail with “Decoration” (p.254), templates cannot be used. However, decorations can be added subsequently to a mail to which a template has been applied.
- In the following cases, a confirmation message asking whether it is OK to discard the edited contents is displayed if use of a template is attempted.
  - When a text mail is already entered
  - When the opening greeting and signature are automatically inserted
  - When there is an attached file

■ Pre-installed template



Happy!



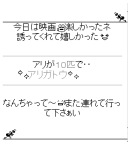
Shock!



Sorry 1



Thank You 1



Thank You 2



Make a Promise



Birthday



Fireworks



Fire cracker



Sorry 2



Congratulations



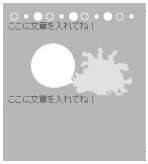
My Favorite



Good Luck!



Dolphins



BOY



Coffee break



MOMIJI



KABUKI!



Japanesque!



Dragon

Continued on next page

1 In the New mail screen, select “Template” from the function menu.

2 Select a template.

To preview templates

Highlight the template you want to display and press [Play].
During preview display, you can switch to another template by pressing .
If the template does not fit in one screen, you can scroll it with .
Even during preview display, you can select templates by pressing [Select].

3 Edit the main body of text.



The main body of text can be edited even after applying a template. Various decorations can be added by using “Decoration” (p.254).
Entering characters →p.502

4 Press [Set] in the character input screen.



The transmission preview screen is displayed.
If the main body of the mail contains telephone number, mail address, URL, or i-αppli links, these are displayed underlined, but “Phone To function”, “Mail To function”, and “Web To function” cannot be used.

5 Press [Send].

To continue editing

Press [Set].

Attaching a File to an i-mode Mail

With i-mode mail, you can attach the following files when sending it. You can send mail by attaching photos (still) and movies photographed with the built-in camera, and images and i-motion (i-motion mail) downloaded from sites and Web pages with your FOMA terminal.

File type	Max. number of files that can be attached to a mail message	Note
Melody	10	Up to 10 files for melodies and still images in total can be attached. Depending on the size of the data, the maximum amount of attached file will vary. In addition, either one large-sized still image or a movie/i-motion can be attached.
Image ※1		
Large-sized still image ※2	1	
Movie/i-motion (i-motion mail)		

※1: For still image taken by the built-in camera (p.174) or an image downloaded from a site with less than 10,000 bytes, “JPG” (light blue), “GIF” (light blue), “JPG” (light blue) or “GIF” (light blue) icon will appear followed by the title name on the image list screen. (On the picture list screen, those icons will be displayed followed by the pop-up title name.)

※2: For image in JPEG form that is larger than 10,000 bytes and up to 102,400 bytes, “JPG” (blue) or “JPG” (blue) icon will appear followed by the title name on the image list screen. (On the picture list screen, the icon will be displayed followed by the pop-up title name.)

- If you attach a file, the maximum number of characters you can enter for a message is reduced.
- If the receiving terminal is an i-mode terminal of the mova service, an attached JPEG image file (with a maximum of 10,000 bytes) is sent as i-shot mail (p.261). Attached file(s) of other type(s) are deleted, but a maximum of full-pitch 2,000 characters of the message can be sent.

<Example: Attaching an image or melody>

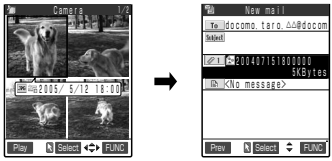
1 When composing a mail, select “Attach file” - “Attach image” from the function menu.

Attaching melody

Select “Attach file” - “Attach melody” from the function menu.

2 Select the folder.

3 Select the image you want to attach.



Images that cannot be attached to the mail are not displayed.

If the images are too many or too large size, it may take some time to display the image list screen.

To add a melody

Select a melody you want to add.

The melodies that cannot be added are grayed out and cannot be selected.

To switch image list display

Select “Title name” from the function menu.

The picture list display switches to the title list display. You cannot select images that cannot be attached to the mail.

To return to the picture list display, select “Picture” from the function menu.

To display image

Select an image that you want to display with ◎ and press [Play].

To return to the list screen, press CLR.

To play melody

Highlight the melody you want to play and then press [Play].

To stop the melody playing, press either ☎, ▣, *, #, or CLR. If manner mode is set, a confirmation message appears asking whether or not you play the melody. To play, select “YES”.

Sending an image to mova i-mode terminal through i-shot mail

Mail with an image attached can be sent to mova i-mode terminal as i-shot mail.

You can only send a JPEG image up to 10,000 bytes to mova i-mode terminal. If you attach multiple data files, entire attachment data will be deleted and only the message will be delivered to the recipient.

When you send mail to an i-mode terminal of the mova service, if the recipient does not set for split mail, mail message can contain a maximum of 184 characters in full pitch. If the recipient sets for split mail, mail message can contain a maximum of 2,000 characters in full-pitch including i-shot URLs (from where he/she can download images).

You can only send JPEG images of up to 10,000 bytes. You cannot send an i-mode mail with an attached JPEG image larger than 10,000 bytes to an i-mode terminal of the mova service. GIF images downloaded from a site will be deleted and only the mail messages will be delivered to the recipient.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- You cannot attach a file in the following cases:
  - When data amount of your message (including the attached files) already reaches 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes)
  - When attaching a file makes your message (including the attached file) exceed 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes).※
    ※: Images that exceed the maximum data amount is displayed as right on the image picture list screen.



  - When you have already attached 11 melodies or images and large images, movies or i-motions in total.
  - When the file is prohibited from attaching to the mail or outputting to any terminals other than FOMA terminal. You can attach/send a still image taken by the built-in camera even if you set “File restriction” to “Restricted”. However, the recipient cannot output the file.
  - When the file is the original animation.
- You cannot attach large images in the following cases:
  - When data amount of the large image exceeds 100Kbytes (102,400 bytes).
  - When the remaining data amount of message (including the attached file) is less than 100 full-pitch characters (200 bytes) for text mail and less than 200 full-pitch characters (400 bytes) for Deco-mail.
  - When you have already attached the large image, movie or i-motion. You can attach/send a still image taken by the built-in camera even if you set “File restriction” to “Restricted”. However, the recipient cannot output the file.
- You cannot send i-mode mail with the large images to i-mode terminals.
- If you attach the large images, the number of the characters that you can enter for the message is reduced by 100 full-pitch characters (200 bytes) for text mail and by 200 full-pitch characters (400 bytes) for Deco-mail.
- If images or melodies are pasted, the capacity of data which will be actually sent will appear on the i-mode mail compose display. In case of images, since the file size that can be managed in the FOMA terminal appears in Image info, it may be different from the capacity appearing in the i-mode mail compose display.
- If you send i-mode mail with VGA size image (p.188), the recipient can display the image on a terminal having a larger display such as a PC or FOMA terminal that supports movie display function. Even if the image can be displayed, the image size may be scaled down. Also if the memory is insufficient, a confirmation message appears saying that the image cannot be displayed because it exceeds the maximum size. In this case, it is impossible to display the image.
- The image attached to the mail may not be displayed correctly. Moreover, the image may be displayed with poor quality.
- If the recipient’s terminal is not a model from FOMA N900iG series, the melody that you sent may not be played correctly.

<Example: Attaching a movie or i-motion>

1 During composing mail, select “Attach file” - “Attach i-motion” from the function menu.

2 Select the folder where the movie or i-motion you want to attach is.

3 Select the movie or i-motion you want to attach.





To play a movie or i-motion

Press [Play] on the list screen.

Press CLR to stop playing.

You cannot select movie or i-motion that cannot be attached to mail.

NOTE

- Movies and i-motion cannot be attached in the following cases:
  - The data size of the movies or i-motion exceeds 100 KB (102,400 bytes).
  - The remaining data size of the message (including attached files) is less than 100 characters in full pitch (or 200 bytes) as text mail or less than 200 characters in full pitch (or 400 bytes) as Deco-mail.
  - Large images, movies or i-motion has already been attached.
  - The i-motion has a replay restriction.
    When attaching movies photographed with the built-in camera, even if "File restriction" is set to "Restricted", you can attach the file to send the mail. However, the recipient cannot output the received files.
- When a movie, or i-motion is attached, the number of characters that can be entered in the message decreases by 100 characters in full pitch (or 200 bytes) if the mail is a text or by 200 characters in full pitch (or 400 bytes) for Deco-mail.

Sending Photo During Phone Conversation

You can send a still image photographed then and there or a still image stored in a FOMA terminal to the recipient during a voice call.

- To use Speed photo mail, the recipient's phone number and mail address must be stored under the same memory number in your Phonebook in advance.

<Example: Sending a still image you have just taken>

1 During a call, select "Speed photo mail" from the function menu and select "Photo mode".

To send a still image stored in a FOMA terminal

Select "View photo" on the Camera screen.
Still images that cannot be sent are indicated in gray and cannot be selected.
You can only send "Mail (L)" or "Mail (S)" image below 9,000 bytes.

2 Press ● [Record] or ▼ [Memo/Check] to photograph a still image.

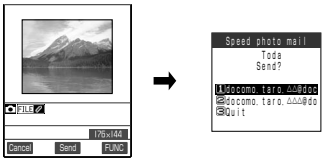


Photographing causes a shutter sound.
Before photographing, you can set various applied features of the camera including brightness adjustment and image size setting. →p.186

To send a still image after saving it in your terminal

From the function menu, select "Save & send".
If you select "Set as display", you can send it after saving, subsequently attaching it to your mail.

3 Press ● [Send] and ● [Select].



A message to confirm sending appear.

If more than 1 mail address is stored

Select the mail address of the recipient.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- You cannot use this function under the following circumstances:
  - The other party's phone number and mail address are not recorded in your Phonebook.
  - The other party's phone number and mail address are recorded in your Phonebook with "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
  - The recipient of the voice call does not have ID display activated (such as caller ID unset or not supported).
  - While restrict dialing is active, the other party's phone number is not set to restrict dialing.
  - PIM lock is active.
  - Packet transmission (PPP) is in progress.
  - Draft box is full.
  - Call waiting service is in use.
  - Your unit rings during updating software.
- If more than 1 mail address of the person you are talking to is stored in the Phonebook, the priorities of the highlighted addresses on the sent confirmation screen are shown below. ① has the highest priority.
  ① i-mode address (domain name is "docomo.ne.jp")
  ② address or phone number without domain (domain name is a character string after "@")
  ③ the first address recorded in the Phonebook
- Mail sent using this function, your phone number becomes the subject, which is saved in the Outbox.
- When you receive a speed photo mail during a voice call, the attached still image is displayed automatically. When "Speed photo auto disp." is set to "OFF", the still image is not displayed. When you receive a mail using this function, the sender's phone number is used as the subject and saved in the Inbox as an i-mode mail with an image attached without mail text.
- If image receiving is set to invalid in "Attached file", the still image attached will be deleted upon receipt of the speed photo mail.
- Even where "Format setting" is "640×480", "325×288" or "Stand-by (240×269), if you start this function, the setting changes to "Mail (L) (176×144)".
- If you try to change "Format setting" during starting up this function, you cannot select other than "Mail (L) (176×144)" and "Mail (S) (128×96)".

Composing i-mode Mail Using Various Data

- Select "Compose message" from the function menu on the screens for following data. You can compose i-mode mail by attaching and pasting data on the mail message:
  - Site pages, Bookmarks, URLs on URL history
  - Melodies stored in "Melody"
  - Images stored in "Image"
  - Movies and i-motion stored in "i Motion"
  - Still images and movies taken by the built-in camera ※1
  - "Schedule" ※2
  - "Text memo"

  ※1: You can send still images and movies taken by your built-in camera even if it is set not to output outside. The recipient cannot output such files.
  ※2: Schedule data that can be pasted on i-mode mail is limited to the date, start time and content of the schedule.
- You cannot compose i-mode mail using any melody, image, movie or i-motion that you are not allowed to attach to mail or output from your FOMA terminal.

<Example: Composing mail, pasting the URL of a site page on display>

1 While a site is displayed, select "Compose message" from the function menu.

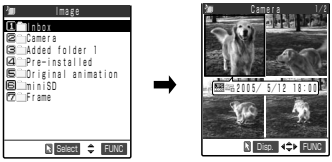
The URL will be pasted in the mail message and the new mail screen appears.

2 Enter recipient's address, subject and message and send.

For further operations, see Steps 2 to 5 on p.249.

<Example: Creating a mail with an attachment of a picture (still image) taken with the built-in camera>

1 On the Image list screen, specify the folder where an image you want to attach to select the image.



For operation of "Image"→p.338

2 Select "Compose message" from the function menu.

3 Enter recipient's address, subject and message and send.

For further operations, see Steps 2 to 5 on p.249.

NOTE

- If the recipient's terminal is not a model from FOMA N900iG, the melody you sent may not be played correctly.
- The image attached to i-mode mail may not be displayed properly. If the receiving terminal is of the i-mode of the mova service, you can only attach 1 image file in the JPEG format (10,000 bytes max.), and the message can be as long as 184 characters in full pitch. If the recipient sets for split mail, he/she can receive a maximum of 2,000 characters in full-pitch including i-shot URLs (from where he/she can download images).
- When the image data exceeds 100 KB (102,400), you cannot select "Compose message" from the function menu.

Composing i-mode mail using mail-connected i-αppli

You can compose i-mode mail using mail-connected i-αppli.

- Mail-connected i-αppli stores sent/received mail with creating the folder "" only for mail-connected i-αppli.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Outbox".

Outbox will be displayed.

2 Select Mail-connected i-αppli folder "".

Mail-connected i-αppli will start.
You can start this by selecting mail-connected i-αppli from the i-αppli list.

3 Select the screen to compose mail using mail-connected i-αppli.

i-αppli operations and screen displays vary according to the software.

4 Select the operation to send mail.

The New mail screen appears.
A subject, recipient and message may automatically be entered from mail-connected i-αppli.

5 Enter recipient's address, subject and message and send.

For the entering procedure, see Steps 2 to 5 on p.249.

Continued on next page

Folders of mail-connected i-αppli



When you send/receive i-mode mails by mail-connected i-αppli, the mails are saved in each dedicated folder that is created in the Outbox and Inbox when mail-connected i-αppli is downloaded.
You can create up to 5 folders of mail-connected i-αppli in each of the Outbox and Inbox.

NOTE

- Mail-connected i-αppli may send mails without displaying the New mail screen.

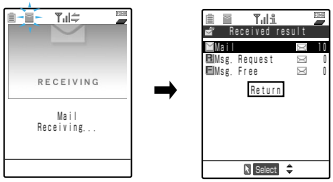
Automatic mail reception

Receiving i-mode Mail

If your FOMA terminal is within communication range, i-mode mail is automatically delivered to you from the i-mode Center. When a mail is received, the icon "✉" (blue or red) is displayed on the top of the screen. The received mail is stored in the "Inbox".

- Up to 1,000 mail including received i-mode mail and SMS can be stored in your FOMA terminal. The maximum number of mail messages you can store is between 21 and 1,000 depending on the amount of mail data.
- You can select your favorite ring tone to notify you of arriving mail using "Select ring tone" or change the blink pattern by using "Illumination".
- You can receive on your FOMA terminal i-mode mail sent from an i-mode terminal of the mova service.
- If you receive i-mode mail during FOMA terminal operation, the receiving screen will not appear and you can continue the FOMA operation by default.
  Appearance of "✉" (blue or red) icon notifies you of arriving mail without ringing the ring tone, turning on the incoming call lamp, vibrator or display light.
- You can also select to have your FOMA terminal set off a ring tone and to display the receiving screen whenever mail arrives while your FOMA terminal is turned on. →p.296

1 When you receive i-mode mail, "✉" (blue or red) icon blinks and the screen displays "Mail Receiving...".



After downloading of mail is complete, the number of received mail messages or Msg. Request/Free will be displayed on the received result screen.
Select "Mail" to display a list of received mail.
If no action is taken for 15 seconds, you will be returned to the previous screen. This 15-second delay can be changed by "Mail/Msg. ring time" function.

i-mode mail icon appearance

Blinking "✉" (blue) icon means you are receiving mail. When mail downloading is completed, this icon stops blinking and remains on. Appearance of "✉" (red) icon or "✉" (red) icon indicates that your FOMA terminal cannot receive any more i-mode mail. Open unread mail or deactivate protection until these icons disappear. The oldest mail you have read or deactivated the protection will be overwritten by new mail upon arrival.

When you receive i-shot service mail

If you receive i-shot service mail from the mova service terminal, you receive the image as an attachment file.

NOTE

- Once the number of received mail saved in your FOMA terminal (including both i-mode mail and SMS) reaches the maximum limit (1,000 items), incoming mail will automatically delete the oldest mail in trash box and oldest received mail in that order. However, unread mail and protected mail will not be deleted. We recommend that you protect mail you want to retain. →p.287
- The received mail displayed on the screen of Inbox or Recv. mail is not deleted, even if the task is switched when the mail is displayed. If a mail is received when the screen of Inbox or Recv. mail is displayed, a mail that is not displayed and is in the trash box or the oldest mail (except if unread or protected) is deleted.
- If you set your terminal not to receive i-mode mail automatically, i-mode mail sent to your address will be kept at the i-mode Center. ("" (blue, or blue and red) icon will appear in the top portion of the display.) If you use "Check new message" function, you can download all the i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free from the Center at once. You can also check the subjects for the i-mode mail stored at the Center and select specific ones to download.
- The maximum size of an i-mode mail message you can receive is 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters. If a message exceeds this limit, "/" or "//" will appear at the end of the message and the excess characters will be deleted automatically.
- The i-mode Center may not accept mail that requires an unusually large amount of memory. Such mail will be returned with an error message.
- You can select if you receive melodies or images attached to mail using "Attached file" setting function.
- When FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail, that mail is deleted from the i-mode Center.
- The maximum number of i-mode mail messages that can be stored at the i-mode Center is between 207 and 1,000 depending on the amount of data they contain. Retention period is 720 hours. Mail will be automatically deleted at the end of the retention period.
- When number of i-mode mail messages stored at the i-mode Center reaches the maximum limit, the Center will begin rejecting i-mode mail. Such mail will be returned with an error message or as error mail to the sender.
- You can transmit melodies, movies/i-motion and images as attachment files to i-mode mail. Files that i-mode mail does not support will automatically be deleted at the i-mode Center. If attachment file has been deleted, "添付ファイル削除 (Attached file deleted)" message will be added. However, there are some instances where "添付ファイル削除 (Attached file deleted)" message will not be added or the attachment file cannot be deleted properly.
- When you download new i-mode mail, other i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free stored at the i-mode Center will be downloaded at the same time.
- You can check in which address type of To, Cc and Bcc you have received i-mode mail on the mail detail screen when the received i-mode mail was sent from a terminal that can set To, Cc and Bcc. →p.280
- There are cases that Deco-mail received from a PC will not properly be displayed.
- You can pre-define the limit of i-mode mail size to receive. →p.243
- The priority of Ring volume and illumination when you receive i-mode mail is as follows (① has the highest priority):
  ① "Utilities (Phonebook)" specified to each mail address
  ② "Utilities (Group)" specified to each group
  ③ "Select ring tone" and "Illumination"
- When you receive more than one mail, the Ring volume sounds and illumination blinks in the conditions set on the mail received last.
- Ring tone volume will be as set for "Mail/Message" of "Ring volume".

Displaying new i-mode mail

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Inbox" ▶ "Inbox" .

If an added folder exists, choose it on the Inbox folder display.
The Received mail display appears.

2 Select mail to display.

Press CLR to return to the list of received mail.

Displaying previous and next mail

Press on the mail details screen.

Continued on next page

Standby display when you receive mail

When you receive i-mode mail, “ New ” will appear on the standby display. If you select this icon, “New mail” appears.
If you receive mail while you are viewing Inbox, this icon may not appear.
You can call up the list of received mail by selecting this icon.



If you receive mail while the FOMA terminal is folded

When i-mode mail is received, an icon appears on the image window, indicating message receipt. →p.37



NOTE

- You can view mail information (sender, subject and date/time it arrived at the i-mode Center) without opening it by selecting “Mail info” from the function menu on the list of received mail screen.
- You can paste a mail address for i-mode mail sender or broadcasting recipient on the standby display as a desktop icon. You can use this icon to compose a new i-mode mail to that address.
  However, you cannot attach a mail address with “ Fm ” “ To ” “ Cc ” as a desktop icon. Even for mail with the same information, you can attach only one mail address in one operation.

Mail-connected i-αppli

- i-mode mails sent using a mail-connected i-αppli are sorted to the dedicated folder for the mail-connected i-αppli.
- If a sender sends an i-mode mail using the mail-connected i-αppli, the mail is sorted to the dedicated folder for mail-connected i-αppli in the recipient’s terminal.
  If there is no dedicated folder in the recipient’s terminal, the mail is sorted to a folder in accordance with the setting of “Auto-sort”. If no setting is made for “Auto-sort”, the mail is sorted to Inbox.
- Selecting the dedicated folder for mail-connected i-αppli activates the software.
- If you want to view the mail list screen in the dedicated folder without starting the software, highlight the folder and select “Open folder” from the function menu.

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check the subjects of mail messages stored at the i-mode Center and select the mail to download to your own terminal. You can also delete mail at the i-mode Center before downloading.

- To use this function, “Receive option setting” must be “ON”. →p.297
- For details, refer to “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.

When a mail comes in with “Receive option” set to “ON”

If “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”, mail are not received automatically. Mails that come in are stored in the i-mode Center and “” is displayed at the top of the screen.



NOTE

- When “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”, the mail ring tone does not sound. Moreover, the terminal does not vibrate if the manner mode or vibrator is set.

Receiving mails selectively

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶“Receive option”.

If “Receive option setting” is “OFF”

A message appears asking you if you want to set your mail receive options. Selecting “Receive option setting” enables setting of “Receive option”. When “ON” is set in “Receive option”, the screen changes to the mail list screen.

When the Receive option screen is displayed using this function, the icon “” is turned off even if not received/deleted mail.

2 Select a receive option for each mail.

NOTE

- Even if “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”, if you perform “Check new messages” you will receive all your i-mode mails stored at the i-mode center. If you do not want to receive i-mode mails while performing “Check new messages”, set “Mail” to off in “i-mode checking”.

Inquiring About New i-mode Mail in the Center

Default setting	Check all (Mail, Msg. Request, Msg. Free)

- i-mode mail that arrives at the i-mode Center is automatically sent to FOMA terminals. In the following cases mail is stored at the i-mode Center:
  - When the power of FOMA terminal is not turned on.
  - When "圏外" is displayed.
  - While "Self mode" is set
  - When the memory is full.
  - When "Receive option setting" is "ON".
- When "圏外" is on display, you cannot make any inquiry.
- Use "i-mode checking" to specify which items to check. If you do not need to download Msg. Request/Free, specify that "Msg. Request" and "Msg. Free" are not to be checked.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Check new message".



The mail checking screen appears.
Inquiry is made in the order of "Mail" → "Msg. Request" → "Msg. Free".
You can check i-mode mail by selecting "Check new message" from i-mode menu or holding down [MAIL] for 1 or more seconds on standby display.
During an inquiry, "" (blue), "R" (green) and "F" (purple) blinks, displaying "Mail Checking···", and i-mode mail, Msg. Request/Free are received.
Number of i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free newly received is displayed.

Canceling an inquiry

Press CLR for a second or longer during making an inquiry.
When you cancel the checking operation, you may receive i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free depending on the timing of cancellation.

i-mode mail icon appearance

Appearance of "" (blue)" icon means that i-mode mail is stored at the i-mode Center. If the space for your i-mode mail at the i-mode Center is full, "" (blue and red)" icon appears.

NOTE

- "" (red), "" (red), "R" (red) and "F" (red) icons indicate that your FOMA terminal cannot receive any more i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free. Delete unnecessary mail or Msg. Request/Free, open unread mail or deactivate protection until these icons disappear. The oldest mail or Msg. Request/Free you have read or deactivated the protection on, will be deleted by new arriving messages.
- The maximum number of i-mode mail messages that can be stored at the i-mode Center is between 207 and 1,000 depending on the amount of data they contain. The retention period is 720 hours. Mail will automatically be deleted at the end of the retention period.
- Even if there is i-mode mail stored at the i-mode Center, "" (blue, or blue and red) icon may not appear. (e.g. FOMA terminal is off or "圏外" is already being displayed when i-mode mail arrives at the Center.)
- i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free stored in the i-mode Center may not be included in the number of received i-mode mails or Msg. Request/Free that is displayed when checking for new messages.

Replying to i-mode Mail

You can reply to the sender of i-mode mail. You can enter new message, referring to the mail or quoting received message when you compose your reply mail.

- If "Keypad dial lock" is set, you can reply only to i-mode mail whose sender and addresses of the same mail (To and Cc) are all registered in the Phonebook.
- To the subject of reply message, "Re:" will be added. You can enter up to 15 full-pitch characters including "Re:" for subject. Surplus will be deleted.

Entering new message to reply

1 Display the details screen for the mail you want to reply to and press [Reply].



To view i-mode mail you have received. →p.267

To reply to the sender of a mail sent to multiple recipients

Select "To sender" in the reply screen.

To reply to all broadcasting recipients, select "To all".

If the sender cannot be replied, the mail reply screen with all the addresses including the other broadcast recipients' ones deleted will appear. If there are any broadcast recipients' addresses that cannot be replied, the mail reply screen with the addresses which cannot be replied deleted will appear.

2 Edit subject and message text, and send.

For further operations, see Steps 3 to 5 on p.249.

After completion of transmission, the received mail details screen is displayed, and "✉" will change to "↩".

NOTE

- If you reply to i-mode mail that already has "Re:" (all half-pitch character) in front of the subject, "Re2:" will be added to the subject of your reply mail. This repeats until "Re99:". If a full pitch character is included in "Re:" or if "RE:" ("E" is uppercase), "Re:" is added to the top of subject.
- If you use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in subject or message, these characters may not appear properly on the recipient's terminal. Do not use such characters if recipient does not possess an i-mode terminal.
- If any i-αppli startup information (i-αppli To) or i-motion acquisition information is attached or pasted to the i-mode mail you are replying to, such file or information will be deleted.

To refer to received message to reply

● When you compose “Reply with ref” mail, the message input area appears in the upper portion of the screen and the received mail message in the lower part of the screen.

1 Display the details screen of the mail to reply to and select “Reply with ref” from the function menu.

To view i-mode mail you have received →p.267



To switch the reference screen between the message input screen
Change the screen using the Neuropointer key.
If “Pointer” for “Neuropointer” is “OFF”, select “Change window” from the function menu or hold down (i) for one or more seconds to switch the screen.

To copy the message, subject and address from the reference screen
Select “Copy” from the function menu in the reference screen, and then select, “Message”, “Subject” and “Address”.
To make a copy →p.516

To reply to the sender of a mail sent to multiple recipients
Select “To sender” in the reply screen.
To reply to all broadcasting recipients, select “To all”.
If the sender cannot be replied, the mail reply screen with all the addresses including the other broadcast recipients’ ones deleted will appear. If there are any broadcast recipients’ addresses that cannot be replied, the mail reply screen with the addresses which cannot be replied deleted will appear.

2 Edit message and send.

Editing the subject
After displaying the preview screen, press ● [Set] to return to the reply screen. Then select “Subject” and re-enter the subject.

If you press ● [Set] after the sending preview screen is displayed, and the message entry screen reappears after you return to the new mail screen, the reference screen will not appear.
For further operations, see Steps 4 to 5 on p.249.
After completion of transmission, the received mail details screen is displayed and “” will change to “”.

Quoting received message to reply

You can quote received i-mode mail message when you reply to it.

● When you reply with quote to a received Deco-mail, the message will be displayed with the decorated message and inserted image quoted.
● The attached file of the i-mode mail quoted will be deleted.

1 Display the details screen of the mail to reply to and select “Reply with quote” from the function menu.

To reply with quote to the sender of a mail with multiple recipients
On the Reply with quote screen, select “To sender”.
To reply to all of the broadcast recipients, select “To all”.

The received mail message will be displayed on the reply mail message area. Only 1 quotation mark (“>” by default) will appear at the forefront of the received (quote) message. It does not appear at the beginning of every line.
To edit quotation marks →p.293

2 Edit subject and message, and send.

For further operations, see Steps 3 to 5 on p.249.
After completion of transmission, the received mail details screen is displayed, and “” will change to “”.

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Addresses

You can forward received i-mode mail to others.

- To the subject of forwarding message, “Fw:” will be added. You can enter up to 15 full-pitch characters including “Fw:” for subject. Surplus will be deleted.
- When you forward a Deco-mail that you have received, the message will appear with the decorated message and inserted images quoted.

1 Display the detailed screen for the mail you wish to forward and select “Forward” from the function menu.

To view i-mode mail you have received →p.267

2 Enter recipient(s) and press ● [Set].

Entering recipient(s) →p.249

Subject and message can be edited. You can forward 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters including original message (message you received), additional message (message you entered), header, signature and attachment(s) such as melodies and images.

To enter recipient(s) using phonebook data, address list or mail members

Select “Look-up address” from the function menu on the mail forwarding screen.

3 Press [Prev] to review the mail on the mail preview screen and press [Send].

After completion of transmission, the received mail details screen is displayed, and “” will change to “”.

NOTE

- If you forward i-mode mail that already has “Fw:” (all half-pitch character) in front of the subject, “Fw2:” will be added to the subject when you forward the mail. This repeats until “Fw99:”. If a full-pitch character is included in “Fw:” or if “FW:” (“W” is uppercase), “Fw:” is added to the top of subject.
- If you use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in subject or message, these characters may not appear properly on the recipient’s terminal. Do not use such characters if recipient does not possess an i-mode terminal.
- If any i-αppli startup information (i-αppli To), i-motion acquisition information or file that you are not allowed to attach to mail or output from your FOMA terminal is attached or pasted to the i-mode mail you are forwarding, such file or information will be deleted.
- If i-motion is attached to the mail you are forwarding, the maximum number of characters you can use for the message is 4,900 full-pitch characters (9,800 bytes) for text mail and 4,800 full-pitch characters (9,600 bytes) for Deco-mail. When a message exceeding the maximum number has been entered, a message will appear indicating that you have exceeded the maximum number of characters. Select “OK” and then, in the message input screen, delete characters until the number of remaining characters reaches “0”.

Storing the Mail Address in the Phonebook

You can store mail addresses and phone numbers for the senders of mail in your Phonebook.

<Example: Storing sender's mail address in your Phonebook>

1 Select the mail from the list of received mail and select "Store address" from the function menu.

If there is more than one mail address that you are able to record
Select the mail address you want to register on the mail address selection screen.

To record a mail address or phone number for a sent mail recipient
Select "Store address" from the function menu on the sent mail details screen.
If the i-mode mail was sent to more than 1 recipient, a list of mail addresses will appear. Select the mail address you want to store.

2 Select "YES" and then select "Phone" - "New".

Data you entered will be displayed on the Phonebook new record screen. Enter necessary information.
Entering Phonebook →p.104

To record data in FOMA card Phonebook
Select "UIM".
When you store data in FOMA card, input type will be displayed as "Overwrite" instead of "Add".

NOTE

- If "Restrict dialing" or "Keypad dial lock" is set to ON, you cannot store data in your Phonebook.
- Mail addresses or phone numbers with "Fm", "To" or "Cc" icon cannot be recorded.

Capturing Melody from i-mode Mail

Default setting	ON

The melody attached or pasted to received i-mode mail can be saved on your FOMA terminal.

- You can not play a melody during voice call.
- If sender is other than a FOMA N900iG, the melody you received may not play correctly.

1 Select mail with "♫" or "♫" from the list on the received mail screen.



If more than one melody is attached, all melodies will be played.
You can select certain melodies to be played.

To stop the melody
Press either [ ], [ ], [0] to [9], [*] or [#].

If you do not want to have the melody play when you open mail
Set "Play melody setting" to "OFF".

2 Highlight the melody to save, select "Save data" from the function menu and then select "YES" to select the folder to be saved.

You can set the saved melody as your ring tone on the following screen.

When the melody storage is full

If you are unable to save a melody because there is insufficient memory available in your terminal, you will need to delete some unnecessary melodies to create more memory.

1 When a message appears to ask you if you want to delete, select "YES" and select the folder in which the melodies you want to delete is stored.

2 Select melodies you want to delete.

Checkboxes for the selected melodies are marked.
Keep selecting melodies until "Finish" appears at the bottom left of the screen.
You can click the checkbox again to deselect the selected melodies.

3 Press [Finish] and select "YES". Select the folder you want to save.

A message informs you that the images or melodies have been saved.

NOTE

- The saved melody will be displayed at the top of the list.
- Melodies can be saved as half-pitch alphameric file name (but, up to 36 characters in half-pitch). If "." is included in a file name, the melody will be saved with the characters after "." deleted. If other than alphameric is included in a file name, melodies will be saved as "melodyxxx" (xxx: a three-digit number). The last three-digit number of a file name is a serial number to distinguish same file names.
- If "Pasted melody" is "Invalid", the melody pasted in i-mode mail message will be displayed by a character string and cannot be played/saved.
- If there are multiple melodies pasted in a message, or if they are pasted together with i-αppli To, " " will appear and either data will be invalid. Even if you invalidate "Pasted melody" or "i-αppli To", the data does not appear as a character.
- If you try to delete the melody set to your ring tone (indicated by "★"), a message appears to ask you if you want to delete this melody. Select "YES" to delete.
- If you delete the melody set to your ring tone, the setting will return to the default.
- Attached or pasted melodies cannot be played if you replace the FOMA card with another or power on the FOMA terminal without loading the FOMA card in it.

Displaying the Image Attached to a Mail

Displaying/saving attached image

You can save images attached to received i-mode mail.

1 Select mail with " " or " " on the list of received mail screen.



Attached images will be displayed.
If there are more than 1 images attached, all images will be displayed.
For Deco-mail, the images pasted in the message body will be displayed but attached images will not. To display an image, select file name for it.

To switch image display to file name display

Select an image in the image display.
To return to the image display, select the file name to display image.

2 Select an image you want to save and select "Save data" from the function menu and then select "YES".

You can also set the saved image as your standby display on the screen displayed subsequently.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Images can be saved as half-pitch alphameric file name (but, up to 36 characters in half-pitch). If "." is included in a file name, the image will be saved with the characters after "." deleted. If other than alphameric is included in a file name, images will be saved as "imagexxx" (xxx: a three-digit number). The last three-digit number of a file name is a serial number to distinguish same file names.
- The image attached to i-mode mail may not be displayed properly. Depending on the image size, it may be proportionally scaled down on the display.
- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, you will not be able to display the attached or pasted image files.

Saving an image inserted into the body

You can save an image inserted into the body of Deco-mail.

1 Select mail from the received mail list screen and select "Save insert image" from the function menu.

You can also save an inserted image by selecting "Save insert image" from the function menu from the sent mail details screen.

2 Select an image to save and select "YES" to select the folder to be saved.

You can also set the saved image as your standby display on the screen displayed subsequently.

When the image storage is full

If you are unable to save an image because there is insufficient memory available in your terminal, you will need to delete some unnecessary images to create more memory.

1 When a message appears to ask you if you want to delete, select "YES" and select the folder in which the image you want to delete is stored.

2 Select images you want to delete.



Checkboxes for the selected images are marked.
Keep selecting images until "Finish" appears at the bottom left of the screen.
You can click the checkbox again to deselect the selected images.

3 Press [Finish] and select "YES". Select the folder you want to save.

A message informs you that the images have been saved.

NOTE

- If you try to delete the image that has "Display setting" (indicated by "★"), a message appears to ask you if you want to delete this image. Select "YES" to delete.
- If you delete the image that has "Display setting", the setting will return to the default.

Capturing i-motion through i-motion Mail

When you receive mail, movies sent as i-motion mail or i-motion files are not downloaded to your FOMA terminal. You will need to download them from the i-motion mail Center. The movies and i-motion you captured through i-motion mail will be saved as a part of received mail.

● Only the recipient can download movies/i-motion attached to i-motion mail from the i-motion mail Center.

<Example: Saving i-motion>

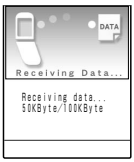
1 Select mail with "" icon from the list of received mail.



To display the URL from which i-motion was captured

Select "URL" from the function menu on the mail details screen.

2 Select i-motion you want to capture.



i-motion will be captured.

When data downloading is complete, a message will appear to notify you of the completion of downloading and "" will change to "" on the received mail details screen.

To stop downloading i-motion

Hold down (CLR) for 1 or more seconds.

Some i-motion messages/movies will start playing automatically during downloading. When playback is complete, the data download completion screen is displayed.

3 Select "Save data" from the function menu and select "YES" and the folder to be saved.

A message will appear informing you that the i-motion has been saved.

If there is not enough memory to save the i-motion, follow the instruction messages and delete unnecessary/undesired i-motion. →p.334

A movie or i-motion captured from an i-motion mail is stored in the "i Motion" folder in "Multimedia". →p.349

NOTE

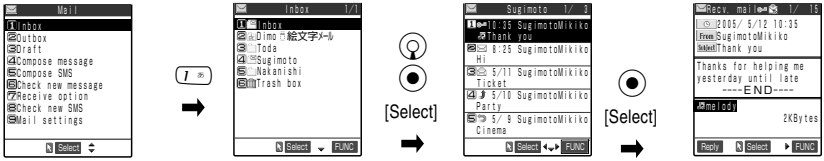
- Movies or i-motions downloaded by i-motion mail are saved as part of received mails. When the size of received mails exceeds the limit of Inbox at that time, mails in the Trash box and old received mails are automatically deleted. However, unread mails and protected received mails are not deleted. It is recommended that you protect the important received mails. →p.287
- To play movies and i-motion attached to i-motion mail on other device such as PC, special software is required. Please go to the DoCoMo website for details.
- If "Pasted i-motion" is "Invalid", i-motion that download is not completed will not be displayed in mail messages.
- If "i-motion auto play" is "ON", i-motion will be played automatically. If it is "OFF", the play screen will not be displayed and the confirmation screen will appear to notify you that the data has been successfully downloaded.
- Some i-motion cannot be played during data downloading.
- Even if the radio wave becomes too weak to play i-motion, i-motion will play as much of the data that has been downloaded provided i-motion has been set to play during data downloading. In this case, the screen informing you that downloading has been successfully completed will not appear and you will be required to download the data again.
- If there are multiple movies pasted in a message, or if they are pasted together with i-αppli To, " " will appear and either data will be invalid. Even if you invalidate "Pasted i-motion" or "i-αppli To", the data does not appear as a character.
- When an i-motion attached to a mail is captured in a FOMA terminal, the i-motion stored in the i-motion mail Center is deleted.
- To delete movies stored at the i-motion mail center, select "iMenu" – "メニューリスト(Menu List)" – "iモーションメール動画削除(Delete i-motion mail movie)".

Displaying Mails in Outbox/Inbox

Sent/received mails are saved in the "Outbox" and "Inbox", respectively. You can use folders in the Outbox/Inbox to manage mails. To display a mail in the Outbox/Inbox, display the sent/received folder list screen from the mail menu and select the folder you want to open. Then, select a mail in the displayed sent/received mail list screen to check the mail.

- You can also display the mail list screen for the mails under the folder, by opening the function menu on a folder list screen and then selecting "Open folder".
- There are no folders in "Draft".

(Example: Inbox)



Mail menu

List of Inbox folders screen

List of received mail screen

Received mail details screen

How to view the folder list screens

The sent folder list screen of "Outbox" and received folder list screen of "Inbox" are respectively displayed as the following:

- You can separate mails into folders. "Inbox" has an "Inbox" folder, pre-installed mail-connected i-αppli folder and "Trash box" folder by default. You can add folders to "Inbox" afterward.
- You cannot add folders to "Outbox" except the folder for mail-connected i-αppli.

Sent folder list screen



① : Indicates folder for sent mail.

: Indicates the sent mail folder with security (p.163) activated.

② : Indicates sent mail folder for mail-connected i-αppli (p.266).

③ : Indicates sent mail folder for mail-connected i-αppli, with security activated.

Received folder list screen



① : Indicates that there is no unread mail.

② : Indicates that there is unread mail.

③ : Indicates that there is no unread mail and security (p.163) is active.

④ : Indicates that there is unread mail and security is active.

⑤ : Indicates Inbox folder for mail- connected i-αppli (p.266).

⑥ : Indicates that there is unread mail in the received mail folder for mail-connected i-αppli.

⑦ : Indicates the received mail folder for mail-connected i-αppli with security activated.

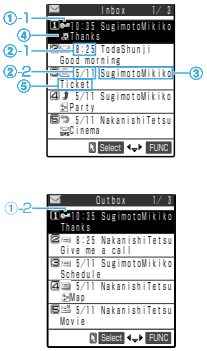
⑧ : Indicates that there is unread mail in the received mail folder for mail-connected i-αppli with security activated.

⑨ : Indicates trash box.

: Indicates trash box and security is active.

List of mail screen

A list appears as follows. Icons appearing on this screen also appear on the mail details screen. Some icons may not appear.



① Indicates mail status.

①-1 Received mail

: Unread mail

: Read mail

: Forwarded mail

: Replied-to mail

: Unread and protected mail

: Read and protected mail

: Forwarded and protected mail

: Replied-to and protected mail

①-2 Sent mail

: Successfully sent mail

: Unsuccessfully sent mail

: Mail successfully sent to designated multiple recipients

: Mail successfully sent to some of the designated multiple recipients

: Mail transmitted to all designated recipients and failed

: Protected mail

② Shows transmission time/date.

②-1 Sent/received time is displayed for the mail sent/received on the current day.

②-2 Sent/received date is displayed for the mail sent/received up to the previous day.

③ Indicates originators (senders)/destinations. If they are stored in your Phonebook, you can choose to display them by name, mail address or phone number. If sender's address is stored in your Phonebook with image data, "" will appear.

④ Indicates mail type and/or attachment data type.

<In 2-line display>

: It is SMS.

: It is SMS and SMS report (transmission notice) has been received.

: It is SMS and it is placed in FOMA card.

: Melody is attached or pasted.

: Multiple melodies are attached or pasted and some of the data is inappropriate.

: Entire data of melodies attached or pasted is inappropriate.
This icon also appears when "Pasted melody" is set to "Invalid" for pasted melodies.

: Image (s) is attached.

: Multiple images are attached and some of the data is inappropriate.

: Entire data of attached images is inappropriate.

: Large image is attached.

: Movies or i-motion data pasted in the i-mode mail have not been downloaded. "Pasted i-motion" is set to "Valid".

: Movies or i-motion data pasted in the i-mode mail have not been downloaded and "Pasted i-motion" is set to "Invalid". Also appears when data before downloading with Deco-mail are incorrect.

: Movies or i-motion data attached to in i-mode mail have been downloaded and the data is appropriate. This also appears when you transmit i-mode mail with movies or i-motion attached.

: Movies or i-motion data attached to in i-mode mail have been downloaded and the data is inappropriate.

: i-αppli can be started up from mail message. This icon appears if "i-αppli To" is set to "Valid".

: i-αppli cannot be started up from mail message. This icon appears if "i-αppli To" is set to "Invalid".

: This indicates message received or sent by mail-connected i-αppli.

: There are multiple data pasted. This also appears when data are pasted together with i-αppli To.

: Attached/pasted file or data cannot be used because the FOMA card inserted is different from the one used when you transmitted mail.

<In 1-line display>

: One or more files are attached or pasted and does not include a large file.

: More than one file are attached or pasted and does not include a large file, and part of the data therein is incorrect.

: The data in all attached or pasted files are incorrect.

: One or more files are attached, and includes a large file.

: More than one file are attached and includes a large file, and part of the data therein is incorrect.

: All attached files are incorrect and includes a large file.

⑤ Indicates mail subject. If it is i-mode mail that does not have subject, "No title" appears on the screen. If it is SMS, the beginning of the message will appear. (If SMS report, "SMS report" will appear.)

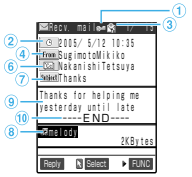
Continued on next page

NOTE

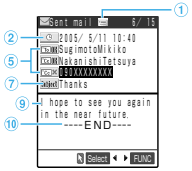
● If the clock is not set to “Set local time”, “--/--” will appear for date/time on the list of sent mail and the list of draft mail screens. However, date will appear for SMS sent out successfully.

Mail details screen

Mail details screen appears as follows:



Received mail details screen



Sent mail details screen

① Indicates mail status (see p.279, List of mail screen ①).
② Indicates sent/received date and time (date and time when the Center received the mail).
③ Displays the transmission type of received mail.
- To : Indicates that the received mail has been sent to your address specified by the sender.
- Cc : Indicates that the received mail is specified by the sender to be broadcast to you.
- Bcc : Indicates that the sender of the broadcast mail that you received has specified not to display the other recipients.

④ Indicates sender’s mail address for the received mail.
- From : Indicates that you are a designated recipient.
- Fm : Indicates that you are a designated recipient and indicates the mail address cannot be replied to directly (such as the address that exceeds 50 half-pitch characters.)

⑤ Indicates recipient’s address and addressing type of the sent mail.
You can check if transmission was successful. If there are multiple recipients, all recipients will be displayed.
- To OK : Indicates that a recipient to whom transmission was successful.
- To ✕ : Indicates that a recipient to whom transmission was not successful.
- Cc OK : Indicates that broadcasting recipients to whom transmission was successful.
- Cc ✕ : Indicates that broadcasting recipients to whom transmission failed.
- Bcc OK : Indicates a recipient who has been specified not to be notified to other broadcasting recipients and to whom the transmission was successful.
- Bcc ✕ : Indicates a recipient who has been specified not to be notified to other broadcasting recipients and to whom the transmission has failed.

⑥ Displays up to 4 other recipients of the received mail (excluding your own address).
- To : Indicates that the received mail has been specified to your address.
- To : Indicate that the received mail has been specified to your address, and that the mail address is the one to which you cannot reply.
- Cc : Indicates that the received mail has been specified to your address to be broadcast to you as a copy.
- Cc : Indicates that the received mail has been specified to your address to be broadcast to you as a copy, and that the sender’s address is the one to which you cannot reply.

The address you cannot reply to will be displayed with “Fm”, “To”, “Cc”.
If the sender of the received mail or the recipient of the sent mail is stored in your Phonebook, “Name” appears in ④, ⑤ and ⑥.
To display name, the person’s mail address must be stored in your Phonebook. →p.103

⑦ Indicates that subject of mail. If no subject attached, “No title” will appear. “SMS” icon will appear for received SMS (or “” will appear for SMS stored in FOMA card) and “SMS” will appear as its subject (“SMS report” for SMS report). If SMS report has already been received, “” will also appear.
⑧ If a file is attached or pasted, a corresponding icon, the file name, and its byte number (file size) are displayed. If a melody is pasted, “” will appear. If the pasted melody data is not correct, “” will appear. Details of the attached and pasted file icons →p.279
⑨ Indicates message text for the mail.
⑩ Appears at the end of message text.

In the following circumstances, “Name” will not appear even if the person’s data (such as phone number and mail address) is stored in your Phonebook. Only the person’s mail address is displayed:
- “Restrict dialing” is in effect and the phone number is not specified for “Restrict dialing”.
- Details of sent/received mail to/from phone number or mail address that is not registered as secret are displayed in secret only mode.
- Details of sent/received mail to/from phone number or mail address that is registered as secret are displayed in a mode other than secret mode or secret only mode.

Changing character size for mail message

You can change the character size of the message while you are displaying the mail details screen. When you set the character size to "Small", the date and time received/sent, sender, receiver, subject, etc. will also be displayed with small characters.



NOTE

- If you press ⊙ when the mail details screen is not displayed, page or cursor will move.
- If you exit from the mail details screen, the size of display character will go back to Standard automatically even if you have selected Small or Large. If you return to the mail details screen, characters will be displayed in the size you selected.
- If you switch display as mentioned above, “Character size” (p.295) setting will also changed.

Switching mail list display (1- line display/2-line display)

You can use “Mail list display” function of “Mail settings” from the Mail menu to select to display 2 lines for mail recipient/sender name or its mail address and subject or to display only 1 line for either name, mail address or subject.



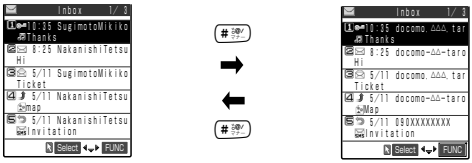
NOTE

- If you change “Mail list display”, display of list of received mail, list of sent mail and list of draft mail is all changed.

Switching on Mail list display (Name/Address/Subject)

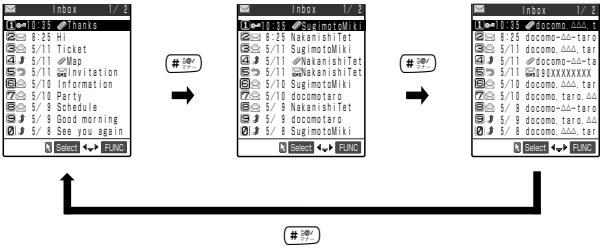
On the Mail list display, you can specify the way of displaying mail, by recipient, sender name, mail address, phone number, or subject. If recipients and sender names are registered in your Phonebook, you can display them on screen.

Mail list display (2-line display)



Continued on next page

■ Mail list display (1-line display)



NOTE

- You can switch a displayed item also by selecting “List setting” from the function menu on the Received mail, Sent mail, or Draft mail display and specifying an item in “Subject”, “Name”, or “Address”.
- Display switching is also possible when trashing or on a selection display to delete a selection or move among folders. Name and address can be switched also on a list display for “Auto-sort”.

■ Mail with photo

If you have received mail from a person whose address is stored in your Phonebook along with an image, “” will appear on the list of mail screen.
To view the image, select mail with “” icon and press [ ].



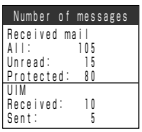
NOTE

- To display an image, the mail address of the sender must be properly stored in the Phonebook. →p.103
- If “Mail list disp.” is set to 1 line display and you select “Subject” for “List setting”, “” will not appear, if you press [ ] the stored image will be displayed.

■ Checking the number of saved mail

■ Checking the number of saved Received/Sent mail

To check the number of mail in all folders, select “Memory info” from the function menu on the Folder list display.
To check the number of mail stored in a specific folder, display a list of received mail in the folder and select “No. of messages” from the function menu.



Inbox

■ Checking the number of draft mail

On the Draft mail list display, select “No. of messages” from the function menu.

Backlight function

When you unfold your FOMA terminal, press a key, or i-mode mail and SMS is received, the backlight will light for about 15 seconds (The lighting period may change depending on the setting for “Mail/Msg. ring time”). However, when the screen displays the text of i-mode mail and SMS, the lighting period may depending on the length of displayed texts.
If you select “OFF” for the “Lighting” setting in “Display light”, the backlight does not light.

Composing/editing/deleting folder

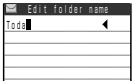
You can add folders in Inbox to manage the received mail.

- The default folders are “Inbox”, pre-installed mail-connected i-αppli folder and “Trash box”.
- Up to 23 folders can be added in Inbox. As folders for mail-connected type i-αppli, up to 5 folders can be added in each of Outbox and Inbox.

<Example: To compose a folder>

1 (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶“Inbox” then select “Add folder” from the function menu.

2 Enter folder name and press ● [Set].



You can use 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for a folder name.
You must enter at least one character to create a folder.
Entering characters →p.502

Changing folder name

To change folder name, highlight a folder on the list of folders screen, select “Edit folder name” from the function menu and enter new name.

You can use 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for a folder name.

You can only change the names for the folders that you created. You cannot change the names for predefined folders (Inbox, Trash box and Outbox) and the folder for mail-connected i-αppli mail.

Deleting a folder

Highlight a folder on the list of folders screen, select “Delete folder” from the function menu and enter your security code (p.152).

- You cannot delete pre-defined folders (Inbox, Trash box and Outbox) and the folder for mail-connected i-αppli. However, if mail-connected i-αppli is deleted from the FOMA terminal and no mail stored in both Inbox and Outbox for mail-connected i-αppli is protected, you can delete mail-connected i-αppli folders. If you try to delete a folder for mail-connected i-αppli, a message appears to ask you whether or not you want to delete. Select “YES” to delete.
- If the folder you try to delete contains mail, a message appear to ask you if you want to delete it. Select “YES” to delete the folder with its content. If you wish to delete the folder but want to save the content, move the content to other folder before deleting the folder.
- If you try to delete a folder that contains no mail and “Auto-sort” is activated for the folder, the message “Setting auto-sort Delete this?” is displayed. Select “YES” to deactivate “Auto-sort” and delete the folder.
- If there is any protected mail within, you cannot delete the folder.

Activating security for folder

You can activate security for each folder separately. Security code is required to open such folders. For details, see p.163.

Choosing sent/received to move <Move this>

<Example: To choose received mail to move>

1 On the received mail list screen for source folder, select “Move this” from the function menu.

To move a mail message

On the received mail details screen, display the mail you want to move, select “Move this” from the function menu and select a destination folder.

2 Select recipient folder.

Continued on next page

3 Select mail you want to move.



Selected mail will be checked.
You can check the selected mail again to unselect them. To unselect all mail messages, select “Release all” from the function menu.
To select all mail messages, select “Select all” from the function menu.

4 Press [Finish] and select “YES”.

NOTE

- If you receive a mail while selecting a mail to be moved and the Inbox is full, you will not receive the incoming mail and “” (blue, or blue and red) will appear. After moving the mail, carry out the i-mode check to receive that mail.
- SMS reports and SMS stored in FOMA card cannot be moved to other folder.

Useful functions available with sent/received mail

Phone To/Mail To/Web To function

By selecting phone number, mail address, URL or link to i-αppli in mail message, you can make a phone call, access a website or startup software programs.
The following is accessible from within mail message:

Access	Description	See page
Phone number	Makes a voice or videophone call at the selected phone number (Phone To, AV Phone To).	p.225
Mail address	Composes a mail for the selected mail address (Mail To)	p.226
URL	Connects to a site of the selected URL (Web To)	p.227
Link to i-αppli	Starts up the specified software (i-αppli To)	p.323

Copying message

You can copy data contained in i-mode mail such as message, subject, recipient’s address or sender.
On the Details display for mail to be copied, Select “Copy” from the function menu and choose an item.



Message : Copy a message.
Subject : Copy a subject.
Address : Copy a mail address.
How to copy message →p.516

Storing a telephone number and mail address

You can store in the phonebook information such as a telephone numbers and mail addresses in mail messages. To store such information, select “Store address” from the function menu in the mail detail screen. How to store a telephone number and mail address →p.211

Storing a schedule

You can store or edit a schedule while viewing a mail. Select “Store schedule” from the function menu in the mail detail screen. How to store or edit a schedule →p.528

NOTE

- The Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions may not be used for mails in the HTML format that are sent from a machine such as PC.

Changing the display order of sent/received mails <Sort>

You can define the order of listing mail according to certain conditions.
You can select sorting types as follows:

Sorting type	Order to display
Chronological ↑	The newest mail will be listed first.
Chronological ↓	The oldest mail will be listed first.
By address ↓	Senders/recipients' mail addresses and phone numbers will be listed in alphanumeric order.
By address ↑	Senders/recipients' mail addresses and phone numbers will be listed in reverse alphanumeric order.
By subject ↓	Subjects will be listed alphabetically or in kana syllabled order.
By subject ↑	Subjects will be listed in reverse alphabetical or in reverse kana syllabled order.

- If you exit the screen and display the list screen again, the screen will revert to the original list (display in the chronological order with the newest mail first).

1 Select "Sort" from the function menu on the list of mail screen.

2 Select the sort type.

To cancel sort condition

Select "Display all" from the function menu.
Mail messages are then displayed in the chronological order with the newest mail first.

NOTE

- i-mode mail and SMS share the same Inbox and Outbox. Sorting applies to both i-mode mail and SMS.
- You can use both sorting and filtering at the same time. For example, if you want to display only unread mail chronologically on the list of received mail, select "Chronological ↓" from the Sort menu and then select "Unread" from the Filter menu.

Searching sent/received mail <Filter/Search mail>

You can search and display the mail that you want to read.
You can search mail either by mail type or mail address/subject.

Searching by type <Filter>

Use Filter to display only mail you want to read.

Filter categories	Mail to be displayed	Available BOX
Unread	Unread i-mode mail and unread SMS	Inbox
Read	i-mode mail and SMS that you have read	Inbox
Protected	i-mode mail and SMS that is protected	Inbox/Outbox
Melody	i-mode mail that has a melody attached/pasted	Inbox/Outbox
Image	i-mode mail that has an image attached	Inbox/Outbox

Continued on next page

Filter categories	Mail to be displayed	Available BOX
i-motion	i-mode mail that has a movie or i-motion attached (including i-motion mail before capturing movie/i-motion data)	Inbox/Outbox
i-αppli	i-mode mail that has i-αppli start up information (i-αppli To) attached (Excludes received mail using mail-connected i-αppli)	Inbox
SMS	SMS	Inbox/Outbox
Failed	i-mode mail and SMS that failed to transmit	Outbox

• If you use Filter for search by mail address/subject, you can search consecutively for three times.

1 Select “Filter” from the function menu on the list of mail screen.

2 Select filter category.

To cancel filter condition

Select “Display all” from the function menu.
Mail messages are then displayed in reverse chronological order.

NOTE

- i-mode mail and SMS share the same Inbox and Outbox. Sorting and filtering apply to both i-mode mail and SMS.
- “” icon indicates that display and replay are controlled by FOMA card. The mail with this icon can not be displayed after filtering by “Melody”, “Image” or “i-motion”.
- You can use both filtering and sorting at the same time. For example, if you want to display only unread mail chronologically on the list of received mail, select “Unread” from the Filter menu and then select “Chronological ↓” from the Sort menu.

Searching by mail address or subject <Search mail>

You can search mail by sender’s mail address or subject.

1 Select “Search mail” from the function menu on the list of received mail.

2 Select the search method.

The search results list will be displayed.
If there were no matches found, a message will appear to inform you of the fact.

To search by sender’s address

Select “Search sender” and choose a search method.
To search by entering an address manually, select “Enter address”.
Searching Phonebook →p.114
To enter using address list →p.252

To search by subject

Select “Search subject” and enter the subject to search.
You can search by entering part of the subject.
You can enter space(s) at the beginning or in the middle of the string. Any space at the end of the string will be deleted.
Entering characters →p.502

NOTE

- If you assign “No title”, only mail with the words “No title” entered on the subject line will be sorted. The mail for which the sender did not specify a subject (and for this reason “No title” is displayed on the subject line) will not be sorted.
- You cannot search SMS by subject.

Protecting sent/received mail <Protect ON/OFF>

You can protect important mail to avoid having it accidentally deleted or overwritten.

- You can protect up to 500 received mail messages and up to 200 sent mail messages (including both i-mode mail and SMS). These numbers vary depending on the amount of data involved.

<Example: Protecting (or unprotecting) received i-mode mail>

1 Select “Protect ON/OFF” from the function menu on the details screen for the mail you want to protect.

Mail that has not been protected will be protected (“”/“”/“” will appear in the top right corner of the screen) and protected mail will be unprotected. You cannot delete protected mails.
You can also protect/unprotect mail by selecting “Protect ON/OFF” from the function menu on the list of received mail screen, the list of sent mail screen or the sent mail details screen.

To unprotect all mail protection

Select “Unprotect all” from the function menu on the list of received mail or the list of sent mail screens, and then select “YES”.

NOTE

- If the number of received mail messages (including both i-mode mail and SMS) saved in FOMA terminal exceeds the maximum protecting capacity (1,000 items) the mail in the Trash box will be deleted by priority at the time you receive another mail transmission. If no mail is in the Trash box, unprotected received mail that has already been read will be deleted in “Chronological ↓” order.
- If the number of sent mail (including both i-mode and SMS) saved in FOMA terminal has exceeded the maximum number (400 items), unprotected sent mail will be deleted in “Chronological ↓” order.

Deleting sent/received mail <Mail deletion>

Mail received or sent by FOMA terminal or unsent mail can be deleted.
You can delete mail as follows:

Delete type	Description	Screen which can be used
Delete this/Delete	Delete 1 i-mode mail message or SMS.	List of received/sent/draft mail
		Received/sent mail details
Delete selected	You can select i-mode mail and SMS to be deleted from the list.	List of received/sent/draft mail
Delete read	Delete all i-mode mail and SMS in a folder that have already been read.	List of received mail
Move trash box	Move i-mode mail or SMS to the Trash box.	List screen of received mails/Detail screen of received mails
Delete all SMS-R	Delete all SMS reports in the Inbox.	List of received mail in the Inbox
Delete all	Delete all i-mode mail and SMS in a folder.	List of received/sent mail
	Delete all i-mode mail and SMS in the Draft box.	List of draft mail
Delete read	Delete all i-mode mail and SMS in all folders that have already been read.	List of received folders
Delete all (received)	You can completely delete the i-mode mails and SMS stored in all the folders of the Inbox.	List of received folders
Delete all (sent)	You can completely delete the i-mode mails and SMS stored in all the folders of the Outbox.	List screen of sent folders

Continued on next page

Deleting one mail message

You can select one i-mode mail or SMS to delete.

● You cannot delete protected mails.

<Example: Deleting one received i-mode mail>

1 Highlight the mail you want to delete on the list screen of received mails, and select “Delete this” from the function menu. Select “YES”.

You can also delete a mail by selecting “Delete this” from the function menu on the list screen of sent mails or the list screen of draft mails.

To delete one mail on the mail detail screen

Select “Delete” from the function menu.

Deleting selected mail messages

You can select mail to delete. You can select more than 1 i-mode mail/SMS messages to delete.

● You cannot select protected mails.

<Example: Selecting received i-mode mail messages to delete>

1 Select “Delete selected” from the function menu on the list of received mail screen.

2 Select mail you want to delete.



The selected mail is marked.

When you select the marked mail again, it is unmarked. To unmark all the selected mails, select “Release all” from the function menu.

When you select “Select all” from the function menu, you can select all the mails in the folder.

You can also delete a mail by selecting “Delete selected” from the function menu on the list screen of sent mails or the list screen of draft mails.

3 Press [Finish] and then select “YES”.

NOTE

● If you receive a mail while selecting a mail to be deleted and Inbox is full, you will not receive the incoming mail and “ ” (blue, or blue and red) will appear. After deleting the mail, carry out “Check new message” to receive that mail.

Moving mail to the Trash box

You can move a mail you want to delete to the trash box. The moved mail is not deleted immediately so that you can move it back to the folder until it is deleted.

The moved mails to the trash box are primarily deleted when the Inbox becomes full. Select “Move trash box” from the function menu on the received mail list screen to select and trash mail in the same way as “Delete selected”. A message appears confirming you that the mail is deleted automatically by priority when a mail is received. Select “YES” to move the mail to the trash box.

Deleting a group of mail messages

You can delete a group of mail (e.g. all mail messages in a folder or all read messages in a folder). You can also delete all SMS reports at once.

- If you delete all the mail in a folder, the folder will not be deleted. To delete a folder, see p.283.
- You cannot delete protected mails.

<Example: Deleting all SMS and i-mode mail messages in the Inbox>

1 Select “Delete all” from the function menu on the list screen of received mails and then enter the security code. Select “YES”.

Security code →p.152
You can also delete a mail by selecting “Delete all” from the function menu on the list screen of draft mails or sent mails.

To delete read mails in the folder
Select “Delete read” from the function menu and then select “YES”.

To only delete all the SMS reports in the Inbox
Select “Delete all SMS-R” from the function menu and then enter the security code. Select “YES”.

To delete all the received or sent mails
Select “Delete all” from the function menu on the list screen of received or sent folders and then enter the security code. Select “YES”.

To delete all the read mails
Select “Delete read” from the function menu on the list screen of received folders and then select “YES”.

When you select “Delete read” or “Delete all”, displaying mails that match the condition specified in the filtering function, only the displayed mails are deleted. →p.285

Sent address/Received address

Using Sent/Received Address Record

Information such as a mail address you sent, the sender’s mail address and date and time is recorded as the sent/received address lists. You can check the contents of the sent/received address list and use them for composing and sending a mail and storing a phone number in the phonebook. In addition, i-mode mail and SMS are distinguished with their icons in the sent/received address lists so that you can see the type of a record at a glance.

- Up to 30 records such as i-mode mail addresses and SMS phone numbers can be recorded in the sent/received address lists respectively.
- When the number of records exceeds the maximum number, the oldest records are automatically deleted.
- The sent/received address lists cannot be displayed during a videophone call.

<Example: Using the sent address record>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ “Dialled calls”.

To use the received address record
Select “Received calls”.

2 Press [Change].



The sent address list appears.

Continued on next page

3 Select the address that you want to see.



To delete an address

Select the record you want to delete, and select “Delete this” from the function menu.

To delete multiple addresses

Select “Delete selected” from the function menu, and then select the records you want to delete.

To delete all addresses

Select “Delete all” from the function menu.

4 Check the contents of the address.



“Current address number/Total address number” appears in the upper right corner of the screen. The smaller the address number, the newer the address.

To check the previous and next addresses

Press ○ or ○.

Press ○ to display the previous (later) address, ○ to display the next (older) address.

However, for the received address list, press ○ to display the previous (later) record, ○ to display the next (older) record.

To send an i-mode mail to the displayed mail address

Select “Compose message” from the function menu.

Composing i-mode mail →p.248

To store the displayed phone number or mail address in the phonebook

Select “Add to phonebook” from the function menu.

How to store data in the phonebook →p.103

To make a voice call/videophone call to the displayed person

Select “Dialing” - “Voice-phone/Video-phone” from the function menu.

A call is made to the first phone number registered in the Phonebook.

NOTE

- Switching the terminal off will not delete sent/received address lists. If you do not want to other people to see your sent/received addresses, either delete them or set “Received calls” and “Redial/Dialled calls” in “Record display set” to “OFF”.
- When you receive a mail while displaying the received address list, you will see a message “up date” until the receiving process is complete. You cannot switch to other record displays while this message is showing.
- When you set “PIM lock” or “Keypad dial lock”, all the sent/received address lists are deleted. The mail addresses sent/received after these functions are set will be recorded in the sent/received address lists.
- When the security is set to the Inbox or Outbox with “Security”, sent addresses are not recorded. Likewise, mail addresses stored in the phonebook as secret data in the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode” are not recorded in the sent address list.

<Sent address record>

- For addresses in the phonebook set with secret codes, the data except for the secret codes are displayed in the sent address record.

Sent address record icons

: Indicates that you sent an i-mode mail.

: Indicates that you sent an i-mode mail and its transmission failed.

: Indicates that you sent an SMS.

: Indicates that you sent an SMS and its transmission failed.

Received address record icons

: Indicates that you received an i-mode mail.

: Indicates that you received an SMS.

Setting Mail Functions of the FOMA Terminal

Sorting mail automatically into folders <Auto-sort>

You can sort received i-mode mail or SMS into folders automatically. You can sort by sender's mail address, phone number, subject or restrictions (such as mail cannot be replied to). Received mail will be sorted automatically according to the conditions you have specified for each folder. You can also specify all mail message will be put into i-αppli folder.

- You can store up to 700 conditions (e.g. mail addresses, phone numbers and Phonebook groups) for all folders of Inbox collectively. You can also assign multiple mail addresses, phone numbers and Phonebook groups to a single folder. You can assign only one subject to a folder.
- When a received mail message meets multiple sorting conditions, the priorities for Auto-sort are as follows (① has the highest priority):
  Note that mail-connected i-αppli mail is sorted into a special folder regardless of Auto-sort settings.
  ① All sort ② Subject sort ③ Reply impossible
  ④ Mail address/phone number ⑤ Phonebook group
- If using mail address/phone number or phonebook group for setting sorting, you cannot set "Subject sort" and "Reply impossible".
- A mail that was received before "Auto-sort" was set remains in the folder in which the mail used to be saved before the "Auto-sort" setting.
- SMS that is specified for saving in the SMS report or FOMA card cannot be sorted automatically.

Assigning mail address for sorting

You can assign mail addresses and phone numbers to received mail folders. You can refer to Phonebook or sent/received address history to assign these elements.

<Example: Referring to Phonebook when assigning conditions to received mail folder>

1 Highlight the received mail folder to specify sort conditions, and select "Auto-sort" from the function menu.

2 Select "Address sort" - "Look-up address" - "Phonebook" from the function menu to search Phonebook.

Searching Phonebook →p.114

3 On the details screen for the Phonebook , select the mail address you want to register.



The mail address is then assigned as a sort condition.

To change assigned mail addresses or phone numbers
Select them on the Auto-sort screen.

To switch Auto-sort screen display
On the Auto-sort screen, select "List setting" then "Name" or "Address".
If you choose "Name", names will be displayed if names are recorded for the addresses stored in your Phonebook. You can switch between "Name" and "Address" by pressing (#). →p.281

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Entire mail address including its domain name must be entered. Domain name is a character string after @.
  (Example) docomo.taro△△@docomo.ne.jp
  Please be aware that function will not work if you do not enter domain name.

Assigning group for sorting

You can register groups recorded in your Phonebook as an Auto-sort condition.

1 Highlight the received mail folder to assign sort conditions, select "Auto-sort" - "Address sort" - "Look-up group" from the function menu.

2 Select the group to assign.

A group is registered for auto-sort and "GR" appears for the group.
Group 00 cannot be selected. The group that has already been assigned cannot be assigned again.

Assigning subject for sorting

Register subject to be auto-sorted into received mail folder. If you receive mail with the subject you stored, the mail will be sorted automatically to the specified folder.

1 Highlight the received mail folder you want to assign sort conditions, and select "Auto-sort" - "Subject sort" from the function menu.

2 Enter subject and press ● [Set].

The subject is then registered as a sort condition.
Up to 15 full-pitch characters or 30 half-pitch characters can be entered as the subject.
You can enter space(s) at the beginning or in the middle of the string. Any space at the end of the string will be deleted.
The same subject cannot be assigned to other folder. A character string that contains only spaces cannot be uses as a subject.
Entering characters →p.502

NOTE

- If you assign "No title", only mail with the words "No title" entered on the subject line will be sorted. The mail for which the sender did not specify a subject (and for this reason "No title" is displayed for the subject) will not be sorted.
- If the subject of the received mail is included in the stored subject of the sort conditions of multiple folders, the mail is sorted in order of the folders displayed on the Inbox folder list.
- You cannot use this function for SMS.

To sort all mail to mail-connected i-αppli folder

All the mails are sorted in the specified mail-connected i-αppli folder.

- The setting must be performed separately for the Inbox and Outbox. You can set only one mail-connected i-αppli folder each for this function.
- If you perform the all mail sorting setting, you can sort all mails including mails sent/received without using the mail-connected i-αppli into the folders that have been set. However, set/received i-αppli using another mail-connected i-αppli are not covered by this all mail sorting setting, and are saved instead in the folder of the mail-connected i-αppli used to send/receive that mail.

1 **Highlight the mail-connected i-αppli folder to which a sorting condition is to be set. Open the function menu and select “Auto-sort” - “Setting all mail”.**

A message is displayed notifying you that the sorted mails can be used by the i-αppli software and asking whether to perform this setting. If you select “YES”, this setting is performed.

NOTE

- Sorted mails can be checked by starting up a mail-connected i-αppli. You can also check those mails by highlighting the folder with the all mail sort setting and selecting “Open folder” from the function menu.
- The all mail sorting setting has priority over other sorting settings.

Sorting mail that cannot be replied to

You can sort i-mode mail or SMS that cannot be replied to. Such mail or SMS is indicated by “ Fm ”.

1 **Highlight the received mail folder you want to assign sort condition, and select “Auto-sort” - “Reply impossible” from the function menu.**

You can assign “Reply impossible” to only 1 folder in Inbox.

Canceling sort conditions

You can cancel sort conditions registered for “Auto-sort setting” such as mail addresses, phone numbers and subjects.

<Example: To cancel one mail address>

1 **On the Auto-sort screen, choose the mail address you want to release from auto sorting, select “Release this” from the function menu and select “YES”.**

“Release this” : Releases one sort condition.
“Release selected” : Releases selected sort conditions (mail addresses, phone numbers, Phonebook groups or subjects) by marking checkboxes.
“Release all” : Releases all sort conditions.

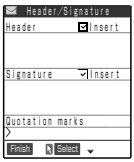
Storing header/signatures/quotation marks <Header/signature>

Default setting	Headers/Signatures (Not stored): Quotation marks (Insert)

When you store the text that is initially placed in a message (Header) and the text like your name marked at the end (Signatures) in advance, you can easily paste them in the message of an i-mode mail. You can also edit symbols or texts (Quotation marks) marked before the text of the quoted mail when the received mail is replied. The quotation marks can be used to distinguish the new text from the quoted text.

- You can register only 1 header, 1 signature and 1 quotation mark.
- You cannot use header/signature/quotation marks for SMS.

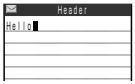
1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Header/Signature”.**



Enter a header, a signature and a quotation mark in each box.

Continued on next page

2 Mark the “Insert” box of the header/signature and select the input column. Enter the header/signature and press ● [Set].



Header editing screen

You can enter up to 120 full-pitch (240 half-pitch) characters for header and signature.
A linefeed is counted as 1 full-pitch character.
Entering characters →p.502

If you do not want the header/signature pasted automatically
Unmark the header or signature box.



3 Select the input column and enter the quotation mark to be changed and then press ● [Set].



You can enter up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters.
Entering characters →p.502

4 Press [Finish].

NOTE

- The characters of the Headers/Signatures/Quotation marks are counted as the input characters of the message text.
- If you execute “Add header”, a header will be pasted without decoration. Therefore, depending on background colors, you may not be able to see header. In addition, if you execute “Add signature”, a signature will be pasted in the color of the end of message and with its character size.
- You cannot use Headers/Signatures/Quotation marks in SMS.

Adding header/signature

You can add a pre-defined header and signature (p.293) to your i-mode mail message.

1 On the New mail screen, select “Add header” from the function menu.

The selected header is pasted at the head of the message.

2 Select “Add signature” from the function menu.

Your signature is pasted at the end of the message.
To check the header and signature that have been added, select the message to display.

NOTE

- If the header and signature that you have added to i-mode mail contain half-pitch katakana or pictographs, these characters may not be displayed properly on the recipient’s terminal. Do not use such characters if the receiving terminal is not an i-mode terminal.
- There is a line feed inserted between the text and the header and between the text and the signature. Each line feed is counted as l full-pitch character.
- If total number of characters of header, signature and message (including attached melodies and images) exceed 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters, you cannot add a header and signature.

Setting i-mode center inquiry items <i-mode checking>

Default setting	Inquire all

Setting the inquiry items for “i-mode checking”. You can make each inquiry setting for “Mail” (i-mode mail), “Msg. Request” and “Msg. Free”.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Connection setting” ▶ “i-mode checking”.

2 Select the item which you want to check and press [Finish].



☑ : Inquire
☐ : Do not inquire

Specifying size of character displayed <Character size>

Default setting	Standard

Select character size for mail message displayed on the mail details screen.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Character size”.

2 Select character size and press ● [Select].

Standard : Displays the contents in the standard-sized characters.
Small : Displays the contents in the small-sized characters.
Large : Displays the contents in the large-sized characters.

You can switch character size by holding down ○ or ○ for 1 or more seconds on the mail details screen. You can also switch character size by selecting “Character size” from the function menu on the mail details screen. The setting can be changed in any way.

Specifying the number of lines to scroll <Scroll>

Default setting	1 line

You can specify the number of lines to scroll when you press ○ on the mail details screen.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Scroll”, and then select the number of scrolled lines.

1 line :The screen is scrolled by 1 line.
3 lines :The screen is scrolled by 3 lines.
5 lines :The screen is scrolled by 5 lines.
You can also specify the number of lines to scroll by selecting “Scroll” from the function menu on the mail details screen. This action also changes the preference setting.

Displaying message first <Message display>

Default setting	Standard

You can choose whether to display the top line (received date/time or sent date/time) first or message first when you open mail.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Message display”, and then select how the mails are displayed.

Standard : The top line (received date/time or sent date/time) of the mail is displayed first.
From message : Displays the mails starting with the text.
In case the message can be displayed within one page, all or part of the top line and the message appears, even if “From message” has been selected.

Specifying the list screen display <Mail list display>

Default setting	2 lines

You can switch between “2 lines” and “1 line” to list mail.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Mail list disp.”

2 lines : Displays the mail list screen in 2 lines.
1 line : Displays the mail list screen in 1 line.

Notifying mail receiving message during terminal operation <Receiving display>

Default setting	Operation preferred

You can set whether or not the receiving screen and received result screen are displayed by priority when a mail or Msg. Request/Free is received during an operation of the FOMA terminal.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Receiving display”.

2 Select the display to be prioritized.

Alarm preferred : Displays the receiving screen and received result screen when a mail or Msg. Request/Free is received during an operation of the FOMA terminal.
Operation preferred : Keep the operating screen when a mail or Msg. Request/Free is received during an operation of the FOMA terminal, instead of switching to the receiving screen and received result screen.

NOTE

- When “Operation preferred” is set and a mail or Msg. Request/Free is received during an operation of the FOMA terminal, the incoming mail display and “ ” (blue) “R” (green) “F” (purple) in the image window show that the mail or Msg. Request/Free is being received. A ring tone, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing or backlight flashing is not functioned.
- When you are using the functions of i-αppli, “i Motion”, “Chara-den”, Camera, etc., the Receiving screen and Received result screen will not display when mail or Msg. Request/Free is received, even when “Alarm preferred” is set.

Performing the setting to receive selected mails <Receive option setting>

Default setting	OFF

You can select whether you want to receive only selected mail. If you do not choose this option, all mail messages will be delivered to your terminal automatically.

- This option only applies to i-mode mail. All SMS and Msg. Request/Free will be downloaded automatically.
- If setting the receive option to “ON”, you cannot receive i-mode mails automatically.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Receive option setting”.

2 Choose the option and press ● [Select].

To download mail automatically
Select “OFF”.

To download only selected mail
Select “ON”.
If the receive option is set to ON, “” is displayed when a mail is sent to the Center. At this time, a FOMA terminal does not sound a ring tone or vibrate.

NOTE

- Even if “ON” is set, if you perform “Check new messages” you will receive all your i-mode mails stored at the i-mode center. If you do not want to receive i-mode mails while performing “Check new messages”, set “Mail” to off in “i-mode checking”.

Storing addresses in the Mail member <Mail member registration>

Default setting	Not stored

If you have stored more than one recipient in the Mail member of your FOMA terminal, that will greatly help you enter more than one recipient. All you have to do is specify the Mail member as the recipient.

- You can register up to 20 recipients in a Mail member group and up to 5 addresses can be recorded for each recipient.

<Example: Registering mail addresses using Phonebook>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ “Mail member”.

2 Select the item for which to store a mail address.

Continued on next page

3 Highlight “<Not stored>” and select “Look-up address” - “Phonebook” from the function menu.

To store an address from the Sent address list
Select “Sent address”.
To store an address from the Received address list
Select “Received address”.
To store an address, typing it in
Select "Edit address" and enter a mail address.
A mail address can be in a maximum of 50 half-pitch alphanumerical characters.
In the packet communications, a Received call record cannot be stored in the Mail member.

4 Search in the Phonebook and select the mail address on the details screen of the Phonebook.

The selected mail address is stored in Mail member.
Searching Phonebook →p.114
To add more mail address, repeat Steps 3 and 4.

Changing Mail member group name
Highlight a Mail member group name that you want to change on the Mail member list screen and select “Edit member name” from the function menu.
You can enter 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
Entering characters →p.502
If you delete all member names and press ● [Set], member names return to default.

Resetting Mail member group name
On the Mail member list display, highlight a mail member you want to reset. From the function menu, select “Reset member name” and “YES”.
If you reset Mail member group name, the name returns to default name.

Displaying the mail address details screen
On the Mail member list screen, select a Mail member group that contains mail addresses and select a mail address on the list screen.

Editing mail addresses in Mail member group
Highlight the mail address you want to edit on either the mail address details screen or the list screen and press [Edit].
You can also edit mail address by highlighting it and select “Edit address” from the function menu.
To enter a mail address from the “Phonebook”, “Sent address” or “Received address”, choose a mail address you want to change on the Details or List display of the mail addresses and select “Look-up address” from the function menu. Select “YES”, then choose the appropriate subject.

Deleting a mail address
On the Mail address display or list display, highlight a mail address you want to delete. Select “Delete this” from the function menu and “YES”.

Deleting all mail addresses
On the Mail address details or list screen, select “Delete all” and “YES” from the function menu. “Delete all” does not delete the mail addresses of other mail members. Also, even if "Delete all" had been conducted, list names will not be erased. To delete a list name, reset the list name.

Setting the automatic melody playing <Auto melody play>

Default setting	ON

You can set the attached/pasted melody to play automatically when you open the i-mode mail.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Play melody setting”.

ON : Plays a melody automatically when an i-mode mail is opened.
OFF : Does not play a melody automatically when an i-mode mail is opened.

Setup of melody pasted to i-mode mail <Pasted melody>

Default setting	Valid

You can specify to have melodies either played or saved.

● This only applies to the melodies pasted to i-mode mail (the melodies displayed with "♪" icon on the mail details screen) and does not apply to melodies attached to i-mode mail.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Mail settings" ▶ "Pasted melody".**

Valid : Enables you to play or save a melody.
Invalid : Disables you to play or save a melody so that the melody is displayed as a text in the message. When "Invalid" is selected, the icon " ♪ " changes to " ♪ " or " ♪ " on the mail list screen. On the mail details screen, a character string will be displayed instead of an icon.

Starting up i-αppli from i-mode mail <i-αppli To>

Default setting	Valid

You can set i-αppli to be initiated from i-mode mail.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Mail settings" ▶ "i-αppli To".**

Valid : You can startup i-αppli.
Invalid : You cannot startup i-αppli.
If you choose "Invalid", " " icon changes to " " on the list of mail screen. On the mail details screen, no icon will be displayed and you cannot startup i-αppli.

Setting up capturing of i-motion from i-mode mail <Pasted i-motion>

Default setting	Valid

You can set i-motion that is pasted onto an i-mode mail message to be captured.

● This applies only to the i-motion mail that has not been downloaded to your terminal from the Center. This does not apply to the i-motion mail for which you have already downloaded data.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Mail settings" ▶ "Pasted i-motion".**

Valid : You can capture i-motion.
Invalid : You cannot capture i-motion.
If you choose "Invalid", icon for i-motion changes to on the list of mail screen. On the mail details screen, no icon will be displayed and you cannot capture i-motion.

Stopping i-motion from playing automatically <i-motion auto play>

Default setting	ON

You can set i-motion to be played automatically when you capture i-motion from the received mail screen.

Continued on next page

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “i-motion auto play”.**

ON : i-motion will be played automatically after you capture it.
When “ON” is selected, some i-motions start playing automatically during downloading. A screen that notifies you of the completion of i-motion downloading appears when the playing is completed.
OFF : i-motion will not be played automatically after you capture it.
If you select “OFF”, the i-motion capture completion screen will appear without playing the i-motion.

Refusing to receive attachment file <Attached file>

Default setting	Receive melody Receive image

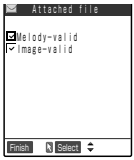
You can select whether to receive files attached to i-mode mail.

- If you set “☐” (unchecked), the file will be deleted at the i-mode Center. You will not be informed that the file has been deleted.
- This applies only to melodies and images attached to mail and does not apply to melodies pasted onto mail message.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Attached file”.**

Specify whether or not you want to receive “Melody-valid” and “Image-valid”.

2 **Remove the checkmarks (“☐”) for files not to be received and then press [Finish].**



Setting the display method when receiving a speed photo mail <Speed photo auto disp.>

Default setting	ON

You can select whether or not a picture (still image) is displayed automatically when a Speed photo mail is received during a voice call.

- Even when auto-display is set to “ON”, if image receiving is disabled in “Attached file”, images of received speed photo mails will be deleted and not displayed.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Speed photo auto disp.”.**

2 **Select the item you want to set.**

ON: Image will be displayed automatically when you receive speed photo mail.
OFF: Image will not be displayed automatically.
If you receive speed photo mail while you have selected “OFF”, the mail is treated as regular mail with an image attached. To view the image, display the received mail.

Checking the contents of the mail settings <Mail settings>

You can check mail setting by "Mail settings".

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Mail settings" ▶ "Check settings".

The current setting for each of the following "Mail settings" items will be displayed:

- Scroll
- Mail list disp.
- Security
- Attached file
- Recv. disp.
- Speed photo mail
- i-motion
- SMS report request
- Char. size
- Msg. display
- Auto melody play
- Receive option
- i-motion auto play
- Melody
- "i-αppli To"
- SMS validity per.

Resetting the mail settings to the default settings <Reset settings>

You can reset "Mail settings" to default.
The category that you can reset and the condition after reset settings are as follows:

Category	At the reset setting
Scroll	1 line
Character size	Standard
Mail list display	2 lines
Message display	Standard (displayed from the top of the mail)
Security	Inbox: OFF
	Outbox: OFF
	Draft: OFF
Auto melody play	ON
Attached file	Melody-valid: ON
	Image-valid: ON
Receive option setting	OFF
Header/Signature	Header : Not stored : Pasted automatically
	Signature : Not stored : Pasted automatically
	Quotation mark: >
Receiving display	Operation preferred
i-motion auto play	ON
Speed photo auto disp.	ON
Pasted melody	Valid
Pasted i-motion	Valid
"i-αppli To"	Valid
SMS report request	OFF
SMS validity period	3 days

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Mail settings" ▶ "Reset settings" and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152
A message appears asking if you want to reset the setting. Select "YES" to reset the setting, returning to the default setting.

Composing and Sending SMS

Composing and sending SMS

Compose and send a new SMS.

- You will be able to exchange SMS with some overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. The service start date and available overseas carriers will be announced on the DoCoMo website.
- When you send a SMS to a person who uses an overseas carrier, characters in the message that are not supported by the overseas carrier may not be displayed correctly by the other party's terminal. For more information, refer to " 国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)" (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only).

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶"Compose SMS".

2 Select " To ", enter a destination, and then press ● [Set].

As the SMS address, enter the recipient's number up to 20 digits ("+" is not counted as a digit). Only one address can be entered.
Entering characters →p.502

When the destination is an overseas number that is other than a DoCoMo number

Enter "+" (press 0 for 1 second or more) - Country code - Area code - phone number
When the area code starts with "0", omit the "0" and enter the rest of the number.

To enter the destination referring to the phonebook

On the New SMS screen, open the function menu and select "Look-up address" - "Phonebook" to search the phonebook entry
Searching Phonebook →p.114

To change a recipient you have entered

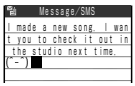
Select the recipient and reenter another address on the new SMS screen.
You can also change (overwrite) a recipient by selecting "Look-up address" from the function menu on the new SMS screen.

You cannot send SMS to a recipient you have specified in the following circumstances:

- The recipient's address contains something other than numbers, "✻", "#" and "+".
- The recipient's address contains a space.
- The recipient's address contains multiple "+".
- "+" is placed at other than the beginning of the recipient's address.
- The number of entered characters exceeds 20 (not counting "+").

If you have "186", "184", "✻31#" or "#31#" at the head of a recipient's address, a message will appear to advise you to delete such entry. To send SMS, select "YES" to delete it.

3 Select " " and enter message. Press ● [Set].



Although you can enter up to 80 full-pitch characters on the message input screen, you can only send up to 70 full-pitch characters or half-pitch katakana characters. If the message contains only half-pitch characters (excluding symbols such as 。「」{} []|、・-゛゜^`~), you can send up to 160 characters.
If your message exceeds this limit, a message appears to tell you that the surplus portion will be deleted. Select "YES" to delete the portion and send the mail.
A space is also counted as 1 character.
If you select "Erase message" from the function menu, you can delete only the message of the mail.
To delete SMS that you are editing, select "Delete" from the function menu.
Entering characters →p.502

4 Press [Send] on the new SMS screen.

SMS will be sent. During the transmission, an animation will be displayed on your screen. Press "OK" to return to the mail menu screen.

To save unfinished SMS temporarily

While composing SMS, select "Save" from the function menu.
The SMS you have been writing will be saved in the Draft box. You can save up to 10 (including i-mode mail) messages. You can open a message later and edit if needed before sending it.

To check SMS content before sending it<Preview>

While composing SMS, select “Preview” from the function menu.
You can check SMS recipient and message.
To edit unsent and sent SMS →p.250
To copy message body →p.284
If you press (CLR) and (PAUSE) without sending mail, a messages will appear informing you that the content will be deleted and editing session will terminate.

SMS report (transmission notice) <SMS report display>

If “SMS report request” is “ON”, you will receive a SMS report after SMS is sent. Although SMS report will be saved in the Inbox, the SMS report is also saved for sent SMS and you can confirm that the SMS you sent has been delivered to the recipient.
Display SMS with SMS report ( ) and select “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu.
You can also display the SMS report by selecting SMS report from the list of received mail. “SMS SMS report” will be displayed by subject.

NOTE

- If the number of sent mail saved in your FOMA terminal (including both i-mode mail and SMS) exceeds the maximum limit (400 items), older mail will be deleted by new mail. However, protected mail will not be deleted. We recommend that you protect the mail you want to keep. →p.287
- If “Keypad dial lock” is active, you cannot enter a recipient without either using the Phonebook or sent address list.
- If “Restrict dialing” is set, you cannot search a phone number that is not specified for “Restrict dialing” by referring your Phonebook.
- Radio wave condition may cause insufficient display for the receiver.
- If you edit SMS you have already sent and resend, “SMS report request” and “SMS validity period”, settings for this SMS will be the same as the ones when this SMS was originally sent.
- You can set “SMS report request” to receive SMS report to check if recipient received your SMS. You can also set “SMS report request” by selecting “SMS report req.” from the function menu. “SMS report req.” and “SMS valid per.” settings you specified on the function menu will also be saved in the Draft box.
- Your caller ID will be sent to the recipient when SMS is sent, even if Notify caller ID is set to “OFF”.

SMS reception

Receiving SMS

If your FOMA terminal is within communication range, SMS is automatically delivered to you from the SMS Center. When SMS is received, the icon “ ” (blue or red) is displayed at the top of the screen. The received SMS is stored in the “Inbox”.

- Up to 1000 mail messages, including received i-mode mail and SMS, can be stored in your FOMA terminal. The maximum number of mail messages you can store is between 21 and 1000 depending on the amount of mail data. You can also save up to 20 SMS on a FOMA card.
- You can select your favorite ring tone to notify you of arriving mail using “Select ring tone” or change the blink pattern by using “Illumination”.
- Short mail sent from mova i-mode terminal will be received as SMS at FOMA terminal.
- If you receive SMS during FOMA terminal operations, the receiving screen will not appear and you can continue with FOMA operation by default. Appearance of “ ” (blue or red) icon notifies you of arriving mail without setting off ring tone, vibrator, incoming call lamp or display light.
- You can also set to sound the ring tone and display the receiving screen whenever SMS arrives during FOMA terminal operations. →p.296

Continued on next page

1 When you receive SMS, "✉" (blue or red) icon blinks and the screen displays "Mail Receiving...".





After downloading of mail is complete, the number of received mail messages or Msg. Request/Free will be displayed on the received result screen.
Select "Mail" to display a list of received mail.
If no action is taken for 15 seconds, you will be returned to the previous screen. This 15-second delay can be changed by "Mail/Msg. ring time" function.
Ring tone volume will be as set for "Mail/Message" of "Ring volume".

NOTE

- Once the number of received mail saved in your FOMA terminal (including both i-mode mail and SMS) exceeds the maximum limit (1,000 items), the saved mails will automatically be deleted in the order of mails in the Trash box and then the oldest received mail when a new mail is received. However, unread mail and protected mail will not be deleted. We recommend that you protect mail you want to retain. →p.287
- Received mail being displayed (on the received mail list screen or the detail screen) will not be deleted (even if you switch tasks during display). If you receive mail when list screen or detail screen for received mail is being displayed, mail in the Trash box, the oldest mail other than the 1 on display (except unread/protected mail) will be deleted.
- SMS stored in FOMA card will not be deleted.
- The priority of ring tone and illumination settings when you receive SMS is as follows (① has highest priority):
  ① "Utilities (Phonebook)" specified for each phone number
  ② "Utilities (Group)" specified for each group
  ③ "Select ring tone" and "Illumination"
- If you receive more than one SMS messages at the same time, ring tone and illumination will be activated under the conditions specified for the last received mail.
- If you receive short mail from i-mode terminal of the mova service, the phone number of the sender will appear. However, if the number is not notified, the reason not for notifying (p.166) will be displayed.

Receiving SMS stored in the center <Check new SMS>

- SMS that has arrived at the i-mode Center is automatically forwarded to your FOMA terminal. If your FOMA terminal is not available to receive mail (e.g. the terminal is off, "圏外" is displayed on your screen or memory is full), the mail will be retained at the SMS Center. "Check new SMS." allows you to download SMS stored at the Center.
- When "圏外" is displayed, you cannot check SMS.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Check new SMS".



"SMS Checking..." appears during checking. When a message notifying you that checking has ended appears, press ● [Select].
If a SMS is stored at the Center, automatic downloading will start. After Checking new SMS, automatic downloading may not start right away.

To stop checking

Hold down CLR for 1 or more seconds.
SMS may be downloaded depending on how long it took to initiate the stop checking command.

NOTE

- "✉" (red) and "✉" (red) icons indicate that your FOMA terminal cannot receive any more i-mode mail or SMS. Delete unnecessary mail, open unread mail or deactivate protection until these icons disappear. The mail you have read or deactivated the protection on, will be deleted in order from the oldest one when you receive a new messages.
- SMS stored in the SMS Center may not be included in the number of received SMS that is displayed while checking for new SMS.

Displaying new SMS

- The beginning of the received SMS message will be shown on the list of received SMS as its title.
- The title for SMS report (transmission notice) will be shown as "SMS report".

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Inbox" ▶ "Inbox".

If you add any folder, select the folder on the Inbox folder list screen.
The received mail list screen will be displayed.

2 Select mail you want to view.



To view previous mail or next mail

Press ● on the mail details screen.
If the received SMS contains characters that cannot be displayed, spaces will be shown for those characters.

Press C to return to the list of received mail.

Standby display when you receive mail



When you receive SMS or SMS report, "New" will appear on Standby display. If you select this icon, "New mail" appears. However, if you receive mail while you are viewing Inbox, this icon may not appear. Select this icon to display the list of received mail.
If you receive SMS when your FOMA terminal is folded, an icon appears on the image window to indicate that mail has arrived. →p.37

NOTE

- You can use information highlighted in the SMS message to make a phone call or compose new i-mode mail.
- Phone number for the sender of SMS you are viewing is highlighted. If you press ● [Select] when the phone number is highlighted, you can make a voice call or videophone call to that number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the sender's phone number is stored in your Phonebook, the stored "Name" will be highlighted. You can also make a call in the same manner.
- SMS report will be delivered to you only if you have requested it through "SMS report request".
- You can view the mail information (sender, subject and date/time it arrived at the SMS Center) without opening it by selecting "Mail info" from the function menu on the list of received mail.
- You can paste a phone number for SMS sender on Standby display as desktop icon. You can use this icon to compose new SMS addressed to that phone number.
  Phone number with "Fm" cannot be pasted as a desktop icon.

Replying/Forwarding received SMS

You can reply/forward SMS.

- For details, refer to replying (p.271)/forwarding (p.273) i-mode mail. (You cannot enter subject.)
- If "Keypad dial lock" (p.159) is active, you cannot reply. However, if the sender's phone number is registered in your Phonebook, you can reply to the SMS.

<Example: To reply to SMS>

1 Display the mail detail screen for the SMS that you want to reply to and press [Reply].



Continued on next page

2 Edit message and send.

For further operations, see Steps 3 to 4 on p.302.

NOTE

- "Reply with quote" and "Reply with ref" cannot be used for SMS.
- You cannot reply to SMS that was sent from a phone that has no caller ID, a call from a pay phone, or calls in which the ID cannot be distinguished.
- You cannot reply to/forward the SMS report.
- If you reply to or forward SMS stored in FOMA card, "↩"/"↪" icons do not appear on the list of received mail and the received mail details screen and "✉" icon remains on.

Setting SMS

To request SMS report <SMS report request>

Default setting	OFF

You can set SMS report (transmission notice) to be delivered to you when you send SMS.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Mail settings" ▶ "SMS report request".

2 Select "ON".

ON : You will receive SMS report (transmission notice) after you send SMS.
OFF : You do not receive SMS report (transmission notice).

NOTE

- You can also request an SMS report by selecting "SMS report req." from the function menu on the new SMS screen. However, this applies only to the new SMS you are currently composing.

Specifying SMS validity period <SMS validity period>

Default setting	3 days

- You can specify the length of time that SMS you sent will be kept at the SMS Center.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Mail ▶ "Mail settings" ▶ "SMS validity period".

2 Specify the length.

NOTE

- You can also specify SMS validity period by selecting "SMS valid. per." from the function menu on the new SMS screen. However, this applies only to the new SMS you are currently composing.

Selecting the SMS center <SMS center selection>

※You usually do not need to change this setting.

Default setting	DoCoMo

You can select to use either DoCoMo's SMS Center or other company's SMS Center.

<Example: Using other company's SMS center>

1 **(Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "SMS center selection".**

DoCoMo : Uses the SMS center provided by DoCoMo.
User defined : Uses the SMS center provided by other company.

To return to the default setting (DoCoMo)
Select "Reset" and then enter the security code (p.152). Press ● [Set].
A confirmation message appears. Select "YES" to reset the setting.
When you select "Reset", the contents specified in the "User defined" are deleted.

2 **Select "User defined" and then enter the address of the SMS Center, press ● [Set].**

Up to 20 characters can be entered as the address.

3 **Select "Type of number".**

Select either "International" or "Unknown".

NOTE

- When you make improper settings for the SMS center, SMS cannot be sent through.
- When "#" or "*" is contained in the entered address of the SMS Center, you cannot select "International" of "Type of number".
- If "International" is selected in Step 3, "+" is added to the beginning of the address entered in Step 2 for registration.

UIM operation

Saving SMS in the FOMA Card

You can move or copy SMS stored in your FOMA terminal (main unit) to FOMA card. You can also move or copy SMS stored in FOMA card to your FOMA terminal (main unit).

- You can save up to 20 SMS (including both received and sent) in a FOMA card.

Moving or copying SMS in the FOMA terminal to the FOMA card

<Example: Moving SMS stored in Inbox folder to FOMA card>

1 **Highlight the mail you want to move on the list screen of received mail and then select "UIM operation" from the function menu.**

2 **Select the operation and then select "YES".**

Move to UIM : Moves SMS from the FOMA terminal (main unit) to a FOMA card
Copy to UIM : Copies SMS from the FOMA terminal (main unit) to a FOMA card
If you move or copy received SMS to FOMA card, the SMS will be displayed in the Inbox folder.
You can move or copy SMS by selecting "UIM operation" from the function menu on the list of sent mail screen, the sent mail details screen or the received mail details screen.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When you remove the battery pack, the date/time of the sent SMS that are stored in the FOMA card will be deleted and displayed at the end of the list. However, the date/time of the sent SMS saved with the SMS report will not be deleted.
- If you move or copy SMS that have replied/forwarded to FOMA card, "" or " " icon changes to "".
- The SMS you have moved or copied to FOMA card cannot be protected. If you move or copy protected SMS, the protection will be released in FOMA card.
- If there is SMS report for sent SMS, SMS and SMS reports included in the sent SMS will be moved or copied to FOMA card.
- SMS reports in the Inbox cannot be moved or copied to FOMA card.
- If there are already 20 SMS in the FOMA card, "" (red) or "" (blue and red) , "" (red) icons will appear in the upper portion of the screen. You cannot move or copy any more SMS to the FOMA card.
- You can also use accessory "UIM operation" to copy/delete SMS. →p.118

Moving or copying SMS in FOMA card to your FOMA terminal (main unit)

<Example: To move SMS in FOMA card to Inbox folder>

1 Highlight the mail you want to move to the FOMA terminal (main unit) on the list screen of received mails and then select "UIM operation" from the function menu.

2 Select the operation and then select "YES".

Move from UIM : Moves SMS from a FOMA card to the FOMA terminal (main unit)
Copy from UIM : Copies SMS from a FOMA card to the FOMA terminal (main unit)
You can move or copy SMS by selecting "UIM operation" from the function menu on the list of the sent mail screen, the sent mail details screen or the received mail details screen.

NOTE

- When a sent SMS has SMS report, both the SMS and SMS report included in the SMS can be moved or copied to the FOMA terminal (main unit) together.
- When exceeding the maximum storable limit (1,000 items) of received mails or the maximum storable limit (400 items) of sent mails, you cannot move or copy SMS to the FOMA terminal (main unit).
- You can also use accessory "UIM operation" to copy/delete SMS. →p.118

i-αppli

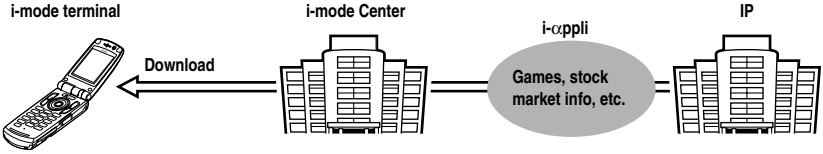
About i-αppli 310
Downloading i-αppli 312
Executing i-αppli 315
Starting i-αppli Automatically 321
Executing i-αppli from a Site or Mail ..... i-αppli To function 323
Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen ..... Stand-by set 325
Managing i-αppli 327
Using the Functions from the i-αppli 329

<Initially pre-installed i-αppli software>

Enjoying Dimo 絵文字メール 320
Enjoying チェインアロー 320
Using as TV Remote Control 400

About i-αppli

By downloading an i-αppli from a site, you can make your i-mode compliant FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) more useful and easier to use. For instance, you can download and play a variety of games on your i-mode terminal. You can download an i-αppli for share price information that will automatically check your shares at regular intervals. Smooth scrolling is possible with a map-based i-αppli, because it enables you to download only the information that is needed. There are also i-αppli that let you store information directly from the application into your Phonebook or schedule, and i-αppli that can link up with the Multimedia or tasks such as saving and downloading images.



- Downloading an i-αppli →p.312
- Executing i-αppli →p.315
- Starting i-αppli Automatically →p.321

NOTE

- Some software applications use information on mobile phones of the i-mode terminal (manufacturer's number of FOMA terminal, identification information of FOMA card, etc.).
- Some software applications dial up the network when they run. You can disable this feature so that they do not transmit.

Using registration data

Some i-αppli software programs allow you to refer, store and operate registration data on your i-mode terminal (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, images, movies and icon info). By using these registration data, you can perform the following:

- Phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Storing Bookmarks
- Storing schedules
- Retrieving images from multimedia
- Saving images in multimedia

i-αppli DX

i-αppli DX links up with the information on an i-mode terminal (such as mail and incoming/outgoing call records and Phonebook data) to make i-αppli even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes composing mail in your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character tell you who an incoming call or message is from, and linking with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices. →p.319

Using registration data

Some i-αppli DXs allow you to refer, store and operate registration data including mail, redial, received call and ring tone, along with the registration data that can be used on normal i-αppli (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, images, movies and icon info). By using these data, you can perform the following:

- Phonebook entries
- Browsing Phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Storing Bookmarks
- Storing schedules
- Using the Mail menu
- Using the Compose message screen
- Browsing the latest redial records
- Browsing the latest received call records
- Browsing the latest unread mail
- Saving melodies
- Changing ring tones (phone, mail and messages)
- Retrieving images from multimedia
- Saving images to multimedia
- Changing screen settings (Standby screen, dialing and answering calls, sending and receiving mail, receiving Msg. Request/ Free)

NOTE

- Regardless of the software communication settings, i-αppli DX may automatically establish a connection to check the validity of the software. The frequency and timing of the connections differs depending on the software.
- To run i-αppli DX, the date and time must be set. →p.57

Mail-connected i-αppli

Mail-connected i-αppli is a type of i-αppli DX that uses i-mode mail to exchange information and provide essential information such as share prices and real-time updates on the progress of games, etc, making software even more useful and enjoyable.

- There are cases that the i-αppli mail used in the mail-connected i-αppli will not be displayed correctly.

Other features

i-αppli standby display

In the i-αppli standby display, you can use an i-αppli as the standby display and still receive mail or make calls. This expands the range of uses for your standby display to include showing the news or weather information or having your favorite cartoon characters let you know when you receive mail or when there is an alarm. →pp.140 and 325

- This function can be used by software that supports i-αppli standby displays.

i-αppli auto start

This feature allows you to specify a time, date or day of the week when a software application is started up automatically. There are also software applications that can be launched automatically at set intervals specified in the software beforehand. →p.321

Taking pictures

Some applications can take pictures using the FOMA built-in camera. →p.329

- This function can be used by software that supports the camera photography function of the FOMA.

Infrared exchange

This feature allows a software application running on the FOMA to communicate with other devices equipped with an infrared exchange function. This further expands the uses of the FOMA by allowing link-ups with other devices that feature an infrared exchange function. →p.330

- This function can be used by software that supports the infrared exchange function.
- Depending on the remote device, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data even where the device has an infrared exchange function.

Infrared remote control

This allows software applications to control devices such as household appliances that are compatible with an infrared remote control.→p.400

This function can be used by software that supports the infrared remote control function. Software that is compatible with the controlled device is also required.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli .



Menu item	Description	See page
1 Software list	Displays the software list.	p.315
2 Auto start set	Sets whether to automatically start an i-αppli on the specified date and time.	p.321
3 i αppli info	Checks the i-αppli information such as the time when the forced termination of the standby display or automatic start is performed.	pp.322 and 329

Downloading i-αppli

You can run a downloaded software program on the display of your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 200 downloaded software programs (up to 5 programs for mail-connected i-αppli). The number of software that can be saved varies within the range of 10 to 200, depending on the amount of data.
- When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, an i-αppli mail folder will be created automatically in the sent/received mail folder list. The folder name will be the same as the mail-connected i-αppli name that you downloaded. No name change can be made.
- When there are 5 folders dedicated to mail-connected i-αppli or your FOMA already stores a mail-connected i-αppli which uses same received/sent folders, you cannot download another mail-connected i-αppli.
- You cannot download a mail-connected i-αppli when the security setting is set to Inbox/Outbox under “Security setting”.
- You can automatically sort i-αppli mails that you have sent or received using a mail-connected i-αppli to the folder created when you downloaded a mail-connected i-αppli. You can also sort received i-αppli mails manually.
- When you delete a mail-connected i-αppli but do not delete its folder, and download the same mail-connected i-αppli again, you can use the same folder. You can also delete the folder you kept and then create a new folder. You cannot download mail-connected i-αppli if you neither use the folder you kept nor create a new folder.

■ When there is space in stored number and memory

1 Select and download software from a site screen.



Once the software is completely downloaded, a message "Completed" appears. However, in case of the software which can be started immediately from a site (p.314), the message does not appear.

To cancel during downloading

Press ● [Select].

2 Select “YES” to start up the software.



When the software is activated, “ ” is displayed on the lower screen.

When you do not want to start up software

Select “NO”.

To cancel the startup of software

Press ● [Select] while software is starting up.

NOTE

- If you fail downloading a software program due to poor radio wave and other conditions, the software can not be stored.
- You cannot switch tasks during downloading.
- When you download i-αppli DX or i-αppli that uses registration data or mobile phone information, a message appears notifying you of such use.
- When you download software information or software from a TLS/SSL-compliant site, "SSL" is displayed on the screen.→p.212
- When you download software that requires communication or that can be set for the standby display, software setting screen is displayed. Complete the setting according to the downloaded software, and press (CLR).
- A message may appear asking whether or not communication is permitted while a software program is running.
- Mail-connected i-αppli names may differ from folder names for i-αppli mails.

When stored software is full

When your FOMA terminal already stores 200 software programs or does not have enough memory, a message appears notifying you that the memory is full. Delete some stored software and secure memory to download new software.

1 Select "YES" on the displayed message asking whether to delete stored software.

When you do not want to delete software

Select "NO".

2 Select software you want to delete.



In case of memory shortage

Every time you select software, the value of "Shortage" memory (bytes) and memory bar are reduced. Continue to select software you want to delete until the value reaches 0.

3 Press [Finish] and select "YES".

The downloading is restarted.

NOTE

- When you download a software program, if you fail downloading due to poor radio wave and other conditions, you can neither store the software program nor delete the software programs which you tried to delete.
- When you try to delete the software program that is set for i-αppli standby display (software with "★" mark) or that is set to start up automatically, a message appears asking whether you want to delete the set software program and save new software.
- Once the software program set for i-αppli standby display is deleted, the standby display is replaced by that set in "Stand-by display" of "Display setting".
- If you delete a mail-connected i-αppli, a message appears asking whether you want to delete the folders dedicated to the mail-connected i-αppli. If you want to delete only the mail-connected i-αppli, select "NO". Meanwhile, when you want to delete the mail-connected i-αppli along with all the sent/received folders exclusively for that mail-connected i-αppli as well as all the mail in those folders, select "YES". However, you cannot delete mail-connected i-αppli dedicated sent/received folders while the folders are used, the security settings are made to the folders or protected messages are included in the folders.
- When you delete a mail-connected i-αppli but do not delete its folder, you can check the mail body text in the folder from the function menu.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-αppli, newly received mails may be deleted while you select the software program you want to delete.

Continued on next page

Software that starts up directly from a site

Unlike normal i-αppli software programs, once downloading is started, some i-αppli software programs are immediately started up from sites. When you have downloaded these programs from the sites, they are immediately started up without the message “Completed” displayed.

- A message may appear asking whether you want to communicate while the program is running.
- Some software programs cannot be saved on FOMA terminal. The software programs that are immediately started up from the sites cannot be saved on FOMA terminal when downloaded and then started up.

The software programs that can be saved on FOMA terminal

When you end the software program, a message appears asking whether you want to save it. To save the software program on FOMA terminal, select “YES”. To not save it, select “NO”.

The software programs that cannot be saved on FOMA terminal

When you end the software program, the site screen reappears. If you want to start up the software program again, download it again.

- Once you have saved the software program, it can be run in the same way as the normal i-αppli software program.

Viewing i-αppli information during download <Display software info>

Default setting	OFF

When you download software, you can make settings to check software information. This useful setting enables you to check software information and then select if you want to continue the download or not.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “i-αppli settings” ▶ “Display software info”.

To display software information

Select “Display”.

A software information screen is displayed during download operation. Check the software information and press ● [Set] to select if you want to continue the download operation or not.

To not display software information

Select “Not display”.

Checking software information <Software information>

You can view software information saved in the FOMA terminal.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “Software list”.

2 Highlight the software that provides information you want to check, and then select “Software info” from the function menu.

3 Check software information.



Press ○ or ○ to turn the page.

After you check the information, press CLR to return to the list screen.

NOTE

- When the software is downloaded from a TLS/SSL-compatible page, the “TLS/SSL” field displays “ON”.
- You cannot change the name of the software displayed in this function.

Icon display of software

Software list screen shows type and setting of the programs by the following icons:

: Indicates an i-αppli DX. →p.310

: Indicates a mail-connected i-αppli.

: Indicates that the program allows you to specify “i-αppli To setting”, “i-αppli Stand-by set” (pp.324 and 325) and “Auto start time” (p.321). However, “” is not displayed if “Auto start set” (p.321) is set to OFF, even if the program allows “Auto start time” to be set.

: Indicates that “Auto start time” is specified. →p.321

: Indicates that the software is set for “i-αppli standby display”.

: Indicates that “Auto start time” is specified and the software program is set on “i-αppli Stand-by set”.

: Indicates that the software was downloaded from a TLS/SSL-compatible Web page.

Executing i-αppli

You can select software from the software list screen to start up the software.

- The functions assigned to the FOMA’s keys differ depending on the program.
- The melody played while the software program is running is set to the same volume as that set for “Phone/Video-phone” in “Ring volume”.
- Changes to the color scheme set by the “Color pattern” setting do not affect program displays.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “Software list”.

The software list screen appears.
You can also display the screen by holding down [i-mode] for one second or more.

2 Select software you want to start.

The software starts up, and “” is displayed on the lower screen. When i-αppli DX starts up, “” is displayed.

To cancel the startup of software

Press [Select] while the software is starting up.

Exiting from software

1 Hold down CLR for 1 second or more and select “YES”.

You can also end the program by pressing and then selecting “YES”.

When you do not want to exit from software

Select “NO”.

Continued on next page

How to use the software key

Some software may display guidance on the lowermost line of the screen, which are related to the settings or operations such as [EXIT], [BACK]. They are called software key. To execute the software key, press the appropriate function key.



NOTE

- You can start up software program automatically by setting “Auto start setting” to “ON” and then specifying “Auto start time”. →p.321
- Some types of software automatically continue communicating after download. To use this service, you need to set up in the FOMA terminal in advance.
- When an i-mode mail is received when a software program is being executed, “” (blue or red) will appear. To display the mail received, end the software or use the multi task function.
- A message may appear asking whether communication is permitted while the software program is running. →below
- To connect to the network automatically while a software program is running (including during auto start), you need to set “Network set” (below) to “ON” in advance. To perform the communication from the software program set for i-αppli standby display, you must set “Stand-by network” (p.326) to “ON” in advance.
- i-motion (video and sound data) may be played while the software is running. →p.332
- The FOMA is equipped with a 3D Polygon※ engine to allow you to experience first-hand i-αppli 3D images.
  ※ Three-dimensional images with depth can be created by combining polygons (triangles, squares, etc.).
- Do not remove battery pack while the program is running, otherwise the data and information used at that time are not saved.
- Images to be used on i-αppli※ and data that you have input may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.
  ※ Images used in i-αppli consist of the following images: images shot when the camera function is started from i-αppli interlocked with the camera, images downloaded by using the infrared exchange function of i-αppli, images downloaded by connecting from i-αppli to Web or site and images downloaded from multi media by i-αppli.

Making connection setting <Network setting>

You can make network settings while the software is running.

- You cannot make the setting for the software that does not require network connection.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “Software list”.

2 Highlight the software you want to set, and then select “Software setting” - “Network set” from the function menu.

3 Select the item you want to set.

To make network setting every time the software starts up
Select “Check every start”.

To make the software automatically connect to the network while the software is running
Select “ON”.

To not make the software automatically connect to the network while the software is running
Select “OFF”.
When the software starts up, a message appears notifying you that the software is not connecting to the network.

NOTE

- Note that you may not be able to receive information in a timely manner when the network setting is “OFF”.
- While “Self mode” is set or mova is activated for “Dual Network Service”, software which carries out communication may not start up in some cases.

Making settings to permit the notification of icon information <Icon info>

Setting i-αppli to use icon info on unread mails, manner mode, etc.

- You cannot make the setting for the software that does not utilize icon info.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “Software list”.**

2 **Highlight the software you want to set, and then select “Software setting”-“Icon info” from the function menu.**

3 **Select the item you want to set.**

To use icon information
Select “ON”.

Not using icon information
Select “OFF”.

NOTE

- When this function is set to “ON” in the software set for i-αppli standby display, presence or absence of unread mails/messages, battery level, manner mode and in-area/out-of-area icons may be sent to IP (Information service provider) via Web in the same way as your mobile phone information (such as FOMA terminal production number and FOMA card identification number), and therefore may be obtained by a third party.

Making settings to permit the reference of Phonebook or history <See P.book/hist.>

You can make settings to refer to the Phonebook, the redial, received call records and/or the latest unread mail when the i-αppli DX is run.

- You cannot browse secret data in the Phonebook without first selecting Secret or Secret-only mode.
- You cannot see the history when you set “OFF” for “Record display set”, “Received calls” or “Redial/Dialed calls”.
- You cannot make the setting for the software that does not allow you to see the Phonebook or history.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “Software list”.**

2 **Highlight the software you want to set, and then select “Software setting”-“See P.book/hist.” from the function menu.**

3 **Select the item you want to set.**

To permit the reference
Select “ON”.

To not permit the reference
Select “OFF”.

Making settings to permit the changes of ring tone and screen display <Change mld./img.>

You can make settings to automatically change ring tones of phones or mails as well as the standby display or images during mail send/receive operation when i-αppli DX is run.

● You cannot make the setting for the software that does not allow you to change ring tones or images.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ "Software list".**

2 **Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Software setting"-"Change mld./img." from the function menu.**

3 **Select the item you want to set.**

To confirm whether you make the change every time the auto change function works or not.
Select "Check every change".

To permit auto change
Select "ON".

To not permit auto change
Select "OFF".

Setting display light or vibrator <αDisplay light/αVibrator/αImage window>

Default setting	All Depend on system

Set whether to follow the settings in the FOMA terminal (Depend on system) or to follow the software settings (Depend on software) for display light, vibrator and image window.

Operating part	i-αppli setting	Operating content	
		Depend on system	Depend on software
Backlight	α Display light	"Display light" (p.145)	Depends on i-αppli settings
Vibrator	α Vibrator	Not available※	
Image window	α Image window	"Image window"(p.143)	

※ When "αVibrator" is set to "Depend on system", it is not available regardless of "Vibrator" (p.127) setting.

<Example: Setting backlight operation>

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶"i-αppli settings"▶ "αDisplay light".**

When following the display light settings in the FOMA terminal
Select "Depend on system".

When following the display light settings in the software
Select "Depend on software".

Starting up another software from the running software

You can start up another software from the running software. Downloading the software for starting the specified software enables it to start without having to return to the software list screen.

- Software that can start another software must be downloaded in advance.
- Specify the software to start up in advance.

Starting up the software

1 Perform the operation for starting another software while the software is running.

The way in which another software is started depends on the running software.
A message asking whether to start up another software appears.

2 Select “YES”.

The software that is currently running ends and the other software starts up.

To cancel software startup

Select “NO”.

Registering the software to start

You need to register the software to start beforehand depending on the running software.

1 Register the other software while the software is running.

The way in which another software is started depends on the running software.

2 Select “YES”.

The software list screen appears.

3 Select the software you want to register.

The software is registered and the screen returns to the running software.

Using pre-installed software in the FOMA terminal

You can use the following software already installed in the FOMA terminal: “Dimo 絵文字メール (Dimo i-pictograph mail)”, “チェインアロー (Chain arrow)” and “TVリモコン (TV remote control)”.

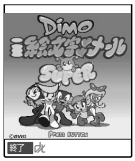
- Be careful that looking at the display for too long may be harmful to your eyesight.
- “Dimo 絵文字メール (Dimo i-pictograph mail)” and “TVリモコン (TV remote control)” can be started up from either the i-αppli standby display or the ordinary i-αppli. The menu or content which can be used may vary partly depending on the starting method.
- As for “TVリモコン (TV remote control)”, see p.400.
- If you want to reinstall some pre-installed i-αppli software which you have deleted, download from “みんなNらんど” in the “ケータイ電話メーカー” site.
  To connect to “みんなNらんど”, select as follows:
  While the standby display is displayed, select [i-mode] - 1 (iMenu) - 3 (メニューリスト) - “ケータイ電話メーカー” - “みんなNらんど”.

Continued on next page

Enjoying Dimo 絵文字メール

This software makes mail exchange more enjoyable by having cartoon characters move lively and cheerfully in response to pictographs shown in the mail.
If the other party uses a Dimo-compatible terminal, cartoon characters will let you know the reception of a call or a mail, or give you information about unread mail in your FOMA terminal.

1 Start up “Dimo 絵文字メール”, and then press ● to set your data.



Starting up Software →p.315

©BVIG

2 Select an item from the menu.



メール : Use mail.
グループチャット : Use group chat.
ペアチャット : Use pair chat.
メンバー登録 : Set your data or members of the other party.
背景の設定 : Set the background of the screen.
Dimoとお話 : Displays the rooms of cartoon characters.

To display details on usage and up-to-date information

After pressing [HELP] and pointing the cursor to the menu you want to see, press ●.

Press [HELP] and [接続] to connect to the site and see the up-to-date information.

NOTE

- “Dimo 絵文字メール” is a mail-connected i-αppli (p.311), and a variation of i-αppli DX (p.310).
- With this software, i-αppli mail used in another type of mail-connected i-αppli may not be displayed properly.
- To enjoy “Dimo 絵文字メール”, set the date and time in “Set local time” in advance.
- Refer to the “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” for details.

Enjoying チェインアロー

Move the blocks to pile them up. When 3 or more blocks with the same arrow sign are aligned, they are deleted.

1 Start up “チェインアロー”, and then press ●.



Starting up Software →p.315
The game will begin.

To display details on usage

After the game starts, press [中断] and then again [ヘルプ].

Starting i-αppli Automatically

Making the setting to start i-αppli automatically <Auto start setting>

Default setting	OFF

You can make setting to start up the software automatically.

- When you turn the auto start feature to ON, set the start-up date for the software you want to start up automatically. →below
- You cannot set Auto start setting if the date and time are not set in “Set local time”.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶“Auto start set”.

To start up the software automatically
Select “ON”.

Not starting up the software automatically
Select “OFF”.

Setting the auto start time <Auto start time>

Default setting	All OFF

You can set the time when the software starts up automatically. On the software that the time interval is already set for auto start, you can select whether you set the auto start to valid or not.

- You can make auto start setting for up to 3 software programs.
- You cannot set Auto start time if “Auto start setting” is not set to “ON”.
- The software does not start up automatically unless “Auto start setting” is set to “ON”. However, if “Auto start setting” is set to “ON”, some software automatically starts even if Auto start time is not set.
- The software does not start up automatically in the following conditions:
  - When the power is OFF
  - During a call
  - When the set time of Alarm clock, schedule, or ToDo is the same as that of auto start
  - When other functions are activating
  - When the i-αppli menu is activating
  - The time preset for the software updating coincides with the time in which the software is automatically started.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “Software list”.

2 Highlight the software you want to set, and then select “Auto start time” from the function menu.

3 Select the item you want to set.



To enable the time interval setting in the software
Select “Time interval set”.

To set the start-up time
Select “Start time set”.

To return to the Software list screen, press [Finish] without selecting “Start time set”.

Continued on next page

4 Press [Finish] to set the starting time.

To set the starting time

Select the displayed date and time to set the starting date and time.
Refer to the procedure for storing a schedule event (p.415) for how to set the starting time as the procedure is the same.

To set the repeating auto start

Select the displayed repeat setting “Daily” or “Weekly”.
Refer to the procedure for storing a schedule event (p.415) for how to set the repeat setting as the procedure is the same.

5 Press [Finish].

“ ” is displayed for the software that auto start is set to.
If you set “Auto start” for the software program that is already set for standby display, “ ” appears.

NOTE

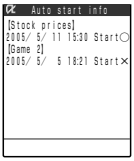
- When “Auto start” is already set to 3 software programs, a message appears notifying you of such condition.
- If another software is already set to start up automatically at same time, a message appears notifying you that it is already set at the same time. Specify a different time.
- “Time interval set” is not available for the software that the interval time of auto start is not set.

Checking whether software has started up automatically <Auto start info>

You can check whether the software program has started up automatically at the specified time.

- You cannot use “Auto start info” when there is no software program with “Auto start setting” set.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “i-αppli info” ▶ “Auto start info”.



Software name, auto start time and start-up information are displayed.
When the software has started up automatically, “Start○” is displayed; when the software did not start up automatically, “Start×”; before the software starts up automatically, “Start–” is displayed.
Check the procedure and then press CLR to go back to the i-αppli action info screen.

NOTE

- If the software program cannot start up automatically, “ Not run ” (Not run soft) desktop icon appears on the standby display. To display Auto start info screen, select the icon. For information on desktop icons, refer to p.135.
- To erase Auto start info, cancel “Auto start time”.

Executing i-αppli from a Site or Mail

You can start up an i-αppli from non-i-αppli functions such as sites or mails. The following functions allow you to start up i-αppli.

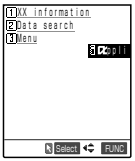
Function	Contents
Site function (while a web site is displayed)	i-αppli starts up when the selected item sets i-αppli startup.
Mail function (while an i-mode mail is displayed)	i-αppli starts up when you select an item that sets the start-up of i-αppli from the i-mode mail text.
Infrared exchange function	i-αppli starts up when your FOMA terminal receives the start-up signals of i-αppli while infrared exchange is processed.
Bar code reader function	i-αppli starts up when recognized code sets the start-up of i-αppli.

● You can make settings in "i-αppli To setting" whether i-αppli can start up from the related functions.
→p.324

Starting i-αppli from sites or mails

<Example: Starting up i-αppli from sites>

1 Select the item that links to the software.



A message asking whether to start the i-αppli is displayed.

2 Select "YES".

i-αppli starts up.

When you do not want to start up the software

Select "NO".

NOTE

● If there is no software program available, a message appears notifying you that there is no requested software program. If there is no i-αppli available when you start up it from a site, no message appears.

Starting up i-αppli from Infrared exchange function

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "Ir exchange".

Using Infrared Exchange Function →p.393

2 Select "Receive" and receive the start-up signal of i-αppli.

After a message appears notifying you that the communication has been terminated, i-αppli starts up.

NOTE

● When there is no applicable software, a message appears notifying you that the selected software was not found.

Continued on next page

Starting up i-αppli by bar code reader function

1 **Scan code (JAN code or QR code) that contains information for starting i-αppli.**

Bar code scanning →p.193

2 **Select "Activate i-αppli" and then select "YES" on details screen for the bar code reader.**

i-αppli starts up.

If you do not want the software to start up

Select "NO".

NOTE

● If there is no software available, a message appears notifying you that there is no requested software.

Making the setting to start up the software using i-αppli To <i-αppli To>

Default setting	Startup all

You can make settings to start up the software from sites, mails, infrared exchange or code.

● You can modify the settings for each software program.

● You cannot select an item that cannot be set.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ "Software list".**

2 **Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Set i-αppli To" from the function menu.**

3 **Select the item you want to set.**



Each time you select the item, ☑(Startup) and ☐ (Do not startup) switch by turns.

4 **Press [Finish].**

Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen

You can set the i-αppli software for standby display. This useful feature enables you to start up the software directly from the standby display once you set a software program you often use for standby display.

- You can set the i-αppli software you selected for standby display. "" or "" is displayed on the lower screen while the i-αppli standby display is ON.
- Only 1 i-αppli can be set for i-αppli standby display.
- The Web To function is not available from i-αppli standby display.
- When an i-αppli that is not pre-installed is set to the i-αppli standby display, if the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, the display set up in "Stand-by display" in "Display setting" will be displayed even if the i-αppli standby display has been set. The i-αppli standby display that you set will be displayed when the original FOMA card is inserted.
- Some types of software cannot be set as the i-αppli standby display.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ "Software list".

2 Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Software setting"-"Stand-by set" from the function menu.

3 Select the item you want to set.

To set the software on the standby display
Select "ON".
"" is displayed for the software that is set on the standby display.

To set no software on the standby display
Select "OFF".

NOTE

- When you set the network-based software to the i-αppli standby display, it may not operate properly due to the condition of radio wave.
- When the i-αppli standby display is set, your FOMA does not display an image that is set in "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" on the standby display. However, when the standby display is shown in the multi-task conditions, such image can be displayed even the i-αppli standby display is already set. Secondly, even if the software features to start up as i-αppli and then the standby display is shown as original, it does not work while another task (function) is operating after starting up the software from the standby display. When the screen returns to the standby display, some software may send a message notifying you that the operation won't be able to continue and terminate the software. At the same time, the standby display setting may also be canceled.
- The i-αppli standby display ends in the cases such as the followings:
  - When the camera function starts up in "Mega pixel mode"
  - When you upgrade a software program
  - When the i-αppli standby display is a mail-connected i-αppli, and you are viewing the mail-connected i-αppli folder from the mail function
- If you have set up the i-αppli standby display and you turn your FOMA on, a message appears asking if it's OK to start up the i-αppli standby display.
- If you set "All lock" or "PIM lock" while i-αppli standby display is displayed, i-αppli standby display ends, and then an image set on "Standby display" in "Display setting" appears. When you cancel "All lock" or "PIM lock", the i-αppli standby display is displayed.
- When both the i-αppli standby display and the normal standby display are set, the i-αppli standby display will be displayed with higher priority.

Making settings to permit the connection from the i-αppli standby display <Stand-by network>

You can make network settings when the software that is set on the standby display can be connected with the network.

● You cannot make the setting for the software that does not work on the network.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ "Software list".**

2 **Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Software setting"-"Stand-by net" from the function menu.**

3 **Select the item you want to set.**

To connect to the network while the software is running
Select "ON".

Not connecting to the network while the software is running
Select "OFF".

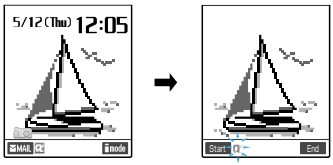
NOTE

● Note that you may not be able to receive information in a timely manner when the network setting is "OFF".

Starting up the i-αppli standby display

You can start up the software that is set for i-αppli standby display and maintain the same condition as when the software is started up from the software list.

1 **Press CLR while the i-αppli standby display is shown.**



i-αppli starts up and "" or "" changes to flashing "" or "" on the lower screen.

Canceling the i-αppli standby display <End stand-by display>

You can cancel the setting of i-αppli standby display and the image will change back to the image set for "Stand-by display" of "Display setting".

● The setting of i-αppli standby display can be canceled under the following conditions:
- During startup of i-αppli standby display: "" or "" is flashing on the lower screen.
- While the i-αppli standby display is displayed: "" or "" is displayed on the lower screen.

■ Canceling the i-αppli standby display during startup

1 **Hold down CLR for 1 second of more while the i-αppli standby display is running.**

2 **Select "Terminated".**

A message appears notifying you that the i-αppli standby display is canceled.

To cancel the termination of the i-αppli standby display
Select "Cancel".

To terminate the i-αppli to show the i-αppli standby display again
Select "Ended".
A message appears notifying you of the termination and the i-αppli standby display is shown.

Canceling while the i-αppli standby display is displayed

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “i-αppli settings” ▶ “End stand-by display”.**

2 **Select “Terminate”.**

A message notifying that i-αppli standby display was terminated appears.

To show i-αppli standby display

Select “End”.

Checking the termination information of i-αppli standby display <End stand-by info>

When the i-αppli standby display is terminated due to an error, the FOMA terminal stores the information such as name of failed software, error occurrence time and reason so that you can check the information.

● When no error occurs upon termination, no information is stored.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “i-αppli info” ▶ “End stand-by info”.**



The name of failed software, error occurrence time and reason are displayed.

When “FUNC“ is displayed on the lower right screen, you can call up the function menu.

To copy the end stand-by information

Select “Copy info” from the function menu.

To delete the end stand-by information

Select “Delete info” from the function menu.

Managing i-αppli

You can upgrade the i-αppli and/or delete unnecessary i-αppli programs.

Upgrading i-αppli <Upgrade>

When the downloaded software has been updated on the site, the software can be upgraded.

● If the software is updated at a site, you can automatically upgrade the software when starting it.

● Mail-connected i-αppli that changes the mail folder name cannot be upgraded in the following situation:

- While “Security setting” is set to Inbox/Outbox
- While “Security setting” is set to the mail folder
- While using a mail-connected i-αppli that can be upgraded

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “Software list”.**

2 **Highlight the software you want to upgrade, and then select “Upgrade” from the function menu.**

A message asking whether to upgrade the software is displayed.

3 **Select “YES”.**

The software will be upgraded.

To not upgrade the software

Select “NO”.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- If the software program has not been updated, a message appears notifying you that the existing software program is the latest version after the software information is obtained.
- If pages are compatible with TLS/SSL, a message appears notifying you that TLS/SSL communication has started.
- When “Display software info” is set to “Display”, you can check information on the software program before upgrading it. →p.314
- Before the software program is upgraded, a message may appear notifying you that production number of your mobile phone and identification number of FOMA card will be used.
- If it is detected that a software program has been updated to a newer version when you are redownloading the program, a message appears asking whether or not you wish to upgrade it.
- Some software programs may be automatically upgraded. In this case, a message appears asking whether or not you wish to upgrade the program.

Deleting i-αppli

You can delete stored software one by one or delete all the software.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “Software list”.

2 Highlight the software you want to delete, and then select “Delete this” from the function menu.

To delete more than 1 software program
Select “Delete selected” and select the programs you want to delete.

To delete all the software programs
Select “Delete all”, and then enter your security code.
Security code →p.152

A message asking whether to delete the software is displayed.

3 Select “YES”.

Software program(s) will be deleted.

To not delete the software programs
Select “NO”.

NOTE

- If the software program that you want to delete is set as the i-αppli standby display (software with “★” or mark) or is set to Auto start, the software setting status is displayed and a message appears asking whether or not you want to delete it.
- If you delete the software set for i-αppli standby display, the standby screen set on “Stand-by display” for “Display setting” will appear.
- When you select “Delete all”, pre-installed software (p.319) is also deleted.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-αppli, a message appears asking whether you want to delete the folders dedicated to the mail-connected i-αppli. If you want to delete only the mail-connected i-αppli, select “NO”. Meanwhile, when you want to delete the mail-connected i-αppli along with all the sent/received folders exclusively for that mail-connected i-αppli as well as all the mail in those folders, select “YES”. However, you cannot delete the folders while the sent/received folders dedicated to the mail-connected i-αppli are used, security settings are made for those folders, or protected messages are included.
- If you delete mail-connected i-αppli, newly received mails compliant i-αppli may be deleted while you select the software program you want to delete.
- If you receive mail for i-αppli after you delete a mail-connected i-αppli, the mail will be saved to the Inbox.
- If there are 5 folders for mail-connected i-αppli in Outbox or Inbox, you cannot download new mail-connected i-αppli.

Displaying security error history <Security error history>

When you try to select some operations that are not permitted in i-αppli or i-αppli DX, a security error occurs, forcing to terminate the software while the information is stored in the security error history. When such error occurs on the i-αppli standby display, the i-αppli standby display is forcibly terminated.

- Security error history can be stored up to 10 errors.
- When security error data is not saved in the FOMA terminal, you cannot display the history.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “i-αppli info” ▶ “Security error history”.



The name of software and the occurrence time and reason of the security error are displayed.

To copy the security error history
Select “Copy info” from the function menu.

To delete the security error history
Select “Delete info” from the function menu.

NOTE

- When a security error has occurred while the i-αppli standby display is not running, the “APPLI” desktop icon will appear on the standby display. When you select this icon, the Secure error history screen will appear. For information on desktop icons, refer to p.135.
- When a security error occurs on the i-αppli standby display, the information is secured in “End stand-by info” as well as the security error history.

When creating a software program

When the created software does not operate properly, the trace information may be useful.

- When there is no memory of trace information, the information is deleted in order from the oldest one.
- When no trace information is stored in the FOMA terminal, such information cannot be displayed.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ i-αppli ▶ “i-αppli info” ▶ “Trace info”.

Trace information of software is displayed in the order of occurrence.

To copy the trace information
Select “Copy info” from the function menu.

To delete the trace information
Select “Delete info” from the function menu.

Using the Functions from the i-αppli

Using the camera function from i-αppli

Follow the procedure below to use the camera function (p.170) from a program that you are running.

- You cannot use the camera functions from the i-αppli standby screen.
- When the camera is started from i-αppli, images are not saved in “Image” but are saved as a part of i-αppli.
- When the camera function is started from i-αppli, the image size cannot be changed. If the image size is 240×240, “ i-αppli ” is displayed.

Continued on next page

1 Perform the operation for starting camera while the program is running.

The camera function is activated, and then the terminal is set to the camera mode.
The items that can be set, the specification method and the procedure for activating the camera all vary depending on the program used.

2 Shoot an image.

NOTE

● Images to be used in the program and data entered by users may be sent via the Internet regardless of user's intension. Images used by the program consist of the following images: images shot when the Camera function is launched from an active program, images downloaded from an active program using the infrared exchange function, images downloaded by connecting from an active program to the site, images an active program retrieved from "Image" and images stored in the program.

Using the bar code reader from an i-αppli

This procedure allows you to use the bar code reader (p.193) from an active program.

● You must first download software that supports the use of bar code readers.
● The bar code reader cannot be used from the i-αppli standby screen.
● The scanned information is used in the software program and is not stored in the Bar code reader list screen (p.196).
● If you run the Bar code reader from the i-αppli, read data may be used for software. It is not saved in the "Bar code reader".

1 Perform the operation for starting the bar code reader while the program is running.

The procedure for starting the bar code reader varies depending on the program.

2 Scan the code.

The scanned data is automatically registered.

Using the Infrared exchange function from an i-αppli

You can use the Infrared exchange function (p.393) from a program that you are running.

● You must download a program that allows you to use the Infrared exchange function.
● You cannot use the Infrared exchange function from the i-αppli standby screen.
● You cannot use the Infrared exchange function when the terminal is set to Self mode.

1 Perform the operation for starting the infrared exchange while the program is running.

The procedure for starting the Infrared exchange function varies depending on the program.

2 Select "YES".

To cancel the operation
Select "NO".

To interrupt the Infrared exchange function
Press ● [Select] while the "Exchanging..." message is displayed.

i-motion

About i-motion 332
Downloading i-motion ..... Download i-motion 332
Setting Auto Play of i-motion ..... Automatic replay 336
Setting the Type of i-motion to Be Downloaded ..... i-motion type 336

About i-motion

i-motion is the data of videos, sounds and music. You can download i-motions to your FOMA terminal from a variety of i-motion-compatible sites, play the downloaded i-motion, or set it as the standby display. Moreover setting it as the ring tone brings you a lot of enjoyment. (Chaku-motion)

● i-motion compatible sites can be found from the “Menu List” of iMenu.

- Downloading i-motion →below
- Playing i-motion →below
- Specifying i-motion for auto start setting →p.336
- Setting i-motion on the standby display →p.140
- Specifying i-motion for the Chaku-motion setting →p.124

Types of i-motion

i-motion is divided into two broad types, depending on sites from which i-motion is downloaded or data types.

■ Normal type

FOMA terminal can save up to 300 Kbytes at maximum. There are two formats as follows:
Some i-motions cannot be saved even if they are normal types.

① i-motions that can be played after being downloaded (up to 300 Kbytes)
② i-motions that can be played while download is in progress (up to 300 Kbytes)

■ Streaming type

The type does not allow you to save i-motions in your FOMA terminal. i-motions can be played while the data is being downloaded (played up to 2 Mbytes). Data is downloaded for each play since the data is discarded after being played.
The way that streaming type i-motion data is being played during the downloading operation is called “Replay streaming”.

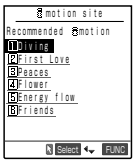
NOTE

● i-motion you can play is based on the MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.
● When you set the i-motion to the standby display, you cannot go to “Phone To function”, “Mail To function” or “Web To function” from the i-motion play display.

Downloading i-motion

Downloading i-motion from a site and play the program

1 Display the i-motion-compatible site from which you want to download i-motion.



2 Select and download an i-motion.

When the download is completed, a screen appears notifying you of the completion of data received.

To cancel the operation

Press [Quit].

When the i-motion is Normal type

In “Automatic replay” of “i-motion setting”, you can select whether or not you want to play the i-motion automatically during the download operation. However, some i-motion may not play automatically.

When the i-motion is Streaming type

You cannot download i-motion when the “i-motion type” is set to “Normal type”.

When the message “Invalid content Change i-motion type for replay” appears:

“i-motion type” of “i-motion setting” is set to “Normal type”. Press [Select] to return to the site screen. After selecting “i-motion type” from the function menu set to “Norm • Streaming type”, download the i-motion again.

When the message “Replay streaming?” appears:

- Select “YES” to start playing. Select “NO” to go back to the site screen.
- When you want to stop playing the operation after selecting “YES”, press [Quit].

3 Select “Play” on the data received screen.



The downloaded i-motion will be played.

When the message “Receive again and replay streaming?” appears:

This message appears when the i-motion is the streaming type.

Select “YES” to download the data and start playing. Select “NO” to go back to the data received screen.

Operation while i-motion plays

The following operations can be performed while an i-motion is playing.



Playing



Ticker display



Volume adjustment

Control key	i-motion’s operation
●	Pause/resume play
○(▲), ○(▼)	Volume adjustment
	Fast forward
	Mute (Invalid when the i-motion has no voice or sound)
Press ○ for 1 second or more.	Skip rewind※
Press ○ for 1 second or more.	Skip forward※
After play is paused by pressing ●, press .	Play frame by frame (The frame advances to the next each time it is pressed)
After play is paused by pressing ●, select “Slow” from the function menu.	Slow
C/CLR	Stop

※ It may be unavailable, depending on i-motions.

- Fast forwarding, per-frame play and slow motion play are not available while a normal type i-motion is replayed while the downloading is in progress (only the first replay of the i-motion). In addition, pause operation cannot be conducted in case of replaying streaming. Press [Quit] to cancel playing.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When download is interrupted while it is simultaneously being played back due to radio wave condition, etc., you can still play the data that has been downloaded before the interruption occurred. The data downloading completion screen may not be displayed because the downloading was not completed. To play all parts of the data, download the data again.
- When the data is being played while it is retrieving the data, the i-motion replay may stop, or image distortion may occur due to the radio wave condition.
- Restrictions may be imposed on i-motion play. You cannot download or save i-motion in the following cases:

Types of replay restriction	Cannot be downloaded	Cannot be saved
Replay period (start/end date specified)	Before and after the replay period	–
Replay expiration (only end date specified)	After the replay expiration	–
Replay times (replay number of time)	Errors in replay times	Remaining: 0

- When the replay restriction applies to the i-motion, "(clock)" is displayed on the left side of the title on the download completion screen.
- When you try to play an i-motion, the message "This data has the case of 2MB play?" may be displayed. If you select "YES", it starts playing. However, the replay may be disrupted if a streaming type i-motion exceeds the maximum size. Even if you reload the i-motion, replay will stop before all the data is replayed.
- Some downloaded i-motion may not be played properly.
- Some i-motions may not be able to be downloaded.
- The URL of the screen notifies you of the completion of data received is not stored for "Last URL". The Last URL maintains the URL for the page displayed prior to the completion of data reception.
- Some i-motions feature "Phone To function", "Mail To function", and/or "Web To function" using the character information displayed in the subtitle (character information based on the i-motion is displayed during replay).

Saving i-motion

You can save i-motions in your FOMA terminal if they allow you to select "Save" on the data received screen.

- Some downloaded i-motion data may not be stored in the FOMA terminal.
- You can make a variety of operations for the stored i-motions such as playing or program editing using "i Motion".
- You can save up to 100 i-motion data including movies shot by the camera. The number of i-motion data that can be saved changes to 3 - 100 items depending on the amount of the data.

1 Select "Save" on the screen that notifies you of the data received screen.



A message appears asking if it is OK to save the i-motion.

To save the i-motion

Select "YES".

A message appears notifying you that the i-motion has been saved.

To cancel the operation

Select "NO".

You go back to the data received screen without saving the i-motion.

When the memory is full

A message appears asking if you want to delete unnecessary i-motions and then save the new i-motion.

To save the new i-motion, select "YES" and then select the i-motion that you want to delete.

To cancel saving the new i-motion, select "NO". When you select "NO", you can go back to the screen that notifies you of the data received without saving the data.

NOTE

- The i-motion that you saved will appear at the top of the list in the “i Motion” folder. The file name will appear for i-motion without titles.
- You cannot save the following i-motions:
  - i-motions that cannot be stored
  - Streaming type i-motions
  - i-motions whose replay was stopped during downloading
  - i-motions whose download did not complete correctly
  - i-motions of which replay period has expired
  - i-motions which tried to be store continuously on the data received screen
- i-motion allows you to save the data received screen as the “Screen memo” and play the i-motions from the screen memo. To save the i-motions, select “Screen memo” from the function menu on the data received screen. However, the following i-motion screen cannot be saved under “Screen memo”:
  - i-motions that are specified for the replay restriction
  - Streaming type i-motions
  - i-motion with incomplete data
- i-motions saved under the screen memo are not listed in the list of the “i Motion” folder. Thus, some functions are not available such as the program replay or standby display.
- Some i-motions may display a link to another page after played. If you select the link, a message may appear asking whether or not you wish to save the i-motion that you have viewed. If you want to save it, follow the message to save it, and then display the linked page.

Displaying property on i-motion

You can check the property such as the titles of i-motions, file size or replay restrictions.

1 Select “Property” on the data received screen.



The screen that displays data information appears. Scroll the screen with ◎ and check the information.

After checking the information, press CLR.

Setting Auto Play of i-motion

Default setting	ON

You can select whether or not to play an i-motion automatically when it is downloaded from a Web page or when a screen memo including i-motion is displayed.

● "Automatic replay" can be set only for Normal type i-motions. The program is automatically played for Streaming type i-motions regardless of the above setting.
Type of i-motion →p.332

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "i-motion setting" ▶ "Automatic replay".**

2 **Select whether you want to play the i-motion automatically or not.**

ON : Auto play starts after download is completed. Some i-motions are played automatically while they are being downloaded.
OFF : Auto play does not start after downloading i-motion (or during the download), and the screen appears notifying you of the completion of the download.

Setting the Type of i-motion to Be Downloaded

Default setting	Normal type

When you are downloading new i-motion from a site, you can set the type of i-motion.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ i-mode ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "i-motion setting" ▶ "i-motion type".**

2 **Select the type to be played.**

Type of i-motion →p.332
Normal type : Downloads only Normal type i-motion.
Norm•Streaming type : Downloads both Normal type and Streaming type i-motions.

Displaying, Editing and Managing Data

■ **Using Still Images**

Displaying a Saved Image ..... Image 338

Editing a Still Image ..... Edit image 344

■ **Using Movies**

Playing a Movie Shot with the Camera or Downloaded i-motion ..... i Motion 349

Editing a Movie ..... Edit i-motion 354

■ **Using Chara-den**

Chara-den 359

■ **Using Melodies**

Playing a Melody ..... Melody 365

■ **Using Various Data**

Organizing Folders and Data 368

Managing Various Data 375

■ **miniSD Memory Card**

About a miniSD Memory Card 376

Copying Data in a FOMA Terminal to a miniSD Memory Card 383

Previewing Data Stored in a miniSD Memory Card 385

Copying Data in a miniSD Memory Card to a FOMA Terminal 386

Managing the miniSD Memory Card 389

Using miniSD Reader/Writer 392

■ **Exchanging Data with Infrared Exchange/Cable Connection**

Data Transfer with Infrared Exchange/Cable Connection ..... Ir exchange/OBEX 393

Transferring Individual Data Items 397

Transferring Data in Batch 398

Using Infrared Remote Control Function 400

Preventing Phonebook Images from Forwarding ..... Forwarding image 402

Displaying a Saved Image

Default setting	Set image disp. : Normal

You can display animations used on the standby display and wake-up display, pictures (still images) shot with the built-in camera and downloaded images, original animations, and images that can be set to the videophone call.

- Folder structure and file format of “Image” →p.368
- The size of an image exceeding 1616 dots (width) or 1212 dots (height) cannot be displayed.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Multimedia ▶ “Image”.



Folder lists

The folder list screen of “Image” is displayed.
When PIM lock is set, the Pre-installed folder and the Frame folder are displayed.

2 Select the folder that contains the image.

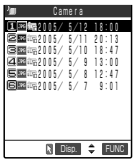


Image lists

The image list screen appears.
It may take several minutes to display the Image list screen when the list includes many items or the file size is large.

To check the image information

Select the image that you want to check the information on the Image list screen, and then select “Image info” from the function menu.
For original animations, highlight the original animation you want to check on the folder list screen of the Image viewer and select “Image info” from the function menu.
In Image information, you can check the file name, file size, file restrictions and where the image is attached to. The file size that can be managed in the FOMA terminal will appear in Image info. For original animations, you can only check the information on where the image is attached to.
Press (CLR) after checking the image information.

3 Select the image you want to display.



Press ◎ to display the previous or next image.
Press (CLR) to close the display.

To change the size of screen display

You can change the size of screen display.
Select “Set image disp.” from the function menu, and then select the display size from “Normal” or “Fit in display”.

How to display the list of pictures or title names

You can select to display the image list screen (p.338) either as a picture list that consists of 4 images in one screen or a title name list.

Picture list



Icon

Image title

Title name list

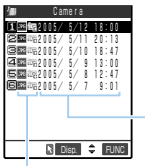


Image title

Icon

- Two icons appear before the image title. The icon on the left indicates the data format and the icon on the right indicates the data source.
  Icon that appears before the image title →p.369
  Image title →p.370
- You can change an image title →p.375
- Picture display cannot be used to view original animations.

Switching the display layout

- If the display layout is switched, the setting is not retained. The display layout of image list screen is in accordance with “Viewer settings”.

1 **Select “Title name” or “Picture” from the function menu in the image list screen.**



To display the full-screen
To switch from the image list screen to the full-screen display, highlight the image and then press ● [Disp.].
To switch back from the full-screen display to the image list screen, press CLR.

Changing the setting of “Viewer settings”

Default setting	Picture

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Viewer settings”.**

To set the picture list
Select “Picture”.

To set the title name list
Select “Title”.

Sending a still image attached to a mail

You can attach a saved still image to a mail and send it.

- If the image to be attached to mail is not appropriate, you cannot select “Compose message”. You may not be able to attach some images to i-mode mail due to data size. →p.260
- You cannot attach images stored in the original animation folder to i-mode mail.

1 Display the Image list screen (p.338).

2 Select the image you want to attach from the Image list screen and select “Compose message” from the function menu.

Composing new i-mode mail →p.264
While an image is being displayed, you can compose i-mode mail from the function menu.

Setting an image to the standby display <Set as display>

You can specify an image on the standby display, wake-up display, voice call display for dialing or receiving, or mail display for incoming/outgoing.
You can also set an image to the videophone call display for the On hold screen, Holding screen, Camera off screen or Record message screen.

- In addition to photos (still images) taken by the built-in camera, you can also use unrestricted JPEG images downloaded from the sites for videophone call “On hold”, “Holding”, “Camera off” and “Record message”.

1 Display the Image list screen (p.338).

2 Highlight the image you want to set, and select “Set as display” from the function menu.

The items that are already specified appear with “★” mark. However, the “★” mark is not displayed even you make a videophone call setting for “On hold”, “Holding”, “Camera off” or “Record message”.
You can also select “Set as display” from the Function menu after pressing ● [Disp.] to display the images.

3 Select the image you want to set.

To release the specified image, go to “Display setting” to change the setting to other image.

NOTE

- You can set an image that is up to 100 KB and 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or smaller.
- Depending on the size of the downloaded image, the entire image may not be displayed on the screen you set.
- You can also use “Display setting” to set the image for “Stand-by display”, “Wake-up display”, “Dialing”, “Calling”, “Mail sending”, “Mail receiving” or “Checking”.
- To enable the image specified to videophone call “On hold”, “Holding”, “Camera off” or “Record message”, select “Original” in “Select image”.→p.96

Setting the display position (Positioning)

You can set the image display position when pasting an image that is vertically smaller than the image display area.

- This setting becomes invalid when the pasted image is vertically larger than the display area.
- You cannot specify a location for the images stored in “Pre-installed”, “Original animation”, “miniSD” and “Frame” folders, pre-defined videophone images and original videophone images.

<Example: Standby display>



Displayed in the center



Displayed at the top



Displayed at the bottom

1 Display the Image list screen (p.338).

2 Highlight the image you want to set, and then select “Positioning” from the function menu.

You can also select “Positioning” from the function menu after pressing ● [Disp.] to display the images.

3 Select the display position.

NOTE

- If an image is added, the position is automatically set to “Center”. Set the displaying position as you like.
- If the set image is larger than the target area, the image is displayed according to the “Clipping area” setting.

Setting the clipping area (Clipping area)

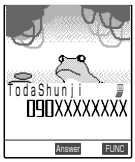
You can set the clipping area when pasting an image that is vertically larger than the image display area.

- This setting becomes invalid when the pasted image is vertically smaller than the display area.
- You cannot specify clipping (display) area for images stored in “Pre-installed”, “Original animation”, “miniSD” and “Frame” folders, pre-defined videophone images and original videophone images.

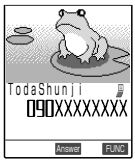
<Example: When you receive a voice call>



Displayed in the center



Displayed at the top



Displayed at the bottom

Continued on next page

1 Display the Image list screen (p.338).

2 Highlight the image you want to set, and then select “Clipping area” from the function menu.

You can also select “Clipping area” from the function menu after pressing ● [Disp.] to display the images.

3 Select the clipping area.

NOTE

- If an image is added, the clipping area is automatically set to “Center”. Set the clipping area as you like.
- If the set image is smaller than the target area, the image is displayed according to the “Positioning” setting.

Adding an image to the Phonebook <Adding image to PB>

When you add an image to the Phonebook and select “ON” in “Display phonebook image”, the added image is displayed when an incoming call is received.

- You can add a JPEG image up to 100 KB except the file restriction is set to “Restricted”. Such information can be viewed in “Image info”. Even if the file restriction is set to “Restricted”, you can store in the Phonebook a still image taken with the built-in camera, a still image taken with Chara-den with “Rec. file restriction” set to “File unrestricted” and an image forwarded by the infrared exchange or downloaded from the miniSD memory card.
- You cannot register link files for animations or continuous multiple pictures stored in “Original animation”.

1 Display the image list screen (p.338).

2 Highlight an image you want to add and select “Add image to PB” from the function menu.

You can add an image to the Phonebook by selecting “Add image to PB” from the function menu in “Inbox” or “Camera” under “Image”.

3 Select “Phone”.

4 Select the item you want to set.

To add an image as a new data

Select “New” and perform the same procedure as described in “Storing an Entry in the Phonebook” (p.103).

To add an image as an additional data

Select “Add” and search the phonebook to be added. Then perform the same procedure as steps 4 and 5 described in p.108.

How to search the phonebook →p.114

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

You can create an animation of up to 20 frames using added images.

- You can edit link files for continuous multiple pictures taken by the built-in camera (animation files). Release of original animation settings will not delete the images.
- You can create up to 20 link files for original animation.
- You cannot set up any pictures in the GIF format, animations or images in the pre-installed folder and a miniSD memory card.

<Example: To set a picture (still image) taken with the built-in camera>

1 Select the “Original animation” folder on the Folder list screen of “Image” (p.338), and then select <New>.

If the link file of the original animation is already registered, the original animation list screen appears.

To edit the original animation set up

Highlight the original animation to edit and select “Org. animation” from the function menu.

2 Select the frame and then select the folder that contains the image.

3 Select the image.



Press [Play] to display the image.

To release the set image

Select the image you want to release on the frame list screen and then select “Release this”.

4 Repeat the Step 2 and 3 to set the image.

5 When the setting is completed, press [Finish].

To release the setting of original animation

Select a “Original animation” folder on the folder list screen of “Image”, select a link file for the original animation, and select “Release animat.” from the function menu.

Editing a Still Image

You can edit a picture (still image) shot with the built-in camera and image that were forwarded using infrared exchange or downloaded from the Website.

- Editing an image repeatedly may cause the image quality to deteriorate or the image size to increase.
- In some images, the effects of editing may be difficult to see.
- Some images cannot be edited because of their size. For such images, editing is possible after reducing the image size down to a supported size through “Trim away” or “Size for mail”.
- Images that can be edited →p.370

1 Highlight the image you want to edit on the Image list screen, and then select “Edit image” from the function menu (p.338).

The selected image appears.

2 Select the function in which you want to edit the image from the function menu, and then follow the appropriate procedure.

Function	Processing details	Supported image size	See page
Retouch	Changes color or sharpness of still images.	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high※	p.345
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of images.		
Frame	Sets the frame to still images.		
Marker stamp	Adds marks (Marker stamp) on still images such as heart mark.		p.346
Character stamp	Adds input stamps to still image.		p.347
Rotate	Rotates an image 90 degrees or 180 degrees.	Up to 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high, 1280 dots wide × 960 dots high, 640 dots wide × 480 dots high	
Trim away	Trims away part of an image and saves it.	Up to 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high, 1280 dots wide × 960 dots high, 640 dots wide × 480 dots high, 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, 352 dots wide × 288 dots high, 240 dots wide × 269 dots high, 176 dots wide × 144 dots high	
Composite image	Composites one image on another.	Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high	p.348
Size for mail	Scale down an image size to attach to mail.	-	

※: The frame can be set only to an image of 352 dots wide × 288 dots high, 240 dots wide × 269 dots high, 176 dots wide × 144 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high.

3 Check the image you have just edited and press ● [Set].

To cancel, press [Cancel].

4 Press ● [Save].

A message appears asking whether or not to overwrite the edited image. Select “YES” to overwrite the edited image. Select “NO” to save the edited image in the folder selected in Step 1 where the image is saved.

To continue editing without saving the previous edit

Select an editing category.

Adding effects <Retouch>

1 Select an editing category on the retouch screen.

The retouch list screen is displayed. Available processing options are shown as follows:

Sharp	: Emphasizes the contrast in contours
Blur	: Blurs contours
Sepia	: Tinges hues in sepia
Emboss	: Displays a relief-like uneven quality to the picture
Negative	: Displays a negative of the picture
Horizontal flip	: Sets to mirror image

“Sepia” option of “Retouch” and “Sepia” option of “Color mode set.” (p.188) result in slightly differently color.

Adjusting the brightness of images <Brightness>

You can adjust the brightness of images in 5 levels.

1 Adjust brightness on the brightness control screen.



Press ◯ to decrease the brightness, and press ◯ to increase the brightness.
The brightness can be adjusted in 5 levels, from -2 to +2.

-2	: Dark
-1	: Slightly dark
±0	: Normal
+1	: Slightly light
+2	: light

Combining a frame to an image <Frame>

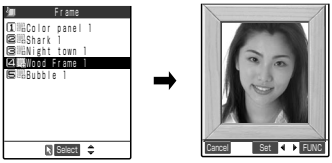
You can set a frame to an image.

- A frame data is combined based on the selected format.
- You can download and add a frame from a site. →p.222
- Preinstalled frames are shown below.



Color panel　Shark　Night town　Wood Frame　Bubble

1 Select a frame on the frame selection screen.



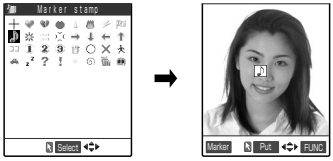
The list screen of frame is displayed.

You can add a stamp (marker stamp) such as a heart shaped mark, as if you put a sticker on, to an image.

- The marker stamp can be selected from among 32 designs, and the selected marker can be pasted to the desired location. You can also rotate the marker stamp or increase/decrease the size.
- Preinstalled marker stamps are shown below.

Cross		Anger		NG	
Heart 1		Right		Person	
Heart 2		Below		Car	
Kiss		Left		Asleep	
Tear		Above		Question	
Flame		Here		Surprise	
Lightning		No. 1		Shine	
Sorry		No. 2		Whirlpool	
Note		No. 3		Punch	
Flower		Party		Nose	
Love	LOVE LOVE	OK			

1 Press [Marker] to select a marker stamp on the list screen of marker stamps.



2 Slide ● to determine the marker stamp position with the Neuropointer key.



You can also set the position by pressing ✣.

Press ● [Put] to paste the marker stamp. To paste multiple marker stamps, press [Add] and repeat the step 1 and 2. To delete all pasted marker stamps, press CLR. You cannot delete the marker stamp after it is fixed.

To edit the marker stamp

Select the items you want to edit from the function menu.

90˚ to right : Rotates clockwise 90 degrees.
90˚ to left : Rotates counterclockwise 90 degrees.
180˚ : Rotates 180 degrees.
Scale up : Increases to double size.
Scale down : Decreases to half size.

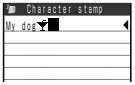
Pasting characters to an image <Character stamp>

Default setting	Character color : Black Font : Gothic style Character size : Standard size

You can add a character stamp to an image taken with the built-in camera.

● You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters in the character stamp. You can also enter the pictograph. However, the number of characters that can be entered may vary depending on the image size.

1 Enter characters on the character stamp input screen and press ● [Set].



Entering characters →p.502

2 Use ● to move the Neuropointer key to the point you want to place the character stamp.



You can also set the position by pressing ✣.

To edit the character stamp

Select the items you want to edit from the function menu.

Character color : Changes the character color. To select another color, press [Change] to select it.

Font : Changes the font type.

Character size : Changes the character size.

Rotating an image <Rotate>

● If you rotate an image of 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high, 1280 dots wide × 960 dots high in "90˚ to right" or "90˚ to left", the resolution will be reduced to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high. Rotate in "180˚" to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.

● The frame can be set only to a rotated image of 352 dots wide × 288 dots high, 240 dots wide × 269 dots high, 176 dots wide × 144 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high.

1 Select the rotating direction on the rotation screen.

90˚ to right : Rotates clockwise 90 degrees.
90˚ to left : Rotates counterclockwise 90 degree.
180˚ : Rotates 180 degrees.
When the image is rotated in "90˚ to right" or "90˚ to left", the excessive width from the screen is not displayed.

Trimming images <Trim away>

You can trim away a part of an image. It is useful when you want to attach an image to mail but it is too large.

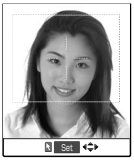
● You can trim away still images of the 5 sizes of 352 dots wide × 288 dots high, 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, 240 dots wide × 269 dots high for Stand-by, 176 dots wide × 144 dots high for Mail (L), and 128 dots wide × 96 dots high for Mail (S).

1 Select the trimming size on the trimming screen.

You cannot select the same format as the original or larger format.
An image of 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high or 1280 dots wide × 960 dots high is reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.

Continued on next page

2 Press ⊕ to select the trimming area and then press ● [Set].



You can select the trimming area using the Neuropointer key by sliding ●.

Combining images <Composite image>

You can compose a single image by selecting 4 images stored in the "Image".

● Four images used for composition are not deleted through this operation.

1 Select "Composite image" from the function menu on the image list screen.

2 Select the location and the image to compose.

To cancel set image

Select the image to cancel and select "Release this".

3 Repeat Step 2 to set 4 images and press [Finish].

The composed image is displayed.

You cannot save the image when you do not set 4 images.

4 Check the image and press ● [Save].

The created composite image will be saved in the folder selected in "Composite image" in the function menu in Step 1.

To cancel image composition

Press [Cancel].

Changing the image size <Size for mail>

You can change the size of a JPEG image to be attached to mail.

● You cannot change the size of a JPEG image of 9000 bytes or smaller.

1 Select "Size for mail" from the function menu on the image list screen and select items.

Mail size (large) : Scale downs the size of an image exceeding 640 (Width) x 480 (Height) dots to 640 x 480 dots and changes the size of a file to 100K bytes or smaller.
You cannot select Mail size (large) for an image of 100K bytes or smaller.

Mail size (small) : Scale downs the size of an image exceeding 176 (Width) x 144 (Height) dots to 176 x 144 dots and changes the size of a file to 9000 bytes or smaller.

Playing a Movie Shot with the Camera or Downloaded i-motion

Default setting | Actual size

You can play a movie shot with the built-in camera and i-motion downloaded from a site or Web page.

- You can play the data, which is created in “Picture voice”.
- You can clip the playing video as a still image or movie or set i-motion to the standby display.
- You can edit titles and view information on movies and i-motion.
- Folder structure and file format of “i Motion” →p.368
- Downloading i-motion in the FOMA terminal →p.332

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Multimedia ▶ “i Motion”.



Folder lists

The Folder list screen of “i Motion” is displayed.
When “Playlist” is selected, you can play up to 10 i-motions based on the playlist.
→p.352

2 Select the folder that contains movies or i-motions.



Lists of movie or i-motions

The movie and i-motion list screen is displayed.
Icons before the title →p.369

To check the information about movies and i-motions

Highlight the movie or i-motion that you want to check the information on the list screen, and then select “i-motion info” from the function menu.
i-motion information enables checking of the information of the i-motion file name, original title, file size, file restrictions and replay restrictions.
After checking the i-motion information, press (CLR).

3 Select the movie or i-motion that you want to play.

The movie or i-motion starts playing.
The movie or i-motion is played in the volume selected in “Phone/V-Phone” of “Ring volume”. If the volume is set to “Silent” or “Step”, it plays in “Level 2”.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- If you try to play a movie or i-motion when the Manner mode is set, a message appears asking if it is OK to play the movie or i-motion. Select “YES” to play with voice, or select “NO” to play image only. On an i-motion that has neither images nor ticker, you go back to the list screen.
- i-motion may be restricted as follows. If restriction is active, you cannot play the i-motion:
  - Replay period: Before and after the replay period
  - Replay expiration: After the replay expiration
  - Replay times: When the repayable times are over
- When you try to play an i-motion with a replay period restriction or replay expiration, a message appears notifying you of the restriction. Replay starts once the message disappears.
- When you try to play an i-motion with a replay times restriction, a message notifying you of the restriction appears. Select “YES” to play the i-motion and “NO” to stop it.
- If you try to play i-motion with restriction(s), a message appears to ask you whether or not you want to delete the i-motion. Select “YES” to delete the i-motion. If you select “NO”, the i-motion will not be deleted.
- If you have left the battery pack removed for a long time, the date and time in the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, i-motion with the specified replay period or replay expiration cannot be played.
- When you attach a movie shot with the built-in camera, the file restriction (p.375) may be set to disable/enable the data being further sent or output from the terminal. You can view the information about replay period and file restriction in “i-motion info”.
- “Off” is not displayed when the voice and music are not contained. Instead, “×” is displayed besides the play time on the replay display.
- In case that you receive an incoming voice/videophone call while the movie or i-motion is played, the playback is canceled.
- In case that you receive a mail or Msg. Request/Free while the movie or i-motion is played, the images or voices may be distorted.
- Movies shot with a terminal other than FOMA N900iG may not be played normally.

Operations when i Motion is On

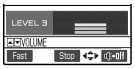
The following operations can be performed while the “i Motion” is playing.



Playing



Ticker display



Volume adjustment

Control key	Operations of “i Motion”
●	Pause/resume play
○(▲), ○(▼)	Volume adjustment
○	Play the previous/next movie or i-motion (Cueing is performed by pressing ○ when a playing time of 10 seconds or more has elapsed.)
	Fast forward
	Mute (Invalid when the i-motion has no voice or sound)
Hold down ○ for 1 second or more	Skip backward※
Hold down ○ for 1 second or more	Skip forward※
After play is paused by pressing ●, press	Play frame by frame (the frame advanced to the next each time it is pressed)
After play is paused by pressing ●, select “Slow” from the function menu.	Slow
CLR	Exit

※: It may be unavailable depending on i-motion.

To set ring tone



On the screen listing movies or i-motion (p.349), highlight a movie or i-motion and select “Set as ring tone”.
Choose setup items. The items that have already selected are marked with “★”.
To cancel the ring tone you have selected and replace it with another melody, movie or i-motion, use “Select ring tone”.
Movies and i-motion can be used as ring tone only for voice calls and video phones.

To add a movie to the Phonebook

When you add a movie or i-motion to the Phonebook and select “ON” in “Display phonebook image”, the added movie or i-motion is displayed when an incoming call is received.
Select “Add imot. to PB” from the function menu on the list screen of the user creation folder, “Inbox” of “i Motion” or “Camera” (p.349). After selecting “Phone”, select “New” for new registration and register using the same operations as those of “Storing an Entry in the Phonebook” (p.103). Select “Add” for additional registration and register using the same operations as Steps 4 and 5 on p.108.

- You can add a movie or i-motion of up to 100 KB. However, you cannot add an i-motion downloaded from a site or a movie recorded with Chara-den when “Rec. file restriction” is set to “Restricted”.

To use Phone To function, Mail To function, Web To function

When the underlined phone number, mail address, or URL is displayed on the screen after the movie or i-motion is played, “Phone To function”, “Mail To function” and “Web To function” are available.
When you can use “Phone To function” and “Mail To function”, you can add the data to the Phonebook.
After the playback, select “Add to phonebook” from the function menu. Select “New” and follow the same procedure as “Storing an Entry in the Phonebook” (p.103). To add some more movie or i-motions, select “Add” and follow the procedure in Steps 4 and 5 on p.108.



Phone To function



Mail To function



Web To function

NOTE

- When you fold the FOMA terminal during playing, “i Motion” stops and you go back to the folder list screen.
- Even if you adjust the volume during playing, when the Melody player ends, the volume returns to the setting specified in “Ring volume”.
- When changing the size of replay display of movie or i-motion, select “Set image disp.” from the function menu and then select the display size from “Actual size” or “Fit in display”.

How to see the title list and the preview display

You can switch the layout of “Inbox”, “Camera”, User-composed folders or list screen of movies or i-motions displayed on “miniSD” of “i Motion” (p.349) to the display that consists of 5-line titles or the preview display. The preview shows the first frame of the movie or i-motion.

Title list



Icon
Image title

Preview display



Preview window

- The preview screen is not displayed for i-motion without images.
- Two icons appear before the movie title on the list screen of each folder. An icon on the left indicates data format and the other on the right indicates the data source.
  Icons before a title →p.369
  Title →p.370
- You can change a movie title. →p.375

Continued on next page

Switching the display

1 **Select “Listing” from the function menu in the movie and i-motion list screen.**

2 **Select “Listing” from the function menu in the movie list screen.**

To display the preview screen
Select “Title + image”.
To display the title list
Select “Title”.

To play a movie or i-motion from the specific part

1 **Select “Position to play” from the function menu while not playing. Press ◎ to select the position and then press ● [Set].**



The movie or i-motion starts playing from the place you selected.

Playing movies in the order you like <Playing program>

You can play in series multiple movies or i-motion after selecting up to 10 items.

1 **Highlight “Playlist” on the folder list screen of “i Motion” (p.349), and select “Edit playlist” from the function menu.**

2 **Select the number you want to add.**

The items are played in the order you have added.

3 **Select the folder and then select the movie or i-motion you want to include on the playlist.**

4 **Repeat the Step 2 and 3 and then press [Finish].**



To release the movie or i-motion from the playlist
Select the movie or i-motion you want to release and then select “Release this”.

5 **Press ● [Play] to play the movie or i-motion from the playlist.**

The movie or i-motion starts playing.
It is repeated until the playing program is stopped.
The selected items from the playlist are not released even “i Motion” is turned off.

To release all the selected movies or i-motion
Highlight “Playlist” on the folder list screen in “i Motion”, and select “Release playlist” from the function menu.

NOTE

- While a movie or i-motion is played from the playlist, “Phone To function”, “Mail To function”, “Web To function” are not available.

Setting a movie or i-motion to the standby display

- When you set a movie or i-motion to the standby display, the first frame of the movie or i-motion is displayed on the standby display.

1 Display the list screen of movies or i-motions (p.349).

2 Highlight the movie or i-motion you want to set, and then select “Set as stand-by” from the function menu.

3 Select “YES”.

To release the set movie or i-motion, go to “Display setting” to change the setting to other image.

NOTE

- You cannot set a movie or i-motion with voice only, an i-motion with text only, and an i-motion restricted with replay period as a standby display.
- A movie or i-motion specified to the standby display is played when you open the FOMA terminal. In this case, the only function available is volume adjustment. During the Manner mode, the image is displayed. “Phone To function”, “Mail To function” and “Web To function” are not available.

Sending a movie attached to a mail

- You may not be able to attach some movies or i-motions to an i-mode mail depending on the amount of data. →p.260

1 Display the list screen of movies or i-motions (p.349).

2 Highlight on the list screen the movie or i-motion you want to send using i-mode mail and select “Compose message” from the function menu.

You cannot select “Compose message” when the movie or i-motion cannot be attached to an i-mode mail. You can compose an i-mode mail from the function menu when a movie is played.

3 Compose an i-mode mail.

Composing an i-mode mail →p.264

Editing a Movie

The editable types are as follows:

Function	Editing content	See page
Trim for image	Trims one frame from a movie shot with the built-in camera as a picture	Below
Trim i-motion	Trims the part of movie shot with the built-in camera	p.355
Trim for mail	Trims a movie shot with the built-in camera to the size that can be attached to a mail	p.355
Edit ticker	Adds or modifies a ticker in a movie or i-motion	p.356
Rerecord sound	Recording new voice in a movie or i-motion	p.358

- The multi task function cannot be used while editing a movie.
- Editable movies →p.370

1 Highlight the movie you want to edit on the movie and i-motion list screen, and then select "Edit i-motion" (p.349).

2 Select the item you want to edit from the function menu and then follow the appropriate procedure. →See above table

Trimming and saving one frame <Trim for image>

You can trim and save a picture taken with the built-in camera by pausing a movie that is playing, fast forwarding, slow playing.

- You can display or edit the saved pictures in "Image". →pp.338 and 344

1 Select "Trim for image" from the function menu.

When you want to trim the first frame of the movie, go to the Step 3.

2 Press ● [Play] and ● [Stop] at the screen to be trimmed to stop the movie.



The movie starts playing.
You can also pause the movie by pressing ● [Stop] during fast forwarding or slow playing.
After pressing the pause, press ○ to advance the movie to the next by frame.

3 Press [Set] and then select "YES".

The folder list screen of "Image" (p.338) is displayed.

4 Select the folder to save the image and press ● [Select].

The frame selected in Steps 2 and 3 is trimmed as a picture and saved.

Trimming the part from a movie <Trim i-motion>

You can trim and save your favorite part from a movie shot with the built-in camera. You can also select "Picture voice" to trim and save the part.

1 Select "Trim i-motion" from the function menu.

To trim the part from the middle of the movie

Press ● [Play] to play the movie until the starting scene to be trimmed and then press ● [Stop].
Press ○ 1 or more seconds, to fast forward.

2 Press [Start] to start trimming.



The movie starts playing and the trimming operation starts.
Press ○ one or more seconds, to fast forward.

3 When you see the last scene to be trimmed, press ● [Stop] and then [End].



The movie that you have trimmed will start playing.
You can stop playing by pressing ● [Stop] even during fast forward or slow motion.
After you stop playing, you can forward frame-by-frame by pressing ○.
To cancel, press CLR.

4 Press ● [Set].

To check trimmed movie

Press [Play].

5 Press ● [Save] and select "YES".

The trimmed movie is saved to the same folder in which the original movie was saved.

Trimming the part of the movie to the size for a mail <Trim for mail>

You can trim the part of the movie shot with the built-in camera to make an attachable size to a mail.

1 Select "Trim for mail" from the function menu.

To trim the part from the middle of the movie

Press ● [Play] to play the movie until the starting scene to be trimmed and then press ● [Stop].
Press ○ 1 or more seconds, to fast forward.

Continued on next page

2 Press [Start] to start trimming.



The movie starts playing and the trimming operation starts.
When the movie is trimmed to the maximum attachable size for a mail, the playback stops automatically.

3 Press ● [Set].

To check trimmed movie
Press [Play].

4 Press ● [Save] and select “YES”.

The trimmed movie is saved in which the original movie was saved.

NOTE

● Images you can trim by selecting “Trim for mail” are 100 KB or larger i-motions shot by using the built-in camera.

Editing a ticker of movie <Edit ticker>

Default setting	Font color: Black, Background color: White, Font size: Normal Word alignment: Left, Blink/Underline/Scroll: OFF

You can add and edit a ticker in a movie or i-motion.

● You can edit 5 tickers each for a movie. Each ticker can contain 20 full-pitch characters.

<Example: To create a new ticker>

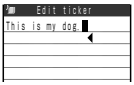
1 Select “Edit ticker” from the function menu and then select “New”.

To edit a ticker from the middle of the movie or i-motion
Press ● [Play] to play the movie or i-motion until the scene from which you want to start editing the ticker and then press ● [Stop].

To edit a movie or i-motion that has already have a ticker
A message appears notifying you that the existing ticker information may be deleted. Select “YES” to edit the ticker. Select “Edit” and then select the ticker you want to edit.

To add a ticker
Select “Edit ticker” from the function menu and select “Edit”. Then select “Add ticker” from the function menu.
Select “<Available>” to add a ticker.
When some other tickers are already stored, “<Available>” is displayed in the several places where you can add a ticker. Select the place where you want to add the ticker.

2 Press [Start] to enter the ticker and then press ● [Set].



You can also set the starting position of ticker by selecting “Ticker start PNT” instead of pressing [Start].
Entering characters →p.502

3 Select the items and edit the ticker.

To change the character or background color
Select “Font color” or “Background color” and select the color you want to change .
To select other colors, press [Change] to select a color.

To change the font size
Select “Font size”, and then select the font size from “Normal” or “Large”.

To change the character position
Select “Word alignment”, and then select the character position from “Left”, “Center” or “Right”.

To blink the ticker
Select “Blink”, and then select “ON”.

To underline the ticker
Select “Underline”, and then select “ON”.

To set the scroll method
Select “Scroll”, and select the type of scroll from “OFF”, “Scroll in”, “Scroll out” or “Scroll in & out”, and then select the direction that the ticker is scrolled from “Right to left”, “Left to right”, “Bottom to top” or “Top to bottom”.

4 When the editing is completed, select “Finish setting”.

5 Press ● [Play] to play the part that the ticker is displayed.



When you are playing the part where the new ticker is displayed and see the starting position of the existing ticker, a message appears asking if you want to end the ticker display on that position. Select “YES” to add a new ticker. Select “NO” to go back to the ticker list screen.

6 When you see the position where the ticker ends, press ● [Stop] and then [End].



You can also set the ending position of ticker by selecting “Ticker end point” instead of pressing [End].

7 When the ticker editing is completed, select “Finish editing” from the function menu.

If the ticker list is displayed
Press [Finish].

To check the movie with the edited ticker
Select “Finish editing” from the function menu or press [Finish], and then press [Play].

8 Press ● [Set].

9 Press ● [Save] and select “YES”.

The edited movie is saved to the same folder in which the original movie was saved.

Continued on next page

To check the details of stored tickers

After selecting “Edit” on the screen of the Step 1, highlight the ticker you want to check, and then press ● [detail].

To edit the stored tickers

Select “Edit” on the screen for step 1, highlight the ticker you want to edit and select one of the following categories from the function menu:

Change text	: To change the entered ticker.
Change effect	: To change the color of characters, character position and scroll direction.
Change start po.	: To change the position where the ticker starts.
Change end point	: To change the position where the ticker ends.

To delete the stored ticker

After selecting “Edit” on the screen of the Step 1, highlight the ticker you want to edit, and then press “Delete ticker”.

Rerecording in a movie <Rerecord sound>

You can reduce the existing voice and record new voice in a movie or i-motion.

1 Select “Rerecord sound” from the function menu.

2 Press [Start] to start rerecording.



To rerecord from the middle of the movie or i-motion

Press ● [Play] to play the movie until the position where you start rerecording, and then press [Start].

3 When the rerecording is completed, press [End] and then ● [Finish].

4 Press ● [Set].

To check the rerecording sound you have just recorded

Press [Play].

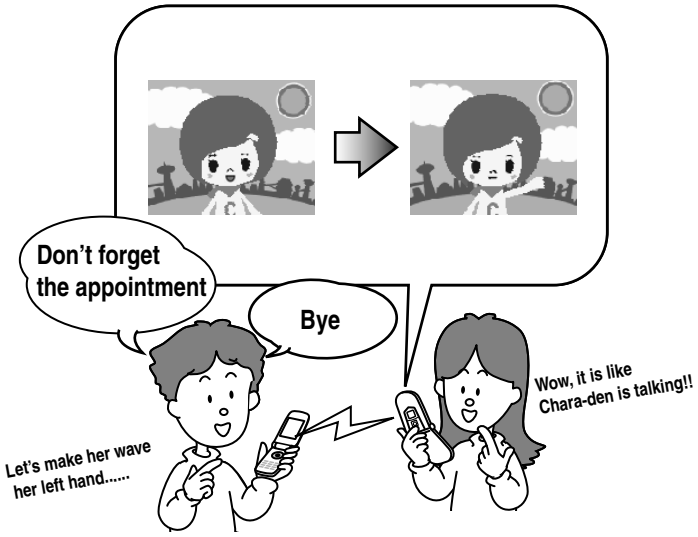
5 Press ● [Save] and select “YES”.

The edited movie is saved in which the original movie was saved.

Chara-den

Chara-den allows you to display a cartoon character as substitute images on the FOMA terminal of the other party instead of sending images displayed on your terminal during a videophone call.

- You can control the cartoon character to do various actions or move one's mouth to the sound to make it look as if the cartoon character were actually talking. →p.361
- You can set a still image/movie file that were taken with the "Rec. Chara-den" (p.362) on the standby display and send an i-mode mail with the file attached.
- You can download and add your favorite cartoon character other than using pre-installed cartoon characters. →p.224



Displaying Chara-den <Chara-den>

Default setting	Set image display: Fit in display	Substitute image: Dimo

You can display pre-installed Chara-den and Chara-den downloaded from a site.

- The following 3 Chara-dens are pre-installed.



©BVIG

Dimo



Chica



Nino

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Multimedia ▶ "Chara-den".**

The list screen of Chara-den is displayed.

Continued on next page

2 Select the Chara-den you want to display.



The selected Chara-den is displayed.

To change the size of display

Select “Set image disp.” from the function menu and then select the display size from “Actual size” or “Fit in display”.

To check Chara-den information

Highlight Chara-den that you want to check on the Chara-den list screen and select “Chara-den info” from the function menu.

You can check the default title, file name, file restriction information, file restriction information after taking a picture and file size in the Chara-den information.

After checking the detail information, press (CLR).

To use displayed Chara-den as a substitute image for video-phone

Select “Substitute image” from the function menu.

You can also set this up by highlighting Chara-den on the Chara-den list screen for step 1 and selecting “Substitute image” from the function menu.

NOTE

- When “Rec. file restriction” is set to “File restricted”, you cannot edit a picture or movie clipped with Chara-den record, save Chara-den in a miniSD memory card or attach Chara-den to an i-mode mail.
- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, the downloaded Chara-den cannot be played. When “Substitute image” has been set, it will operate with default settings. You will be able to display them and operate with your settings once the original FOMA card has been inserted. →p.48

Operating Chara-den

You can play Chara-den by selecting an action from the pre-installed choices to express Chara-den’s feeling with gestures.

- Even when you are not operating Chara-den, it continues unique actions depending on the type of Chara-den you selected.

1 Display Chara-den. →p.359

2 Press (*) to display the action list.



The action lists vary depending on the type of Chara-den.

You can also display the action list by selecting “Action list” from the function menu.

During displaying Chara-den, pressing dial keys corresponding to “1” and “#1” etc. located on the right to the action name on the action list screen allows you to play the corresponding action. →p.361



To display the detail of action

Highlight the action you want to check, and then press [detail].

After checking the detail of action, press [Exit].

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376



To switch the action mode

During displaying Chara-den, select “Change action” from the function menu. (Parts action mode) switches to the Emot’n action mode and (Emot’n action mode) switches to the Parts action mode.

(Emot’n action):

This action mode expresses the entire action of Chara-den such as its feeling.

(Parts action):

This action mode expresses the partial action of Chara-den such as the motions of its head, hands and feet.

3 Select the action you want to play.



The selected action starts playing.

To cancel playing the selected action

Press (0).

To select an action with the dial key

Press the following dial keys on the screen of the Step 1 to play the action.

“Emot’n action”: Press the single-digit number ((1) to (9)) marked on the right side of the action name on the action list or (#)(1) to (#)(9).

“Parts action” : Press the 2-digit number ((1)(1) to (9)(9)) marked on the right side of the action name on the action list.

<Example: To select “怒る” in Emot’n action>





Press (2) at Step 2 on p.360.

<Example: To select “右側の手を上げる” in Parts action>





Press (3)(3) at Step 2 on p.360.

To manipulate the mouthing of Chara-den to voice

If you enter voice during the display of Chara-den, some Chara-den can be controlled the mouthing of it as if talking.

When you play an action from the function menu or by pressing the dial key, the setting of action is given priority over the entered voice.



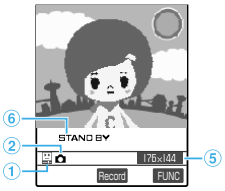
Shooting Chara-den <Chara-den shooting>

You can save a clipped picture or movie from Chara-den played in the “Chara-den”.

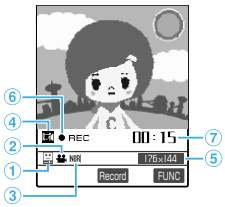
- The clipped picture and movie are saved in the Inbox folder of “Image” and “i Motion”, respectively.
- Setting at the time of shooting Chara-den →p.364

Continued on next page

How to view the screen when of shooting Chara-den



To take a picture



To record a movie

① Indicates the selected action mode (p.361).
: Emot'n action
: Parts action
② Indicates Photo mode.
: Still image
: Movie
③ Indicates setting of "Storage setting".
LONG : Long dur. mode
NOR : Normal
FINE : Fine mode
④ Indicates setting of "Movie type set".
: Normal
: Image
⑤ Indicates the recording size set on "Format setting".
176×144 : Size (L) (176×144)
128×96 : Size (S) (128×96)
⑥ Displays recording status.
STAND BY : Standby
REC : Recording
⑦ Indicates the remaining recording time in "minutes:seconds" (not display before recording).

Shooting a still image

1 Display Chara-den. →p.359

2 Select "Rec. Chara-den" from the function menu.

The picture list screen is displayed.

To switch to the movie recording mode

While "" is being displayed, select "Movie mode" from the function menu. The icon will be switched to "".

To change Chara-den

Select "Switch Chara-den" from the function menu to select Chara-den you want to change.
If you change Chara-den, all the selectable actions and motions when the Chara-den is not operated are changed.

3 Select the action of Chara-den you want to shoot.

Actions →p.361

To cancel playing the actions

Press (0).

4 Check the displayed Chara-den and then press ● [Record].

You can hear the shutter sound, when recording. Then, the check mode screen is displayed.

To restart the shooting

Press (CLR).
You go back to the picture shooting screen. Restart the shooting.

To attach a picture to an i-mode mail immediately after being shot and send the message

Press [MAIL].
The screen appears allowing you to compose an i-mode mail with the picture attached. →p.264
When "Rec. file restriction" is set to "File restricted", you cannot attach the picture to an i-mode mail.

5 Press ● [Save].

The shot picture is saved on the Inbox folder of “Image”.
When you want to continue shooting, repeat the Step 3 to 5.

■ Shooting a movie

1 Display Chara-den. →p.359

2 Select “Rec. Chara-den” from the function menu.

3 Select “Movie mode” from the function menu.



The movie list screen is displayed.

To switch to the picture recording mode

While “” is displayed, select “Photo mode” from the function menu.
The icon is switched to “”.

To change Chara-den

Select “Switch Chara-den” from the function menu to select Chara-den you want to change.
If you change Chara-den, all the selectable actions and motions when the Chara-den is not operated are changed.

4 Check the displayed Chara-den and then press ● [Record].



When recording, you can hear the sound that the recording is started Images are displayed during the recording.

To restart the shooting

Press C.

When the amount of data reaches maximum capacity, recording automatically stops.
Press ● [Stop] and the check mode screen in the Step 6 is displayed.

5 Select the action of Chara-den by pressing the dial keys.

Actions →p.361
The action is selected during recording.

To cancel playing the actions

Press 0.

6 Press ● [Stop] to finish the recording.



When stopped, you can hear the sound that the recording is stopped. Then, the check mode screen is displayed.

To check the recorded movie

Select “Check w/playing” from the function menu.

To restart the recording

Press C.
You go back to the movie recording screen. Restart the recording.

To attach a movie to an i-mode mail immediately after being recorded and send the message

Press [MAIL].
The screen appears allowing you to compose an i-mode mail with the movie attached. →p.264
When “Rec. file restriction” is set to “File restricted”, you cannot attach the movie to an i-mode mail.

Continued on next page

7 Press ● [Save].

The recorded movie is saved on the Inbox folder of “i Motion”.
When you want to continue recording, repeat the Step 4 to 7.

NOTE

- The incoming call lamp does not flash during the movie recording with the “Chara-den”. You cannot hear the shutter sound or the starting/ending sound when the “Manner mode” is set.
- If pressing a key during Chara-den shooting, the operation sound or keypad sound may be recorded. To prevent such sounds from being recorded, set “Manner mode” or set “Keypad sound” to “OFF”.
- When you receive an incoming call or an alarm notification before saving your Chara-den after shooting, the data will automatically be saved.
- If you attempt to shoot a Chara-den when the space in “Image” or “i Motion” is insufficient, a message notifying you of the insufficient space appears and you cannot shoot a Chara-den.

Making Chara-den shooting settings

Default setting	**Format setting : Large (176×144), Movie type set : Normal** **Storage setting : Normal**

You can set the recording size for pictures or movies you shoot. To record a movie, you can set image quality and select the recording type from Video + voice or Video.
You can view the setting detail on the screen that is displayed when Chara-den is shot.
→p.362

- The shooting setting of Chara-den is retained even when you exit Chara-den.

1 Display the function menu on the Chara-den shooting screen.
→p.362

To set the format setting
Select “Format setting” from the function menu to select the recording size
Large (176×144) : To save pictures or movies in QCIF size
Small (128×96) : To save pictures or movies in Sub-QCIF size

To set the movie type
Select “Movie type set” from the function menu and select recording item(s).
Normal : Records both images and voice
Image : Records images only

To set the storage setting for movies
Select “Storage setting” from the function menu and select image quality (filming speed) for the movie.
Long dur. mode : Lowers the image quality for each frame but extends the recording time
Normal : Maintains the normal setting for both image quality and recording time
Fine mode : Enhances the image quality for each frame but shortens the recording time

NOTE

- Even if you set “Format setting” to “Small(128×96)” when taking a still image, the setting will be switched to “Large(176×144)” if you change to shoot a movie.

Playing a Melody

You can play pre-installed melody, alarm, melody downloaded from a site, i-αppli and melody recorded from Bar code reader. You can also check the voice recorded in the Voice announce function.

● Folder structure and file format of “Melody” →p.368

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Multimedia ▶ “Melody”.



Folder lists

The list screen of the “Melody” folders is displayed.
You can select “Playlist” to play up to 10 melodies based on the program →p.367
During PIM lock setting, only the Pre-installed folders are displayed.

2 Select the folder that contains the melody you want to play.



Melody list

The melody list screen appears.
Icons before the title →p.369

3 Select the melody you want to play.



The melody starts playing.
The melody is played in the volume selected in “Phone/Video-phone” of “Ring volume”.
If the volume is set to “Silent” or “Step”, the melody plays in “Level 2”.

Operation while the Melody is played

The following operations are available while the "Melody" is played:

Operation key	Operation in Melody
◎	Play the next or previous melody
ⓘ(▲), ◎(▼)	Volume adjustment
0 to 9, ✱, #, ⓒ, ⓜ, ♪, ●	Stop
CLR	Exit

- After adjusting the volume, press ● [Set] or wait for approximately 2 seconds to return to the "Melody" screen.
- Even if you adjust the volume during playing, when the "Melody" ends, the volume returns to the setting specified in "Ring volume".

To check the melody information

Highlight the melody that you want to check the information on the melody list screen (p.365), and then select "Melody info" from the function menu.

Melody information provides the information of default melody title, file name, file restriction and the setting status of ring tone/alarm tone. After checking the melody information, press CLR.

To set a melody as ring tone

Highlight the melody you want to set as a ring tone on the melody list screen (p.365), and then select "Set as ring tone" from the function menu.

Select the items you want to specify. The items that have already been specified are displayed with "★".

You can also set the ring tone from the function menu while you are playing the melody.

To release the setting as a ring tone, press "Select ring tone" to change to other melody.

To compose i-mode mail

On the list screen (p.365), highlight a melody you want to attach and select "Compose message" from the function menu.

Composing new i-mode mail message →p.264

You can also compose i-mode mail from the function menu while a melody is playing.

You cannot select "Compose message" when the melody cannot be attached to a mail. You may not be able to attach some melodies to an i-mode mail depending on the amount of data. →p.260

NOTE

- If you try to play the melody when the Manner mode is set, a message appears asking if it is OK to play the melody. If you select "YES", the melody starts playing.
- In case that you receive an incoming voice/videophone call, an alarm notification of "Schedule", "Alarm clock" and "ToDo" is executed, or an operation in other functions is performed while the melody is playing, the playback is canceled.
- Melodies that "♪" or "♪" is marked before the titles, the part of replay may be specified in advance. Thus, only the specified part of the melody is played if it is used as a ring tone, etc. "Melody" allows you to play all the melodies.
- Even when "DL" is marked or the file restriction is set to "Unrestricted" in the melody information, some melodies may not be used as a mail attachment or transferred through Ir exchange.

Playing melodies in the order you like <Playing program>

You can play in series multiple music after selecting up to 10 music.

1 Highlight “Playlist” on the Folder list screen (p.365) in “Melody”, and select “Edit playlist” from the function menu.

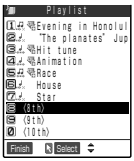
2 Select the number you want to add.

The items are played in the order you have added.

3 Select the folder and then select the melody you want to include on the playlist.

Press [Play] to play the melody.

4 Repeat the Step 2 and 3 and then press [Finish].



To release the selected melody from the playlist

Select the melody you want to release and then select “Release this”.

5 Press [Play] to play the melody from the playlist.



The melody starts playing.

The edited playlist is not released even “Melody” is turned off.

To release all the selected melodies

Highlight “Playlist” on the Folder list screen in “Melody”, and select “Release playlist” from the function menu.

The playlist is released in the following cases:

- When you delete even one melody from the playlist.
- When you change the title of even one melody on the playlist.
- When you change the file name of even one melody on the playlist.

Organizing Folders and Data

Pictures (still images) and movies shot with the built-in camera, data downloaded from mails and sites, data saved in a miniSD memory card are classified into the folders depending on the data type.
The data in the folders can be set to various functions such as ring tone and the standby display, and attached to a mail or sent to a PC.
You can also organize the data by adding user-composed folders.

- "Image" can store up to 400 images including still images taken by the built-in camera; "i Motion" up to 100 including movies filmed by the built-in camera; and "Melody" up to 160 melodies. These numbers can vary depending on the amount of data involved.
- You can add up to 20 folders each to "Image", "i Motion" and "Melody". You can edit the names of these user-defined folders. There is no user-defined folder by default.

Folder structure of Multimedia and storable data

Folder		File format	Storage data
Image		—	—
	Inbox	GIF JPEG SWF※1	You can specify this folder to save any type of image. Still images clipped from Chara-den and images, forwarded by infrared exchange and imported from miniSD memory cards will be stored in Inbox folder.
	Camera		
	(User-composed folders 1-20)		
	Pre-installed	GIF JPEG SWF※1	Built-in standby display or Wake-up display, animation, Deco-mail image.
	Original animation	—	Original animation, animation of the continuous multiple pictures taken by built-in camera.
	miniSD		Photos (still images) taken by the built-in camera and edited still images.
	Frame	JPEG GIF (IFM)	Items such as frames downloaded or attached to mail.
i Motion		—	—
	Inbox	MP4	You can specify this folder to save any type of movies and i-motion. Movies and i-motion forwarded by infrared exchange and imported from miniSD memory cards will be stored in Inbox folder. Moreover, at the time of purchase, a preset Chaku-motion (p.125) is stored.
	Camera		
	(User-composed folders 1-20)		
	miniSD	MP4 ASF※2	Movies filmed by the built-in camera and movies and i-motion that have been edited.
Melody		—	—
	Inbox	SMF MFi	Selected as a destination to save all kinds of melodies. Melodies transferred with the Ir exchange are first saved in the Inbox folder.
	(User-composed folders 1-20)		
	Pre-installed	MFi	Pre-installed melodies, alarm.
	Voice announce	—	Voice recorded in Voice announce function.
Chara-den		AFD	Used to play a program. Unlike other folders, you can not save data or edit a folder name, etc.

※1: "SWF" is a file format of Flash images (p.207).
※2: ASF format is available only for replay.

NOTE

- The "Playlist" folders in the "i Motion" and the "Melody" are used to play the programs. Unlike other folders, you cannot save data, move the folder, edit the folder name, or delete the folders.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

About icons appearing before the title

Two icons appear before the title on the list screen of each folder. An icon on the left indicates data format and the other on the right indicates the data source. The types of displayed icons are as follows:

■ Data format (left)

Icon	File format		File restriction	Memory/Replay restriction
JPG (Blue) / GIF (Blue)	JPEG GIF	Still images Animation	Unrestricted	Large
JPG (Light blue) / GIF (Light blue)				Normal
JPG (Dark blue) / GIF (Dark blue)				Unrestricted
JPG (Blue) / GIF (Blue)			Restricted	Large
JPG (Light blue) / GIF (Light blue)				Normal
JPG (Dark blue) / GIF (Dark blue)				Unrestricted
	SWF		Restricted	Normal
	GIF (IFM)		Unrestricted	Normal
			Restricted	Normal
	MP4	Movie/i-motion	Unrestricted	Unrestricted replay (playable)
			Restricted	
		i-motion		Restricted (playable)
				Restricted (unplayable)
(Blue note)※1			Unrestricted	Unrestricted (playable with a sound effect)
(Blue note)※1			Restricted	
(Blue note)※1				Restricted (playable with a sound effect)
				Restricted (unplayable)
(Orange note)※2	ASF	i-motion	Unrestricted	—
(Orange note)※2			Restricted	
♩ / ♫	MFi SMF	Melody	Unrestricted	—
♩ / ♫			Restricted	
	AFD	Chara-den	Restricted	—
	—	Data set to FOMA card operational restriction function.	—	—

※1: i-motion with "", "" or "" icons (the musical notes are blue) shown in front of the title are set to play sound effects by default.
Sound effects →p.127

※2: i-motion with "" and "" (the musical notes are orange) in front of the title is a file format that can be saved only to a miniSD memory card. (The i-motion cannot be saved in your FOMA terminal.)

■ Data source (right)

Icon	Data source
No icons	Pre-installed data
	Mail-attached data, data downloaded from sites, data retrieved from i-αppli
	Still images and movies shot with the built-in camera
	Data transferred with the Ir exchange and the cable connection, data from the bar code reader and a miniSD memory card
	Data downloaded from Chara-den
	Frame data ※

※: Frame icon is displayed for items regardless of data source.

Continued on next page

About title and file name

Titles and file names will be assigned automatically to still images and movies taken by the built-in camera or “Chara-den”. For downloaded i-motion, melodies and Chara-den, their original titles will be assigned.
Downloaded images will have titles which are the same as the file names.
Titles can be viewed on ,“i-motion info” ,“Melody info” and “Chara-den info”.
File names will be displayed when you select “image information” from the function menu or send them to PCs.

<Example: Still images taken by the built-in camera>
- Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
  (yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm →date and time the image was saved)
- File name: yyyymmddhhmmxxx
  (yyyymmddhhmm →date and time the image was saved, xxx: 3-digit)
  The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number in case there are multiple files with the same names.
  If date and time are not specified or there is no information to be included in the file name, file name will be “imagexxx”.
  Changing title and file name →p.375

Data (images and movies) which can be edited

Folder	Icon	Data	Editing images/movies
Image	JPG (Blue) / JPG (Light blue) / JPG (Dark blue)	JPEG image※1	Editable
		Still image shot with Chara-den※2	
	GIF (Blue) / GIF (Light blue) / GIF (Dark blue)	GIF image	Non-editable
	JPG (Blue)/ JPG (Light blue)/ JPG (Dark blue)	JPEG images with file restriction※3	
	GIF (Blue)/ GIF (Light blue)/ GIF (Dark blue)	GIF images with file restriction	
		Flash image	
	/	Frame	
		Image set with the FOMA card operational restriction function (When the FOMA card has been replaced with a different one)	
i Motion		Movie shot with the built-in camera※3	Editable
		Movie transferred via infrared exchange, etc.	
		Movie shot with Chara-den※2	
		i-motion downloaded from a site, etc.	Non-editable

※1: The editing functions may vary depending on image sizes. →p.344
※2: Still images and movies for which “Rec. file restriction” is set to “Restricted” can not be edited.
※3: Still images and movies shot with the built-in camera can be edited even if “File restriction” is set to “File restricted”.

● How to edit an image and movie →pp.344 and 354
● You cannot edit still image and movies of the “miniSD” folder.

Important

- It is recommended that the contents of data in each registered folder be kept by means such as separately taking notes and saving them to a miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (p.569) and FOMA USB Cable (optional) to save registered data in your PC.
- The contents of registered data may be lost due to malfunctions, repair work, etc. Please note that DoCoMo shall not be held liable for such losses and that it is recommended to take notes of the contents of registered data to guard against accidental loss.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Viewing the data in a folder

<Example: To view the data in "Image">

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Multimedia ▶"Image".

The folder list screen of "Image" is displayed.

2 Select the folder you want to check the data.



The data list screen of the selected folder is displayed.
When no data is stored, a message appears notifying you that there is no stored data in the folder.

3 Select the data you want to check.

The data is displayed or played.
Press CLR to return to the data list screen.

Composing, editing and deleting a folder

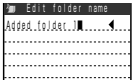
You can add a new folder in any folders (including a miniSD folder) of "Image", "i Motion" or "Melody" to organize the data.

● Each can contain up to 20 folders. Folder names can be edited.

<Example: To add a folder in "Image">

1 Select "Add folder" from the folder list screen (above) of "Image".

2 Enter the folder name and then press ● [Set].



The folder name can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
You can add a folder under the same name as that of the existing folder. When no character is entered in the folder name, you cannot add a folder.
Entering characters →p.502

To change the folder name

Highlight the folder that you want to change the folder name on the folder list screen, and then select "Edit folder name" from the function menu to change the folder name.

You can change the folder name of the user-composed folders only.

To delete a folder

Highlight the folder to be deleted on the folder list screen, select "Delete folder" from the function menu, enter the security code and select "YES".

- When you delete a folder, the data in the folder is also deleted.
- You can delete the user-composed folders only.
- When you try to delete a folder that contains images specified to the standby display, movies and i-motions, original animations, images specified to the user icons on the Schedule or melodies specified to the playlist and random melody, a message appears asking if it is OK to delete the folder. When you select "YES" to delete the folder, the specified screen changes as follows:
  - The specified standby display is reset to the default setting.
  - Original animation will be released.
  - The ring tone for which the random melody is set returns to default.
  - The user icons "1"-"5" displayed on the list screen of the Schedule changes to "".

Continued on next page

Selecting a folder in miniSD memory card in which you save movie/picture

When you want to save movies/pictures taken with the camera in a miniSD memory card, you can save such movies/pictures in a specific folder by setting a destination folder before shooting images.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, it can be purchased at various locations such as mass retailers of consumer electronics. →p.376
- You cannot specify the destination folder after shooting movie/picture.
- When there are more than one folder in the “miniSD” folder, you can set which folder movies/pictures taken with the camera are to be saved to.

<To save a still image in the miniSD memory card>

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ (Multimedia) ▶ “Image”.**

The folder list screen is displayed.

To save a movie in the miniSD memory card

Select (Menu) ▶ (Multimedia) ▶ ”i-motion”.

2 **Select “miniSD”.**

3 **Select a folder to set, and then open the function menu to select “Select folder”.**

4 **Select “YES”.**

NOTE

- If you power off the FOMA terminal, or check, initialize, or remove the miniSD memory card, the folder to which movies and pictures are saved is set to the folder that you created last in the FOMA terminal. When the setting is changed, set your destination folder again.
- The destination folder for saving movies and pictures may be changed by creating or editing folders on a PC. When the setting is changed, set your destination folder again.

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Moving the data to another folder

You can select multiple data at a time and move them to another folder. The folders can be moved between the folders saved in “Inbox”, “Camera” and user-composed folders.

<Example: To move the data in “Melody”>

1 Select “Move folder” from the function menu on the melody list screen (p.365) , and then select the destination folder.

To move 1 data in “Image” or “i Motion”
Highlight the data to move, select “Move” from the function menu and select the folder as the destination.

To move multiple data in “Image” or “i Motion”
Select “Multiple-choice” from the function menu and select the image to be moved. Then select “Move” from the function menu and select the folder as the destination.

2 Select the data you want to move.



The selected data is marked.
When you select the marked data again, it is unmarked. When you want to unmark all the selected data, select “Release all” from the function menu.
When you select “Select all” from the function menu, you can select all the data in the folder.

3 Press [Finish] and then select “YES”.

Deleting data

The procedures for deleting images, movies, i-motion, melodies and Chara-den are described below.

- You can delete one data, delete multiple selected data, or delete all data. However, you cannot select multiple Chara-den for deletion.
- Data in the “Pre-install” folder or the pre-installed Chara-den cannot be deleted.

Deleting one data

1 Highlight data you want to delete on the list screen, and then select “Delete this” from the function menu.

2 Select “YES”.

To cancel deleting
Select “NO”.

Continued on next page

Deleting selected multiple data

1 Select “Multiple-choice” from the function menu on the list screen.

For melodies
Select “Delete these” from the function menu.

2 Select the data you want to delete.



For images
Select the image you want to delete.
The frame of the selected image turns red.
When you select the checked images again, they are released. When you want to unmark all the selected images, select “Release all” from the function menu.
When you select “Select all” from the function menu, you can select all the images in the folder.



For movies, i-motion or melodies
Select the titles of data you want to delete from the list.
The selected titles are checked.
When you select the checked titles again, they are released. To release all selection, select “Release all” from the function menu.
You can select all titles in the folder by selecting “Select all” from the function menu.

3 Perform one of the following operations according to the type of data you want to delete.

For images, movies or i-motion
Select “Delete” from the function menu and then “YES”.

For melodies
Press [Finish] and then select “YES”.

To cancel deleting
Select “NO”.

Deleting all data

● Even you delete all the Chara-den, the pre-installed Chara-den cannot be deleted.

1 On the list screen, select “Delete all” from the function menu.

2 Enter your security code.

Security code →p.152

NOTE

- When you delete an image, a movie or i-motion specified to the standby display, the setting is released and is returned to the default.
- When you delete the melody that is set as a ring tone for the phone or mail, the settings of “Select ring tone”, “Utilities (Phonebook)” and “Utilities (Group)” are released and return to the default.
- If you delete image set for original animation link file, the setting is canceled and reset to the defaults.
- If you have an incoming call while deleting data, you may not be able to answer the call immediately.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Managing Various Data

To manage various data, the following operations are available.

■ To change title

Highlight the data you want to change on the data list screen. → Select “Edit title” from the function menu. → Change the title.

- The title displayed on the data list screen can be changed.
- You can enter 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters for images, movies and i-motion, 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters for melodies and 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters for Chara-den.
  Entering characters → p.502

■ To initialize the title

Highlight the data with the title to be initialized. → Open the function menu and select “Reset title”. → Select “YES”.

- The modified title is returned to the initial title.
- The titles for data in “Image” cannot be reset.

■ To edit the file name

Highlight the data that you want to edit the file name on the data list screen. → Select “Edit file name” from the function menu. → Edit the file name.

- The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch characters (excluding extensions). Half-pitch “.”, “@”, “/”, “(”, “)”, “,”, “-”, “_”, “:”, “”, “~”, “&”, “?”, “!”, “¥”, “#” and “*” cannot be entered as the file name.
- To edit the file name, the part except the extension is editable. After the file name is edited, the appropriate extension for the file format is added automatically.
  Entering characters → p.502

■ To sort data

On the data list screen, select “Sort” from the function menu. → Specify display order.

- You can sort the display by selecting “Chronological ↑ / Chronological ↓ / By title ↑ / By title ↓ / By size ↑ / By size ↓ / By retrieve date” on the data list screen.
- “Chronological ↑ ” is selected by default.
- Your sort setting will remain if you display the folder list screen or quit “Image” or “i Motion”. If you quit “Melody”, the sort setting will return to “Chronological ↑ ”.
- You cannot sort the data on the list screen of Chara-den.

■ To check the memory

Select “Memory info” from the function menu on the data list screen. (For Chara-den, select “No. of memos”.)

- Displays the information on the available memory space and the used memory space of the FOMA terminal. For Chara-den, the number of the registered Chara-dens and the remaining number of Chara-den that can be saved are displayed. After confirming the memory space, press (CLR).

■ To set file restriction

Highlight the data that you want to set file restriction on the data list screen. → Select “File restriction” from the function menu.

- When you attach files to mail, select “Restricted” if you want to prevent the files from being sent from the destination terminals. If you want to allow the files to be sent from the destination terminals, select “Unrestricted”. Even if you select “Restricted” for “File restriction”, the files can be sent by infrared exchange or saved in miniSD memory card from the destination terminals.
  If the recipient is other than FOMA N900iG, files may not be sent or output.

■ To check the file information

- You can check information on each file saved in the “Image”, “i Motion”, “Chara-den” or “Melody”.
  →p.338, p.349, p.360 and p.366.
- You cannot check the information in files saved in the “Pre-installed” and “Voice announce” folders, and in files pre-saved in the “Frame” folder.

■ To select a destination folder for storing the contents of the miniSD memory card

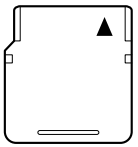
- When you turn off the power, check, format or remove the miniSD memory card, a destination folder for storing the contents of the card is set to the folder that you last created on the FOMA terminal. When this occurs and the folder is changed from the previous setting, set the destination folder again by referring to “Selecting a folder in miniSD memory card in which you save movie/picture” (p.372).
- When you create or edit folders on a PC, the destination folder may change. When this occurs and the folder is changed from the previous setting, set the destination folder again by referring to “Selecting a folder in miniSD memory card in which you save movie/picture” (p.372).

About a miniSD Memory Card

You can use a "miniSD memory card", which is a further miniaturized version of the SD card as external memory, by inserting it in your FOMA terminal. Loading a miniSD memory card into a miniSD memory card adapter allows you to use it on the PC compatible with the SD card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, it can be purchased at various locations such as mass retailers of consumer electronics.
- You can export/import or replace data such as still images and movies taken by FOMA terminal, Phonebook data, mail and bookmarks between miniSD memory card and FOMA terminal. You can also display or play still images and movies stored on your miniSD memory card on FOMA terminal.
- You cannot set an image or movie that is stored in the miniSD memory card as an image or movie to be displayed on the screen of your FOMA terminal. Before performing this setting, import the image or movie to your FOMA terminal.
- "SD" is displayed, when a miniSD memory card is loaded.
- When data in a miniSD memory card is operated or the data is exported or imported, the charge lamp flashes in green (Color 5). If the power is turned on with a miniSD memory card inserted, or a miniSD memory card is inserted during charging of a terminal with the power off, the charge lamp flashes in green (Color 5).
- Your FOMA terminal supports miniSD memory cards up to 128 MB. (as of October, 2004)
  For the latest information about the supported miniSD memory card, see the following sites:
  i-mode:「iMenu」-「メニューリスト」-「ケータイ電話メーカー」-「みんなNらんど」
  PC: NEC Wai Wai Mobile http://www.n-keitai.com/ (Japanese only)

miniSD memory card



Handling and care

※ Please format miniSD memory cards on the FOMA terminal for which you will be using them. miniSD memory cards formatted on other devices may not be compatible. →p.391

Please take note the following precautions:

- For notes on using the miniSD memory card and miniSD memory card adapter, see the instruction manuals provided with the miniSD memory card and miniSD memory card adapter, respectively.
- Make sure that the FOMA terminal is turned off when you install/remove miniSD memory cards.
- Insert the miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal correctly. Otherwise, you cannot use it.
- miniSD memory card needs to be formatted before use. You cannot export data from FOMA terminal without first formatting the card.
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card from your FOMA terminal, turn off the terminal, or remove the battery pack when performing operations such as the following:
  - Formatting the miniSD memory card
  - Exporting or importing data
  - Shooting in the Long duration mode
  - Using a FOMA terminal as a miniSD reader/writer
- The miniSD memory card may not be used if the battery power of your FOMA terminal is insufficient.

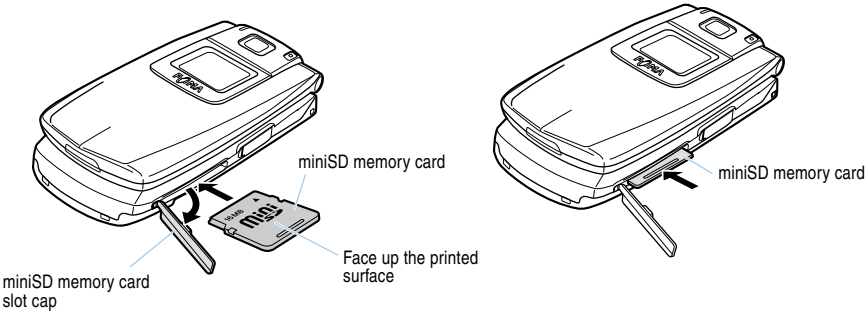
＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.

- A miniSD memory card may feel warm when it is removed after being used for a long period of time. This is normal and does not indicate a problem.
- When another terminal or unit reads the data stored in the miniSD memory card by using your FOMA terminal, or your FOMA terminal reads the data stored in the miniSD memory card by using another terminal or unit, some data may not be read.

How to insert/remove the miniSD memory card

Make sure that the FOMA terminal is turned off when removing the miniSD memory card. Do not force miniSD memory card into or pull the card out of the slot.

Inserting the miniSD memory card



1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cap.

2 Insert a miniSD memory card to the slot to the lock position.

Insert slowly with printed surface of the miniSD memory card faced up.
The card will lock if it is placed in the correct position.

3 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

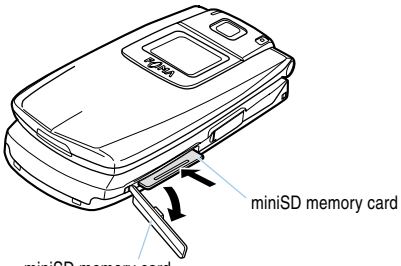
Once the miniSD memory card is in your terminal, "" appears on your screen when the power is turned on.

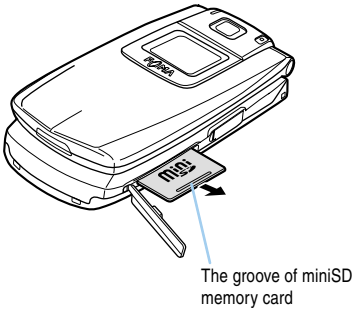
NOTE

- If the miniSD memory card has defects or is not correctly formatted, "" will appears.

Continued on next page

Removing the miniSD memory card





1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cap.

2 Push the card in slightly.

Push the card and then release. Part of the card will be exposed.
Bear in mind that the miniSD memory card may be sprung out from the slot at this time.

3 Pull the miniSD memory card out slowly.

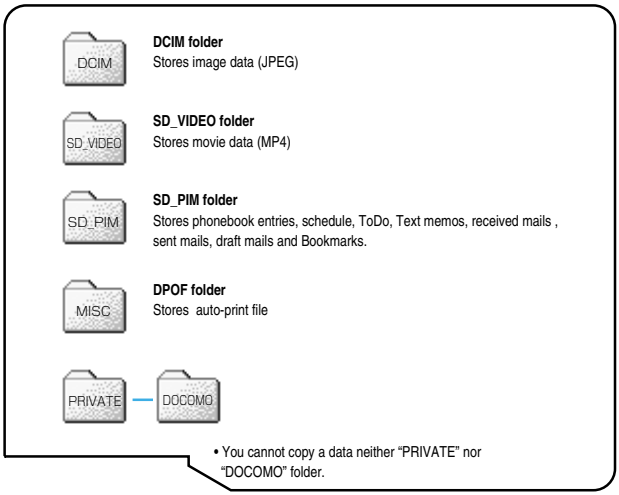
Hold the card by the groove and pull it out straight.

4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cap.

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Folder structure

A miniSD memory card has the following folders each used for storing different types of data:



NOTE

- When you save data from a PC to a miniSD memory card, save the data in the appropriate folder for the data type. You can save data of different types in other folders, but the FOMA terminal will not recognize the different data type and will not display the data. Also, if you delete or move these folders to another folder, the confirmation message appears asking if you want to format the memory card when you insert the card into FOMA terminal. Formatting the memory card deletes all data stored in it. If you do not format the memory card, you can display data stored in the folders that have not been deleted or moved. For example, if you delete DCIM folder, you can still display data stored in SD_VIDEO and SD_PIM folders.

Continued on next page

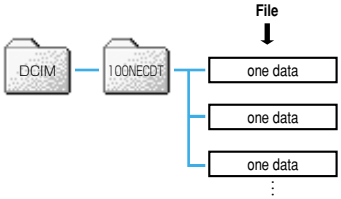
Creating folders

“File” refers to 1 item of data or multiple items of data that can be stored as a single grouping.
If you export data to miniSD memory card, a subfolder to store the file will be selected automatically according to data type. The subfolder name and file name will also be chosen automatically. Files stored in each subfolder are as follows:

■ DCIM folder

This folder will be created automatically when you copy a still image for the first time. Data will be saved in a subfolder within this folder.
Single still image data creates 1 file.
Folder names and file names will be as follows:

- Folder name : nnnNECDT (nnn=100-999)
- File name : NEC_mmmm (mmmm=0001-9999)



NOTE

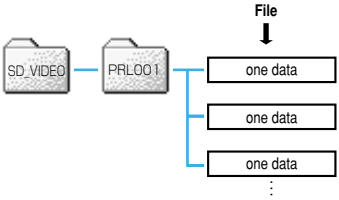
- Use half-pitch alphanumeric characters like "NEC_mmmm" for naming a file to be saved in a miniSD memory card using a machine such as PC. Other alphanumeric characters can be used instead of "NEC". Other name formats cannot be recognized and displayed in a FOMA terminal.
- If multiple still images, all of which have the same file name “mmmm”, are saved in the same folder, the title “--------” of the list display appears, and the files can simply be copied, moved and deleted. If the data is copied or moved to another folder, it can be renamed automatically. You can display the images or edit the titles.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

■SD_VIDEO folder

This folder will be created automatically when you copy a movie for the first time. Data will be saved in PRL001 subfolder within this folder.
Single movie data creates 1 file.
Folder names and file names will be as follows:

- Folder name : PRLxxx (xxx=001-FFF: hexadecimal number)
- File name : MOLxxx (xxx=001-FFF: hexadecimal number)



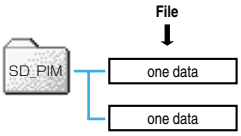
NOTE

- Use half-pitch alphanumeric characters like "MOLxxx" for naming a file to be saved in a miniSD memory card using a machine such as PC. Other name formats cannot be recognized and displayed in a FOMA terminal. Moreover, the file name in which other characters are used instead of “MOL” is not recognized by the FOMA terminal.

■SD_PIM folder

Either single data or all data will be saved as 1 file.
For example, when you copy all received mail, all received mail messages will be saved in a singular file created.
File names will be as follows:

- File name : PIMnnnnn (nnnnn=00001-65535)



Continued on next page

Number of items that can be stored in a miniSD memory card

The amount of data that you can store in a miniSD memory card depends on the memory space for the card you use. The following chart shows the maximum number of files you can store in a subfolder and the maximum number of subfolders you can add. Adding subfolders and exporting data into different subfolders will give you more spaces to store files. However, the file capacity varies depending on the amount of data contained in the file.

Folder name	Max. No. of folders	Max. No. of files saved per folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535

The memory capacity and unused memory of miniSD memory card can be checked by “Memory info”. Actual memory is less than indicated on the miniSD memory card label.

- If you do not have enough available memory on the miniSD memory card, and try to export the Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, Text memo, Mail, Bookmark, a message appears to inform you that exporting is not possible due to the lack of memory. In addition, if a still image and movie are exported, “Export” of the function menu will be displayed in grey. Replace the miniSD memory card or delete unnecessary data before you export.
- If the number of files in the destination folder has reached the maximum limit, a message appears to inform you of this. You will not be able to export data onto that miniSD memory card.
- When the miniSD memory card is full, you cannot add folders, edit titles or do copying or moving for still images or movies. Delete unnecessary data before performing such operations.

Data that can be copied between a FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card

The following types of data can be copied between a FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card:

Data type	To be copied
Still image	JPEG data in the Inbox folder, Camera folder, miniSD folder, User composed folder
Movie	MP4 data in the Inbox folder, Camera folder, miniSD folder, User composed folder
Phonebook	Names, furigana (reading), Phone number(s), Mail address(es), Memo, Image, Movie, Memory No, Secret properties※1 ※2, Group numbers※1, Group names※1
Schedule	Data (from), Data (to), Schedule, Category, Alarm, Repeat, Secret properties※1 ※2
ToDo	ToDo text, Category, Complete date, Due date, Status, Priority, Alarm
Text memo	Make date, Last modify date, Category, Text
Received mail※3, Sent mail, Draft mail, SMS	Read/Unread, Message type, Message box, Sender, Receiver, Subject, Date/Time, Message, Attached data
Bookmark※3	URL, Title

※1: Only “Export all”, “Import & add all” and “Import & OW all” are available for copying this type of data.
※2: The secret properties are the data registered as the Secret mode.
※3: Folders (folder names) can be transferred when all received mails or Bookmark data are exported.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

NOTE

- Since still image data will be converted or compressed if required when exported/imported, file sizes may change and image quality may be degraded.
- Some still images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high may be reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.
- Still images larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high and still images with data volume larger than 600KB cannot be imported. Moreover, depending on the still image, some may not be saved when exceeding 596 KB.
- If “Forwarding image” is “OFF”, still images and movies registered in your FOMA terminal will not be exported when the phonebook data will be exported.
- No secret code of the phonebook can be exported/imported.
- Since this FOMA terminal does not support speed dial, the speed dial data will not be displayed.
- Set “Secret store” to “OFF” for “Export one” of Phonebook or Schedule data.
- When all Phonebook data are exported, “Own number” data are also exported as a Phonebook.
- If a protected received/sent mail is exported or imported, the protection setting is canceled. If all mails are exported or imported, the protection settings are also copied.
- The following mails are exported after the melody, i-motion or i-αppli startup setting is deleted: Mails to which a melody with “File restricted” is attached or pasted (except data received via infrared exchange or cable, or data imported from a miniSD memory card), i-motion mails before i-motion is downloaded, and mails to which the setting of i-αppli startup is pasted.

Copying Data in a FOMA Terminal to a miniSD Memory Card

You can export data between your FOMA terminal and a miniSD memory card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, it can be purchased at various locations such as mass retailers of consumer electronics. →p.376
- The operation to copy data from a FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card is called “export”.
- There are two ways of exporting data, “Export one” and “Export all”.

	Description	See page
Export one	Saves selected single data in a miniSD memory card.	p.384
Export all	Saves all selected data in a miniSD memory card.	p.385

NOTE

- Transmission time will depend on the amount of data to be exported.
- While exporting the SD-PIM data, other communications such as voice calls, videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail and packet transmissions are not available.
- Do not remove miniSD memory card until exporting is complete.
- When an export is stopped by pressing ● [Select] or (PWR HELP), some data may be stored in a miniSD memory card.
- If the same data as data that already exists is exported, the data is saved as different data without overwriting the old data.
- The miniSD memory card may not be used if the battery power of your FOMA terminal is insufficient. If an alarm sounds to notify you that the battery is running out during export or import, the operation stops.

Exporting single data from FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card

To export a movie or still image data

• You can export data from the Inbox folder, a camera folder or a user-defined folder.

<Example: To export a still image of "Image">

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Multimedia ▶"Image".

2 Select the folder that includes the data you want to export.

3 Highlight the data you want to export.

To display the data
Highlight the data you want to display and press ● [Disp.].

4 Select "Export" from the function menu.

The data highlighted in Step 3 is exported to the miniSD memory card.
If exported destination folder already has maximum number of data stored, a new folder will be created automatically and the data will be stored in that folder.

To export data for a Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, mail, Text memo or Bookmark

<Example: To export data for a Phonebook data>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Phonebook.

2 Select the Phonebook you want to export.

To export schedule data
Checking the Schedule →p.417
To export ToDo data
Checking ToDo data →p.422
To export Received mail, Sent mail and Draft mail
Displaying the mail detail screen →p.278
To export Text memo data
Checking the content of text memo →p.433
To export Bookmark data
Highlighting the bookmark you want to export on the Bookmark list screen. →p.216

3 Select "Export one" from the function menu.

4 Select "YES".

Data will be exported.
To cancel "Export one"
Select "No" and press ● [Select].

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Exporting data from FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card

● You cannot export data for still images or movies in a batch.

<Example: To export all Phonebook in a batch>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶"SD-PIM".

2 Highlight "Phonebook" and select "Export" from the function menu.

To export all Schedules, ToDo
Highlight "Schedule" and select "Export" from the function menu.
To export all Inbox, Outbox or Draft mail
Highlight "Inbox", "Outbox" or "Draft" and select "Export" from the function menu.
To export all Text memo data
Highlight "Text memo" and select "Export" from the function menu.
To export all Bookmark data
Highlight "Bookmark" and select "Export" from the function menu.

3 Enter the security code.

Enter your security code and press ● [Set].
The entered security code appears as underscores "_".
Security code →p.152

4 Select "YES".

Data will be exported.
To cancel "Export"
Select "NO" and press ● [Select].

Previewing Data Stored in a miniSD Memory Card

You can display and check the data stored in a miniSD memory card.

● The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, it can be purchased at various locations such as mass retailers of consumer electronics. →p.376

■ Still image or movie data

<Example: To display movie data of "i Motion" stored in a miniSD memory card>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Multimedia ▶"i Motion".

2 Select "miniSD".

3 Select the folder with the data you want to display.

Continued on next page

4 Highlight the data you want to display and press ● [Play].



The data will be played.

■ Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, Mail, Text memo or Bookmark data

<Example: To display text memo data>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶“SD-PIM”.

2 Select “Text memo”.

To display Phonebook data
Select “Phonebook”.

To display Schedule. ToDo data
Select “Schedule”.

To display Inbox, Outbox or Draft data
Select “Inbox”, “Outbox” or “Draft”.

To display Bookmark data
Select “Bookmark”.

3 Select data you want to display.



Copying Data in a miniSD Memory Card to a FOMA Terminal

You can import data stored in a miniSD memory card to a FOMA terminal.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, it can be purchased at various locations such as mass retailers of consumer electronics. →p.376
- The operation to copy data from a miniSD memory card to a FOMA terminal is called “import”.
- The ways of importing data are as follows:

	Description	See page
Import & add one	Transfers single data stored in a miniSD memory card to a FOMA terminal.	p.387
Import & add all, Import & add	Saves all data in a specific file stored in a miniSD memory card on a FOMA terminal.	p.387
Import & OW all, Import & overwrite	Deletes data stored in a FOMA terminal and registers all data in a specific file stored in the FOMA terminal.	p.388

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

NOTE

- Transmission time will depend on the amount of data to be imported.
- While importing data, other communications such as voice calls, videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail and packet transmissions are not available.
- Do not remove miniSD memory card until importing is complete.
- When an import is stopped by pressing ● [Select] or ☎, some data may be stored in a FOMA terminal.
- If the same data as data that already exists is imported, the data is saved as different data without overwriting the old data.
- The miniSD memory card may not be used if the battery power of your FOMA terminal is insufficient. If an alarm sounds to notify you that the battery is running out during export or import, the operation stops.

To import data from miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal

You can import data stored in a miniSD memory card to a FOMA terminal.

- You cannot import data for still images or movies in a batch.
- You cannot perform "Import & add" for data in the phonebook when "Keypad dial lock" is set.
- When the data of the FOMA terminal becomes full during import, a message notifying you that no more data can be imported appears and only the data that has been read by the time the message appeared is added.
- MP4 data that exceeds 800 KB is reformatted to 800 KB or smaller. A message appears to inform you it will take a while to import such data. For movie data with a ticker, the ticker is deleted and only the movie data is imported.

Still image and movie data

<Example: To import single data for a still image in the “Image”>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Multimedia ▶“Image”.

2 Select “miniSD”.

3 Select the folder with the data you want to import.

4 Highlight the data you want to import.

To display the data

Highlight the data you want to display and press ● [Disp.].

5 Select “Import” from the function menu.

The data highlighted in Step 4 is copied to a FOMA terminal.
Still image data that does not have a title will be indicated by date/time (“yy/mm/dd -HH:MM”). Data for movies without titles will be displayed with its file name.

Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, mail, Text memo or Bookmark data

<Example: To import single schedule data>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶“SD-PIM”.

2 Select “Schedule”.

Continued on next page

3 Select data you want to import.

4 Select “Import & add one” from the function menu.

To import multiple data in a batch

Select “Import & add all” and press ● [Select].
Then enter your security code and press ● [Set].
Security code →p.152

5 Select “YES”.

Data will be imported.
Once the amount of data reaches the capacity limit of the FOMA terminal, importing ceases. The data that has already imported is stored in the FOMA terminal. However, when “Import & add one” is performed for mails in Inbox/Outbox, the oldest mail of the read unprotected mails (in Outbox, unprotected mails) is deleted before the imported mail is saved.

To cancel “Import & add”

Select “NO” and press ● [Select].

Importing and overwriting data in FOMA terminal by data in miniSD memory card

You can overwrite selected data stored in a FOMA terminal with data that is contained on a miniSD memory card. Once overwritten, the original data is lost. Before overwriting, ensure that your stored data does not include any important information that you want to retain.

- You cannot overwrite still images or movie data.
- The Phonebook data cannot be overwritten and imported when “Restrict dialing” or “Keypad dial lock” is set.
- All data with “Call rejection” or “Call acceptance” set are overwritten.
- When the data of the FOMA terminal is full while you are overwriting, a message saying that you cannot import data appears. Only the data which have been loaded before the message appears is overwritten.

<Example: To overwrite Phonebook data>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶“SD-PIM”.

2 Select “Phonebook”.

3 Select “Import&overwrite” from the function menu.

4 Enter the security code.

Enter your security code and press ● [Set].
The entered password appears as underscores (“_”).
Security code →p.152

5 Select “YES”.

Data will be imported.

To cancel “Import&overwrite”

Select “NO” and press ● [Select].

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Managing the miniSD Memory Card

You can specify images in the miniSD memory card for printing, delete data, check the data information, format the miniSD memory card and check for memory card failure.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, it can be purchased at various locations such as mass retailers of consumer electronics. →p.376
- You can create, edit and delete a folder in the miniSD memory card. →p.371

Making the print setting <DPOF setting>

If you pre-select information for printing such as designating still image data contained on the miniSD memory card and specifying how many you want to print, they can be printed on a printer or at a print shop compatible with DPOF (Digital Print Order Format).

- This setting cannot be made when the free space in the miniSD memory card is insufficient.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ (Multimedia) ▶"Image".

2 Select "miniSD".

3 Select the folder that contains the data for which you want to perform the DPOF setting.

4 Highlight the data for which you want to perform the DPOF setting and select "DPOF setting" from the function menu.

5 Select "Print".

To cancel the DPOF setting

Select "Print OFF".

To cancel the DPOF setting for all data

Select "All print OFF".

6 Set the number of copies (between 1 to 99) you want to print.

Deleting data

You can delete data stored on miniSD memory card.

- The Phonebook, schedule, ToDo, mail, text memo or bookmark data is saved as a single data regardless of the type of data, a single exported file or all exported data. To delete the all exported data, select "Delete this".

Still image and movie data

<Example: To delete movie(s) from "i Motion">

1 Select (Menu) ▶ (Multimedia) ▶"i Motion" ▶ "miniSD".

2 Select the folder where data to delete is saved.

Continued on next page

3 **Highlight the data you want to delete and select "Delete this" from the function menu.**

To delete data in a batch

Select "Delete all" and press ● [Select]. Then enter your security code and press ● [Set].
Security code →p.152

4 **Select "YES".**

Data is deleted.

To cancel data deletion

Select "NO" and press ● [Select].

Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, mail, Text memo and Bookmark data

<Example: To delete bookmark data>

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "SD-PIM" ▶ "Bookmark".**

2 **Select "Delete" from the function menu.**

To delete data in a batch

Select "Delete all" and press ● [Select]. Then enter your security code and press ● [Set].
Security code →p.152

3 **Select "YES".**

Data is deleted.

To cancel data deletion

Select "NO" and press ● [Select].

Checking data information <Memory info>

You can check the remaining memory and used memory of a miniSD memory card.

<Example: To check the information of still image data in "Image">

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Multimedia ▶ "Image" ▶ "miniSD".**

2 **Select the folder containing the information to check.**

3 **Select "Memory info" from the function menu.**

The remaining and used memory information is displayed for the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card, respectively.

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Formatting miniSD memory card <miniSD format>

※ Please format miniSD memory cards on the FOMA terminal for which you will be using them. miniSD memory cards formatted on other devices may not work well.

You can format a miniSD memory card for use with your FOMA terminal.

- Once you format miniSD memory card, data contained on the card is deleted. Before formatting, ensure that your stored data does not include any important information that you want to retain.
- If the miniSD memory card formatting is executed, all entire data contained on the card is deleted, then setup system areas.
- If the miniSD memory card has defects, you cannot proceed miniSD memory card formatting.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "SD-PIM".

2 Select "miniSD format" from the function menu.

3 Enter the security code.

Enter your security code and press ● [Set].
The entered security code appears as underscores "_".
Security code →p.152

4 Select "YES".

The miniSD memory card is formatted.
If mini SD formatting is interrupted by pressing [Quit] or you receive a call, "" will appear.

To cancel "miniSD format"

Select "NO" and press ● [Select].

Checking miniSD memory card condition

A power outage during miniSD memory card operations may damage data stored on the card. You can check the memory card condition and restore content.

- If the card has defects, you cannot activate the check disk program.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "SD-PIM".

2 Select "Check miniSD" from the function menu.

3 Select "YES".

Data contained on the miniSD memory card is checked.

To cancel "Check"

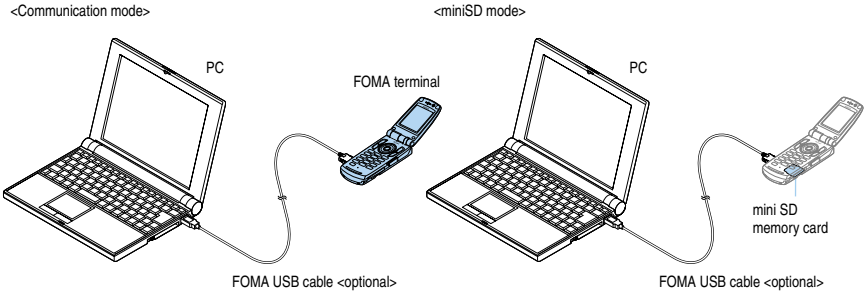
Select "NO" and press ● [Select].

Using miniSD Reader/Writer

When a miniSD memory card is inserted, the FOMA terminal can serve as a miniSD reader/writer for your PC, allowing you to view data in the miniSD on your PC screen.

● The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, it can be purchased at various locations such as mass retailers of consumer electronics. →p.376

USB Mode Setting	Description
Communication mode	Uses the external connection terminal for packet communication and data transmission via the cable connection.
miniSD mode	Uses the external connection terminal for a reader/writer of miniSD memory card. You cannot export/import data to miniSD memory card nor display/format the data in the memory from FOMA terminal.



● The following devices are required in order to use the FOMA terminal as a miniSD reader/writer:

Item	Description
Connection cable	• FOMA USB cable (optional)
PC	• A PC with an available USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev 1.1) in which FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used.
OS	• Windows Me, Windows 2000 and Windows XP (Japanese versions)

Important

- Make sure that FOMA terminal and PC are connected to one another properly. If not, you may not only fail to exchange data but also lose it.
- If the battery level is very low or your FOMA terminal is out of battery, you may not only fail to exchange data but also lose it. Make sure that your FOMA terminal has sufficient battery power. Moreover, check the power source of the PC.
- Do not unplug the FOMA USB cable when copying data from the PC to the FOMA terminal and Incoming/charging lamp is blinking. You cannot transfer data, and data may be lost.

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Using the FOMA terminal as a miniSD reader/writer

Default setting	Communication mode

- Formatting the miniSD memory card on either a PC or FOMA terminal allows you to use it as a miniSD reader/writer. When using the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, however, you must format it on the FOMA terminal without connecting to a PC.
- This function cannot be used during Ir exchange, or data transmission or packet communication via the cable connection.
- Use the OS standard device driver.

1 (Menu)▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “USB mode setting”.

2 Select “miniSD mode”.

3 Connect the FOMA terminal with the PC using the FOMA USB cable.

“” appears during the “miniSD mode”, and “” appears during data transfers.
The miniSD memory card is displayed as a storage memory in My Computer on the PC. It is not recognized as a reader/writer on the PC during a data transfer between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card.
How to fit it up →p.462

To cancel the “miniSD mode”

After unplugging the FOMA USB cable, switch to the “Communication mode ”.
How to remove →p.463

NOTE

- To format the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, disconnect the FOMA USB cable and switch to “Communication mode” to carry out “miniSD format”.
- You can format the miniSD memory card from the PC during “miniSD mode”, but you cannot use it from the FOMA terminal.
- While referring data to the miniSD memory card from SD-PIM of the FOMA terminal or exchanging data between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, you cannot switch to the “miniSD mode”.
- While recording movie in the “Long duration mode”, you cannot switch to the “miniSD mode”.
- Even if you write data that cannot be recognized on the FOMA terminal into the miniSD memory card, you cannot see it from the FOMA terminal.

Ir exchange/OBEX

Data Transfer with Infrared Exchange/Cable Connection

You can transfer data such as the Phonebook or received mails between your FOMA terminal and another FOMA terminal or PC, using infrared exchange or a cable connection.

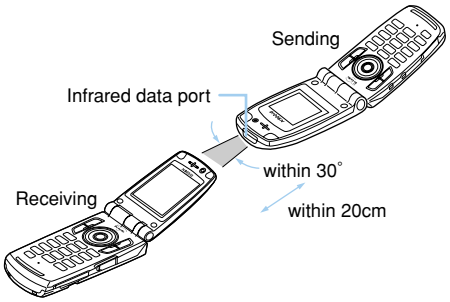
- You can transfer individual data items or a batch consisting of multiple data items via infrared exchange with another FOMA terminal or PC that is equipped with the infrared exchange function. “Ir” is displayed during the infrared exchange.
- You can receive individual data items from a PC or transfer a batch consisting of multiple data items between a FOMA terminal and PC by connecting the terminal and PC with the “FOMA USB Cable (optional)” and using OBEX, which is a protocol for data communication.“” is displayed while a cable is connected.
- The following data can be exchanged:
  - Phonebook entries
  - ToDo lists
  - Draft mail
  - Pictures (still images)※
  - i-motions downloaded from sites or a Web pages※
  - Personal data in “Own number”
  - Sent mail
  - Text memos
  - Movies※
  - Schedules
  - Received mail
  - Melody※
  - Downloaded still images※
  - Bookmark data

※: You cannot send multiple melodies, pictures (still images), movies, downloaded still images and i-motions downloaded from sites or Web pages in batch via infrared exchange.

Notes on data transfer using infrared exchange

Note the followings regarding data transfer using the infrared exchange function:

- Enable reception on the receiving FOMA terminal first and get closer to each infrared data port of the receiving and sending FOMA terminals within 20 cm.



- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the infrared data ports are aligned on the same level.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals during transmission.
- Do not place any object between the FOMA terminals or block their infrared data ports during transmission.
- Adjust placement of the FOMA terminals and try again if data transmission was not successful.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed in direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.

Notes on data transfer with the cable connection

Note the followings to transfer data with the cable connection:

- The following equipment/tools are required:

Item	Description
Required equipment/tools	• FOMA USB cable (optional) • PC with a USB port
OS	• Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Each in Japanese)
Required software	• N900iG communication setting files

- For system requirements and installation procedures for the data communication software, see the software's instruction manuals.
- "USB mode setting" must be set to "Communication mode" before performing data transfer. →p.393

Important

- Make sure that FOMA terminal and PC are connected to one another properly. If not, you may not only fail to exchange data but also lose it.
- If your FOMA terminal is out of battery or the battery level is very low, you may not only fail to exchange data but also lose it. Make sure that your FOMA terminal has sufficient battery power. Moreover, check the power source of the PC.
- If an error occurs during transmission of all data from a PC to a FOMA terminal, you may lose all transmitting data contained in the FOMA terminal. Make sure to check cable connections, battery level of FOMA terminal and power source for PC beforehand.

Before performing data transfer

- Data transfer cannot be performed while other functions are running. Close all the other functions before you perform data transfer. During a data transfer session, no other functions can operate.
- Data transfer cannot be performed during a voice call, videophone call, i-mode and packet communication. →p.567
- Data transfer cannot be performed during “PIM lock”, “All lock” or “Self mode”. During “Keypad dial lock”, the phonebook data cannot be transferred.
- When “Restrict dialing” is set, the phonebook data cannot be received. However, the phonebook data with the “Restrict dialing” setting and “Own number” data can be sent.
- Data transfer may not be performed depending on the conditions of the destination side’s FOMA terminal. Some models may not accept settings such as folder sort settings for received mails and bookmarks, or may not be able to register data such as the contents of Deco-mail correctly.
- The FOMA terminal’s infrared exchange function and data transfer function via cable connection are in compliance with IrMC1.1. Data transfer to/from a terminal or a PC that does not comply with IrMC1.1 may not be performed. Even if the other side’s terminal complies with IrMC1.1, some models or applications may not allow data transfer.
- IrMC does not support the transfer of still images, melodies, movies and i-motions with cable connection. You need data transfer software that allows FOMA N900iG to transfer such data.

Phone operation during data transfer

- During data transfer, the FOMA terminal goes into the out-of-coverage status, in which voice call, videophone call, i-mode, i-mode mail and packet communication are not available. However, in some situations such as right after starting a transfer session, another communication may be established as it reaches the FOMA terminal, causing data transfer to be interrupted. Also, after you complete an Infrared exchange or a data transfer session, the out-of-coverage status may continue for a while longer.
- When one of the following things occurs while an Infrared exchange session is in progress, the session is interrupted and a message asking whether the session is to be continued is displayed.
  - The recipient side does not receive data for 30 seconds.
  - The sender side cannot detect the recipient terminal.

  You can retry the session by selecting “YES”. To cancel the session, select “NO”. If you do not perform the operation in 30 seconds, the Infrared exchange closes automatically.
- Data transfer may take a long time depending on the data size. Transferring phonebook data may take a long time because it includes registered images and movies. To make it shorter, you can set the still images and movies in the phonebook not to be sent by setting “Forwarding image” to “OFF”.

Data that is sent or received during data transfer

- Data received in the FOMA terminal is registered as follows.
  - Still images, movies, i-motions, and melodies are all stored in the Inbox folder.
  - If you receive all the images and movies, the images and movies that are stored in your phonebook will be deleted.
  - When a single bookmark data is received, it is stored in the “Bookmark” folder.
  - Personal data in “Own number” is registered as one phonebook entry.
  - Phonebook data is registered to a blank entry with the smallest memory number between “010” and “699”. If all entries from “010” to “699” are used, the phonebook data will be registered to a blank entry with the smallest memory number between “000” and “009” (“Two-touch dial” (p.121).)
  - If all the phonebook entries are received, images registered to the phonebook will be stored in “Image”, and movies registered to the phonebook will be stored in “i Motion”. However, if the data size of the stored images and movies exceeds the capacity, the images and movies are not stored.

Continued on next page

- Up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters can be sent/received as the title of a still image, movie or i-motion. Up to 50 half-pitch characters can be sent/received as a melody title. If the title exceeds the allowed maximum number of characters, the characters over the maximum are deleted.

● The following data cannot be transferred.
- Phonebook and SMS in FOMA card
- Frame data and Flash image
- Melody/image/movie/i-motion with the FOMA card operational restriction setting

● The following data cannot be received.
- Image that is not JPEG or GIF format
- Movie that is not MP4 format
- Image, movie, i-motion and melody of size and amount that cannot be handled on the FOMA terminal

● In the following cases, data cannot be registered and a message notifying this fact is displayed.
- When you receive a bookmark of the same URL
- When you receive a schedule data that has repeat setting of the same date and time
- When you receive a schedule or ToDo data but the local time is not set on the FOMA terminal
- When a data of the same type is received but the maximum capacity for data of this type has already been reached or the memory is full

● When you transfer phonebook data, be aware about the following.
- When phonebook data is transferred, data items such as the name, reading, phone number, mail address, zip code, address, memo, still image and movies are transferred as well as the icon information. When a phonebook entry has more than one phonebook or mail address, all the data is transferred.
- The phonebook secret code cannot be transferred.
- When a single phonebook entry registered as secret data is transferred using infrared exchange, the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode” setting of the entry is canceled.
- If you send all the phonebook entries, they are transferred according to the memory number order.
- If you send all the phonebook entries, “Own number” data will be transferred as well. Personal data (except the phone number) in the recipient’s “Own number” will be overwritten
- If a pictograph or symbol is used for the Phonebook data and the data is sent to a mobile phone or PC that does not support such pictograph or symbol, it may not be displayed correctly on the recipient side.

● When you transfer mail data, be aware of the following.
- When a protected sent/received mail is transferred, it is registered at the recipient side with the protection canceled.
- When the transferred mail is an i-motion mail from which i-motion is not yet downloaded or a mail in which the i-αppli start-up setting is pasted, mail data is transferred with the pasted data deleted. When the file restriction of the attached data is “Restricted”, the attached data will also be deleted from the data to be transferred. Images of some formats will also be deleted from the data to be transferred. However, in the case of sent/received mail whose attachment is a picture (still image) or movie taken using the built-in camera or data received via a cable connection or imported from a miniSD memory card, such mails are sent even if the file restriction is set to “Restricted”.
- When there is not sufficient space in the Inbox folder, mails in the Trash box folder are deleted before mail data is stored in the Inbox folder. When the received data is larger than the current available space, the oldest mail that is received and read but not protected is overwritten.
- A sent mail is overwritten on the oldest and unprotected sent mail in the Outbox folder.
- A received mail folder for mails with mail-connected i-αppli cannot be transferred. Mails in the folder are all stored in the Inbox folder.
- When you use a pictograph or symbol in the text body of a mail and send it to a mobile phone or PC that does not support such pictograph and symbol, it may not be displayed correctly on the recipient side.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Transferring Individual Data Items

You can transfer individual data items between your FOMA terminal and a PC or another FOMA terminal.

● You cannot send data one by one from FOMA terminal to a PC with the cable connection.

Sending individual data items via infrared exchange

You can only send a single data at one time.

1 Display the data that you want to send.

2 Select “Ir exchange” from the function menu.

3 Select “YES” to send data.

Set the other party's terminal to receive mode. →below
Data transmission begins.
If the transmission is successful, a message appears to inform you that the exchange is complete.

To cancel the transmission
Select “NO”.

Receiving individual data items via infrared exchange

You can only receive single data at one time.

● You can receive and use data started by using i-αppli →p.323

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Ir exchange”.

2 Select “Receive”.

Receive mode is on.

To cancel receiving data
Press CLR or 1 PQRS.

3 Send the data from the sender’s FOMA terminal.

Sending data →above
Data reception begins.

If destination is not FOMA terminal
Bar signal that indicates communication status may not be displayed.

If no action is taken for 30 seconds after the transmission is completed
The received data is deleted.

4 Select “YES”.

After receipt of data, a message appears to inform you that the received data has been stored.

To select not to store received data
Select “NO”.

Receiving individual data items via cable connection

● Data transmission operation procedures vary depending on the data exchange software program you are using. For details, refer to the instruction manual for the data communication software.

<Example: To receive individual phonebook data from a PC>

1 Use the data communication software on the PC to “1-data write”.

For data transmission procedures, see the instruction manual for the data exchange software program.

2 Send data from PC.



Indicator bar may become very slow depending on the amount of data to be transmitted. A message asking you whether to store the data in the Phonebook appears.

3 Select “YES”.



If the transmission is successful, a message appears to inform you that the exchange is completed. If, after the transmission is completed, no action is taken for 30 seconds on the screen shown on the left, received data will be deleted and the screen displayed will terminate.

Transferring Data in Batch

You can transfer multiple data in batch between your FOMA terminal and a PC or another FOMA terminal.

● If you receive all data, all data you have stored in your terminal including protected mails and secret data are overwritten. Frames and Flash images will not be deleted. Before receiving all data, ensure that your stored data does not include any important information that you want to retain.

● Your session number is used to ensure that the receiving and sending FOMA terminals are accurately recognized for data transfer in a batch. Session number →p.152

● The communication indicator only shows the approximate data amount that has been transmitted. Indicator bar may become very slow depending on the amount of data to be transmitted and the indicator on the receiving terminal may not reflect the same.

● If multiple data are transferred in batch, the data may be listed in a different order on the recipient side.

Transferring data in batch via infrared exchange

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Ir exchange”.

2 Select “Data exchange” to prepare for sending or receiving data.

3 Enter the security code.

The entered security code appears as underscores “_”.
Security code →p.152

4 Select an item you want to set.

To send data
Select “Send” and select the data you want to send in a batch.

To receive data
Select “Receive”.

5 Enter the session number.

Enter the same session number between sending and receiving sides. The entered session number appears as underscores “_”.
Session number →p.152

To send data
Select “YES”.

To receive data
Select “YES” after message indicates to overwrite all receiving data. Then a message appears to inform you that the transfer is complete.

Transferring data in batch via cable connection

● Data transfer operation procedures vary depending on the data communication software you are using. See the instruction manual for the software program.

<Example: To send all data from a FOMA terminal to PC>

1 Send a data (send all data).

For data transmission procedures, see the instruction manual for the data communication software.
You need to enter a session number in the PC.
The session number must be a 4-digit number.

2 Enter your security code to FOMA terminal.

The entered security code appears as underscores “_”.
Security code →p.152

3 Enter the session number to FOMA terminal.

Enter the same session number as the one you entered in Step 1. The entered session number appears as underscores “_”.
Session number →p.152

4 Send data.

If the transmission is successful, a message appears to inform you that the exchange is complete.

NOTE

● The following data cannot be registered:
- Still image that exceeds 600KB (Data of 600 KB or smaller may not be registered depending on the type of data.)
- A movie that exceeds 800KB

● Communication status (indicator bar) may not be displayed depending on the destination device.

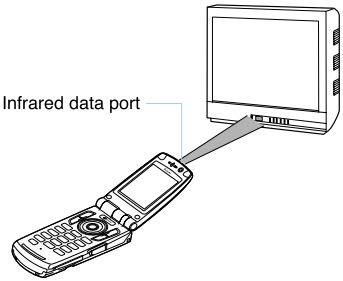
Using Infrared Remote Control Function

You can download i-αppli software for remote control and use your FOMA terminal as a remote controller for TV or VCR system.

- You need to download the program for the product you want to control. Note that there may be no program available for your product and that remote control operation may not be possible even with the correct program if your product is not compatible.
- You can download remote control software for FOMA terminal from the sites listed on the iMenu.
- If you are selecting “Self mode”, you can not use the remote control function.

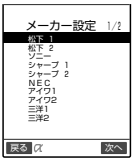
Remote control operation

- Hold your FOMA terminal with the infrared port facing towards the infrared receiver of the target device. Operable range is approximately 4 meters. This range may vary depending on the ambient light.
- “” will appear during remote control operation.



Using as TV Remote Control

FOMA terminal has i-αppli TV remote control software programs.



- “TVリモコン (TV remote control) ” contains 20 types of remote control programs. Select a program for your television set. Programs for some television sets may not be available.
- Even if there is a program for your TV maker, it may not apply to certain models or certain functions.
- The following remote control programs are contained in “TVリモコン(TV remote control) ”:
  - Panasonic 1/2
  - Sony
  - Sharp 1/2
  - NEC
  - Aiwa 1/2
  - Sanyo 1/2
  - Pioneer
  - JVC 1/2
  - Funai 1/2/3
  - Mitsubishi
  - Toshiba
  - Hitachi
  - Fujitsu General

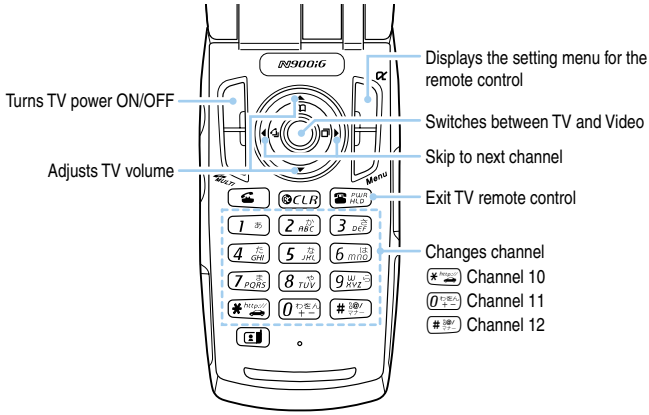
1 **Select (Menu) ▶ (i-αppli) ▶ “Software list”.**

2 **Select “TVリモコン (TV remote control) ” and press [Select].**



When you initiate the remote control for the first time or you change your TV set, select the TV manufacturer (remote control data).

3 Use as a TV remote control.



To select TV manufacturer and change remote control design

You can select remote control data for your TV or change the TV remote control to your favorite design.

1 Startup “TVリモコン (TV remote control)” and press [設定 (Setting)].

To select remote control data

Select “メーカー設定 (TV manufacturer) ” and press ●. Then, select remote control data and press ●.

To change the TV remote control design

Select “デザイン設定 (Change design) ” and press ●. Then, select design and press ●.

To set the sleep screen when it is set to the i-αppli display

Select ”待受画像設定 (Standby image setting)” - “画像選択 (Select image)” - “YES”, and then an image from a folder.

You cannot select an image from the “Pre-installed” folder.

To set the time until it goes to sleep

Select “スリープ設定 (Sleep setting)” and press ●, set the time duration (30 seconds - 3 minutes) and press ●.

If you use it as i-αppli standby display, the image you select in “待受画像設定 (Standby image setting)” is displayed when you perform no operation for set time duration.

To let it go to sleep

Select “スリープ強制移行 (Forcible transition to sleep)” and press ●.

When you select (Menu) - - “Software list” - “TVリモコン (TV remote control)” to start up, “スリープ強制移行 (Forcible transition to sleep)” is not displayed in the setting menu.

To return to the remote control screen

Press [戻る (Return)].

Preventing Phonebook Images from Forwarding

Default setting	ON

You can set the stored still images, movies or i-motions in the phonebook so as to not be forwarded when performing data transfer via Ir exchange or the cable connection, or exporting data to a miniSD memory card.

● Transferring Phonebook entries may take a long of time because the still images, movies and i-motions registered in the Phonebook are also forwarded. To avoid this, set “Forwarding image” to “OFF” to prevent images, movies and i-motions from being forwarded.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory .**

2 **Select “Forwarding image”.**

If you select “ON”
All data stored in the Phonebook are transferred.

If you select “OFF”
Phonebook data are transferred excluding still images, movies and i-motions.

＊The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Other Useful Functions

Multi Access ..... Multi access 404
Multi Task ..... Multi task 407
Using Alarm Notification ..... Alarm setting 409
Using the Alarm Clock Function ..... Alarm clock 412
Using the Schedule Function ..... Schedule 413
Making the ToDo List ..... ToDo 421
Changing the Menu Display to Enable Quick Operations 425
Storing Your Personal Data ..... Own number 426
Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice ..... Voice memo 429
Displaying the Call Duration During a Call ..... Call time display 430
Checking the Call Duration ..... Call duration/Reset call duration 430
Using Your Terminal as a Calculator ..... Calculator 431
Entering a Memo ..... Text memo 432
Using the Dictionary ..... Dictionary 434
How to Use the Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Optional> ..... Earphone/microphone with switch 435
Receiving a Call Automatically with the Earphone <Optional> ..... Automatic answer 436
Setting the Neuropointer ..... Neuropointer 437
Resetting the Setting to the Default ..... Reset settings 440

Multi Access

Multi access is a function to allow you to simultaneously use a voice call, packet communication and SMS. With this function, you can make multiple communications at the same time such as receiving a mail during a voice call or making a call during i-mode.

● For functional differences during International roaming, see p.538.

Communication lines available simultaneously

With this multi access function, the FOMA terminal can use the following three lines simultaneously:

Communication sector	Connection
Voice call	One line
i-mode, i-αppli, i-mode mail	Any one line
Packet communication by connecting to PC	
SMS	One line

● For the Multi Access Combination Patterns, see p.567.

NOTE

● You cannot use the multi access during a videophone call. However, the SMS can only be used during a videophone call.
● During the multi access (when using i-mode during a voice call), communication charge is required for each communication line.

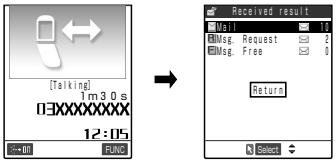
Receiving a call during communication

When receiving a call from another line during communication, you can make second communication simultaneously without interrupting the first communication.

Receiving an i-mode mail during a voice call

When receiving an i-mode mail during a voice call, the i-mode mail is received on the talking screen. You can read the received i-mode mail without ending the call.

1 Hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or more.



The i-mode mail received result screen appears.

To switch the screen from the task menu
Switching of the task menu →p.408

2 Read the i-mode mail.



How to read i-mode mail →p.267

3 Hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or more.

The display changes to the talking screen.

NOTE

- No ring tone sounds and "Mail" icon notifies by turning on or flashing when you receive an i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free during a voice call.
- If you receive an i-mode mail during a voice call when "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred", "" flashes in blue or red and the display changes to the i-mode receiving screen. After receiving, press [Select] to read the i-mode mail. In addition, the talking screen will reappear if you did not operate for about fifteen minutes from receiving.

Receiving a voice call during i-mode/packet communication

When receiving a voice call during i-mode connection, mail transmission or packet communication via PC, the display changes to the incoming voice call screen. You can answer the call without disconnecting these communications.

- You cannot receive videophone calls when you are using i-mode.

1 Press .



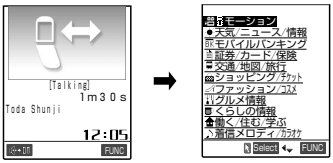
The display changes to the talking screen, and you can talk.

To return to the i-mode screen without answering the call

Hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or more.

The other party does not hear the message and is waiting for you to answer the call.

2 When you finish the conversation, press .



The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

To return to the i-mode screen while talking

Hold down for 1 second or more.

Using another communication during communication

You can implement second communication simultaneously by using another line without interrupting the current communication.

- To switch the display while using the multi access function, hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or more, or select a function you want to display from the task menu. →p.408

Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

Press (Menu) during a voice call to display the i-mode menu from the main menu. From the i-mode menu, connect to the i-mode. →p.204

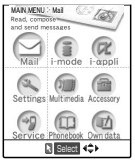
Sending an i-mode mail during a voice call

Press (Menu) during a voice call to display the mail menu from the main menu. From the mail menu, you can compose and send an i-mode mail.

Continued on next page

1 Press (Menu) during a voice call, and select the mail menu.





Menu operations →p.40

2 Compose and send an i-mode mail.



Composing/Sending i-mode mail →p.248

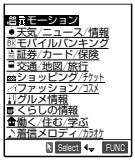
3 Hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or more.

The talking screen reappears.

Making a voice call during i-mode

You can make a voice call during i-mode connection or mail transmission without ending i-mode.

1 Hold down (Menu) for 1 second or more during i-mode.





The standby display is displayed.

2 Make a voice call.



How to make a voice call →p.62

3 When you finish the conversation, press (PWR HOLD).





The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

To return to the i-mode screen while talking

Hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or more.

NOTE

- If you make a videophone call during i-mode, a message saying "Disconnecting" will appear, and then you can make a videophone call. When you finish a videophone call, the i-mode screen will reappear.

Multi Task

Multi task is a function to allow you to simultaneously use multiple functions. You can use up to 3 functions simultaneously from the following main menu groups, one function from each group.

Group	Task
Mail group	Menu functions in Mail
i-mode group	Menu functions in i-mode and i-αppli
Setting group	Menu functions in Settings and Service
Tool group	Menu functions in Multimedia, Phonebook, Accessory and Own data



- As for i-mode group, Setting group and Tool group, you cannot use two or more functions of the same group simultaneously.
- You are charged for a call charge even while using other functions during a call.
- See p.567 for details on multi task combinations.

Calling up task function

Follow the procedure below to call up the second and third tasks.

1 Hold down (Menu) for 1 second or more.

The standby display appears.

2 Select a task of a group that has not been activated.

To call up from the main menu

Press (Menu), and select the task. →p.40

To call up from the menu number

Enter the menu number of the task you want to call up. →p.554

To call up the mail menu

Press [MAIL]. →p.248

To call up the i-mode menu

Press [i-mode]. →p.204

You can check which tasks are called up with the following icons.

: Indicates that multiple tasks have been called up.
: Indicates that a single task has been called up.
No icon : No task has been called up.

NOTE

- The task in the same group has already been called up when you try to call up a task, there are two patterns for switching the task: 1) A message appears asking you whether to switch the task or not; 2) The menu function is automatically switched (while the mail menu or i-mode menu is displayed). If the message appears, select "YES" to call up a new task. In this case, the previous task ends and data being edited is automatically saved. Depending on a task, data being edited may not be saved.
- If you try to startup the fourth task when three tasks are already started simultaneously, a message notifying you that functions cannot operate any more appears.

When several tasks are activated, you can switch the task to operate. To switch task, there are two ways: 1) press (MULTI) to display the task menu, and then select a task you want to use; and 2) hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or more to switch a task by screen.

Switching task with the task menu

When multiple tasks are activated, press (MULTI) to display the task menu in a list. If you select a task from the list, the selected task appears on the display.

- The standby display is always displayed at the end of the task menu.
- During a voice call, the standby display is not displayed in the task menu.

1 Press (MULTI).

The task menu is displayed in a list.

2 Select the task you want to use.

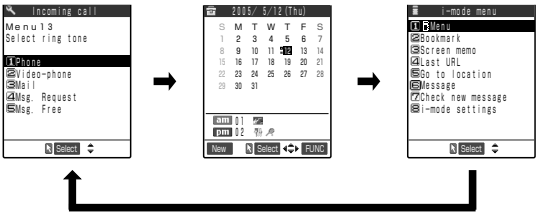


The selected task appears on the screen.

Switching task by screen

Hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or more to switch the task in the order they were started. Switching the task does not end a task in operation or disconnect a voice call.

- While the main menu is displayed, the task does not switch even if you hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or more.
- Even if (MULTI) is held down for more than one second during Multi task, the standby screen does not appear. Moreover, tasks are not switched even if (MULTI) is held down for more than one second in the standby screen.



NOTE

- If you display the standby display during the Multi task, the screen set in “Stand-by display” for “Display setting” appears even if the “i-αppli stand-by display” has been set.
  The standby display cannot be displayed while other task is operating even if software has the capability to return to the standby display after it is started as i-αppli. Depending on software, during an attempt to return to the standby display, a message notifying you that operation cannot be continued any more and the software ends may appear. In addition, the standby display setting may be canceled.

Terminating task

How to end tasks is as follows.

- Switch to the task you want to terminate, and press .
- Highlight the task you want to terminate while the task menu is displayed, and press .
- Press [END ALL] while the task menu is displayed to terminate all tasks.

NOTE

● Turning the FOMA terminal off terminates all tasks.

Using Alarm Notification

Default setting	Alarm preferred

You can specify whether the alarm notification of the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" and "ToDo" are set to "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred". If you set the alarm notification to "Operation preferred", an alarm sounds only while the standby display is displayed. Select this setting if you do not want an alarm to sound while you are using the FOMA terminal. If you set the alarm notification to "Alarm preferred", an alarm sounds even while you are using the FOMA terminal or talking. Select this setting if you want an alarm to sound at any time.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Clock" ▶ "Alarm setting".

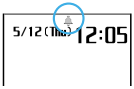
To give priority to operations
Select "Operation preferred".

To give priority to alarm notification
Select "Alarm preferred".

Alarm notification operations

When you set alarm notification for the "Alarm clock", "Schedule", and "ToDo", an icon appears indicating that the alarm notification has been set on the stand-by display. At the specified time, an alarm sounds according to each function.

When you set alarm notification



When you set alarm notification for the "Alarm clock", "Schedule", and "ToDo", an icon appears on the standby display.

When an alarm is set for today (excluding alarms that have already been activated)
" " appears.

When an alarm is set for tomorrow or a later date
" " appears.

When the specified time is reached

The alarm notification is made for each function with the following operations:



Alarm clock



Schedule※



ToDo※

※ Animations displayed at the alarm notification of "Schedule" and "ToDo" vary according to icons or categories set.

Continued on next page

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule/ ToDo
While the standby display is displayed	If “Snooze setting” is set to “OFF”, an alarm tone sounds continuously for about 5 minutes. If “Snooze setting” is set to “ON”, an alarm tone sounds continuously for about 1 minute, repeating 6 times at intervals of about 5 minutes. An animation appears on the display and the image window.	An alarm tone sounds continuously for about 5 minutes, and an animation appears on the display and the image window.
When the power is off	No alarm notification is provided on the set time. When the set time elapses while the power is off and no repetition (“1 time”) is set, the setting is “OFF”. If a repetition (“Daily” or “Select day”) is set, the settings for later days remain set.	No alarm notification is provided at the set time. However, the settings remain set.
During a call	The clock alarm tone (pippipi···) sounds 3 times from the earpiece speaker. An animation appears on the display.	
When receiving/making a call	Alarm notification is provided in the same way as “During a call”. For an incoming call, alarm notification is provided when you answer, in the same way as for “During a call”.	
During i-mode/mail transmission	Alarm notification is provided in the same way as “While the standby display is displayed”.	
During operation of the SD-PIM function, or data transfer by Ir exchange or cable connection	No alarm notification is provided even at the specified time. After the data transmission is finished, “ Miss ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby display. →p.411	
When the earphone/ microphone is connected (When setting “Earphone” to “Earphone”)	An alarm tone sounds for about 20 seconds from the earphone. After about 20 seconds, an alarm tone sounds from both the earphone and speaker. An animation appears on the display and the image window.	
When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON” and PIN1 code entry screen after turning on the power is displayed	Alarm notification is provided in the same way as “While the standby display is displayed”. If you clear the alarm notification display, the PIN1 code entry screen reappears.	Alarm notification is provided after you enter the correct PIN1 code.
During All lock/PIM lock	No alarm notification is provided even at the specified time. After canceling the All/PIM lock, “ Miss ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby display (p.411). When the power is off during the All/PIM lock, the power is not turned on even at the specified time and the “ Miss ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear even after canceling the All/PIM lock.	No alarm notification is provided even at the specified time. After canceling the All/PIM lock, “ Miss ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby display. →p.411

NOTE

- When the alarm notification settings for the “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” and “ToDo” are set to the same time, the priority is given as follows. ① has the top priority.
  ① Alarm clock
  ② ToDo
  ③ Schedule
  If alarm notification could not be provided, “ Miss ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- At the alarm notification for “Schedule” entries stored as secret data, a secret animation appears with no alarm message. At the alarm notification when the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode” is set, the stored message and animation appear. Regardless of whether the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode” is set, the specified alarm tone sounds.
- The alarm tone for the “Schedule” and “ToDo” sounds at the volume set in the “Phone/Video-phone” of the “Ring volume”.
- During a call, the clock alarm tone sounds at the volume set in the “Volume”.
- During the manner mode, the alarm tone sounds at the volume set in the “Manner mode set”.
- If the “Vibrator” is set to other than “OFF”, an alarm tone sounds with vibration.

To stop an alarm tone

Alarm tone for Alarm clock

When “Snooze setting” is set to “OFF”

If you press any key, the alarm tone stops and the animation changes to a still image. If you press any key again, two short cancellation tones “pipip” sound and the alarm notification display is cleared.

When “Snooze setting” is set to “ON”

If you press any key, the alarm tone stops, the animation changes to a still image, and the alarm message “Snooze” appears. While “Snooze” is displayed, the alarm notification is provided again after about 5 minutes. If you press PWR HLD while “Snooze” is displayed, two short cancellation tones “pipip” sound and the snooze function is canceled.

Alarm tone for Schedule and ToDo

If you press any key, the alarm tone stops, the animation changes to a still image, and the alarm message remains displayed. If you press any key again, the alarm message disappears. However, if you press the side key with the FOMA terminal folded, the alarm notification display remains displayed.

When you receive a call during alarm notification

The FOMA terminal stops the alarm notification and incoming call receiving starts. The snooze function for the “Alarm clock” is canceled.

NOTE

- If the “Keypad sound” is set to “OFF”, no cancellation tone for the snooze notification sounds.

Checking the contents of alarm notification that could not be provided

When alarm notification could not be provided, “ Miss ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the stand-by display. You can check the contents of the missed alarm (Missed alarm) from this desktop icon.

- The latest item from the “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” and “ToDo” items is stored.

1 Press ● on the standby display and select “ Miss ”.



The missed alarm information for the “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” appears.

To delete “ Miss ” desktop icon

Hold down CLR for 1 second or more.

After “ Miss ” desktop icon is deleted, you cannot check the missed alarm information.

2 After checking the contents, press CLR.



The standby display reappears and “ Miss ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon disappears.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When the alarm settings for the “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” and “ToDo” are set to the same time and the alarm notification could not be provided, each missed alarm information appears.



Using the Alarm Clock Function

Default setting	OFF

You can use your FOMA terminal as an alarm clock. At the set time, the FOMA terminal notifies you by emitting an alarm tone and displaying an animation.

- Up to 3 alarm clock settings can be stored. Only one setting can be enabled.
- Make sure that you set the date and time in the “Set local time” beforehand. →p.57
- During the “PIM lock”, you cannot set the Alarm clock.
- For the alarm notification for the Alarm clock, see p.409.

Setting the time for the alarm clock

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Alarm clock”.

2 Press ● [Set].



When no alarm clock setting is set



When the alarm clock settings are set

The list screen for stored alarm clock settings appears.

When no alarm clock setting is set

The alarm clock setting operation starts. Go to Step 4.

3 Highlight “<Not stored>” and press [Edit].

To change the stored alarm clock setting

Highlight the stored item to be changed and press [Edit].

4 Specify the respective settings in order.

Time setting : Set the time when an alarm sounds.

Repeat : Set the repeat pattern for the alarm clock. If “1 time” is set, an alarm sounds only on the day when the alarm clock is set. If “Daily (D)” is set, an alarm sounds daily at the set time. If “Select day (W)” is set, an alarm sounds on selected days of the week.

Alarm tone : Set the alarm tone from “INBOX” folder, your original folder, “Pre-installed” folder(“Clock Alarm” (pippipi, pippipi), “Pattern 1 to 3”, “Melody” and “Alarm”), “Voice announce” folder and “OFF”. Selecting a tone →p.124

Volume : Select the alarm volume from one of 8 levels: “Step”, “Level 1 to 6” or “Silent. If “Step” is set, the alarm volume increases gradually. The alarm volume increases from Level 1 to Level 6. If “Silent” is set, no alarm tone sounds.

Snooze setting : Set whether to set the Snooze (repeated notification) ON/OFF. If “ON” is set, an alarm tone sounds continuously for about 1 minute, repeating 6 times at intervals of about 5 minutes. If “OFF” is set, an alarm tone sounds continuously for about 5 minutes.

Switching the alarm clock

If more than one alarm clock is registered, select an alarm clock to be activated to set it.

● Up to 3 alarm clocks can be registered.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Alarm clock”.**

2 **Press ● [Set].**

The list screen for stored alarm clock settings appears.

3 **Select the alarm clock.**

The selected alarm clock is activated.

To disable the alarm clock setting

Select “OFF”.

To change the stored items

Highlight the stored item to be changed item and press [Edit].

Canceling an alarm clock setting

You can cancel a stored alarm clock.

● If you cancel the current enabled alarm clock, the “Alarm clock” setting becomes “OFF”.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Alarm clock”.**

2 **Press ● [Set].**

The list screen for stored alarm clock settings appears.

3 **Highlight the item you want to delete and select “Release this” from the function menu.**

To delete all items

Select “Release all”.

Schedule

Using the Schedule Function

If you set a scheduled event, an alarm sounds at the specified date and time and a message along with an animated cartoon will let you know about the schedule details. You can also set holidays and anniversaries. You can easily check the set schedules and holidays at the calendar. The calendar can be either monthly or weekly for you to check the number of scheduled events and their details. You can manage your schedule in various ways: storing a regular event such as a regular meeting at the fixed date and time every week, setting an appropriate alarm sound and animation to the contents of a scheduled event, or storing two or more schedules events on the same day.

● Up to 100 scheduled events, 100 holidays and 100 anniversaries can be stored, excluding the number of pre-installed national holidays.

● You can store multiple scheduled events on the same day, but only 1 holiday and 1 anniversary.

● Make sure that you set the date and time in the “Set local time” beforehand. →p.57

● For the alarm notification for the Schedule, see p.409

Switching the schedule display

Default setting | **Monthly display**

The calendar displaying the schedule has the 2 types of displays: “Monthly display” and “Weekly display”. If you press ● to highlight the date you want to check, the number of scheduled events and schedule icons stored in the selected date are displayed.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Schedule”.

2 Select the item from the function menu.

To switch from monthly display to weekly display
Select “Weekly display”.

To switch from weekly display to monthly display
Select “Monthly display”.

Calendar display



Displays the number of scheduled events stored in the morning and afternoon of the day and schedule icons.



Displays the number of scheduled events stored in the morning and afternoon of the day, schedule icons and the contents of the events.

Date in blue : Saturday
Date in red : Sunday・public holidays
◯ : Anniversary
__ : Today
□ : Scheduled events in the morning have been stored.
■ : Scheduled events in the afternoon have been stored.

NOTE

- When “Calendar” is set to “Stand-by display” for “Display setting”, dates stored as anniversaries are not displayed in “◯” in the calendar on the standby display.
- If you store a scheduled event with the “Holiday” icon set, the assigned date is marked with “□” (AM) or “■” (PM) indicating the schedule, not marked in red indicating a holiday.
- Public holidays are based on the “国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律（平成13年法律第59号）(Law Partially Revising the National Holidays Law and Old-Age Welfare Law)”. If the national holidays are changed or added, store new holidays. Holidays can be changed, deleted and reset them to the original setting.

Storing holidays and anniversaries

You can set birthdays, wedding anniversaries and new national holidays as a holiday or an anniversary. Dates stored as holidays are displayed in red in the calendar. Dates stored as anniversaries are displayed with "◯" in the calendar.

<Example: Setting an anniversary>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "Schedule".

2 Press [New] and select "Anniversary".

To store a holiday
Select "Holiday".

3 Specify the setting for each item.

Date setting : Enter the year, month and day of the holiday or anniversary.
Repeat : Set the repeat pattern for a holiday or anniversary. If "1 time" is set, a stored holiday or anniversary is set only for this year. If "Annually ( )" is set, a stored holiday or anniversary is set as an annual holiday or anniversary.
Alarm message (the details of a holiday or anniversary) : Enter the details of a holiday or anniversary. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. Entering characters →p.502

4 Press [Finish] to store the anniversary.

NOTE

- If a holiday or anniversary has already stored in the date you set, a message confirming whether you overwrite it or not appears.
- If "annual" is set on February 29 in a leap year, the holiday or anniversary is set only for the year containing February 29.

Storing a scheduled event

If you store a trip or an appointment as a scheduled event, an alarm tone and an animation will inform you of your schedule at the specified date and time.

- Scheduled events are not automatically deleted even if their specified date and time have passed. If you try to store the 101st scheduled event, a message notifying you that storing is not possible anymore appears. Delete unnecessary scheduled events and store a new event again.
- Be sure to enter the "Alarm message (schedule details)". You cannot store the schedule if you do not enter the alarm message.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "Schedule".

2 Press [New] and select "Schedule".

Continued on next page

3 Specify the setting for each item.

Date setting (from) : Enter the start date and time of the scheduled event.

Date setting (to) : Enter the end date and time of the scheduled event. The dates must be on and after the start time.

Repeat : Set the repeat pattern for the scheduled event. If “1 time” is set, an alarm sounds only on the day when the scheduled event is set. If “Daily (D)” is set, an alarm sounds daily at the specified time. If “Select day (W)” is set, an alarm sounds on selected days of the week.

Alarm : Set the type of alarm notification at the start time. If “ON” is set, an alarm notification is provided at the set date and time. If “ON/Set time” is set, enter the advance notification time in the range of 01 to 99 minutes and the alarm notification is provided at the time. If “OFF” is set, no alarm notification is provided even when the specified time has arrived.

Clock Alarm Tone : Set the alarm tone from “Inbox” folder, your original folder, “Pre-installed” folder (“Clock Alarm Tone) (pippipi, pippipi), “Pattern 1 to 3”, “Melody”, “Alarm”), “Voice announce” folder, and “OFF”.

Alarm message (the details of a scheduled event) : Enter the message to be displayed at the alarm notification and select the icon. You can enter up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters. Entering characters →p.502

4 Press [Finish] to store the scheduled event.

NOTE

- If you try to store 2 scheduled events at the same date and time, a message confirming whether you overwrite it or not appears.
- Only the combination of “Repeat” (Daily/Select day) and “1 time” (no setting) can be stored at the same date and same time. In this case, the event set to “1 time” is given priority.
- When the day for the date set in “Date setting (from)” and the day specified in “Date setting” for “Repeat” are different, the latter is given priority. Therefore a scheduled event is stored on the first day after the date set in “Date setting (from)”.
- If you store a scheduled event during a call, no alarm tone will sounds while you are selecting an alarm tone.
- Scheduled events stored as secret data are not displayed unless you set the FOMA terminal to the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”. →p.161
- When you set the calendar on the standby display, you can store a scheduled event from the calendar. →p.141

Important

- It is recommended to make a copy of the saved schedule data or save the data using the miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can save the schedule data to the PC using the Data Link Software (p.569) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The stored schedule data may be lost if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise handled in a way that causes such information in memory to be lost. We are not responsible for such data loss. Just in case, make a copy of the saved schedule data.

Setting your favorite image as a user icon

You can set an image or an animation stored in the “Image” (p.338) as a user icon. The user icons you set will be displayed as “1” to “5” on the icon selection screen. If you set a user icon, the image or animation you set appears at alarm notification. In addition, “★” appears on the image window.

- Up to 5 user icons can be set.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Schedule”.

2 Select “User icon settg.” from the function menu.

3 Select <Not stored>.

To change a user icon that has been set
Select the item for which the user icon has been set.

To cancel all user icons
Select “Release all”.
This operation can be made only when you have set some user icon.

4 Select the folder in which you saved images.

If there are your original folders, you can select an image from them.
Selecting the images →p.338

To cancel the user icon of the selected item
Select “Release this”.
Only when you select the item for which the user icon has been set, you can release.

5 Select the image you want to set.

To preview
Highlight the item you want to display and press [Play].

To switch to the title list display
Select “Title name” from the function menu.

To switch to the 4-image display
Select “Picture” from the function menu.

NOTE

- When an image set to a user icon is larger than the display, the image is displayed in the area set in “Clipping area” (p.341) for the “Image”.
- If you attempt to change or cancel the user icon used for the schedule, a message asking whether to cancel the user icon is displayed. When the user icon is changed or canceled, the schedule icon changes into “”.

Checking the contents of a scheduled event

You can display the detailed screen to check the contents of a stored scheduled event.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Schedule”.

2 Select the date on which the scheduled event you want to check has been stored.



The list screen of the stored scheduled events is displayed.

Continued on next page

3 Select the item you want to check.

In the list screen, the following icons appear:

: Indicates that a scheduled event has been stored with the set schedule icon.
: Indicates that a holiday has been stored.
: Indicates that an anniversary has been stored.
: Indicates that alarm notification has been set.
: Indicates that daily repetition has been set.
: Indicates that selected-day repetition has been set.
: Indicates that annual repetition has been set.

4 Check the contents.



The schedule detailed screen



The holiday detailed screen



The anniversary detailed screen

NOTE

● The schedules set as secret data cannot be displayed unless you switch to “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.

Displaying scheduled events by icons

You can display scheduled events, holidays or anniversaries by icon set at storing.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Schedule”.

2 Select “Icon display” from the function menu.

3 Select an icon.



A list of the scheduled events for which the selected icon has been set appears.

NOTE

● In the list screen of scheduled events by icon, repeated scheduled events (“ D ” or “ W ”) appear as a single event, and the date of the next closest scheduled event appears.

Checking the number of stored schedules

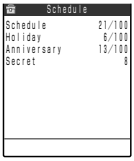
You can check the number of schedules stored and the remaining number that can be stored.

● The number of stored secret data is included in the number of stored schedules.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Schedule”.

2 Select “No. of schedules” from the function menu.

3 Check the number of stored schedules.



Schedule : Displays the number of stored schedules.
Number of stored schedules/Maximum number of schedules that can be stored

Holiday : Displays the number of stored holidays.
Number of stored holidays/Maximum number of holidays that can be stored

Anniversary : Displays the number of stored anniversaries.
Number of stored anniversaries/Maximum number of anniversaries that can be stored

Secret : Displays the number of schedules stored as secret data.

NOTE

● Only when the “Secret mode” or the “Secret only mode” is set, the number of stored secret data will appear on the display.

Changing the contents of a scheduled event

1 Display the detailed screen of the scheduled event you want to change.

How to display the detailed screen →p.417

2 Press [Edit].



How to edit the schedule →p.415

Resetting public holidays

Even if you delete public holidays that have already been registered, you can reset them to the original setting. Go to “Monthly display” or “Weekly display” and select “Reset holiday” from the function menu.

NOTE

● You can also change the schedule by pressing the [Edit] at Schedule list screen.

Copying a scheduled event

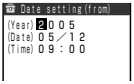
When you store a new scheduled event, you can copy a similar one from the stored schedules. All the contents of the copied source are copied without change except "Date (from)".

1 Display the detailed screen of the copy source.

How to display the detailed screen →p.417

2 Select "Copy" from the function menu.

3 Store a new scheduled event.



First, the start time setting screen appears. After the start time is set, the schedule entering screen appears. Set the items as necessary.
How to store the schedule →p.415

NOTE

- Even if the repetition setting for the copy source Schedule is set to "Daily (D)" or "Select day (W)", the setting is changed to "1 time (no repeat)" for the copy destination.

Deleting scheduled events

You can delete stored scheduled events, holidays or anniversaries one by one or all at once. Follow the procedure below to delete scheduled events.

Delete pattern	Description	Executable screen
Delete this	Only one selected item is deleted.	List screen Details screen
Delete past	All items before the selected date are deleted. Select from "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All".	Calendar screen List screen Details screen
Delete select	Mark the checkbox of the item you want to delete. Only selected items are deleted.	List screen Details screen
Delete all	All the contents of selected items are deleted. Select from "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All".	Calendar screen

- Even if you select "Delete past" or "Delete select", the holidays stored at purchase are not deleted. If you select "Delete all", the holidays are reset to the default setting.

Deleting one scheduled event

1 Display the list screen of the date of the scheduled event you want to delete.

How to display the list screen →p.417

2 Highlight the item you want to delete and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

Deleting only selected scheduled events

1 Display the list screen of the date of the scheduled event you want to delete.

How to display the list screen →p.417

2 Select "Delete select" from the function menu, and then select the scheduled events you want to delete.

Deleting all scheduled events

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Schedule”.

2 Select the date, and select “Delete past” from the function menu.

To delete all scheduled events
Select “Delete all” from the function menu.

3 Select the item you want to delete.

To delete all the items
Select “All”.

NOTE

- If you try to select Delete this or Delete select for the scheduled event with the repetition setting (“Daily” or “Select day”), a message confirming whether you delete the event or not appears. Select “YES” to delete all the repetition events.
- If “Delete past” is selected for the scheduled event with the repetition setting (“Daily” or “Select day”), the scheduled events of the previous day and earlier of selected date are deleted and those of the selected date and later remain saved.
- If scheduled events are displayed separately for icons and “Delete select” is selected from the function menu, the “Delete select” screen in the date list screen that was selected before the display for icons appears. You cannot perform “Delete select” in the screen in which events are displayed for icons.

ToDo

Making the ToDo List

If you store your important business such as a meeting or trip in the ToDo, an alarm tone and an animation will inform you of your schedule at the specified date and time. The icons for planned events after due date are displayed in red. You can manage your schedule in various ways: dividing your planned events into 6 categories such as the event details and due date, assigning priorities to events to confirm them in order of importance, or extracting events that are in a specific status such as “Plan” or “Completion”.

- Up to 100 ToDo entries can be stored.
- Make sure that you set the date and time in the “Set local time” beforehand. →p.57
- For the alarm notification for the ToDo, see p.409.
- If you paste a ToDo entry as a desktop icon on the standby display, you can quickly call up the function. →p.135

Storing planned events

- Be sure to enter the planned event. You cannot set the ToDo if you do not enter the planned event.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “ToDo”.

2 Press [New].

When a planned event is already stored
Select “New” from the function menu.

Continued on next page

3 Specify the setting for each item.

- Edit ToDo : Set the details of the planned event. Up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters can be entered. Entering characters →p.502
- Due date : Set the due date of the planned event. To directly enter a due date with the keypad, select “Enter date”. To select a due date from the calendar, select “Choose date”. To set no due date, select “No date”.
- Priority : Set the priority of the planned event.
- Category : Set the category of the planned event. When the category is set, planned events can be displayed by category.
- Alarm : Set the type of alarm notification at the due date. If “ON” is set, an alarm notification is provided at the set date and time. If “ON/Set time” is set, enter the advance notification time in the range of 01 to 99 minutes and the alarm notification is provided at the time. If “OFF” is set, no alarm notification is provided even when the due date has arrived.
- Clock Alarm Tone : Select the alarm tone from “Inbox” folder, your original folder, “Pre-installed” folder (“Clock Alarm Tone (pippipi, pippipi)”, “Pattern 1 to 3”, “Melody”, “Alarm”), “Voice announce” folder or “OFF”.

4 Press [Finish] to store the planned event.

NOTE

- If you store a planned event during a voice call, no alarm tone will sound while you are selecting an alarm tone.

Important

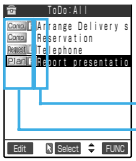
- It is recommended to make a copy of the saved ToDo list data or save the data using the miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can save the ToDo list data to the PC using the Data Link Software (p.569) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The stored ToDo list data may be lost if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise handled in a way that causes such information in memory to be lost. We are not responsible for such data loss. Just in case, make a copy of the saved ToDo list data.

Checking a planned event

You can display the detailed screen to check the contents of a stored planned event.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “ToDo”.

2 Select the planned event you want to check.



Indicates the priority status.

Indicates the status of the planned event.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

3 Check the contents.



NOTE

- If the due date for an incomplete planned event has already passed the current date/time, the icon for that planned event will turn red. However, that is not the case when the status is set to "Completion".

Changing the way planned events are displayed

You can display stored planned events by category, sort them in chronological order or in the order they were stored, or extract only events that are in a specific status. It is useful for displaying only events in a specific category or displaying unfinished events preferentially.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "ToDo".

2 Select "Category display" or "Sort/Filter" from the function menu.

To display events by category
Select "Category display" to choose the category of your choice.

To sort events or extract events in a specific status only
Select "Sort/Filter" to sort or choose the way of filter.

NOTE

- When events are sorted by "By due date", they are sorted in the due date order from the oldest.
- When events are sorted by "By due date" or "By completed", events with no due date or completion date are displayed last.
- When events are sorted by "By due date" or "By completed" and the same due date or completion date is set to multiple events, they are displayed by priority beginning with the highest event. Furthermore, if their priority is the same, they are displayed in the order in which they were stored.

Changing the status of a planned event

You can set the status of planned events from among "Plan", "Acceptance", "Request", "Provisional plan", "Confirmation", "Denial", "Completion" and "Substitution". When you finish your planned event and alarm notification is not necessary anymore, change its status to "Completion".

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "ToDo".

2 Highlight the planned event you want to set and select "Change status" from the function menu.

Continued on next page

3 Select an item you want to set.

When "Completion" is selected

Set the completion date. Select an entry method from "Enter date", "Choose date" or "No date", and then set the completion date.

NOTE

- You can also set the status from the ToDo detailed screen by selecting "Change status" from the function menu.

Changing the contents of a planned event

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "ToDo".

2 Highlight the planned event you want to change, and then press [Edit].

Editing ToDo entries →p.421

NOTE

- You can also change the contents of a planned event by pressing the [Edit] at the detailed screen of a planned event.

Deleting planned events

You can delete stored planned events one by one or all at once.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "ToDo".

2 Highlight the planned event you want to delete, and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To select multiple events and delete all of them

Select "Delete select" and select the events you want to delete.

To delete only events with the status set to "Completion"

Select "Delete completed".

To delete all events

Select "Delete all".

NOTE

- You can also delete planned events on the ToDo detailed screen from the function menu.

Changing the Menu Display to Enable Quick Operations

You can change the menu display that suits your convenience, by changing the way menus are displayed or storing an original menu.

Setting the way menus are displayed <Menu display set>

Default setting	Guidance: ON Menu display: Detail

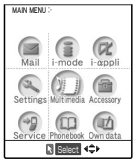
You can set whether to display or not the guidance for a main menu icon selected on the main menu item selection screen, or whether to display the "Settings" menu detail items (functions) in "List" or "Detail".

● The "Original menu" is displayed in "List" regardless of the setting of this function.

About Guidance display

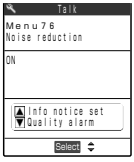


"ON"



"OFF"

About Menu display



"Detail"



"List"

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Display" ▶ "Menu display set".**

2 **Select the item you want to set.**

To set the guidance display for high level items
Select "Guidance".
Select "display the guidance/not display the guidance" (ON/OFF).

To set how the detail items are displayed
Select "Menu display".
Select the detail item display from "Detail" or "List".

Creating your original menu <Original menu>

Default setting	Own number, Check new messages, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code

If you store your frequently used functions, you can quickly call them up from the "Original menu". Since you do not have to select items in turn from the main menu, the high level item→middle item→detail item, you can easily start up a function you want to use.

● Up to 10 items can be stored in the original menu.
● You can store the following functions in the original menu: The high level items of "Mail", "i-mode" and "i-αppli" and the middle items and detail items of "Settings", "Multimedia", "Accessory", "Service", "Phonebook" and "Own data".
● You cannot store the same function.
● Using your original menu →p.44

Continued on next page

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Original menu”.

2 Select <Not stored>.

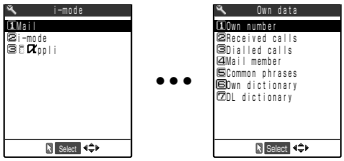
To change a stored function
Select the item for which the function is stored.

To cancel a stored function
Highlight the item you want to cancel, and select “Release this” from the function menu.

To cancel all stored functions
Select “Release all” from the function menu.

To reset to the default setting
Select “Reset org. menu” from the function menu.

3 Select a category for the menu.



4 Select the functions you want to store.

When the category is “i-mode”
You can select only from among the high level items of “Mail”, “i-mode” and “i-αppli”.

NOTE

- You can change or delete the pre-installed functions.
- If you try to store a function in the item already being used, a message confirming whether you overwrite it or not appears.

Own number

Storing Your Personal Data

Default setting	Your phone number only

You can store your profile such as your name, home phone number, and mail addresses, etc. If you set your profile, it can be used to check the owner of the FOMA terminal or quote the data entered in the text entry (edit) display.

- Your own number cannot be changed or deleted.
- Your private information other than the own number is stored in the FOMA terminal. If you insert another FOMA card, your private information you stored other than the own number appears.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ “Own number”.

You can display “Own number” by pressing (Menu) 0.

2 Press [Edit] and enter the Security code.



Security code →p.152

3 Specify the setting for each item.

- Name : Enter your name by “Last name” and “First name”. Up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for the name using kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
  Entering characters →p.502
- Reading : Enter the reading of your name. Entering your “family name” and “first name” automatically enters the reading. Correct the reading as necessary. Up to 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for the reading using half-pitch katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
- Phone No. : Store additional phone numbers other than the own number. Up to three phone numbers can be stored and up to 26 digits can be entered for each number. Each of “+”, “*”, “#”, and “p” count as a digit.
  When a new phone number is stored, a new item “ <Not stored>” appears on the edit screen of private information. If you select this item, you can add another phone number.
- Mail address : Enter the mail address and select an icon. You can store up to 3 addresses and enter up to 50 digits in half-pitch alphabetic characters, numbers, or symbols.
  When the first mail address is stored, a new item “ <Not stored>” appears on the edit screen of private information. If you select this item, you can add another mail address.
- ZIP code : Enter your zip code and address. Enter the 7-digit zip code using half-pitch numbers. For the address, up to 46 full-pitch or 93 half-pitch characters can be entered using kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
- Memorandums : Enter a memo. Up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters can be entered for a memo using kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
- Image : Select a still image that you want to display on your personal profile from the data stored in “Image”.
  How to select an image →p.338

4 Press [Finish] to store your personal data.

NOTE

- When storing your mail address, storing your i-mode mail address as the first mail address is recommended. Pressing (Menu) 0 displays the own number as well as the first mail address. Therefore you can check both your own number and mail address at the same time.
- Your i-mode mail address can be checked from the i-mode “Options”. For details, refer to the “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.
- Even if you change your mail address or store your secret code, the mail address in this profile cannot automatically change. Update the mail address in this profile.
- When a stored image exceeds the image display area in the Own number screen, the image is reduced with the same aspect ratio. If the image is smaller than the image display area, the display is centered.

Viewing your personal data

When this function is started, only your name, own number and the first mail address can be displayed. Enter your security code to display all of your personal data.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ “Own number”.

You can also display your name, your own number and the first mail address by pressing (Menu) and 0.

2 Select “Display all data” from the function menu, and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152

3 Press ○ to check the information in your personal data.



To copy personal data

Display the item you want to copy, and select “Copy name” or “Copy phone No./Copy mail add./Copy address/Copy memorandums” from the function menu.
You can paste the copied data on the character entry screen. →p.516

To delete personal data

Display the item you want to delete, and select “Erase phone No./Erase mail add./Erase address/Erase Memorandums/Delete image” from the function menu.

NOTE

- You can delete the first mail address without displaying all of your personal data, but entering the security code (p.152) is required.

Resetting your personal data

You can reset (delete) your personal data other than your own number to return to the default setting.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ “Own number”.

You can also display your name, your own number and the first mail address by pressing (Menu) and 0.

2 Select “Reset” from the function menu, and then enter the security code.

A message is displayed asking you whether to reset your personal data.
Security code →p.152

When all data is displayed

You do not have to enter the security code.

3 Select “YES”.

To cancel resetting

Select “NO”.

NOTE

- Even if you reset your personal data with this function, your actual mail address is not reset. To reset your actual mail address to “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, perform “Reset Mail Address” in i-mode “Options”. For details, refer to the “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.

Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice

There are 2 voice memo functions: the "Voice memo during standby" function, which lets you record your own voice while the standby display is displayed, and the "Voice memo during a call", which lets you record the other party's voice during a voice/videophone call. It is useful for making a memo of a small task in voice.

- You can record only one Voice memo: either a voice memo during standby or a voice memo during a call. The recorded voice memo is overwritten every time a new Voice memo is recorded.
- The maximum recording time is about 20 seconds.
- For how to play or delete a recorded voice memo, see p.85.

Recording your voice

By using "Voice memo", you will be able to record your own voice.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "Voice memo".

A message is displayed asking you whether to start recording.

2 Select "YES".

To cancel recording of voice memo

Select "NO".

3 Record a voice memo.



When a short beep sounds, talk to the mouthpiece. A short beep sounds again about 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, a short double beep "pippi" sounds, "Recording" disappears and the previous display reappears.

To cancel the recording after it has started

Press ● [Stop], CLR or PWR OFF.

If you press PWR OFF, the standby display reappears, but the recorded voice is saved.

NOTE

- During a call, "Voice memo during stand-by" changes to "Voice memo during a call".

Recording the other party's voice during a call

You can record the caller's voice during a voice or videophone call. Simply pressing the key one time records necessary information quickly.

1 Hold down [Memo/Check] for 1 second or more during a call.



A short beep sounds and recording starts. A short beep sounds again about 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, a short double beep "pippi" sounds, "Recording" disappears and the talking screen reappears.

To cancel the recording after it has started

Press [Stop], [CLR] or [PWR HOLD], or hold down [Memo/Check] for 1 second or more.

If you press [PWR HOLD], the call also ends.

NOTE

- If you receive a voice/videophone call or an alarm for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo", or you use other functions during recording, the recording stops.

Call time display

Displaying the Call Duration During a Call

Default setting	ON

You can set whether to display the current call duration during a voice or videophone call.

- When the call duration exceeds "19h59m59s", the count will start from "00s".
- The displayed call duration is a rough estimation, so it may differ from the actual call duration.
- The communication time for i-mode and packet communication is not counted.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Call data" ▶ "Call time display".

To display the call duration during a call

Select "ON".

To not display call duration during a call

Select "OFF".

Call duration/Reset call duration

Checking the Call Duration

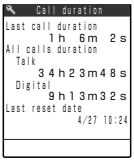
You can check the call duration of your last call and the total call duration for voice and videophone calls, and reset them to "0". It is useful for checking the total call duration for voice calls and digital communication separately or checking the monthly total call duration.

Checking the call duration

You can display and check the call duration of your last call, the total call duration and the date and time when the call duration was last reset for voice calls and videophone calls.

- When the total call duration exceeds "199h59m59s", the count will start from "00s".
- The displayed call duration is a rough estimation, so it may differ from the actual call duration.
- The communication time for i-mode and packet communication is not included in the call duration.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Call data” ▶ “Call duration”.



Last call duration : Displays an estimation of the call duration on your immediate last made or received call.
All calls duration : Displays the total call duration since the last reset (reset to “00s”). “Talk” indicates the total call duration of voice calls, while “Digital” indicates that of videophone calls.
Last reset date : Displays the date and time when the call duration was last reset.

NOTE

- If the power is turned off or the FOMA card is removed, the display of the last call duration becomes “00s”.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the all calls duration information.
- The last reset date shows “--/-- --:--” in case of default or when date and time are not set in the “Set local time”.

Resetting the call duration

You can reset the last call duration and the all calls duration displayed in the “Call duration” to zero.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Call data” ▶ “Reset call duration”, and then enter the security code.

Security code →p.152

2 Press ● [Select] and select “YES”.

To cancel resetting
Press ● [Select] and select “NO”.

NOTE

- You can check the date and time when the call duration was last reset on the “Call duration”.

Calculator

Using Your Terminal as a Calculator

You can use your FOMA terminal to perform four simple operations (+, −, ×, ÷). The calculator display indicates the Multi-function keys and its surrounding so that pressing the key of the FOMA terminal highlights the corresponding key on the display. Use the keypad to enter numbers.

- Up to 10-digit numbers can be displayed. Up to 9 digits after the decimal point can be displayed.
- If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, “.E” appears.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Calculator”.

Continued on next page

2 Calculate.



The numbers you entered and the result appear.

To calculate "23+57"

2 3 + 5 7 =

To calculate negative numbers

You can calculate negative numbers only when placing "–" before the first number.

– 2 3 + 5 7 =

NOTE

- (CLR) ((AC) or (C)) can be used as follows:
  - After +, −, ×, ÷ or = is pressed, (AC) is displayed. Pressing (CLR) allows you to do the calculation from scratch.
  - While entering numbers and decimal point, (C) is displayed. Pressing (CLR) deletes a mistyped number or decimal point.

Text memo

Entering a Memo

You can make a simple message as a text memo. A stored text memo can be pasted into the contents of the Schedule or into the body of a mail.

- Up to 10 text memos can be stored.
- Up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters can be entered in a text memo.

Storing a text memo

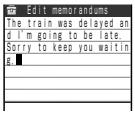
1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ "Text memo".

2 Highlight <Not stored> and press [Edit].

To change the contents of a stored text memo

Highlight the text memo you want to change, and then press [Edit].

3 Enter the text.



Entering characters →p.502

NOTE

- You can also enter/change the text memo by selecting "Edit" from the function menu.

Important

- It is recommended to make a copy of the saved text memo data or save the data using the miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can save the text memo data to the PC using the Data Link Software (p.569) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The stored text memo data may be lost if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise handled in a way that causes such information in memory to be lost. We are not responsible for such data loss. Just in case, make a copy of the saved text memo data.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Checking and modifying the contents of a text memo

You can display the detailed screen to check the contents of a stored text memo.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Text memo”.

2 Select the item you want to check.

3 Check the contents.



To check the created date and time
Select “Text memo info” from the function menu.
Make date, Last modify date and Category can be checked.

To categorize text memos
Select “Category” from the function menu.

To store the contents of a text memo in the schedule
Select “Edit schedule” from the function menu.
Storing the schedule →p.415

To send the contents of a text memo with an i-mode mail
Select “Compose message” from the function menu.
Composing i-mode mail →p.264

NOTE

● You can also select the function menu from the text memo list screen.

Deleting text memos

You can delete stored text memos one by one or all at once.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Text memo”.

2 Highlight the text memo you want to delete, and select “Delete this” from the function menu.

To select multiple text memos and delete all of them
Select “Delete selected” and select the text memos you want to delete.

To delete all text memos
Select “Delete all”.

NOTE

● You can also delete text memos on the text memo detailed screen from the function menu.

Using the Dictionary

The dictionary consists of 3 parts: English-Japanese, Japanese-English and Japanese.

- You can quickly call up the dictionary by placing its desktop icon on the standby display. → p.135
- When the search does not come up with any words that match the entered words, similar words are listed. If no similar words are found, a list is displayed from the beginning word of the selected dictionary.

Starting up the dictionary

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Accessory ▶ “Dictionary”.

2 Select "Enter word".

To search a word stored in the search record
Select "Reference history" and then a word. Go to Step 4.

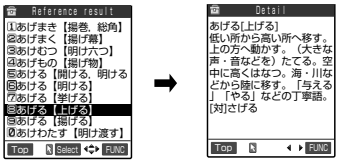
To paste the dictionary function on the desktop
Open the function menu and select "Add desktop icon".

3 Enter a word to search.

Up to 32 full-pitch characters or 64 half-pitch characters can be entered.
Entering characters →p.502
The dictionary can search words in hiragana, katakana (full-pitch/half-pitch), kanji, and alphabet (full-pitch/half-pitch).
You can search only alphabetical characters in the English-Japanese dictionary, and characters other than alphabetical characters in the Japanese-English dictionary and Japanese dictionary.

4 Select a dictionary.

5 Select a word from the search result list.



To scroll up/down the list
Press ● while the list is displayed.

To display the word above or below
Press ● while the word is displayed.

To search the entered word in another dictionary
Open the function menu and select “Refer dic.”.

NOTE

- By selecting “Copy” from the function menu, you can copy the letters in【 】of the highlighted word when it is a list display. In a detail display, you need to specify the area to copy.
  How to copy characters →p.516
- Up to 10 search records can be saved in “Reference history”. After 10 search records have been saved, the oldest record is automatically deleted each time a new search record is saved. To delete the search record(s), display the search record list and highlight the search you want to delete. Then open the function menu to select “Delete this” or “Delete all”.

Conducting a further search from a search result detail screen

Search a word selected on the reference result detail screen.

1. **Search a word in the dictionary to display the "Detail" screen. →p.434**
2. **Open the function menu and select "Re-reference".**
3. **Press ● to move the cursor and press ● [Start] when it is placed at the beginning of the word you want to search.**
4. **Press ● to highlight the entire word. Press ● [End] at the end of the word.**
5. **Select a dictionary type to run a search. On the reference result screen, select a word and press ● [Select].**

Earphone/microphone with switch

How to Use the Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Optional>

If you use the earphone/microphone with switch, you can hear the other party's voice through it so that you can talk without worrying about voice leaking out.
To connect the earphone/microphone with switch to the FOMA terminal, open the cover of the earphone/microphone terminal and plug the earphone/microphone with switch. →p.28

Using an earphone/microphone

- Plug the earphone/microphone securely into the FOMA terminal. If not, you may not hear any sound.
- Note that an incoming call may be answered if you connect the earphone/microphone after ringing starts.
- Do not wrap the cord of the earphone/microphone around the FOMA terminal. The radio reception level may be reduced.
- A snap sound may be emitted at the moment of power-on. This phenomenon is not a failure.
- If the plug of the earphone/microphone is not firmly inserted, you may hear a beep tone during a call. This phenomenon is not a failure.

Receiving a call with switch

While you are using the earphone/microphone with switch, you can answer an incoming voice or videophone call by only pressing the earphone switch.

- For information about the available earphone/microphone with switch, see "Options and Accessories" (p.568).
- The earphone/microphone with switch can also be used while the FOMA terminal is folded.
- Regardless of the "Keypad sound" setting, a tone for connecting and disconnecting a call sounds.

Continued on next page

1 When receiving a call, press the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch.

Voice calls

You will hear a short beep before you can answer the call.

Videophone calls

You will hear a short beep before you can respond to the videophone call in a substitute image. Press (i) to switch to camera view.

2 When you finish the conversation, hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or more.

A short double beep "pippi" sounds and the call is disconnected.

To end a call with the FOMA terminal

Press (PWR HOME).

NOTE

- Even when the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, you can still respond to the phone call by using the FOMA terminal key. Press (↙) to answer the voice call. Press (i) to answer the videophone call with the camera view. Press (↙) to answer the videophone call with a substitute image.
- You can mute the speaker when the earphone/microphone with switch is connected by "Earphone". However, the ring tone of remote monitoring incoming calls and the shutter sound of the camera sound from the speaker.
- You can answer an incoming call automatically without pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch if "Automatic answer" is set to "ON". →below
- When the "Ring volume" for the "Phone/Video-phone" is set to "Silent" or during the manner mode, no ring tone sound. However, if the manner mode is set to "Original" and other than "Silent" is set to "Phone vol.", the ring tone sounds.
- Holding down the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or more during a call does not switch to the handsfree mode. Note that the call is disconnected if you hold down the switch for 1 second or more.
- Subscribers to the "Call waiting" service can use the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch to answer a second call while you are talking. However, you cannot end the call with this switch.
- Do not press the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch repeatedly. This may cause calls to be received automatically.

Automatic answer

Receiving a Call Automatically with the Earphone <Optional>

Default setting	Automatic answer: OFF Ringing time: 6 seconds

When the earphone/microphone with switch (optional) are connected, you can automatically receive incoming voice or videophone calls without pressing the switch.

- To receive a call, set the ringing time in the range of 1 to 120 seconds.
- The ringing time of Automatic answer cannot be set to the same time as that of the "Record message" or "Remote monitor".
- Calls from the following phone numbers are not received automatically:
  - Phone numbers for which "Call rejection" is set
  - Phone numbers for which "Voice mail" is set
  - Phone numbers other than those for which "Call acceptation" is set
  - Phone numbers for which "Call forwarding" is set

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “External option” ▶ “Automatic answer”.

To activate the Automatic answer
Select “ON” and set “Ringing time” in the range of 1 to 120 seconds.

To deactivate the Automatic answer
Select “OFF”.

NOTE

- When this function is set to “OFF”, you can answer a call by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch.
- When a videophone call is automatically received by this function, the substitute image is displayed at the other party’s side. Pressing during a videophone call switches between the substitute image and the camera view.
- To give a higher priority to the Automatic answer over the “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service when the service is activated together with this function, set the shorter ringing time for this function than that for the “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service.

Neuropointer

Setting the Neuropointer

Default setting | **Pointer: ON Focus: Follow**

To increase the usability of the pointer (:Blue / :White) operated with the Neuropointer key “●”, you can change its operational setting such as the display ON/OFF, the focus setting and its moving speed.
You can set the following items:

Item		Description	See page
Pointer		Sets whether to display the pointer or not (ON/OFF). If “OFF” is set, no pointer appears even if you slide ●.	p.438
Focus		Sets the pointer operation whether to select an item automatically in accordance with its movement or not (Follow: (Blue)/Nonfollow: (White)). If “Follow: (Blue)” is set, an item under the pointer is automatically selected so that you can select the item by simply pressing ●. If “Nonfollow: (White)” is set, move the pointer over the item you want to select and press ● to highlight the item, and then press ● again to select it.	p.438
Speed	Standard	Adjusts the pointer speed for standard screens such as the list screen and icon selection screen.	p.438
	Main Menu	Adjusts the pointer speed for the main menu.	
	T9/Prediction	Adjusts the pointer speed for the T9 (Mode 3) reading candidate screen and prediction screen.	
	Software	Adjusts the pointer speed for screens during activating i-αppli.※	
	Reset	Resets the pointer speed to the default setting.	
Slide	Adjust	Adjusts the maximum slide range of the Neuropointer to move the pointer properly.	p.439
	Reset	Resets the slide adjustment value to the default setting.	

※ : Depending on the i-αppli software, this setting may not be effective.

- You can use the pointer on the screens with “ ” displayed.

Continued on next page

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Neuropointer”.

The neuropointer setting is displayed.

To set the display
Select “Pointer”.
Set whether to display the pointer or not (ON/OFF).

To set the focus
Select “Focus”.
Select the pointer’s focus type from “Follow/Nonfollow”.

To adjust the speed
Select “Speed”.

To adjust the slide range
Select “Slide”.

NOTE

● Even if “Pointer” is set to “OFF”, “ ” is displayed on the bottom of the screen on which the pointer is available.

Adjusting the pointer speed

You can adjust the pointer speed as you like. If you use the pointer to adjust the speed, the value being adjusted is reflected to the pointer. Therefore you can adjust the speed while checking it.

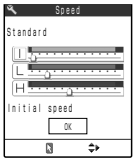
● To adjust the pointer speed correctly, adjust in the order of “① Initial speed”, “② Low speed area” and “③ High speed area”.

1 Select “Speed” on the Neuropointer setting screen (previous section).

2 Select the item for which you want to adjust the speed.

To reset the speed adjusted value
Select “Reset”.

3 Press to select “ I ”, “ L ” or “ H ”, and then press to adjust the speed.



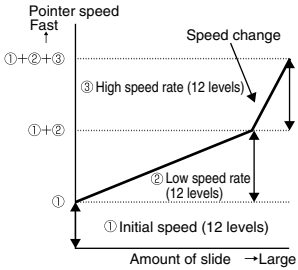
You can adjust the speed in 12 levels each of 0 (left edge) to 11 (right edge) levels.
Moving to the right increases its speed, and to the left decreases its speed.

4 Select “OK”.

Speed adjustment

The pointer speed increases in 3 steps as the Neuropointer is slid: "① Initial speed"→"② Low speed area"→"③ High speed area". The speed for each step is as follows: "① Initial speed" is the adjusted value for "① Initial speed"; "② Low speed area" is the total of the adjusted values for "① Initial speed" and "② Low speed area"; and "③ High speed area" is the total of the adjusted values for "① Initial speed", "② Low speed area" and "③ High speed area". Accordingly, if the adjusted values for "② Low speed area" and "③ High speed area" are set to 0 (left edge), the pointer speed remains at "① Initial speed" because nothing is added to the value for "① Initial speed". If the adjusted values for "② Low speed area" and "③ High speed area" are set to 1 or larger, the pointer speed increases as the Neuropointer is slid because the values for "② Low speed area" and "③ High speed area" are added to that for "① Initial speed".

Relation between the amount of slide and the pointer speed (Image)



NOTE

- Even if "Pointer" is set to "OFF", pressing adjusts the pointer speed. However, you cannot adjust the speed, checking it with the pointer.
- The speeds such as the pointer speed or the speed for automatic item selection in (Follow) may differ depending on the screen to be operated.

Adjusting the slide range

If the pointer movement becomes unstable, adjust the maximum slide range of the Neuropointer.

- Adjust the slide in the order of upper, lower, left and right direction.

1 Select "Slide" on the Neuropointer setting screen (p.438).

2 Select "Adjust".

A message is displayed asking you whether to adjust the slide.

To reset the slide adjusted value

Select "Reset".

3 Select "YES".

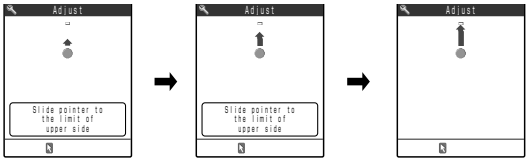
To cancel slide adjustment

Select "NO".

Continued on next page

4 Slide the Neuropointer according to the guidance on the screen.

Slide the Neuropointer all the way upward/downward/left/right, and hold it until the guidance disappears. After adjusting in upper/lower/left/right direction, a message notifying you that the slide adjustment is completed appears.



NOTE

- If you receive a voice/videophone call or an alarm for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule”, “ToDo”, or you use other functions during slide adjustment, the adjusted value is destroyed. When the operation of other function is finished, the slide adjustment screen reappears. Adjust the slide again from the upper direction.

Reset settings

Resetting the Setting to the Default

You can return the functional settings to their initial settings.

- You cannot reset settings while “PIM lock” or “Self mode” is set.
- If the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, “USB mode setting” does not return to the initial setting.
- For items that cannot be reset by the “Reset settings” function, see p.582.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Reset settings” and enter the security code.

A message asks you whether or not to reset all the settings.
Security code →p.152

2 Select “YES”.

To cancel reset
Select “NO”.

Functions that can be reset

Function			Default setting
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume	Phone/Video-phone: Level 4 Mail/Message: Level 4
		Select ring tone	Phone: Pattern 1 Video-phone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2 Msg. Request: Pattern 3 Msg. Free: Pattern 3
		SRS_WOW setting	ON
		Vibrator	Phone: OFF Video-phone: OFF Mail: OFF Msg. Request: OFF Msg. Free: OFF
		Illumination	Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Msg. Request: Color 1 Msg. Free: Color 1 Pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1 - 12 Adjust color tone: Default
		Manner mode set	Manner mode “Original” settings Record Msg.: OFF Vibrator: ON Phone vol.: Silent Mail vol.: Silent Alarm vol.: Silent VM tone: ON Keypad sound: OFF Mic sensitiv.: Up LVA tone: OFF
		Disp. phonebook image	ON
		Answer setting	Any key answer
		Fold setting	End the call
		Call FNC/i-mode	Answer
		Call FNC/Packet	Answer
		Mail/Msg. ring time	Mail: ON Ringing time: 5 seconds Msg. Request: ON Ringing time: 5 seconds Msg. Free: ON Ringing time: 5 seconds
		Ringing time	Ring start time: 0 second Missed calls display: Display
		Info notice setting	On Japanese display: 電子音 (Electronic sound) On English display: ON
	Talk	Noise reduction	ON
		Quality alarm	High tone
		Reconnect control	No tone
		Illum. In talk	OFF
		Select hold tone	On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody

Continued on next page

	Function		Default setting
Settings	Video-phone	Image quality	Normal
		Camera image sending	ON
		Select image	On hold: Pre-installed Holding: Pre-installed Camera off: Chara-den Record message: Pre-installed
		Voice call auto switch	OFF
		Remote monitor	Other ID: Not stored Ringing time: 5 seconds Set: OFF
		Disp. Setting V-phone	Main display: Other image Change display size: Main display size
	Display	Display setting	Stand-by display: Dolphin Wake-up display: crest Wake-up message: Blank Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard Checking: Standard
		Display light	Lighting: ON Power saver mode: ON Light time: 5 minutes Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2
		Color pattern	Pattern 1
		Image window	Image window setting: ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Analog 1 (Pictograph: ON) Image set: Pre-installed (Dolphin) Called: ON (Image+phone number) Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Display light: OFF)
		Font	Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium
		Original menu	Own number Check new messages Ring volume Vibrator Alarm clock Change security code
		Menu display set	Guidance: ON Menu display: Detail
		Viewer settings	Picture
		Automatic display	OFF
	Call data	Call time display	ON
	Clock	Clock display	Display When displayed in Japanese: 日本語 When displayed in English: ON Size: Big Object: Local
		Set remote time	Time zone: GMT+00 City: London Summer time: OFF
		Alarm setting	Alarm preferred
	Lock/Security	Keypad dial lock	OFF
		Reject unknown	Accept
		Call setting w/o ID	Accept all/meaning answer all

Function			Default setting
Settings	Connection setting	Connection timeout	60 seconds
		i-mode checking	Mail: ON Msg. Request: ON Msg. Free: ON
		Host selection	i-mode User defined host: Returns to <Not stored>
		SMS center selection※1	DoCoMo
		Certificate	All valid
	i αppli settings	Display software info	Not display
		α Display light	Depend on system
		α Vibrator	Depend on system
		α Image disp.	Depend on system
	External option	Earphone	Earphone+Speaker
		Automatic answer	OFF Ringing time: 6 seconds
	Network setting	Int'l dial setting	Auto assist setting: AUTO, Japan, 81 Country Code setting: Japan, 81 IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL 009130010
		NW search mode	Auto
		Operator name disp	display ON
		Network switch	Auto
	Other settings	Keypad sound	ON
		Charge sound	ON
		Side keys guard	OFF
		Input method	Input mode: All valid Prior mode: Mode 1(5-touch) Prediction: ON Guidance: ON
		Record display set	Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON
		Subaddress setting	ON
		Neuropointer	Pointer: ON Focus: Follow Speed: Default
		USB mode setting ※2	Communication mode
Accessory		Camera	Camera set: Out-camera Shot Interval: 0.5 seconds Shot number: 5 CHG cont mode: Auto Image size setting: Photo mode, Continuous mode, Picture voice: Mail (L)(176×144) Movie mode, Chance capture, Long duration mode: Large (176×144) File size setting: Mail attachment Storage setting: Normal File restriction: File unrestricted Auto save set: OFF Auto timer shutter delay time: 10 seconds White balance: Auto Shutter sound: Sound 1 Display size: Actual size Image tuning: Mode 1(50Hz)
		Schedule	Monthly display User icon: Returns to Not stored
		Alarm clock	OFF

Continued on next page

Function		Default setting
Accessory	Record message	OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 seconds
	Voice announce	Start tone: ON
	Forwarding image	ON
Network service	Arrival call act	Answer
Phonebook	Utilities	All OFF
	Restrictions	All OFF
Own data	Common phrases	Default preinstalled common phrases (Folder 1 and 2 are reset including the folder names)
Multimedia	Image	Set image disp.: Standard
	i Motion	List setting: Title+image Image disp. set: Actual size
	Chara-den	Chara-den shot: Photo mode Substitute image: ブンブン (Dimo) Image disp. set: Fit in display Format size: Large(176×144) Movie type set: Normal Storage setting: Normal
Other	Volume	Level 4
	Manner mode	OFF
	Driving mode	OFF
	V-phone settings for Videophone calls	Brightness: 0
	Light for Videophone calls	All time ON
	Last one function for Phonebook search※3	Search by furigana (reading)
	Last one function for desktop icon※3	Left end of the first page

※1: This setting cannot be reset while the FOMA card is not inserted to the FOMA terminal.
※2: This setting cannot be reset while a USB cable is connected to the FOMA terminal.
※3: “Last one function” is the function that automatically follows the setting you ran last time.

Network Service

Available Network Service 446
Voice Mail Service (Charged) 446
Call Waiting (Charged) 448
Call Forwarding Service (Free) 450
Bar Nuisance Call Service (Charged) 452
Caller ID Request Service (Free) 453
Dual Network Service (Charged) 453
English Guidance 454
Service Dial 454
Selecting the Way to Handling Incoming Calls During a Call 455
Setting the Remote Control of Network Service ..... Remote control 456
Storing and Using a New Service ..... Additional service 456

"Voice mail service", "Call waiting service", "Call forwarding service", "Bar nuisance call service", "Dual network service" and "i-mode" are services which you need to subscribe to. For information about network services, contact the DoCoMo Information Center indicated on the back cover of this user's manual. (Dial after you check it carefully.)

You can subscribe to "Voice mail service", "Call waiting", "Call forwarding service", "Bar nuisance call service", "WORLD CALL" and "WORLD WING" via the DoCoMo e-site. For more information, contact the DoCoMo Information Center indicated on the back cover of this user's manual.

Available Network Service

With the FOMA terminal, you can access the useful DoCoMo network services. For the outline of each service and how to access them, see the table below.

Service name	Subscription	Monthly charge	See page
Voice mail service	Required	Charged	Below
Call waiting service	Required	Charged	p.448
Call forwarding service	Required	Free	p.450
Bar nuisance call service	Required	Charged	p.452
Notify caller ID service	Not required	Free	p.58
Caller ID request service	Not required	Free	p.453
Driving mode	Not required	Free	p.81
Dual network service	Required	Charged	p.453
English guidance	Not required	Free	p.454
Short Message Service (SMS)	Not required	Free	p.242
International Roaming Service (WORLD WING)	Required	Free	p.530
i-mode	Required	Charged	p.198

- In case of the network services that require connecting to the network service center, you cannot use these while "圏外" is displayed.
- When DoCoMo provides a new network service, you can store the new service into your Menu. →p.456
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.
- Refer to p.538 for the overseas network service.

Voice Mail Service (Charged)

Subscription: Necessary | Monthly charge: Charged

When you are having your FOMA show "圏外" or when your FOMA terminal is turned off, this service answers calls with the answer message and stores caller's voice mail messages on your behalf. You can access the stored voice mail messages from anywhere in Japan.

- You cannot operate the voice mail service with your FOMA terminal when you are having your FOMA show "圏外". If you set the remote operation for this service in "Remote control" (p.456) beforehand, you can remotely control the voice mail service from general push-key phones or pay phones by using the "NW security code" when your FOMA terminal is unavailable.
- The voice mail service requires a call charge for playing stored voice mail messages in addition to the monthly charge.

About the voice mail service

- Up to 20 voice mail messages can be recorded, each can be recorded up to about 3 minutes long.
- The voice mail messages are stored for up to 72 hours.
- When you receive a videophone call, even if the voice mail service is set to "Activate", the videophone call cannot be connected to the voice mail service center, while the videophone call is continuing.
- If you set the "Call forwarding" service to "Activate", the voice mail service is automatically deactivated.
- When receiving a voice call with no caller ID when the "Caller ID request" service is set to "Activate", a guidance requesting the caller to notify his/her caller ID is played. The voice mail messages cannot be stored.

Basic flow of the voice mail service

Activate the voice mail service.

↓

Your FOMA terminal receives a voice call.

↓

If you do not receive the voice call, it is connected to the voice mail service center.

↓

A caller records a message.

By pressing # during the answering message, a caller who is in a hurry can skip the message and proceed directly to recording his or her message.

↓

You are notified that the voice mail service center stores a new voice mail message.

↓

Play the caller's message.

NOTE

- There is also a guide function just to inform the caller that you are unavailable. Set this function in “Voice mail settings”.
- You can make or receive voice calls as usual even when the voice mail service is set to “Activate”.
- If you receive a voice call when the voice mail service is set to “Active”, the ring tone set in “Select ring tone” sounds. If you answer the call while ringing, you can talk. If you do not answer the call, the call is connected to the voice mail service center. The call is recorded as a “Missed calls” in the “Received calls” and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- You can also connect a call received during a call to the voice mail service center. →p.454
- Voice calls from the phone numbers specified in the “Restrictions” can automatically be connected to the voice mail service center regardless of the voice mail service settings.

Activating the voice mail service

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Voice mail”.

2 Select “Activate”.

A message is displayed asking you whether to activate the Voice mail service.

To change the ringing time only
Select “Set ringing time”.

To stop the voice mail service
Select “Deactivate”.

3 Select “YES”.

To not start the voice mail service
Select “NO”.

4 Enter the ringing time (000 to 120 seconds).

If “0 second” is set, calls are not recorded in the “Received calls”.
If you enter a value outside the range of 000 to 120, a message indicating you that the value is unacceptable appears.

Checking the voice mail service settings

You can check the settings for the voice mail service by inquiring at the voice mail service center. While checking, you can also change the settings.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Voice mail”.

2 Select “Check setting”.

3 Check the settings.



The current settings for the voice mail service appear.

To start the voice mail service
Select “Activate” from the function menu.

To stop the voice mail service
Select “Deactivate” from the function menu.

To change the ringing time
Select “Set ringing time” from the function menu.

Changing the voice mail service settings with the voice guidance

According to the voice guidance, you can play stored messages or change the settings for a function informing that you are unavailable and an answer message.

- You cannot use the voice guidance during a call.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Voice mail”.

2 Select “Voice mail settings”.

You are connected to the voice mail service center. Once connected, change the settings according to the voice guidance.

NOTE

- If you operate keys ((0) to (9), (*), (#)) according to the voice guidance, the call may not end by pressing (PWR). In this case, press (PWR) again.

Setting a ring tone to alert you of a new voice mail message <Notify tone message>

You can set your FOMA terminal to alert you when a new voice mail message is stored in the voice mail service center by a ring tone.

- The ring tone set for “Mail” in “Select ring tone” sounds for about 5 seconds when a new voice mail message is stored.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Voice mail”.

Continued on next page

2 Select “Notify tone message”.

NOTE

- The ring tone which you set for “Mail” of the “Select ring tone” also sounds even when the number of voice mail messages increases by inquiring with the voice mail service center.

Checks whether voice mail messages are stored <Check messages>

You can check whether voice mail messages are stored in the voice mail service center.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Check messages”.

After checking, a message notifying you that inquiring is completed appears. When a new voice mail is stored at the voice mail service center, you will see on your standby display “” (Voice mail icon) and “VM” (desktop icon for “Voice mail”). New voice mail icon is different depending on the number of voice mail stored; “”, “”, “” ... “” (10 or more).

NOTE

- Displayed numbers are the count of new voice mail messages to be played. The stored messages are not included.
- When there is no voice mail message, both the voice mail icon and “Voice mail” desktop icon are not displayed.
- The voice mail icon remains displayed until you call the voice mail service center to delete the message, or it is automatically deleted after the maximum storage period (72 hours) has elapsed.
- Note that adverse reception conditions may result in the call being disconnected or that your inquiry fails.
- The voice mail messages recorded after checking messages may not be confirmed with this setting.

Playing voice mail message

- You cannot play a voice mail message during a call.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Voice mail”.

2 Select “Play messages”.

You are connected to the voice mail service center. Once connected, play voice mail messages according to the voice guidance.

NOTE

- If you operate keys (0 to 9, *, #) according to the voice guidance, the call may not end by pressing . In this case, press again.

Deleting the voice mail icon

You can delete “” (Voice mail icon) displayed on the standby display.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Voice mail”.

2 Select “Erase icon”.

NOTE

- Deleting a voice mail icon does not erase the voice mail message. When you perform “Check messages” again, the voice mail icon reappears.

Call Waiting (Charged)

Subscription	Necessary	Monthly charge	Charged

The call waiting service allows you to receive another voice call during a call. You can also put the current call on hold and make a new call to another person.

- You cannot operate the call waiting service when the “圏外” icon is displayed.
- Before using the call waiting service, set “Arrival call act” (p.455) to “Answer”. If the setting was something other than “Answer”, you cannot reply to the incoming voice calls while taking another even if you are activating the call waiting service.
- When receiving a voice call that does not notify Caller ID when the “Caller ID request” service is set to “Activate”, a guidance requesting the caller to notify his/her caller ID is played, and the call cannot be received.
- In the following cases, the call waiting service is not available:
  - During a call to the 3-digit phone number, such as 110, 119, 118, 117※ or 104
  - During dialing, or while you are waiting for the other party to answer the call

- During a videophone call (The call will be recorded as a “Missed calls” record in the “Received calls list”)
- When you receive a videophone call during a voice call (The call will be recorded as a “Missed calls” record in the “Received calls list”.
- When making a call to as 4-digit phone number such as 1411 (starting the voice mail service) or 1420 (stopping the call forwarding service) for setting the network service.
- While a call is connected to the voice mail service center for playing messages or other purposes if you have subscribed to the “Voice mail” service.

※: When you receive a voice call during a call to 117, a secondary call signal sounds.
However, you cannot answer the call.

Activating the call waiting service

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Call waiting”.

2 Select “Activate”.

To stop the call waiting service settings
Select “Deactivate”.

To check the call waiting service settings
Select “Check setting”.

Putting the current voice call on hold to answer another voice call

1 When you hear a signal tone during a call, press or [Answer].



The call with the first caller is automatically put on hold, and another voice call from the second caller is connected.

2 Switch the line to the first caller.

To end the call with the second caller
Press , and then press or [Answer].
The call with the second caller ends, and the line is switched to the first caller.

To put the call from the second caller on hold
Press .
The call with the second caller is put on hold, and the line is switched to the first caller.
Press to switch between the callers.

To end the held voice call
Select “End held call” from the function menu.

NOTE

- A caller is charged even while the call is on hold.
- When you receive a third voice call while “Multi calling” is displayed on the screen, a message notifying you that you can answer the third call if you end the call on hold or current call appears.
- If you subscribe to the “Voice mail” service or the “Call forwarding” service, set “Arrival call act” to “Answer” and “Set arrival act” to “Activate” to connect the voice call that came in during another call to the voice mail service or call forwarding service. →p. 455

Ending the current voice call to take another voice call

1 When you hear a secondary call signal, press .

The call with the first caller ends, and the ring tone sounds.

2 Press or [Answer].

The second voice call is connected.

Putting the current voice call on hold to make a new voice call to another person

You can put the current call on hold and make a new voice call to another person.

1 Dial a phone number of the second person during a call, and press .



The call with the first caller is automatically put on hold, and the line is switched to the second person.
You can search the phonebook for the number.
How to search the phonebook →p.114

Continued on next page

2 Switch the line to the first caller.

To end the call with the second person

Press (PAUSE), and then press (talk) or (●) [Answer].

The call with the second person ends, and the line is switched to the first caller.

To put the call with the second person on hold

Press (talk).

The call with the second person is put on hold, and the line is switched to the first caller.

Press (talk) to switch between the callers.

To end the held voice call

Select “End held call” from the function menu.

NOTE

- A caller is charged even if the call is on hold.
- When you receive a third voice call while “Multi calling” is displayed on the screen, a message notifying you that you can answer the third call if you end the call on hold or current call appears.

Call Forwarding Service (Free)

Subscription	Necessary	Monthly charge	Free

If you receive a voice or videophone call when you are having your FOMA showing “圏外” or when your FOMA terminal is turned off, this service forwards the call to the forwarding destination such as your home or office you have registered in advance.

- You cannot operate the call forwarding service with your FOMA terminal when you are having your FOMA showing “圏外”. If you set the remote operation for this service in “Remote control” (p.456) beforehand, you can remotely control the call forwarding service from general push-key phones or pay phones by using the “NW security code” when your FOMA terminal unavailable.

About the call forwarding service

- You can register one forwarding destination.
- Videophone calls are not connected unless the forwarding destination is a 3G-324M-compliant videophone terminal. (p.88)
- If you set the “Voice mail” service to “Activate”, the call forwarding service is automatically deactivated.
- If receiving a voice call with no caller ID when the “Caller ID request” service is set to “Activate”, a guidance requesting the caller to notify his/her caller ID is played. The call forwarding service is not available.

Basic flow of the call forwarding service

Register a phone number of a forwarding destination.

↓

Activate the call forwarding service.

↓

Your FOMA terminal receives a voice/videophone call.

↓

If the voice/videophone call is not answered, the call is automatically forwarded to the specified forwarding destination.

Charges for the call forwarding service

Caller ➡ Subscriber to the call forwarding service ➡ Forwarding destination

The caller incurs the call charge.

The subscriber to the call forwarding service incurs the call charge.

- Registering the forwarding destination, activating/deactivating the call forwarding service or setting the ringing time is free of charge.
- When forwarding a call, the subscriber to the call forwarding service is charged for a call charge from an area where the position of the FOMA terminal is registered to the forwarding destination. Be careful that a call charge for the call forwarding service may be unexpectedly expensive if you do not turn your FOMA terminal on after activating this function at a location far from your home place.
  For example, suppose you register your office number in Tokyo as the forwarding destination, and activate this function in Osaka during your business trip. In this case, if you leave your FOMA terminal with the power turned off, you are charged for forwarded calls from Osaka to your office in Tokyo. Turn on the power again when you return to home place. The present position of your FOMA terminal is automatically registered.

NOTE

- You can make or receive voice/videophone calls as usual even when the call forwarding service is set to “Activate”.
- If you receive a voice or videophone call when the call forwarding service is set to “Activate”, the ring tone set in “Select ring tone” sounds. If you answer the call while ringing, you can talk. If you do not answer the voice or videophone call, the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. The call is recorded as a “Missed calls” in the “Received calls” and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- A call is automatically forwarded without ringing, when you are outside the service area or in areas out of reach of radio waves or when your FOMA terminal is turned off. In this case, the subscriber to the call forwarding service incurs a call charge from your FOMA terminal to the forwarding destination.
- You can also forward another voice call received during a call. →p.455
- Voice or videophone calls from the phone numbers specified in the “Restrictions” can automatically be forwarded to the forwarding destination regardless of the call forwarding service settings.
- The call forwarding service may be stopped on behalf of the subscriber at the request of the party receiving forwarded calls where such action is deemed necessary.
- While the call forwarding service is set to “activate” (during forwarding), a Collect call (calls charged to the receiver) cannot be received.

Activating the call forwarding service

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Call forwarding”.

2 Select “Activate”.

To stop the call forwarding service
Select “Deactivate”.

To change the forwarding destination only
Select “Change forwarding No” and enter the phone number of a forwarding destination. If the call forwarding service is set to “Activate”, then select “Change No.”. If set to “Deactivate”, select “Change No.+Activate”.

To check the call forwarding service settings
Select “Check settings”.

3 Set the forwarding destination and ringing time.

To specify the forwarding destination
Select “Register fwd number”.
Enter the number to forward a call. After setting, the “★” is attached to “Register fwd number”.
If you press ○, you can search phonebook to enter the number.
How to search the phonebook →p.114

To set the ringing time
Select “Set ringing time” and enter the ringing time (000 to 120 seconds). After setting, the “★” is attached to “Set ringing time”.
If “0 second” is set, incoming calls are not recorded in the “Received calls”.
If you enter a value outside the range of 000 to 120, a message indicating you that the value is unacceptable appears.

4 Select “Activate ”.

NOTE

- Even if the call forwarding service is set to “Activate”, you cannot forward the received videophone calls if the forwarding party does not have the device that conform to 3G-324M (p.88). Be sure to check the forwarding recipient’s device before you set the call forwarding service. Also, the caller who made the videophone call will not hear the guidance announcement that the call is being forwarded.
- You cannot specify a 3-digit number such as 104 or 117, Quick Number, number of the Toll-Free Number Service, toll-free number, “186”, “131*” or a number with # or + for the forwarding destination.
- Be careful that a caller may misunderstand if you set a private branch exchange (PBX), pager* or fax number as a forwarding destination.

Connecting to the voice mail service center when the forwarding destination is busy <At fwd party busy>

A forwarded voice call can be connected to the voice mail service center when the forwarding destination is busy.

- A subscription to the “Voice mail” service is required.
- You cannot connect to the voice mail service center if you receive a videophone call.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Call forwarding”.

2 Select “At fwd party busy”.

*As of January 2001, the paging service provided by NTT DoCoMo is thereby known as QUICKCAST.

Bar Nuisance Call Service (Charged)

Subscription	Necessary	Monthly charge	Charged

The bar nuisance call service is the service that calls from specific phone numbers such as malicious calls and insistent sales calls can be registered not to receive them. After registered, calls from such numbers are automatically rejected by the network and callers hear the call rejection guidance.

- You cannot use the bar nuisance call service when the "圏外" icon is displayed.
- When you receive a videophone call from the registered phone number for the call rejection, no call rejection guidance is played and the line is disconnected.
- Up to 30 phone numbers can be registered for the call rejection.
- Calls not received due to the bar nuisance call service will not be stored into "Received calls". You will not see the desktop icon "Missed call".

Registering the last nuisance call you received <Register caller>

The phone number of the last call you received and talked can be registered for the call rejection.

- A call with no caller ID can also be registered for the call rejection.
- You can perform the call rejection setting only if you receive (answer) an incoming call. However, you cannot set Call rejection in the following cases:
  - Calls made before you subscribe to the Bar nuisance call service
  - Missed calls (incoming calls you did not answer)※
  - International calls

  ※ Including calls that are transferred to the voice mail service center.
- When using the "Call waiting" service, call rejection is set to the party that gets off the line last.
- You cannot check or inquiry about phone numbers registered for the call rejection. You are recommended to take a note of phone numbers you registered for the call rejection.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ "Bar nuisance call".

2 Select "Register caller".

When 30 phone numbers have been already registered

A message asking you whether to delete the oldest phone number and register a new one appears.
To register a new phone number, delete the oldest entry and then register the last call you received for the call rejection.

NOTE

- You can designate a phone number for the call rejection registration. In this case, make a voice call to "144" directly from the standby display and register a phone number according to the voice guidance.

Deleting phone numbers registered for the call rejection

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ "Bar nuisance call".

2 Delete the phone number registered to be blocked.

To delete the last phone number registered for the call rejection

Select "Delete last entry".
Only the last phone number registered for the call rejection can be deleted.
Other registered phone numbers cannot be deleted even if this deletion procedure is repeated.

To delete all phone numbers registered for the call rejection

Select "Delete all entries".

Caller ID Request Service (Free)

Subscription	Unnecessary	Monthly charge	Free

The caller ID request service responds to voice calls that do not provide a Caller ID by playing an announcement that requests a Caller ID and then automatically terminating the call. This avoids problems caused by unknown callers and allows you to use your FOMA terminal in a carefree manner.

- You cannot operate the caller ID request service when the "圏外" icon is displayed.
- The Caller ID request service only comes into effect when the reason given for the absence of a Caller ID is "User unset", indicating that the caller intentionally selected not to send a Caller ID.(This service does not apply to calls where the reason is "Pay phone" and "Not supported".)
- A call for activating/deactivating the caller ID request service is free of charge.
- The caller of an incoming call is charged for the duration the announcement is heard.
- When "Voice mail service" and the Caller ID request service are set at the same time, the Caller ID request service is given priority and incoming calls are disconnected. Such calls are not connected to the voice mail center.
- When "Call forwarding service" and the Caller ID request service are set at the same time, the Caller ID request service is given priority and incoming calls are disconnected. Such calls are not forwarded to the set forwarding destination.
- When "Call waiting service" and the Caller ID request service are set at the same time, the Caller ID request service is given priority and incoming calls are disconnected. The call waiting function does not work.
- When "Driving mode" and the Caller ID request service are set at the same time, the Caller ID request service is given priority and incoming calls are disconnected. The announcement notifying that you cannot answer calls because you are driving is not made.
- When you are activating "Bar nuisance call" service and Caller ID request service at the same time, the "Bar nuisance call" service is given priority over others; and the incoming calls will be rejected.
- When you are activating "Call setting w/o ID" and "Caller ID request" service at the same time, the Caller ID request service is given priority over others.
- When a call is not received due to the caller ID request service, the call is not recorded in "Received calls" and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.

Activating the caller ID request service

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ "Caller ID request".

2 Select "Activate".

To deactivate the caller ID request service
Select "Deactivate".

To check the caller ID request service settings
Select "Check setting".

Dual Network Service (Charged)

Subscription	Necessary	Monthly charge	Charged

The dual network service is the service that you can use the same phone number for both the FOMA terminal providing a high-quality communication service and the mova providing a wide service area.

- You cannot operate the dual network service when the "圏外" icon is displayed.
- The dual network service can switch the entire service including the i-mode center and the network service center.
- For details of the dual network service and mova operations, refer to the "Network Services Operation Guide".

About the dual network service

- Switching to dual network service is performed with a FOMA terminal or mova that cannot be used within the service.
- Network services you have subscribed with your FOMA terminal can also be used with your mova. Note that the following settings are set by each terminal and not reflected to each other.
  - ·Notify caller ID service
  - ·Driving mode
  - ·Arrival call act

Continued on next page

- The FOMA terminal and the mova cannot be connected to a network at the same time.
- The following functions are available only with the FOMA terminal:
  - ·Making/Receiving videophone calls
  - ·Receiving Msg. Request/Free
  - ·Sending/Receiving SMS
  - ·Checking new SMS
- A mova that supports i-mode can be select whether to receive i-mode mail automatically or check/reply unreceived mails on “Mail Check Site” in iMenu.
- The network service you have subscribed in the FOMA terminal is also available when you are using mova. However, some network settings made at each terminal may not be interoperable.
- Switching to the mova is not available from the FOMA terminal.

Switching from the mova to the FOMA terminal

- Before switching, check that you are in the service area. The reception level on the FOMA terminal and mova screen indicates radio wave conditions, not the status of the network availability.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Dual network”.

2 Select “Switching”.

A message is displayed asking you whether to switch networks.

To check the status of the FOMA terminal availability

Select “Check setting”.

3 Select “YES”, and enter the NW security code.

NW security code →p.152

To not switch

Select “NO”.

NOTE

- To use the dual network service following your return to Japan, turn on your FOMA terminal, set “Network switch” to “Auto” or “3G” and check that “FOMA” is displayed.

English Guidance

Subscription | Unnecessary | Monthly charge | Free

You can set the language for the voice guidance to be played for incoming and outgoing calls and also when performing settings for network services such as the “Voice mail” service and “Call forwarding” service.

- You cannot operate the English guidance when the “圏外” icon is displayed.
- English guidance is unavailable to videophones.
- When a caller is using this service, the caller’s setting is given priority over the receiver’s setting.
- For details about the English guidance service and networks that support this service, see the “Network Services Operation Guide”.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “English guidance”.

2 Select “Guidance setting”.

To check the guidance settings

Select “Check guidance”.

3 Select the item you want to set.

To set the guidance for outgoing and incoming calls

Select “Outgoing+Incoming”. Set the guidance for outgoing calls, and then set the guidance for incoming calls.
Select the guidance for outgoing calls from “Japanese/English”, and select the guidance for incoming calls from “Japanese/Japanese+English/English+Japanese”.

To set the language for outgoing calls only

Select “Outgoing call”.
Select the guidance for outgoing calls from “Japanese/English”.

To set the language for incoming calls only

Select “Incoming call”.
Select the guidance for incoming calls from “Japanese/Japanese+English/English+Japanese”.

Service Dial

You can make a call to DoCoMo general information desk or service desk with quick operation.

- You cannot operate the service dial when you are in the area “圏外” showed.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Service dial”.

To make a call to DoCoMo service desk
Select “ドコモ故障問合せ”, and press ● [Dial].

To make a call to DoCoMo general information desk
Select “ドコモ総合案内･受付”, and press ● [Dial].

NOTE

- Service dials may not be available for some FOMA card versions.

Selecting the Way to Handle Incoming Calls During a Call

You can set how to handle another incoming voice call during a call.
This is useful if you have not subscribed to the “Call waiting” service.
Select “Set arrival act” to “Activate” to set how to handle voice calls that come in while you are talking on the phone by using “Arrival call act” function.

- You cannot operate the “Set arrival act” where the “圏外” icon is displayed.
- During a videophone call, the function set in the “Arrival call act” becomes invalid.
- You can also manually connect a voice call received during a call to the voice mail service center or the forwarding destination.
- You cannot connect the incoming voice calls to the voice mail service center or the forwarding destination if you have not subscribed to “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service.

Selecting the way to handle incoming calls during a call <Arrival call act>

Default setting	Answer

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Arrival call act”.

2 Select the item you want to set.

Voice mail:
Connects an incoming voice call during a call to the voice mail service center regardless of the “Call waiting” or “Voice mail” service settings.
Call forwarding:
Forwards an incoming voice call during a call to the forwarding destination regardless of the “Call waiting” or “Call forwarding” service settings.
Call rejection:
Rejects an incoming voice call during a call.
Answer:
When the “Call waiting” is set to “Activate”, the operations of the “Call waiting” are available. When the “Call waiting” is set to “Deactivate”, any of the following operations is available.

- You can take an incoming voice call by ending the current voice call.
- You can connect an incoming voice call during a call to the voice mail service center or the forwarding destination or reject it by manually using the function menu. →p.73
- When the “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service is set to “Activate”, the settings in these services are followed.

NOTE

- When “Voice mail”, “Call forwarding” or “Call rejection” is set for this function, an incoming voice call during a call is recorded in the “Received calls” and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby display.

Activating the set arrival act <Set arrival act>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Set arrival act”.

2 Select “Activate”.

To stop the set arrival act settings
Select “Deactivate”.

To check the set arrival act settings
Select “Check setting”.

Ending the current voice call to take another voice call

If you set “Arrival call act” to “Answer” and “Set arrival act” to “Activate”, you can take an incoming voice call by ending the current voice call.

1 When you hear a secondary call signal, press PWR HLD.

The current call ends and the ring tone sounds.
When the “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service is set to “Activate”, and the ringing time has elapsed while a secondary call signal is sounding, the incoming call is connected to the voice mail service center or forwarding destination.

Continued on next page

2 Press [ ] or [●] [Answer].

You can receive a voice phone call.

Manually connecting to the voice mail/ call forwarding service or rejecting calls

- When you receive another call while taking another, you can connect the new incoming voice call to the voice mail service or call forwarding service or reject the call in the following settings:
  - When the “Call waiting” is “Activate” and the Arrival call act is “Answer”.
  - When the set arrival act is “Activate” and the Arrival call act is “Answer”.
- Regardless of the Activate/Deactivate setting of the “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service, you can use these services by using this function.

<Example: When the call waiting service is activated>

1 When you hear a signal tone during a call, press [ ] [FUNC] to display the function menu.

2 Select how you want to handle the incoming call.

To reject an incoming call
Select “Call rejection”.

To forward an incoming call to the forwarding destination
Select “Call forwarding”.

To connect an incoming call to the voice mail service center
Select “Voice mail”.
In any of the above cases, you can resume talking with the first caller.

NOTE

- If the call forwarding destination is not stored, the message informing you that the forwarding destination number is not set will appear on the display.
- During a call to emergency numbers “110 (police)”, “119 (fire or ambulance)” or “118 (emergency number for maritime accidents)”, you cannot operate from the function menu.
- When you are not receiving a call (when you are out of the service area, you cannot answer a video/ videophone call or the power is off), the “Activate/ Deactivate” setting of the “Voice mail” service or “Call forwarding” service is followed.

Remote control

Setting the Remote Control of Network Service

You can operate network services such as the voice mail service and the call forwarding service by remote control using other phones such as pay phones.

- You cannot operate the remote control when you are in the area “圏外” showed.

Activating the remote control

1 Select [ ] (Menu) ▶ [Service] ▶ “Remote control”.

2 Select “Activate”.

To stop the remote control
Select “Deactivate”.

To check the remote control settings
Select “Check setting”.

Controlling network services remotely
To operate network services from a phone, such as a pay phone, dial as follows:

090-310-XXXX

- For XXXX, dial the item that you want to operate.
- For details about operating method, refer to “Network Services Operation Guide”.

Additional service

Storing and Using a New Service

When DoCoMo provides new network services, you can store these additional network services in your FOMA terminal. When a new network service is provided, a “Enter number” or a “Service code” to be used for the service will be sent to you. Register the “Enter number” or “Service code” as well as the new service’s name on your FOMA terminal.

- You can register up to 10 network services.
- Enter the “Service code” into “USSD” in the Additional service entering display.

● When using the newly registered network service in “Service code (USSD)”, you can also record the answer message for the command sent from the network.

Storing and Using a new service

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Additional service”.

2 Select “Additional service”.

3 Highlight the <Not stored> and select “Add new service” from the function menu.

To change the setting
Highlight the registered service and select “Edit” from the function menu.

4 Enter the service name.

Up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters can be entered for a service name.
Entering characters →p.502

5 Select the connect way.

To connect with the “Enter number”
Select “Enter number” and enter the special number.

To connect with the “Service code”
Select “Enter USSD number” and enter the service code.

Using a stored service

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Additional service”.

2 Select “Additional service” and then the service number you want to use, and then press ● [Send].

Storing an additional guidance

When using the newly registered network service in “Service code (USSD)”, you can store an answer message for the command sent from the network.

● You can register up to 10 answer messages.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Additional service”.

2 Select “Additional guidance ”.

3 Highlight <Not stored> and select “Add new guidance” from the function menu.

To change the setting
Highlight the registered service and select “Edit” from the function menu.

4 Enter the command.

Up to 20 digits of command can be entered.

5 Enter the additional guidance.

Up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters can be entered for an additional guidance.
Entering characters →p.502

Deleting a stored service or additional guidance

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Additional service”.

2 Select the item you want to delete.

To delete a stored additional service
Select “Additional service”.

To delete a stored additional guidance
Select “Additional guidance”.

3 Highlight the item you want to delete and select “Delete this” from the function menu.

To delete all items
Select “Delete all” from the function menu.

Data Communication

■ **About Data Communication**
About Data Communication Available for Your FOMA Terminal 460
■ **Preparation and Flow of Data Communication**
Checking the Procedure 461
■ **Connecting the FOMA Terminal to PC**
Connecting the FOMA Terminal to PC 462
■ **Installing Communication Setting File**
Installing the Communication Setting File (Drivers) 463
Checking the Installed Communication Setting File (Drivers) 466
Uninstalling Communication Setting File (Drivers) 467
■ **Data Communication Settings by Using the FOMA PC Setting Software**
About the FOMA PC Setting Software 467
Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software 468
Communication Settings 470
Executing Set Data Communication 473
W-TCP Settings 476
Access Point Name (APN) Settings 477
■ **Data Communication Settings without Using the FOMA PC Setting Software**
Setting up Dial-up Network 478
Setting up Dial-up 483
■ **AT Command List**
AT Command List 490

About Data Communication Available for Your FOMA Terminal

Packet communication can be used by connecting a FOMA terminal and a PC.

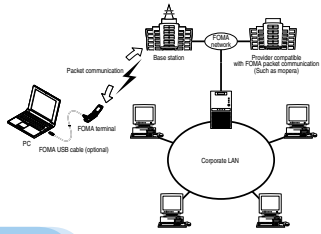
● FOMA N900iG does not support 64K data communication. The “Easy settings” section (p.471) for “FOMA PC setting software” shows a screen indicating the “64Kデータ通信” option as a connection mode. However, 64K data communication is not available.

■ Packet communication

- Packet communication is a method for transmitting data in a unit called a “packet”. Since multiple terminals can utilize 1 line at the same time, communication is efficient. Data can be received at a communication speed as high as 384kbps max.
- Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Therefore, packet communication is best for exchanging a comparatively small amount of data at a high speed, such as sending and receiving the text data of mail. Be informed that the communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received.
- It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data (in order to use this system, subscription to Type 1 Leased Circuit Connection Service or XWave® (Type 2 Leased Circuit Connection Service) is required).

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is carried out by connecting a FOMA terminal with a PC through FOMA USB cable (optional). Please use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera”.



NOTE

● You cannot use PHS services such as PIAFS (32K and 64K data communication) and FAX communications from FOMA terminal.

● You can use the FOMA terminal to perform packet communication connecting via PDA. For details, refer to the manual for your PDA.

Notice before using

Internet service fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the service provider. Please contact your Internet service provider for details.
DoCoMo also provides an Internet service called “mopera” for which you are exempt from application procedures and monthly fees.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization for network access

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Please contact the provider or administrator for details.

NOTE

<Packet communication>

● Received calls using the packet communication are recorded as “Received calls”.

● Dial-up connection/disconnection must be controlled by PC.

● You can receive calls using packet communication even if “Driving mode” is set.

<Available operations during packet communication>

● You can transmit SMS during packet communication.

● You can make or receive voice calls during packet communication.

<Unavailable operations during packet communication>

● The following operations are not possible during packet communication:

- Using videophone
- Using i-mode
- Sending and receiving i-mode mails
- Infrared exchange
- Data transmission via the cable connection

Checking the Procedure

The following shows the procedure from connection of packet communication to completion of setting. Read the following instructions to understand the procedure before you begin.

- In packet communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA packet communication.
- For packet communication, installation of N900iG communication setting file (drivers) and the configuration of the "Dial-up network" settings are required.

About the "CD-ROM for FOMA N900iG" provided

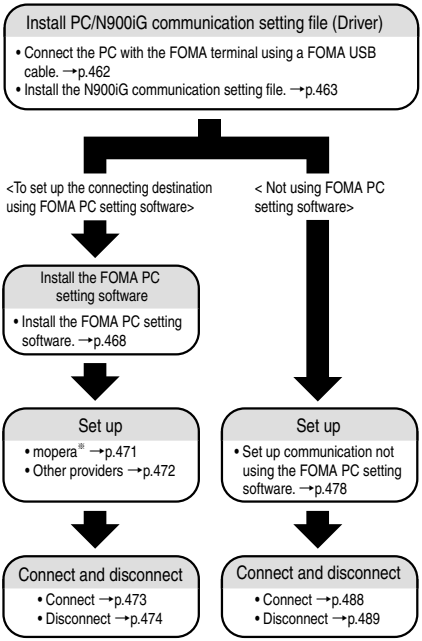
- The CD-ROM contains the N900iG communication setting file (drivers) and FOMA PC setting software.
- The N900iG communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB cable (optional) to carry out packet communication or data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N900iG communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows. Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and create a dial-up.

NOTE

- You can also carry out packet communication setting without using the FOMA PC setting software.
  Setting up Dial-up Network → p.478

Flow up to completing data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication.



※ "mopera" is a DoCoMo's internet connection service for which you do not need to apply. We recommend that you set up communication using "mopera" if you want to connect to the internet in an easy way.

NOTE

- If "FOMA N900iG" is not displayed in "Checking the Installed Communication Setting File (Drivers)" (p.466), you have failed the installation.
  After uninstalling the communication setting file (p.467), reinstall it.
- If your PC stops recognizing the FOMA terminal for some reasons, uninstall the communication setting file (p.467) and reinstall it.
- If you install the driver for a wrong OS due to the wrong automatic search settings, etc., it does not run properly. After uninstalling the communication setting file, reinstall it properly.

Connecting the FOMA Terminal to PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB cable.

About operation environment of packet communication

The PC operation environment to use packet communication is as shown below:

Item	Description
PC unit	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 x 600, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS	• Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000/ Windows XP (Japanese versions)
Required memory	• Windows 98/Windows Me: 32MB or more※ • Windows 2000: 64MB or more※ • Windows XP: 128MB or more※
Hard disk space	• 5MB or more of empty space※

※The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

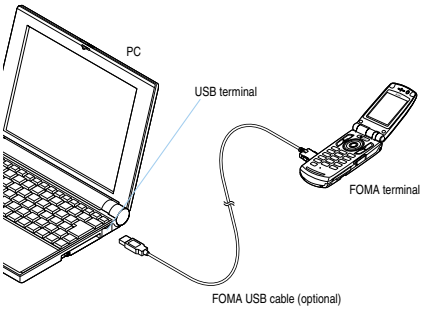
NOTE

- Depending on the operating environment, there are some instances where you cannot use this software. Also, please be notified that we cannot take responsibility for inquiries or guarantees regarding the use in operating environments other than those mentioned above.
- For packet communication using DoCoMo PDA "sigmarion Ⅱ" or "musea" connected to FOMA terminal, update "sigmarion Ⅱ" or "musea". For how to update and other details, go to the DoCoMo Web page.

Devices required

The following hardware and software in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC are required.

- FOMA USB cable (optional)
- Attached CD- ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N900iG"



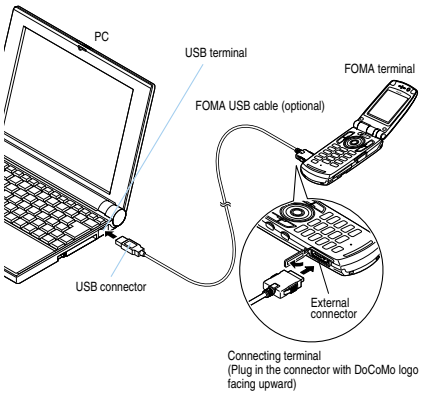
NOTE

- Purchase the dedicated USB cable "FOMA USB cable". USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB cable.

- To perform packet communication, set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode". →p.393



1 Open the FOMA terminal's external connector cap.

2 **Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB cable to the USB terminal of your PC.**

3 **Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB cable straight until you hear a click.**

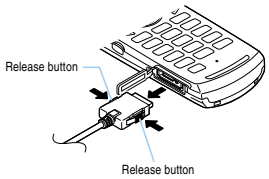
"" appears on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB cable has been connected.

NOTE

- Do not forcibly insert the FOMA USB cable connectors. The connectors can be connected only when the orientation and the inserting angle are correct. When you insert each connector correctly, you do not need an extra force. When it cannot be inserted smoothly, do not force it. Check again its shape and orientation.
- "" appears on the FOMA terminal display when a N900iG communication setting file is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before a data communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and "" does not appear.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB cable.



1 **Pull it out straight while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB cable.**

2 **Remove the FOMA USB cable from the USB terminal of the PC.**

3 **Close the FOMA terminal's external connector cap.**

NOTE

- Do not pull out the FOMA USB cable forcibly. It may cause a failure.
- Do not repetitively connect and disconnect the FOMA USB cable. After you have connected and disconnected once, wait for a while before doing so again.

Installing the Communication Setting File (Drivers)

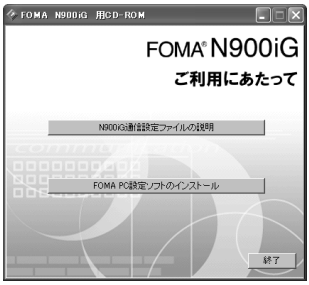
This section describes the procedure from connection to a PC to installation of the N900iG communication setting file (drivers).

Connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC

1 **Connect the FOMA USB cable to the PC USB terminal.**

2 **Start up Windows and insert the "CD-ROM for FOMA N900iG" in the CD-ROM drive of your PC.**

3 **Click "終了(Exit)" to exit from the "FOMA N900iG ご利用にあたって(To use FOMA N900iG)" screen.**



This screen usually appears automatically when the "CD-ROM for FOMA N900iG" is inserted in the drive, but may not appear depending on the PC settings. In this case, simply proceed to Step 4.
If this screen appears while you are installing the N900iG communication setting file, click "終了(Exit)" as well.

Continued on next page

4 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB cable connected to the PC to your FOMA terminal.

For Windows 98/Windows Me
"新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード (Add new hardware wizard)" screen appears.

For Windows 2000/Windows XP
"新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザード (Find new hardware wizard)" screen appears.

NOTE

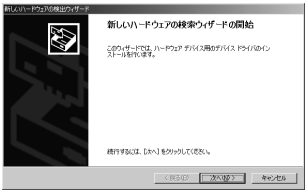
- Purchase the dedicated USB cable "FOMA USB cable". USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Installing the N900iG communication setting file (drivers)

- When installing the N900iG communication setting file, be sure to install all drivers (p.466) in one installation process. If the FOMA USB cable is removed in the middle of the process or the installation is interrupted by clicking "キャンセル(Cancel)", the N900iG communication setting file may not be correctly installed. In this case, follow the uninstallation process (p.467) to delete the N900iG communication setting file and reinstall.
- If you are using Windows 2000 or Windows XP, be sure to use an account with PC administrator authority ("Administrator") to install the N900iG communication setting file. An error will occur if you try to install such files using an account without PC administrator authority. Enquire with your PC manufacturer or Microsoft about setting up administrator authority.
- The installation procedure for the N900iG communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC.
  For Windows 2000, refer to the following.
  For Windows XP, or Windows 98/Me, proceed to p.465.

For Windows 2000

1 Connect the FOMA USB cable to the FOMA terminal.



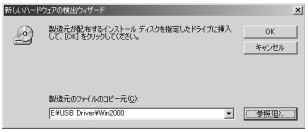
When the FOMA USB cable has been connected to the PC in Step 4 on the left, the screen as shown above is automatically displayed.

2 Click "次へ (Next)".

3 When the "ハードウェア デバイス ドライバのインストール (Installation of hardware device)" screen appears, select "デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する(推奨) (Search for the Optimal driver for the device (recommended))" and click "次へ (Next)".

4 When the "ドライバ ファイルの特定 (Specify the driver file)" screen appears, check the "場所を指定 (Specify search location)" box and click "次へ (Next)".

5 Specify the folder to search and click "OK".



The folder name is "<CD-ROM drive name>:¥USB Driver¥Win2000".
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC you are using. On the screen shown above, the CD-ROM drive name is "E".

6 When the "ドライバ ファイルの検索 (Search for the driver file)" screen appears, confirm the driver name and click "次へ (Next)".

"FOMA N900iG" appears here.

7 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了 (Complete the find new hardware wizard)” appears, click “完了 (Finish)”.

8 Install other drivers.

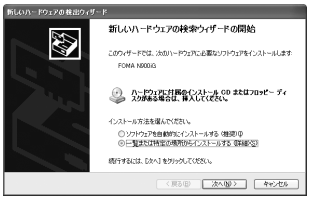
See Step 1 to 7 and install all other drivers (p.466). If the “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザード (Find new hardware wizard)” screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is complete. Proceed to “Checking the Installed Communication Setting File (Drivers)” (p.466).

For Windows XP

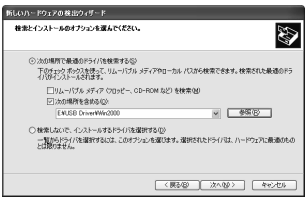
1 Connect the FOMA USB cable to the FOMA terminal.

When the FOMA USB cable has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 4 on p.464, the screen of “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザード (Find new hardware wizard)” is shown.

2 Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする（詳細）(Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced))” and click “次へ (Next)”.



3 Select “次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する (Search for the most compatible driver in the next location)”, uncheck “リムーバブルメディア（フロッピー、CD-ROM など）を検索 (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM)” and check “次の場所を含める(include the next location)” and specify a folder to search. Click “次へ(Next)”.



Specify the folders as “<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver ¥Win 2000”.
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC used. In the above screen, the CD-ROM drive name is “E”.
The driver is common with Windows 2000.

4 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了 (Complete the find new hardware wizard)” appears, click “完了(Finish)”.

5 Install other drivers.

See Step 1 to 4 and install all other drivers (p.466). If the “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザード (Find new hardware wizard)” screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 4, installation of the drivers is complete.
When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。(New hardware is installed and ready for use)” for several seconds. Proceed to “Checking the Installed Communication Setting File (Drivers)” (p.466).

For Windows 98/Windows Me

1 Connect the FOMA USB cable to the FOMA terminal.

Continued on next page

When the FOMA USB cable has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 4 on p.464, the screen “新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード(Add new hardware wizard)” is automatically displayed.

2 Install the driver by following the instructions displayed on the screen.



For installing the driver, refer to the procedures for Windows 2000 (p.464) and Windows XP (p.465). Specify “<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver¥Win98” for the name of the folder for searching the driver.

3 Install other drivers.

Repeat the operation for installing drivers until the “新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード(Add new hardware wizard)” screen no longer appears. When all the driver installations have been completed, proceed to “Checking the Installed Communication Setting File (Drivers)” (below).

Checking the Installed Communication Setting File (Drivers)

Check to see if the N900iG communication setting file has been correctly installed.

1 Open the Control Panel of Windows.

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000
Select “スタート (Start)”→“設定 (Settings)”→“コントロールパネル (Control Panel)”.

For Windows XP
Select “スタート (Start)”→“コントロールパネル (Control Panel)”.

2 Open “システム(System)” in the “コントロールパネル (Control Panel)”.

For Windows Me
If the “システム (System)” icon does not appear in “コントロールパネル(Control Panel)”, click “すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する (Display all Control Panel options)”.

For Windows XP
Click the “システム (System)” icon in “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)”.

3 Open the device manager.

For Windows 98/Windows Me
Click the “デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)” tab.

For Windows 2000/Windows XP
Click the “ハードウェア (Hardware)” tab and click “デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)”.

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name.

Check to see if all the driver names are displayed under the following devices:

ポート (Port) (COM/LPT)
- FOMA N900iG Command Port
- FOMA N900iG OBEX Port

モデム (Modem)
- FOMA N900iG

ユニバーサルシリアルバス (USB) コントローラ (Universal Serial Bus controller) or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ (controller)
- FOMA N900iG
- FOMA N900iG Command※
- FOMA N900iG Modem※
- FOMA N900iG OBEX※

※: Windows 98/Windows Me only

Check the driver name, and proceed to “About the FOMA PC Setting Software” (p.467).

(Example: Windows XP)



NOTE

- If not all driver names appear when you check the above or if you have installed an improper N900iG communication setting file for your OS, follow the uninstall instructions (p.467) to delete the file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling Communication Setting File (Drivers)

If necessary (when Windows has been upgraded, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- If you are using Windows 2000 or Windows XP, be sure to use an account with PC administrator authority (“Administrator”) to uninstall the N900iG communication setting file. An error will occur if you try to uninstall such files using an account without PC administrator authority. Enquire with your PC manufacturer or Microsoft about setting up administrator authority.

1 Remove the FOMA USB cable if the FOMA terminal is connected to PC using it.

2 Start Windows and insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N900iG” into the CD-ROM drive of the PC.

3 When the “FOMA N900iG ご利用にあたって(To use FOMA N900iG)” screen appears, click "終了(Exit)".

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N900iG” is inserted in the drive, but may not appear depending on the PC settings. In this case, simply proceed to Step 4.

4 Open “スタート(Start)” →“マイコンピュータ(My Computer)”, right-click the CD-ROM icon and select “開く(Open)”.

5 Open the “USB Driver” folder on the CD-ROM, open the “UnInst” folder and double-click “n900igun.exe” to execute the uninstall program.

“n900igun” may appear instead of “n900igun.exe” depending on the setting of the PC you use.

6 When the “FOMA N900iG Driverを削除します。” screen appears, click “OK” to uninstall the driver.

To cancel uninstallation, click “キャンセル(Cancel)”.

7 When the screen for asking whether to restart Windows appears, click “はい(Yes)” to restart Windows.

Now the uninstallation is completed.
If you have clicked “いいえ (No)”, restart Windows manually.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

You need to set up various settings for communication in order to carry out packet communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC. By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the following:

- You can also set up packet communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. →p.478
- The latest version of the FOMA PC setting software is available at DoCoMo’s website.

Easy settings
The guide walks you through the procedures for “Making new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication” and “W-TCP setting”.

W-TCP setting
W-TCP settings optimize the communication settings of a PC before using “FOMA packet communication”.
To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings by making W-TCP settings.

Access point name (APN) setting
Set the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.
For each FOMA packet communication access point, before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field. For using mopera, APN: mopera.ne.jp is registered as the first cid, but when connecting to other providers or corporate LAN, you will need to make the APN settings.
cid [Context Identifier]: a number corresponding to a packet communication connection point (APN). It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- If any W-TCP environment setting software or FOMA data communication setting software not supplied with this FOMA terminal is already installed, uninstall such software before installing the FOMA PC setting software.
- FOMA N900iG does not support 64K data communication. The "64Kデータ通信" option is indicated as a connection mode. However, 64K data communication is not available.

Procedures from installation of FOMA PC setting software to connection to the Internet

STEP 1 Install software

Install the FOMA PC setting software

- If the "previous W-TCP setting software" or the "previous APN setting software" is installed, uninstall it before installing the "FOMA PC setting software". When "previous W-TCP setting software" or "previous APN setting software" is installed, the "FOMA PC setting software" cannot be installed.

STEP 2 Make preparation before set up

Make preparation for making communication settings

- Before making various settings, make sure that the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and has been recognized by the PC correctly.
- For "How to connect the FOMA terminal to the PC". →p.462
- For "How to make the PC recognize the FOMA terminal correctly", see "Installing the Communication Setting File (Drivers)" (p.463).
- If the FOMA terminal is not recognized by the PC, it will not be possible to make various settings or perform data communication. In this case, see p.463 and install the communication setting file.

STEP 3 Set up various settings

Make the communication settings by using "Easy settings".

- For using mopera, see p.471.
- For using a provider other than mopera, see p.472.

STEP 4 Connect

Connect to the Internet

- For how to connect to the Internet, see p.473.

Before installing

Check the operation environment.

- The PC operation environment for using the FOMA PC setting software is as shown below:

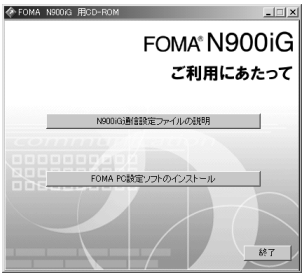
Item	Required environment
PC unit	• PC/AT compatible model
OS	• Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000/ Windows XP (Japanese versions)
Required memory	• Windows 98/Windows Me: 32MB or more※ • Windows 2000: 64MB or more※ • Windows XP: 128MB or more※
Hard disk space	• 5MB or more of empty space※

※: The required memory and necessary hard disk space depend on the system configuration of the PC.

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

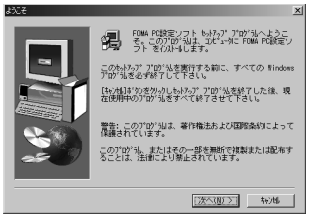
- If you are using Windows 2000 or Windows XP, be sure to use an account with PC administrator authority ("Administrator") to install the FOMA PC setting software. An error will occur if you try to uninstall the software using an account without PC administrator authority. Enquire with your PC manufacturer or Microsoft about setting up administrator authority.

1 Insert the supplied CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC and click "FOMA PC設定ソフトのインストール (Installation of the FOMA PC setting software)".



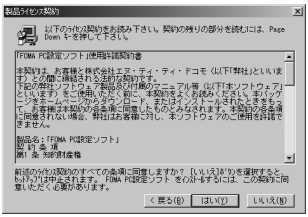
The “FOMA N900iG ご利用にあたって (To use FOMA N900iG)” screen will automatically be displayed. If for some reason the CD-ROM is not automatically started, right-click the CD-ROM icon in “マイコンピュータ (My Computer)”, select “開く(Open)” and double-click “start.exe”. Then click “FOMA PC 設定ソフトのインストール (Installation of the FOMA PC setting software)”.

2 Click “次へ (Next)”.



Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click “キャンセル (Cancel)” to exit the program and resume installation.
If a message appears indicating that “previous W-TCP setting software” or “previous APN setting software” is installed, proceed to p.470.

3 Confirm the user agreement of “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software)” and click “はい (Yes)” if agreeing to it.



If you click “いいえ(No)”, the installation is canceled.

4 Click “次へ (Next)”.



Select whether or not you want “W-TCP settings” to reside in the Task Tray.
This is a function to set up / cancel optimization of “W-TCP communication”, we recommend you choose to let it reside in the Task Tray.
If there is no problem in particular, click “次へ (Next)“ with “タスクトレイに常駐する(Let it reside in the Task Tray)” checked to continue with the installation. Even if you do not check “タスクトレイに常駐する(Let it reside in the Task Tray)” here, you will be able to change the settings by selecting “メニュー (Menu)”, “W-TCP設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる(Let W-TCP settings reside in the Task Tray)” on the FOMA PC setting software.
(Note): This option is disabled when the “タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside in the task tray)” setting is in effect.



The W-TCP setting will appear in the task tray that is usually located at the bottom right corner of the desktop.

5 When the “インストール先の選択(Select the installation location)” screen appears, select the installation location and click “次へ (Next)”.

If you want to change the destination, click “参照 (Browse)”, specify the location and click “次へ (Next)”.
You can select another drive if you do not have enough hard disk space, but generally the default setting is recommended.

6 When the “プログラム フォルダの選択(Select the program folder)” screen appears, check the name of program folder and click “次へ (Next)”.

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click “次へ (Next)”.

Continued on next page

7 When the “セットアップの完了(Setup completed)” screen appears, click “完了 (Finish)”.

When the setup process has been completed, the “FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software)” screen will automatically appear. Various settings can be initiated at this point.

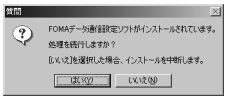
Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the “previous W-TCP setting software” is installed>



- When the “previous W-TCP setting software” is installed, this screen will appear.
- Open “アプリケーション(プログラム)の追加と削除 (Add/delete applications (programs))” and delete the old version.

<If the “previous APN setting software” is installed>



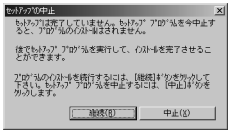
- When the “previous APN setting software” is installed, this screen will appear.
- When you click “はい (Yes)”, the previous APN settings software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC settings software will be installed.

<If the “FOMA PC setting software” is already installed>



- When the FOMA PC setting software is already installed, this screen will appear.
- Clicking “はい (Yes)” automatically uninstalls the FOMA PC setting software and then reinstalls the software.

<If the “キャンセル(Cancel)” button is clicked during installation>



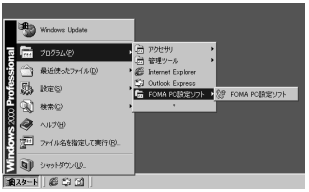
- When “キャンセル (Cancel)” or “いいえ (No)” is selected during setup operations to stop the procedure, this screen will appear. When you want to continue the operation, click “継続 (Continue)”. When you intend to stop the procedure, click “中止 (Cancel)”.

Communication Settings

You can easily create a dial-up for FOMA by following the information of the selected “接続方法 (Connection Method)” and “接続先プロバイダ (Provider connecting to)” to select / enter for displayed items on the “FOMA PC setting software”.

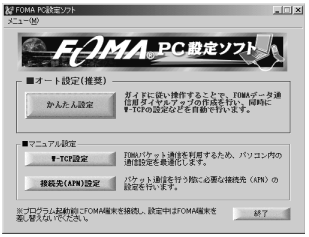
- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 384kbps maximum.
  Packet communication: Enables packet communication of up to 384 kbps for receiving and up to 64kbps for sending (there are exceptions for some machine types). Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy packet communication without worrying about time. The communication is implemented by the Best effort type service, changing communication speed in response to the influence of communication environments or congestion.
- Note that the communication charge can become high if “Packet communication” is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view Web pages containing images or to download files.

1 Open “スタート (Start)” →“プログラム (Programs)” →“FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software)”.



For Windows XP
Open “スタート (Start)” → “すべてのプログラム (All Programs)” →“FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software)”.

The following operation display appears when the FOMA PC setting software is started.



・ For using mopera →p.471.
・ For using a provider other than mopera →p.472.

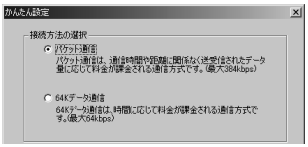
Easy settings : “Communication settings by using mopera”

● This section explains how to perform the settings for communication using mopera.

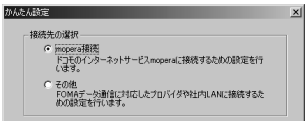
1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy settings)”.



2 Select “パケット通信 (Packet communication)” and click “次へ (Next)”.



3 Select “mopera 接続 (mopera access)” and click “次へ (Next)”.



See p.472 to use any other provider than mopera.

4 When the “FOMA端末設定取得(Obtain the FOMA terminal settings)” screen appears, click “OK”.

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal that is connected to the PC. Please wait a moment.

5 Enter the access point name in the “接続名 (Name of access point)” field and click “次へ (Next)”.

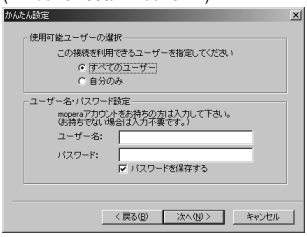


You can enter any name you want for the connection you are creating.
Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名 (Connection Name)” column.
Enter the connection name correctly including upper/lower case.
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/:＊?!<>|” (half-pitch only).

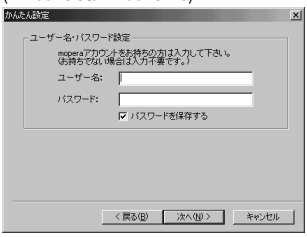
6 Specify a user name and password, then click “次へ (Next)”.

User Name and Password can be omitted for the mopera connection.

(Windows 2000/Windows XP)



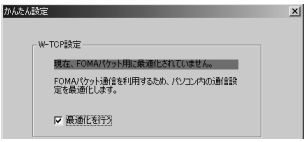
(Windows 98/Windows Me)



For Windows 2000/Windows XP, select “user”.
If you do not know which user you should select, select “すべてのユーザー” (default setting).
Enter exact information provided by the provider including upper / lower case to enter the User Name/Password.

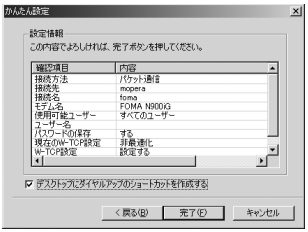
Continued on next page

7 Check “最適化を行う (Optimize the setting)” and click “次へ (Next)”.



Optimize “W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP settings)” required for “packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen will not be displayed.
You need to reboot the PC for the changed settings to take effect.

8 Check the setting information and click “完了 (Finish)”.



The contents that were set will be listed.
Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop” automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る (Back)”.

9 Click “OK”.

You need to reboot the PC to enable the changes in the settings.
Click “Yes” if the selection screen for reboot appears.
Performs the communication set up. →p.473

Easy settings: “Communication setting by using other providers”

● This section explains how to perform the settings for communication using a provider other than mopera.

1 In the procedure described in p.471, follow Steps 1 and 2, select “その他 (Other)” in Step 3 and perform the operation described in Step 4.

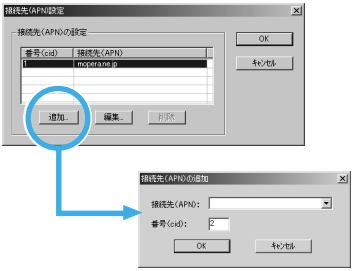
2 Make packet communication settings.

After the terminal setting has been completely acquired, a screen “パケット通信設定 (Packet communication setting)” will appear.
Enter a name in “接続名 (Connection name)”. Enter the connection name correctly including upper/lower case.
The following reserved characters cannot be used for 接続名(Connection name):
¥/: * ?!<>|” (half-pitch only)
If “発信者番号通知を行う(Notify Caller ID)” is checked off, the Caller ID is notified when communication is carried out.
APN: mopera.ne.jp is set by default in the “接続先(APN)の選択(Select the connecting destination (APN))” for mopera connection.



3 Specify the access point (APN).

Number (cid) 1 is assigned with “mopera.ne.jp” by default.
Open the “接続先(APN)の追加 (Add the access point (APN))” screen by clicking the “追加 (Add)” button, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click “OK”.
Return to the “接続先(APN)設定 (Specify the access point (APN))” screen.
Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and periods (.) can only be entered for the access point.
Up to 10 cid can be registered.



4 Set up Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings).

Clicking “詳細情報の設定(Set up detail information)” on “パケット通信設定(Packet Communication settings)” displays the setup screen for “IP address” / “Name Server”.
If you need to enter information as dialup information for your provider, company LAN, etc., register each address according to the entry instructions.

5 Select the Access point (APN) and click “OK”.

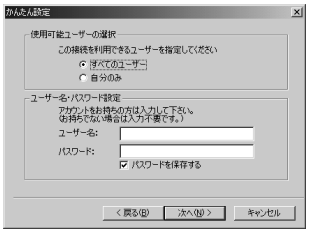
It returns to the screen in Step 2.
The access point (APN) entered in the Step 3 is displayed on “接続先(APN)の選択(Select the access point (APN))”.

6 Confirm the Access point (APN) and click “次へ (Next)” on “接続先(APN)の選択 (Select the connecting destination (APN))”.

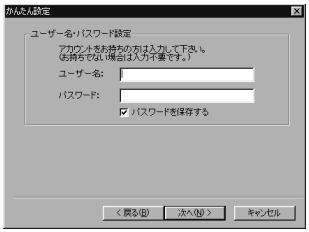
7 Specify the “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)” and click “次へ (Next)”.

Select the user for Windows 2000/Windows XP.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)

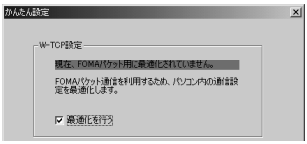


(Windows 98, Windows Me)



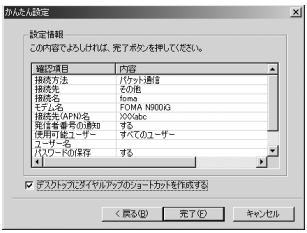
When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

8 Check “最適化を行う (Optimize the setting)” and click “次へ (Next)”.



Optimize “W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP settings)” required for packet communication. If they are already optimized, this screen will not be displayed and proceed to Step 9.

9 Confirm the setting information and click “完了 (Finish)”.



The contents that were set will be listed.
Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop)” automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る (Back)”.

10 Click “OK”.

You need to reboot the PC to enable the changes in the settings.
If the Selection screen for reboot appears, click “Yes”.
The communication set up is carried out on the next step. →Below

Executing Set Data Communication

This section describes connection/ disconnection for the communication set up on “FOMA PC setting software”.

- Dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used at time of icon creation. To connect to another FOMA terminal, therefore the communication setting file must be installed again.

Continued on next page

1 Double-click the Connection icon on the desktop.



If there is no connection icon on the desktop, perform the following procedure:

Windows 98 or Windows Me

Select “スタート (Start)” → “プログラム (Programs)” → “アクセサリ (Accessories)” → “通信 (Communications)” → “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-Up Networking)” and select the connection destination.

Windows 2000

Select “スタート (Start)” → “プログラム (Programs)” → “アクセサリ (Accessories)” → “通信 (Communications)” → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and Dial-up Connections)”, and select the connection destination.

Windows XP

Select “スタート (Start)” → “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” → “アクセサリ (Accessories)” → “通信 (Communications)” → “ネットワーク接続 (Network Connections)”, and select the connection destination.

2 Click “ダイヤル (Dial)” and execute access operation.



If you select “mopera”, click “ダイヤル (Dial)”, leaving the “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード(Password)” text boxes blank.
If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera or dial-up connection, enter the “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)” and click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.
Check “パスワードを保存する (Save the password)” to skip entry of the password at later times.

3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click “OK”.



Normally, the screen as shown above will appear when the dial-up connection is made.
The “接続 (Connection)” message will not appear if it has been set to be disabled.

● During the packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



(Communicating, sending data)
(Communicating, receiving data)
(Communicating, no data transfer)
(Sending, or disconnecting)
(Receiving, or disconnecting)

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following settings:

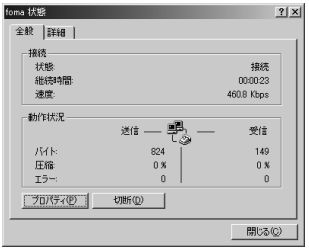
1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task tray.

The dial-up connection screen will appear.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断 (Disconnect)”.



NOTE

● The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

● Please check the following if the network connection (the dial-up connection) is not successful.

"FOMA N900iG" is not recognized by the PC.

- See if your PC satisfies the operational environment required. →pp.462 and 468
- See if the N900iG communication setting file has been installed.
- See if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on.
- See if the FOMA USB cable is firmly connected.
- Check if the USB mode setting (p.393) is set to "Communication mode".

Unable to connect with the access point.

- See if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct.
- See if the FOMA USB cable is firmly connected.
- If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not added to the phone number.
- See if the box of "フロー制御を使う (Use the flow control)" of the modem property is checked.
- See if the APN is set correctly.
- If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC setting software

This section describes un-installation instructions for FOMA PC setting software.

1 Before uninstalling.

Before starting the uninstallation process of the "FOMA PC 設定ソフト(FOMA PC setting software)", the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their original settings.

(1) **To not reside the "W-TCP settings" in the task tray.**
Right-click the "W-TCP icon" in the task tray located at the lower right corner of the desktop and select "常駐させない (Nonresident)".



Right-click



Click

(2) **Exit any running program.**
If you try to begin uninstallation while the "FOMA PC setting software" or "W-TCP settings" is in operation, the "アンインストール中断(Interrupt the uninstallation)" screen will appear. Stop the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.

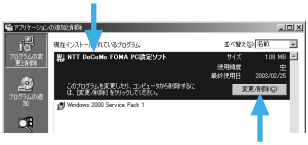
2 Start "アプリケーションの追加と削除(Add and remove applications)".

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000
Click "スタート (Start)" →"設定 (Settings)" →"コントロールパネル (Control Panel)" → "アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/deleting applications)".
"アプリケーションの追加と削除のプロパティ(Property of Add and remove applications)" appears for Windows 98 and Windows Me.

For Windows XP
Click "スタート (Start)" →"コントロールパネル (Control Panel)" →"プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/deleting programs)".

3 Select "FOMA PC設定ソフト(FOMA PC setting software)" and click "変更と削除 (Change and delete)".

Select NTT DoCoMo "FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software)"



Click here

4 When the "ファイル削除の確認(Confirm the file deletions)" screen appears, check the program name to be deleted and click "はい (Yes)".

Uninstallation starts.

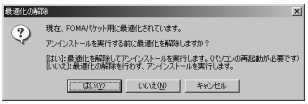
5 When the program deletion is completed, click "OK".

Uninstallation of the "FOMA PC setting software" is completed.

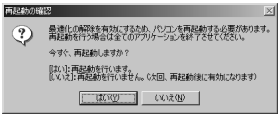
Continued on next page

NOTE

● Cancel “W-TCP 最適化(Optimize W-TCP)”.
The screen shown below appears if “W-TCP 最適化(Optimize W-TCP)” is done. Click “Yes” to uninstall.



W-TCP optimization will be canceled after reboot.



W-TCP Settings

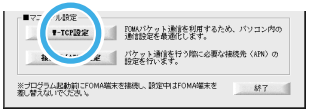
“W-TCP Settings” is a “TCP parameter setup tool” to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when “packet communication” is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

Setting up and canceling optimization

<For Windows XP>
Optimization settings by dial-up are possible for Windows XP.

1 Start the program.

(1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト(FOMA PC setting software)”
Click “W-TCP 設定(W-TCP settings)” of “マニュアル設定(Manual setup)” after starting the program.

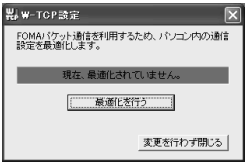


(2) If you are operating from the Task Tray
Click the “W-TCP” icon in the Task Tray located on the lower right-hand side of the desktop to start the program.



2 Set the followings.

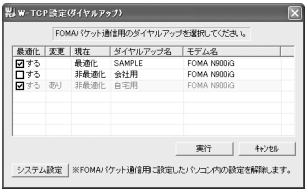
(1) If the system settings have not been optimized



Clicking “最適化を行う(Optimize)” displays the “W-TCP（ダイヤルアップ）設定(W-TCP (dial-up) Settings)” screen. If you select the dial-up to be optimized and click “実行(Execute)”, system and dial-up settings will each be optimized.

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to reboot the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the reboot.

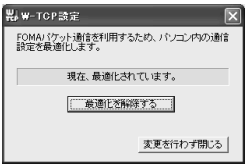
(2) If the system settings have been optimized



The “W-TCP（ダイヤルアップ）設定(W-TCP (dial-up) Settings)” screen appears. If there are some changes, make changes in the settings.

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to reboot the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the reboot.

(3) To cancel optimization

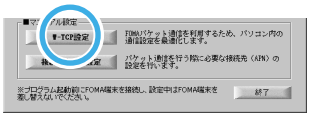


Click “システム設定 (System settings)”. The “W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP settings)” screen appears. Click “最適化を解除する (Cancel optimization)”. Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to reboot the PC. The cancellation of the optimization becomes valid after the reboot.

<For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000>

1 Start the program.

(1) **If you are operating from "FOMA PC設定ソフト(FOMA PC setting software)"**
Click "W-TCP設定(W-TCP Settings)" of "マニュアル設定(Manual setup)" after starting the program.

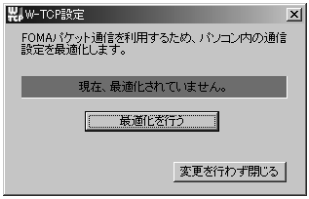


(2) **If you are operating from the Task Tray**
Click the "W-TCP" icon in the Task Tray located on the lower right-hand side of the desktop to start the program.



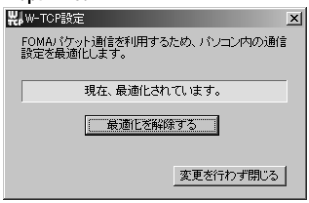
2 Proceed to next step.

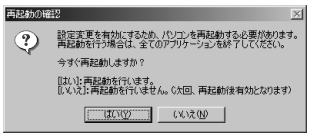
(1) **If not optimized**



Click "最適化を行う(Optimize)" on the "W-TCP 設定(W-TCP Settings)" screen, close all the programs open and reboot the PC to enable the optimized settings.

(2) **If optimized**





A message saying "現在、最適化されています。(Already optimized)" appears on the "W-TCP設定(W-TCP Settings)" screen. To cancel the settings for communication reasons, etc. on any other terminal than a FOMA terminal, click "最適化を解除する (Cancel optimization)". Close all the programs open and reboot the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.

Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the connecting destination (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

- The APN setting (the connecting destination for FOMA packet communication) is stored in the FOMA terminal. If you connect to another FOMA terminal, therefore the APN must be registered again.
- When continuously using an APN on a PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.
- The default setting for APN1 is mopera.

1 After starting "FOMA PC setting software", click "接続先(APN)設定(Set up Connecting destination (APN))".



2 Click "OK" on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen.

Automatically accesses the FOMA terminal connected and reads the Connecting destination (APN) information registered.
It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

3 Set up the connecting destination (APN).



Continued on next page

Adding/Editing/Removing the Access point (APN)

- **To add an access point (APN)**
  Click “追加 (Add)” on the “接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set up Access point (APN))” screen.
- **To edit a registered access point (APN)**
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “編集 (Edit)” on the “接続先 (APN)設定 (Set up Access point (APN))” screen.
- **To delete a registered access point (APN)**
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “削除 (Delete)” on the “接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set up Access point (APN))” screen.
  The access point (APN) registered in Number (cid) 1 cannot be deleted.

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the “ファイル (File)” menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by setting from the “ファイル (File)” menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む (Write settings into FOMA terminal)” on the “接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set up Access point (APN))” allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

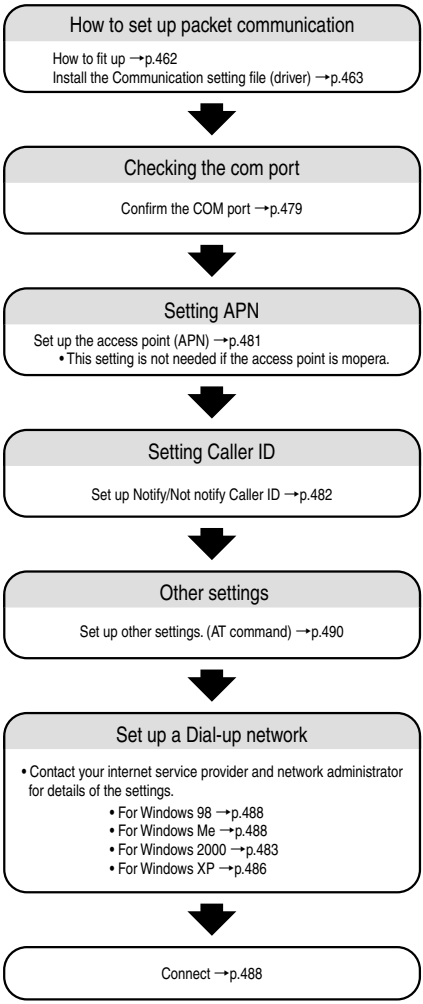
Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set up Access point (APN))” screen and click “ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dial-up)”.
When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click “はい(Yes)”. After finishing writing into the access point (APN), the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dial-up for packet communication)” appears.
Enter any connection name you want and click “アカウント・パスワードの設定(Set up Account/Password)” (Not needed for mopera).
Enter the user name and password (select an available user for Windows 2000 or Windows XP) and click “OK”.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定 (Enter detail information)” on the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dial-up for packet communication)”, register necessary information and click “OK”.
After entering the settings, click “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む (Write the settings to the FOMA terminal)”, confirm overwriting and start writing.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. The flows are as follows:



About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the “Packet communication” and FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- Set up “Notify/Not notify Caller ID” if necessary (To use mopera, you need to set it to “ON”).
- Set up other settings if necessary. You can use the default settings.
- Contact your internet service provider or network administrator for details of the settings.
- When the following functions are set to the FOMA terminal, the dial-up connection cannot be made.
  - “All lock” →p.156
  - “Self mode” →p.157

Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to “FOMA N900iG” (Modem) built in after installing the N900iG communication setting file. This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.481).
- If you use DoCoMo’s internet connection service “mopera”, you do not need to confirm the modem because the Setting up access point (APN) (p.481) is not needed. Please go to “Setting up Notify/Not notify Caller ID” (p.482).

Access points <APN/cid>

- For access points for packet communication, set up APN (p.481) for connection.
- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration numbers (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which are used part of the access point number.※1
- APN is administered by “cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)”. Connected to the access point with the cid number if the access point number is set to “＊99＊＊＊<cid number>#”.
- Since APN:mopera.ne.jp to connect to mopera is registered in cid Number 1 in advance, setting the access point number to “＊99＊＊＊1#” allows you to easily use mopera. ※2
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties’ information (telephone number, etc) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

Data to be registered

APN Setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
APN	Telephone number
cid	Memory number of Phonebook
—	Other party’s name

How to resister (using PC)

APN Setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
○(Use FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	○(Dedicated software required)

How to register (using the mobile phone)

APN Setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
×(Cannot even confirm)	○

How to use

APN Setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

※1： Set up the APN setting for the access point (internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up Network)” for connection.

※2： To connect to another internet service provider, etc., set up APN and register it in cid Number 2 or higher. See p.481 for how to set up APN and make registration.

Continued on next page

To confirm the COM port on Windows 2000

1 Open “スタート (Start)”→“設定 (Settings)”→“コントロールパネル (Control Panel)”.

2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション (Telephone and modem options)” in Control Panel.

3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” screen is displayed, enter “市外局番 (Area Code)” and click “OK”.

4 Click the “モデム (Modem)” tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先 (Access point)” column of “FOMA N900iG” and click “OK”.



The COM port number confirmed will be used in Setting up the access point (APN) (p.481).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.

To confirm the COM port on Windows XP

1 Open “スタート (Start)”→“コントロールパネル (Control Panel)”.

2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション (Telephone and modem options)” from “プリンタとその他のハードウェア (Printers and other hardware)” in Control Panel.

3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” screen is displayed, enter “市外局番／エリアコード (Area code)” and click “OK”.

4 Click the “モデム(Modem)” tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先(Access point)” column of “FOMA N900iG” and click “OK”.



The COM port number confirmed will be used in Setting up the access point (APN) (p.481).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.

To confirm COM port on Windows 98/Me

1 Open “スタート (Start)”→“設定 (Settings)” →“コントロールパネル (Control Panel)”→“モデム (Modem)”.

2 Confirm that “FOMA N900iG” has been set and click the “検出結果 (Diagnostics)” tab to check the COM port.

The COM port number confirmed will be used in Setting up access point (APN) (p.481).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.

Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1:mopera.ne.jp, cid2～10 : not set

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for settings. This section describes how to set it up using “Hyper terminal” that comes with Windows as a standard.

- Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 access points (APN) up by assigning registration numbers cid1 through cid10 (p.479).
- Since APN “mopera.ne.jp” to connect to DoCoMo’s internet connection service “mopera” has already been assigned to cid1, we recommend that you enter cid into numbers 2 though 10.
- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dial-up connection settings.
- Contact your internet service provider or network administrator for any other access point (APN) than mopera.
- The AT commands entered in “Hyper terminal” may not be shown after Step 6 on p.482. In this case, if you enter
  ATE1 ↵
  AT commands you enter from then on will be shown.

<Example: for Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the FOMA USB cable.

2 Power the FOMA terminal on and connect the FOMA USB cable connected with the FOMA terminal with the PC.

3 Click “スタート (Start)”→“すべてのプログラム (All programs)” →“アクセサリ (Accessories)” →“通信 (Communication)”→“ハイパーターミナル (Hyper terminal)” to start Hyper terminal.

For Windows 98
After opening “ハイパーターミナル (Hyper terminal)”, double-click “Hypertrm.exe”.

For Windows Me, Windows 2000
Open “スタート (Start)” →“プログラム (Programs)” →“アクセサリ (Accessories)” →“通信 (Communication)” →“ハイパーターミナル (Hyper terminal)”.

4 Enter any name you want in the “名前 (Name)” column and click “OK”.



“sample” is entered here as an example.

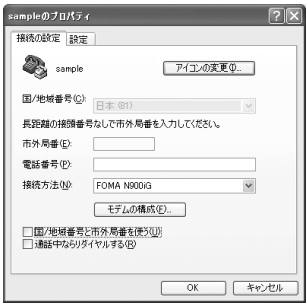
5 Select “FOMA N900iG” from “接続方法 (Connection method)”, and click “OK”.

If a COM port of “FOMA N900iG” can be selected
When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click “OK”.



In this example, “COM3” is selected. See “Checking the COM port” on p.479 to confirm the actual COM port number of “FOMA N900iG” to be selected in “接続方法(Connection method)”.

If no COM port of “FOMA N900iG” can be selected

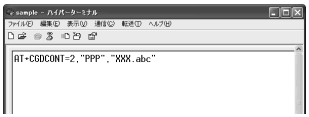


Continued on next page

Click “キャンセル(Cancel)” to close the “接続の設定(Connection Settings)” screen and do the following settings:

(1) Select “ファイル(File)” menu→“プロパティ(Properties)”.
(2) Select “FOMA N900iG” in the “接続方法(Connection method)” column of the “接続の設定(Connection Settings)” tab on the “sampleのプロパティ(sample Properties)”.
(3) Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う(Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)”.
(4) Click “OK”.

6 Enter the access point (APN) and press .



Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,“PPP”,“APN”.
<cid>: Enter any number from 2 to 10.

Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.
“APN”: Put “ ” around the access point (APN) to enter.
“PPP”: Enter “PPP” as it is.
If “OK” is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.

(Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2)
AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“XXX.abc” .

7 Confirm that “OK” is displayed, open the “ファイル(File)” menu and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了(Close Hyper terminal)” to close the Hyper terminal.

You will be asked ““sample”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか？(Do you want to save the named “sample”?)”, however, there is no need to save it in particular.

NOTE

To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command

- If reset, only the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to “mopera.ne.jp” (Default value), and cid=2 through 10 will be unregistered.

<How to enter>
AT+CGDCONT= (to reset all cid)
AT+CGDCONT=<cid> (to reset a certain cid only)

To confirm the access point (APN) setting using the AT command

- Display the current settings.

<How to enter>
AT+CGDCONT?

If entering the AT command displays nothing on the screen

<How to enter>
ATE1

Setting up Notify/Not notify Caller ID

Default setting	Notify

- You can set up whether to notify/not notify (notify the access point of your caller ID or not) when “packet communication” is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information for you, please use extra care when you notify.
- You can set up the Notify/not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the ＊DGPIR command (p.491) to notify/not notify the caller ID or change back to “Not notify” (Default value).

1 Start Hyper terminal.

2 Set up Notify (186)/Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication.



Enter in the format of “AT＊DGPIR=<*n*>”.

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/ answering an incoming call

Enter the following:
AT＊DGPIR=1

To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:
AT＊DGPIR=2

3 Confirm that “OK” is displayed and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了(Close Hyper terminal)” of the “ファイル(File)” menu.



About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point ID in the Dial-up network settings as well.

The table below shows what happens if you have set 186/184 both for the ＊DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

＊99＊＊＊1# (for cid = 1)

Notify/Not notify setting by ＊DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
Not set	Notify
Not notify	Not notify
Notify	Notify

186＊99＊＊＊1# (for cid = 1)

Notify/Not notify setting by ＊DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
Not notify	
Notify	

184＊99＊＊＊1# (for cid = 1)

Notify/Not notify setting by ＊DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
Not notify	
Notify	

NOTE

- To change the Notify/Not notify setting by the DGPIR command back to “Not Notify”, enter “AT＊DGPIR=0”.
- The Caller ID needs to be set to “Notify” to use DoCoMo’s internet connection service mopera.

Setting up Dial-up

This section describes the access point to connect to DoCoMo’s internet connection service “mopera” using <cid>=1.

- Contact your internet service provider or network administrator for the settings to connect to any other provider than mopera.

Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

1 Open “スタート(Start)”→“プログラム(Programs)”→“アクセサリ(Accessories)”→“通信(Communication)”→“ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続(Network and Dial-up connections)”.

2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成(Create a new connection)” in Network and Dial-up Connections.



3 If the “所在地情報(Address information)” screen appears, enter “市外局番(Area Code)” and click “OK”.

The “所在地情報(Address Information)” screen appears only when “新しい接続の作成(Create a new connection)” is started for the first time in Step 2. This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード(Network Connection Wizard)” screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

4 When the “電話とモデムのオプション(Telephone and Modem options)” screen appears, click “OK”.

Continued on next page

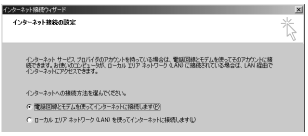
5 When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード(Network Connection Wizard)” screen appears, click “次へ(Next)”.



6 When the “ネットワーク接続の種類(Network connection type)” screen appears, select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する(Connect to the Internet via dial-up)” and click “次へ(Next)”.

7 When the “インターネット接続ウィザードの開始(Start the Internet Connection Wizard)” screen appears, select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します(Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN))” and click “次へ(Next)”.

8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します(Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem)” and click “次へ(Next)”.



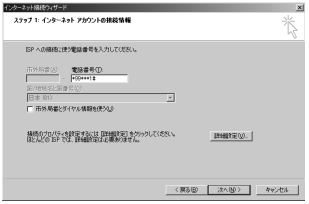
9 Confirm that the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する(Select the modem used to connect to the internet)” has “FOMA N900iG” and click “次へ(Next)”.



If “FOMA N900iG” is not there, select it.

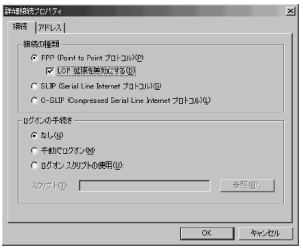
If no other modem than “FOMA N900iG” has been installed, this screen does not appear.

10 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号(Telephone number)” column and click “詳細設定(Advanced settings)”.



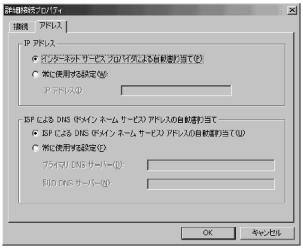
Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う(Use Area Code and Dial information)”.

11 Set up the “接続(Connection)” tab as shown below and click the “アドレス(Address)” tab.



To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “接続の種類(Connection Type)” and “ログオンの手続き(Logon Procedure)”.

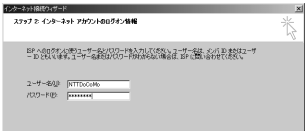
12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the “アドレス (Address)” tab as shown below and click “OK”.



To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “IPアドレス(IP address)” and “ISPによるDNS（ドメインネームサービス）アドレスの自動割り当て(Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP)”.

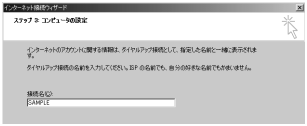
13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click “次へ(Next)”.

14 Leave the “ユーザー名(User Name)” and “パスワード (Password)” columns blank and click “次へ(Next)”.



A confirmation screen appears continuously asking if you will leave the User Name and Password blank. Click “はい(OK)” for each screen.
To connect to mopera, no user name or password is required.
To connect to any other provider than mopera, as shown in the above screen enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “ユーザー名(User Name)” and “パスワード(Password)” columns.

15 Enter any name you want in the “接続名(Connection Name)” and click “次へ(Next)”.



16 When the “インターネット メール アカウントの設定 (Set up the internet mail account)” screen appears, select “いいえ(No)” and click “次へ (Next)”.

17 Uncheck “今すぐインターネットに接続するにはここを選び[完了]をクリックしてください(Select this and click [Finish] to connect to the internet immediately)” and click “完了(Finish)”.

18 Select the icon of the dial-up created and click “プロパティ (Properties)” of the “ファイル (File)” menu.



19 Confirm the settings in the “全般(General)” tab.

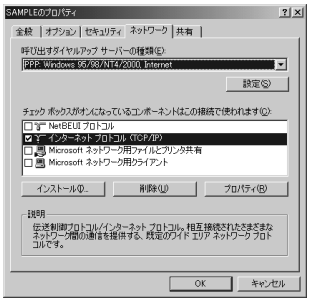


If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that “モデム - FOMA N900iG (Modem - FOMA N900iG)” is checked off in the “接続の方法 (Connection method)” column. If not, check it off.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う(Use Dial Information)” is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.

Continued on next page

20 Click the “ネットワーク(Network)” tab and set up each setting.



Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000,Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類(Type of the dial-up server to call)”.

Check only “インターネットプロトコル(TCP/IP) (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP))” for components.

21 Click “設定 (Settings)”.

22 Uncheck all checkboxes and click “OK”.

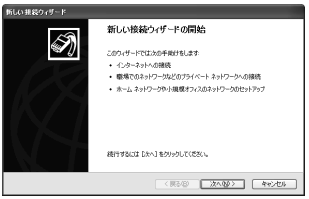


23 When the screen returns to Step 20, click “OK”.

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

1 Open “スタート(Start)”→“すべてのプログラム(All programs)”→“アクセサリ(Accessories)”→“通信(Communication)”→“新しい接続ウィザード(New connection wizard)”.

2 When the “新しい接続ウィザード(New Connection Wizard)” screen appears, click “次へ(Next)”.



3 When the “ネットワーク接続の種類(Network connection type)” screen appears, select “インターネットに接続する(Connect to the Internet)” and click “次へ(Next)”.

4 When the “準備(Preparation)” screen appears, select “接続を手動でセットアップする(Set up the connection manually)” and click “次へ(Next)”.

5 When the “インターネット接続(Internet connection)” screen appears, select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する(Connect using a dial-up modem)” and click “次へ(Next)”.

6 If the “デバイスの選択(Select the device)” screen appears, select “モデム - FOMA N900iG (COMx) (Modem - FOMA N900iG (COMx)),” and click “次へ(Next)”.



The “デバイスの選択(Select the device)” screen appears only if there are multiple modems. (COMx) is a number of COM port number displayed in “Checking the COM port” (p.479).

7 Enter any name you want in the “ISP名(ISP Name)” and click “次へ(Next)”.

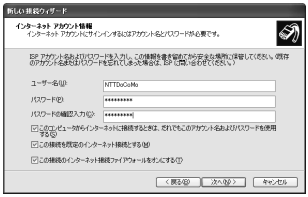


8 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号(Telephone Number)” column and click “次へ(Next)”.



The telephone number in the example is for connection to mopera.
Enter the telephone number of the access point you actually use.

9 Leave the “ユーザー名(User Name)”, “パスワード(Password)” and “パスワードの確認入力(Confirm password)” columns blank and click “次へ(Next)”.



No user name or password is required to enter in order to connect to mopera. To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter the user name, password specified by the provider or network administrator as shown in the above screen in the “ユーザー名(User Name)”, “パスワード(Password)” and “パスワードの確認入力(Confirm Password)” columns.

10 When the “新しい接続ウィザードの完了(New Connection Wizard completed)” screen appears, click “完了 (Finish)”.

11 Open “スタート(Start)”→“すべてのプログラム(All Programs)”→“アクセサリ(Accessories)”→“通信(Communication)”→“ネットワーク接続(Network connections)”.

12 Select the icon of the dial-up created and open “プロパティ(Properties)” of the “ファイル(File)” menu.



13 Confirm the settings on the “全般(General)” tab.



If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that “モデム - FOMA N900iG (Modem - FOMA N900iG)” is checked off in the “接続の方法(Connection method)” column. If not, check it off.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う(Use Dial Information)” is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.

Continued on next page

14 Click the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab and set up each setting.



Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000,Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類(Type of the Dial-up Server to call)”.

Select “インターネットプロトコル(TCP/IP) (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP))” in the “この接続は次の項目を使用します(Use the following items for this connection)”.
Since the setting of “QoSパケットスケジューラ(QoS Packet Scheduler)” cannot be changed, leave it as it is.

15 Click “設定 (Settings)”.

16 Uncheck all the boxes and click “OK”.



17 The Step 14 screen reappears. Click “OK”.

Setting up dial-up on Windows 98/Windows Me

1 Open “スタート(Start)”→“プログラム(Programs)”→“アクセサリ(Accessories)”→“通信(Communication)”→“ダイヤルアップネットワーク(Dial-up Network)”.

2 Double-click “新しい接続 (New connection)” in the Dial-up Network.

When the “ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ(Welcome to Dial-up Network)” screen appears, click “次へ(Next)”.

3 Perform the dial-up settings by following the instructions displayed in the screen.

Windows 98

Click the “サーバーの種類(Type of server)” tab and set up each setting.
Select “PPP: インターネット, Windows NT Server, Windows 98” in “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類(Type of the Dial-up server to call)”.
Check only “インターネットプロトコル(TCP/IP) (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP))” for “使用できるネットワークプロトコル(Available Network Protocol)”.

Windows Me

Select “PPP: インターネット, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me” in the “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類(Type of the Dial-up server to call)”.
Check only “インターネットプロトコル(TCP/IP) (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP))” for “使用できるネットワークプロトコル(Available Network Protocol)”.

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication using the dial-up you have set.

● For making the dial-up connection for Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, refer to the procedure below.

1 Open “スタート (Start)”→“すべてのプログラム(All programs)”→“アクセサリ(Accessories)”→“通信(Communication)”→“ネットワーク接続(Network connections)”.

2 Open Access point.



Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on p.487 to select “ネットワークタスク(Network task)”→“この接続を開始する(Start this connection)” or double-click the icon of the access point.

3 Confirm the settings and click “ダイヤル(Dial)”.



The screen above shows an example for mopera connection. To connect to mopera, no user name or password is required.

<The Connecting screen appears>



While this screen is displayed, meanwhile, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.
When the connection is completed, a popup menu saying “(接続先名)に接続しました (Connected (to the access point name))” is displayed from the indicator of the taskbar.

<Completion of the connection>



When the connection is complete, a message as shown above is displayed from the indicator of the taskbar located on the lower right of the desktop for a few seconds.
You can start browser software to browse web pages and to use e-mail.
If this screen does not appear, check the settings of the access point again.
See p.474 for communication conditions.

How to disconnect

Just closing the internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure.

- For making the disconnection for Windows 98, Windows Me or Windows 2000, refer to the procedure below.

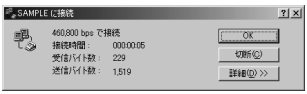
1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the Task tray.

The connecting screen will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断 (Disconnect)”.



NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

●The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list:

[&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.

[&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved to ATZ command.

Modem port command list

The following are the usable commands for FOMA N900iG (modem):

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT	The modem function of the FOMA terminal can be controlled by adding any of the commands listed in this table after this AT command. ※ OK is returned even if only AT is input.	—	AT OK
AT%V	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C*n* [&F] [&W]	Select the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	*n*=0: CD is always on. *n*=1: CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D*n* [&F] [&W]	Select the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	*n*=0: Ignore ER status (always assumed to be ON). *n*=1: When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an online command status. *n*=2: When ER changes from ON to OFF, the line is disconnected and it becomes an offline command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&F*n*	Restore all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the circuit will be disconnected.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (optional).	In online command mode AT&F NO CARRIER (Shift to offline mode) While offline AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F=? ERROR
AT&S*n* [&F] [&W]	Set the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	*n*=0: DR is always ON (initial value). *n*=1: DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK
AT&W*n*	Store the current settings.	Only n=0 can be specified (optional).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W=? ERROR
AT＊DGANSM=n	Set the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming calls after the setting command is input during the packet communication.	*n*=0: Disable the incoming call reject/(AT＊DGARL) permit setting (AT＊DGAPL) (initial value). *n*=1: Enable the incoming call reject setting. *n*=2: Enable the incoming call permit setting. AT＊DGANSM? : Display the current setting.	AT＊DGANSM=0 OK AT＊DGANSM? ＊DGANSM:0 OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT＊DGAPL=*n*[,cid]	Set APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT.	*n*=0: Add the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call permission list. *n*=1: Delete the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call permission list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT＊DGAPL? : Display incoming call permission list.	AT＊DGAPL=0,1 OK AT＊DGAPL? ＊DGAPL:1 OK AT＊DGAPL=1 OK AT＊DGAPL? OK
AT＊DGARL=*n*[,cid]	Set APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by AT+CGDCONT.	*n*=0: Add the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call rejection list. *n*=1: Delete the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call rejection list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT＊DGARL? : Display incoming call rejection list.	AT＊DGARL=0,1 OK AT＊DGARL? ＊DGARL:1 OK AT＊DGARL=1 OK AT＊DGARL? OK
AT＊DGPIR=*n*	This command setting is effective when a call is going out or coming in. Even in the dial up network setting, you can add 186 (informed) or 184 (not informed) to the access point number. (p.482)	*n*=0: Use APN as it is (initial value). *n*=1: Use APN by adding “184”. (Caller ID is always not sent.) *n*=2: Use APN by adding “186”. (Caller ID is always sent.) AT＊DGPIR? : Display the current setting.	AT＊DGPIR=0 OK AT＊DGPIR? ＊DGPIR:0 OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online date mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK
AT+CEER	Display the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	<report> See “List of disconnection reasons” (p.500).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Set the access point name (APN) at the time of packet origination.	p.496	p.496
AT+CGEQMIN	Register the criterion for deciding whether or not to permit the QoS (quality of service) notified from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter] (p.497) AT+CGEQMIN=? : Display a list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.	p.497
AT+CGEQREQ	Set QoS (quality of service) that is requested to network when originating PPP packet communication call.	AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter] (p.498) AT+CGEQREQ=? : Display a list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.	p.498
AT+CGMR	Display the FOMA terminal version.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CGREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification shows whether you are inside or outside the service area.	*n*=0: Not informed (initial value). *n*=1: Informed. Informed when switching between “inside the service area” and “outside the service area” is completed. AT+CGREG? : Display the current setting. +CGREG : <*n*>,<stat> *n*: Set value stat: 0: Out of packet area. 1: Within packet area. 4: Unknown. 5: Within packet area (during roaming).	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG:1,0 OK (outside the service area) (When you move from “outside the service area” to “inside the service area”) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Display the product number of FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxx OK

Continued on next page

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CMEE=*n* [&F] [&W]	Set whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	*n*=0: Use the usual ERROR result (initial value). *n*=1: +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>. *n*=2: +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>. AT+CMEE? : Display the current setting. The command shown on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error. +CME ERROR result code is as follows: 1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR : 10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR : SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM	Display the FOMA terminal's own phone number.	number: phone number type: 129 or 145 129: "+" (plus) is not included. 145: "+" (plus) is included.	AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190xxxxxxxx",145 OK
AT+CR=*n* [&F] [&W]	When the line is connected, display the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	*n*=0: Not display (initial value). *n*=1: Display. <serv>: Display only "GPRS", which means packet communication. ("AV64K" is displayed depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: Display the current setting.	AT+CR=1 OK ATD＊99＊＊＊1# +CR : GPRS CONNECT
AT+CRC=*n* [&F] [&W]	Set whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	*n*=0: Not use +CRING (initial value). *n*=1: Use +CRING. <type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING: AV64K +CRING: GPRS "PPP",,,"<APN>" AT+CRC? : Display the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC : 0 OK (When AV64K is incoming) +CRING:AV64K (when PPP packet is incoming) +CRING:GPRS "PPP",,, "<APN>"
AT+CREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the result display is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. •This setting may not be available depending on the OS.	*n*=0: Not informed (initial value). *n*=1: Informed. Informed when switching between "inside the service area" and "outside the service area" is completed. AT+CREG? : Display the current setting. +CREG : <*n*>,<stat> *n*: Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area. 1: Inside voice call area. 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area (during roaming).	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG: 1,0 OK (outside the service area) (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area".) +CREG: 1
AT+GMI	Display the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Display the FOMA terminal product name (FOMA N900iG).	—	AT+GMM FOMA N900iG OK
AT+GMR	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC=*n*,*m* [&F] [&W]	Select the flow control method.	*n*: DCE by DTE *m*: DTE by DCE 0: No flow control. 1: XON/XOFF flow control. 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: n,m=2.2 AT+IFC?: Display the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC:2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC:(0,1,2),(0,1,2) OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+WS46 [&F] [&W]	Return the setting of the network switching for the FOMA terminal.	*n*=12: GSM *n*=22: 3G *n*=25: Auto switching	AT+WS46? 25 OK
ATA	Handle the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
A/	Execute the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
ATD	Handle the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD＊99＊＊＊<cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: indicates APN with +CGDCONT setting. When setting AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD <phone number> : AV64K communication ※ The +CBST (setting communication bearer) setting value is fixed to the above value in this mobile phone and therefore cannot be changed.	<Packet communication> ATD＊99＊＊＊1# CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE*n* [&F] [&W]	Select whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	*n*=0: Echo back not present. *n*=1: Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH*n*	Perform on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	*n*=0: Disconnect the line (optional).	(During packet communication) +++ ATH NO CARRIER
ATI*n*	Display the ID code.	*n*=0: Display “NTT DoCoMo”. *n*=1: Display the product name (same with +GMM). *n*=2: Display the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR).	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMA N900iG OK
ATO*n*	Return from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	*n*=0: Return from online command mode to online data mode (optional).	ATO CONNECT
ATQ*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	*n*=0: Display the result code (initial value). *n*=1: Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
ATS0=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	*n*=0 : No automatic reception (initial value). *n*=1- 255: A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0? : Display the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2=*n* [&F]	Set an escape character.	*n*=43: Initial value. *n*=127: Escape processing is invalid. ATS2?: Display the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3=*n* [&F]	Set a carriage return (CR) character.	*n*=13: Initial value (Only n=13 can be specified). ATS3?: Display the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4=*n* [&F]	Set a line feed (LF) character.	*n*=10: Initial value (Only n=10 can be specified). ATS4?: Display the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5=*n* [&F]	Set a backspace (BS) character.	*n*=8: Initial value (Only n=8 can be specified). ATS5?: Display the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK

Continued on next page

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATS6=*n* [&F]	Set the pause interval (seconds) until dialing.	This command can be set, but no operation occurs.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
ATS7=*n* [&F] [&W]	Disconnect the line if the connection cannot be established within a specified period after making a call.	*n*=1 to 120 (The initial value is 60) (second). 121 to 255 will be regarded as 120. ATS7?: Display the current setting.	ATS7=60 OK ATS7? 060 OK
ATS8=*n* [&F]	Set the pause interval (seconds) via comma dialing.	This command can be set, but no operation occurs.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR
ATS10=*n* [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnect delay time setting (1/10 seconds)	This command can be set, but no operation occurs.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATV*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the result code is returned in numeral or alphabetical characters.	*n*=0: Return the result code in numeral value. *n*=1: Return the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detect a busy tone or a dial tone.	*n*=0: Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. *n*=1: Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=2: With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=3: Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=4: With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display (initial value).	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Reset the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline) ATZ OK
AT¥S	Display the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 ¥ V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V*n* [&F] [&W]	Select the response code specification for connecting the line.	*n*=0: Not use extended result code (initial value). *n*=1: Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CPIN	Enter the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN="<PIN>","<newpin>" The command to enter the PIN1 code and PUK code of the FOMA terminal according to the status of the result code returned upon entering AT+CPIN?. If entering of PIN code or PUK code is requested, it may not be possible to enter the PIN code using this command depending on the result code status while AT+CPIN? is entered. Do not use this command for changing the PIN code. Enclose <pin> and <newpin> in "". Result of AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY: PIN1 code and PUK code cannot be entered. +CPIN:SIM PIN: Waiting for PIN1 to be entered +CPIN:SIM PUK: PIN1 is locked (PUK code can be entered). Entry examples of PIN code "1234" and "12345678" are shown on the right.	(The status in which +CPIN:READY is returned when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN:READY is returned when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678","1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN:SIM PIN is returned when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN:SIM PUK is returned when +CPIN? is entered: PIN is locked) AT+CPIN="12345678","1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK
AT+CLIP=*n*	Displays the other party's Caller ID on a PC when a AV64k communication call is received.	*n*=0 : Not display the result (Default) *n*=1 : Display the result Result : +CLIP (*n*, *m*) *m*=0 : NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID outgoing call *m*=1 : NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID *m*=2 : Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0.1) OK (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: "090xxxxxxxx", 177. "123", 136
AT+CLIR=*n*	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a AV64k communication call.	*n*=0 : Notify (Not notify) the caller's phone number in conformance with the CLIR service contract *n*=1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number *n*=2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (Default) Result: +CLIR(*n*, *m*) *m*=0 : CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) *m*=1 : CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) *m*=2 : Unknown *m*=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) *m*=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default is notify) ※ If #31# and ＊31# are not appended, the CLIR setting has priority.	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0, 1 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK
ATS103=*n*	Sets the called subaddress character.	*n*=0 : ＊ *n*=1 : / (Default) *n*=2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATS104=*n*	Sets the calling subaddress character.	*n*=0 : # *n*=1 : % (Default) *n*=2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
AT＊DANTE	Displays the number of antennas on the mobile phone.	=0: The antenna of the mobile phone is out of the area =1: Number of antennas is 1 =2: Number of antennas is 2 =3: Number of antennas is 3	AT＊DANTE ＊DANTE: 3 OK AT＊DANTE=? ＊DANTE (0-3) OK
AT＊DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the mobile phone.	—	AT＊DRPW ＊DRPW: 0 OK (3G) AT＊DRPW=? ＊DRPW: (0-75) OK (GSM) AT＊DRPW=? ＊DRPW: (0-63) OK

Supplementary explanation of AT command

Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)

Command name: +CGDCONT

- Outline

  Set the access point name (APN) for packet origination.
  Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- Format

  +CGDCONT=[<cid>[,“PPP”[,“<APN>”]]]

- Explanation of the parameters

  Set the access point name (APN) for packet origination. For a setting example, see the following command execution example:
  <cid>※ : 1 to 10
  <APN>※: Any value

  ※: <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. “mopera.ne.jp” is registered as an initial value to <cid>=1, which can be rewritten.
  <APN> is an arbitrary character string showing each access point name.

- Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

  +CGDCONT= : Set the initial value to all <cid>.
  +CGDCONT=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the initial value.
  +CGDCONT=? : Display a list of values that can be set.
  +CGDCONT? : Display the current setting.

• Command execution example
Command for registering an APN name of “abc” (when cid is 3).
AT+CGDCONT=3,“PPP”,“abc”
OK

■ Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

• Outline
Register a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.
The 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example can be used.
Although this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format
+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

• Explanation of the parameters
<cid>※ : 1 to 10
<Maximum bitrate UL>※ : None (initial value) or 64
<Maximum bitrate DL>※ : None (initial value) or 384

※: <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to “None” (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 64 or 384, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, at which time a packet communication may not be connected.

• Command execution examples
+CGEQMIN= : Set the default value to all <cid>.
+CGEQMIN=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the default value.

• Explanation of the parameters
Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.
(1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK
(2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 3)
AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384
OK
(3) Command for permitting uplink 64kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64
OK
(4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 384kbps of downlink (when cid is 5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384
OK

Continued on next page

■ Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

- Outline
  Set the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.
  For setting, only the pattern shown in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.
  Although this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- Format
  +CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

- Explanation of the parameters
  <cid>※: 1 to 10

  ※: <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10.

- Operation performed when the parameter is omitted
  +CGEQREQ= : Set the default value to all <cid>.
  +CGEQREQ=<cid> : Set the specified <cid> to the default value.

- Command execution example
  Only the following pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.
  Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 3).
  AT+CGEQREQ=3
  OK

Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (p.496), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject setting by AT＊DGAPL/AT＊DGARL/AT＊DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT＊DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W↵

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ↵

even after the power is turned on or off.

Examples of result codes

Result codes related with data communication

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Normally executed
1	CONNECT	Connection made
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable
5	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone
6	BUSY	Busy tone detected
7	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing
100	RESTRICTION	Network on hold
101	DELAYED	Restrict dialing for redial

Extended result codes

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200bps
10	CONNECT 2400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400bps
11	CONNECT 4800	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800bps
13	CONNECT 7200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200bps
12	CONNECT 9600	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600bps
15	CONNECT 14400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400bps
16	CONNECT 19200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200bps
17	CONNECT 38400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400bps
18	CONNECT 57600	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600bps
19	CONNECT 115200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200bps
20	CONNECT 230400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400bps
21	CONNECT 460800	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800bps

Communication protocol result code

Number indication	Character indication	Description
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Video-phone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by PACKET

NOTE

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when ATV*n* command (p.494) is set to *n*=1, and as number indication when the command is set to *n*=0.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected by the FOMA USB Cable.
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the packet network is congested. If this is displayed, wait a while and try again.

Result code display example

■ When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the AT¥V*n* (p.494) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example : ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT

Numeral indication example : ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1

■ When ATX1 is set

• When ATX1, AT¥V0 are set (default)

Display in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format is made when the connection is completed.

Character indication example : ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT 460800

Numeral indication example : ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1 21

• When ATX1, AT¥V1 are set※

The following format appears when the connection is completed:
CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/<Upstream (the FOMA terminal→Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal→Wireless base station) maximum rate >
The following sample indicates that a connection was made to mopera.ne.jp at 64kbps for sending, and 384kbps for receiving.

Character indication example : ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384

Numeral indication example : ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1 21 5

※ : If both ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT¥V0 is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

Disconnection reasons regarding the content of requests are the following:

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	Missing or unknown APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Regular deactivation.

■ AV (videophone) communication

Value	Reason
1	The number specified does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service and option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.

Character Entry

About Character Entry 502
Entering Characters in 5-touch 5-touch 504
Creating and Changing Common Phrases ..... Common phrases 514
Copying/Cutting/Pasting Characters 516
Using Kuten Codes to Enter Characters ..... Kuten codes 517
Storing Frequently Used Words ..... Own dictionary 518
Resetting the Learning Record to the Default ..... Clear learned 519
Using the Downloaded Dictionary ..... DL dictionary 519
Setting a Character Input Method 520
Entering Characters in T9 (Mode 3) T9 523
Entering Characters in 2-touch (Mode 2) 2-touch 527
Switching the Screen to Operate 528

About Character Entry

You can use the dial keys on the FOMA terminal to enter characters. You need character entry when using "Mail", "Add to phonebook", "Text memo" and other functions. Learn how to enter characters beforehand.
The following contents are described in terms of character entry:

Function	Overview	See page
About the character entry screen	This section describes marks displayed in the character entry area in the character entry screen and icons displayed in the guidance area.	p.503
Character entry in 5-touch	"5-touch (Mode1)" is a method for entering the characters assigned to a key by pressing that key the correct number of times. This section describes how to enter characters, symbols, common phrases, spaces, line feeds and others, to switch full-pitch/half-pitch characters, lower case/upper case characters, insertion mode/ overwriting mode and to enter characters using the Prediction function.	p.504
Composing common phrases	This section describes how to compose common phrases. Storing common phrases beforehand makes character entry easier.	p.514
Copying/cutting/pasting characters	This section describes how to copy or cut characters within the area selected in the character entry screen, and then paste them to another place.	p.516
Character entry using a Kuten code	Kuten code consists of 4-digit numbers assigned to each character. By entering such a number, the corresponding character is entered. This section describes basic operations for entering Kuten code.	p.517
Registering frequently-used words	This section describes how to register a word in the user dictionary. Storing frequently used words with the readings you like beforehand makes character entry easier.	p.518
Resetting leaning records	This section describes how to clear learned memory such as kana-kanji conversion, records of "Mode 3 (T9)", and predicting candidates and learned candidates of the word prediction function, to the initial memory status.	p.519
Downloaded dictionary	This section describes how to use dictionaries for Japanese text conversion downloaded from sites such as i-mode sites. Storing dictionaries beforehand makes character entry easier.	p.519
Setting a character input method	This section explains changing the input method and setting Prediction and Guidance. At the time of purchase, the default is set so you can use both Prediction and Guidance.	p.520
T9 input	"T9 (Mode 3)" is an input method in which you only need to press the keypad with the desired character once to show a list of reading candidates from which you can choose. Here, there are more details about the basic input method and reading editing method using "T9 (Mode3)".	p.523
2-touch input	"2-touch (Mode 2)" is an input method in which you enter the assigned 2-digit number on the keypad for that character. Here, there are more details about the basic input method of "2-touch (Mode 2)".	p.527
Switching the screen	This section describes how to switch between the operation screen of functions and the character entry (edit) screen while these 2 screens are being displayed. Both screens are displayed only if you perform reply with reference to received mail or perform reference entry of a schedule from a received mail or i-mode screen.	p.528

About the character entry (edit) screen

The character entry (edit) screen comprises the character entry area, operation guidance area and information display area. The character entry area displays characters that you are entering, the cursor and end mark. The operation guidance area shows contents you can operate at that time, such as kanji conversion, search and area selection. The information display area indicates information including the character input method, input mode and remaining number of characters you can enter.



Character entry area

■ : Cursor. A character is entered here.
◀ : End mark. You can enter characters up to this position.
The end mark position varies with functions.

Operation guidance area

▲▼ CHG : Displayed when you can press ○ to convert characters. →p.505

▲▼ All／▲▼ Find : Indicates that you can search the phonebook in the phonebook search screen by pressing ○. →p.114

✕ Fix mode／✕ Fix END : Indicates that you can use the fix input mode in Mode 3 (T9). →p.526

◀▶▲▼ Area : Shown when you copy (or cut) text. →p.516

L／U : Indicates that you can switch the entered character between upper case and lower case by pressing C. →p.505

LONG CR : Indicates that you can insert a line feed mark ↵ by pressing and holding down C for 1 second or more. →p.508

ﾎｰﾑ Back : Reverses the order of the input and goes back to the previous reading in the "Mode 1 (5-touch)" every time H [Home] is pressed.

Information display area

あ／2 : Displayed when the character input method is "Mode 3 (T9)" or "Mode 2 (2-touch)". Nothing appears here in "Mode 1 (5-touch)".

固 : Displayed when "Fix mode" is set in Mode 3 (T9). →p.525

INS／OVR : Indicates "INS" in the insertion mode or "OVR" in the overwriting mode. →p.505

漢／カナ／A／123 : Indicates the current character input mode when the input mode is "Mode 1 (5-touch)" or "Mode 3 (T9)".

区 : Displayed when it is "Kuten input mode". →p.517

1/1／1/2 : Indicates "1/1" when you are entering a full-pitch character, and "1/2" when entering a half-pitch character. →p.504

Sm : Displayed when you are entering a lower case character. →p.505

R : Indicates the remaining number of characters you can enter in bytes. The number of characters is counted as 1 byte for a half-pitch character and 2 bytes for a full-pitch character. Therefore, a full-pitch character corresponds to 2 half-pitch characters.

In : Indicates the number of characters you have entered while you are performing the phonebook storing into the FOMA card or entering body text in SMS. It does not distinguish between full-pitch and half-pitch characters.

NOTE

● You can also set the screen not to display the operation guidance. →p.522

Entering Characters in 5-touch

This section describes the basic character entry procedure in "5-touch (Mode 1)".

Switching mode

In the character entry screen, you can switch the input mode, full-pitch/half-pitch, lower case/upper case characters, insertion mode/overwriting mode. Switch each mode depending on the situation.

Switching the input modes

The input modes in "Mode 1 (5-touch)" include "Kanji/hiragana input mode", "Kana input mode", "Alphabet input mode" and "Number input mode". Each time you press [Mode], the input mode changes in order.



Alphabet input mode → Number input mode → Kanji/hiragana input mode → Kana input mode

■ Alphabet input mode

Enters half-pitch or full-pitch alphabets and symbols. "A" appears in the information display area.

■ Number input mode

Enters half-pitch or full-pitch numbers and symbols. "123" appears in the information display area.

■ Kanji/hiragana input mode

Enters kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and numbers. Every character becomes full-pitch. "漢" appears in the information display area.

■ Kana input mode

Enters half-pitch or full-pitch katakana and symbols. "ｶﾅ" appears in the information display area.

Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch

To switch between full-pitch and half-pitch, select "Full pitch" or "Half pitch" from the function menu. When you switch to "Full pitch", "１/１" appears in the information display area and when switching to "Half pitch", "1/2" appears.
In "Kanji/hiragana input mode", you cannot switch between the full-pitch and the half-pitch.



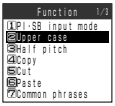
Full-pitch mode　　Half-pitch mode

Switching between lower case and upper case characters

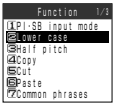
There are two methods to switch between lower case and upper case characters.

Select from the function menu

Select “Lower case” or “Upper case” from the function menu. When you switch to “Lower case”, “Sm” appears in the information display area. Nothing appears in “Upper case”.



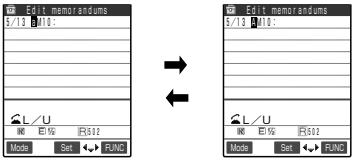
Lower case



Upper case

Press

Each time you highlight the character you want to switch, pressing , the character switches between upper case and lower case character. You can switch only if “L/U” is displayed in the operation guidance.



Switching between insertion mode and overwriting mode

When you enter a character in “Insert”, the new character is inserted between the characters already entered. When you enter a character in “Overwrite”, the character already entered is overwritten with the newly entered character.

To switch between the insertion mode and the overwriting mode, select “Insert” or “Overwrite” from the function menu. When you switch to “Insert”, “INS” appears in the information display area and when you switch to “Overwrite”, “OVR” appears.

When you display the character entry (edit) screen, it is always set to the insertion mode.



Insertion mode



Overwriting mode

NOTE

- When you have already entered the permitted amount of text in “Insert”, you will not be able to input any more text.
- If you have already entered the maximum number of characters in “Overwrite”, you cannot enter a full-pitch character overwriting half-pitch characters.

Entering characters

This section describes how to enter hiragana, kanji, katakana, alphabets and numbers in “5-touch (Mode 1)”.

- Overview of the Keypad Character Assignments (5-touch Input) →p.558
- Complex kanji has been partially changed or omitted. Some alphanumeric characters and symbols are also partly changed.

Continued on next page

Entering hiragana and kanji

After you enter hiragana, convert it to kanji in block units. You can also directly set the entered hiragana without converting to kanji.

・You can enter up to 20 characters (hiragana) for conversion and convert up to 6 blocks at a time.

・The kanji you can enter is 6,355 characters of the JIS level-one and level-two kanji sets.

<Example: To enter “戸田俊司”>

1 Press [Mode] to switch “Kanji/hiragana input mode”.

Switching the input modes →p.504

2 Enter hiragana.



4 (た) ×5, と

○ ×1, Moves to the next character

4 (た) ×1, た

(濁/ﾌｧ) ×1, ゛(voiced consonant mark)

3 (ﾃﾞ) ×2, し

8 (ゆ) ×2, ゆ

C ×1, Converts to the small character

0 (ﾓｰﾄﾞ) ×3, ん

3 (ﾃﾞ) ×2, し

(濁/ﾌｧ) ×1 ゛(voiced consonant mark)

If you press the wrong key

Press CLR to delete the character, and then press the correct key.

If you press the key wrong times

Press [Home].

Return to the last reading assigned to the same key.

To enter characters assigned to the same key successively

Press ○, or hold down the key for 1 second or more.

The cursor moves, and then you can enter the next character.

To set the characters in hiragana

Press ● [Set].

3 Press ○ to convert to kanji.



The kanji candidate in the first block is highlighted and the rest is underlined (__).

If the desired kanji is given

Press ● [Set].

The kanji is set and the next block is highlighted.

To change the conversion range

Press ○ or ○ to change the conversion range, and then press ○.

The kanji candidate is changed according to the converted range. If there is no kanji available for that conversion range, hiragana is displayed instead.

4 Press ○ or ○ to display conversion candidates.



Conversion candidates for the highlighted block are listed. Hiragana and katakana are also shown as conversion candidates.

If reading characters for the conversion range are all in “あ” column

Numbers are also displayed as conversion candidates.

5 Select the desired kanji.

The kanji is set.

6 Press ● [Set].



The entered character is set and the screen returns to the edit screen for each function.

NOTE

- If the desired kanji is not given, you may display it by changing the reading to onyomi or kunyomi.
- Kanji consisting of 2 or more characters that do not convert at once should be converted individually.
- You can use kuten codes to enter kanji that you cannot convert. →p.517

Entering katakana

<Example: To enter "リーダー">

1 Press [Mode] to switch to "Kana input mode".

Switching the input mode →p.504

2 Enter katakana.



The entered characters are directly set.

9 ×2, 0 ×4, 4 ×1, # ×1, 0 ×4

リ ー タ ゛(voiced consonant mark) ー

If you press the wrong key
Press CLR to delete the character, and then press the correct key.

If you press the key wrong times
Press [Home].
Return to the last reading assigned to the same key.

To enter characters assigned to the same key successively
Press , or hold down the key for 1 second or more.
The cursor moves, and then you can enter the next character.

Entering alphabets

<Example: To enter "DoCoMo">

1 Press [Mode] to switch to "Alphabet input mode".

Switching the input mode →p.504

2 Enter alphabets.



The entered characters are directly set.

3 ×1, 6 ×3, ×1, 2 ×3, 6 ×3,

D O Converts to the small character C O

×1, 6 ×1, ×1, 6 ×3, ×1

Converts to the small character M Moves to the next character O Converts to the small character

If you press the wrong key
Press CLR to delete the character, and then press the correct key.

If you press the key wrong times
Press [Home].
Return to the last reading assigned to the same key.

To enter characters assigned to the same key successively
Press , or hold down the key for 1 second or more.
The cursor moves, and then you can enter the next character.

Continued on next page

Entering numbers

<Example: To enter “11:30”>

1 Press [Mode] to switch to “Number input mode”.

Switching the input modes →p.504

2 Enter numbers.



The entered characters are directly set.

1 ×2, # ×12, 3 ×1, 0 ×1

11 : 3 0

If you press the wrong key

Press CLR to delete the character, and then press the correct key.

To enter numbers assigned to the same key successively

Press the same key again.

Inserting a space (blank)

To insert a space (blank), select “Space” from the function menu. A full-pitch space is inserted in the full-pitch input or a half-pitch space is inserted in the half-pitch input.
A full-pitch space is counted as one full-pitch letter and a half-pitch space as one half-pitch letter.



Entering a line feed

You can enter the line feed mark “↲” to effect a line feed. There are two ways to enter the line feed mark “↲”.
The line feed mark is counted as a full-pitch character.

■ Entering from the function menu

Move the cursor to the position you want to enter a line feed and select “Line feed” from the function menu. The line feed mark “↲” is entered and the cursor moves to the next line.



■ Holding down for 1 second or more

Move the cursor to the position you want to enter a line feed and hold down for 1 second or more. The line feed mark “↲” is entered and the cursor moves to the next line.



NOTE

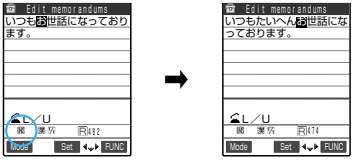
- The line feed mark can be deleted or overwritten just like any other character.
- You cannot enter the line feed mark in some i-mode text boxes.

Editing text

You can insert new characters or delete pre-entered characters to edit the text.

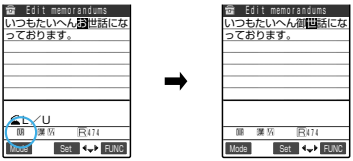
Inserting characters

Select “Insert” and then press ● to move the cursor one character to the right of where you want to insert the characters. When you enter the characters, the characters are inserted to the left of the cursor.



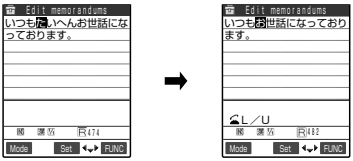
Overwriting characters

Select “Overwrite” and then press ● to move the cursor to the character you want to overwrite. When you enter a new character, it overwrites the character in the cursor position.



Deleting characters

Press ● to move to the cursor to the character you want to delete, and then press CLR briefly (less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.



If there is no character on the cursor
The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

If you hold down CLR for 1 second or more
The characters in the cursor position and every one to the right of it is deleted.

When there is no character to the right of the cursor, if you hold down CLR for 1 second or more
All the characters are deleted.

Jumping to the top or bottom of a message

You can easily jump the cursor up to the beginning or down to the end of your message in the character entry (edit) screen. It is useful for long messages such as mail texts and text memos.

1 Select “Jump” from the function menu.

2 Select an item.

If you jump the cursor up to the beginning of the message
Select “To beginning”.

If you jump the cursor down to the end of the message
Select “To end”.

Continued on next page

Protecting data being entered or edited

The entered characters do not disappear and remain even if the battery runs out or there is an incoming voice call while you are entering characters in the character entry (edit) screen.

When the battery runs out

If the low-voltage alarm sounds while you are entering characters, the screen automatically changes to the message screen of “Recharge battery” from your character entry (edit) screen. The data being entered are automatically set and saved, so that you can re-enter the remaining characters after turning on the power again and calling up that function. However, in some functions, the entered data might not be saved. In addition, characters being converted and unset will not be saved.

Re-editing phonebook →p.105

When you press (PWR HLD)

If you press (PWR HLD) while entering characters, a message will appear to ask if you finish entering your work. If no character has been entered, the message will not appear.

＜To finish entering without saving the contents being entered＞

Select “YES”. The data being entered are not saved and you will return to the previous screen or standby display.

You can also close the entry screen without saving the data by pressing (PWR HLD).



＜To continue editing＞

Select “NO”. The entered data will be preserved intact and you return to the character entry (edit) screen.

You can also return to the character entry (edit) screen by pressing (CLR).

When there is a voice call

Even if receiving a voice call while you are entering text, you can answer the call while the text being entered is as it is. The character entry (edit) screen returns when the call finishes. During a voice call, you can also press (MULTI) to display the task menu and return to the character entry (edit) screen while talking. →p.408

Using prediction to enter text

Prediction is a function to display predictive and historical candidates based on the characters you have entered previously. When you enter the reading for a character, the FOMA displays predictions (predictive candidate) based on characters you have entered previously for what may follow from the entered text. In addition, when you set the entered text, the FOMA displays the text (historical candidates) that has followed that text in the past. It is useful for entering the desired text without entering all the characters manually.

- You can use Prediction in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” in “Mode 1 (5-touch)” or “Full-pitch input mode” in “Mode 2 (2-touch)”. You can only use the “historical candidates” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” in “Mode 3 (T9)”.
- For characters that have not been entered in the past, or if “Prediction” (p.521) is set to “OFF”, no candidates appear when you enter the reading.

1 Enter the reading.



Predictive candidates appear in the guidance area.

2 Slide ● or hold down ○ for 1 second or more.



The cursor appears in the guidance area and you will be able to select the predictive candidate.

To return to entering the reading

Press (CLR).

If no predictive candidates are displayed or if none of the predictive candidates are suitable

Enter the text normally.

3 Select a predictive candidate.



When you set the text, a historical candidate that follows the set text appears.

4 Select a historical candidate.



If no historical candidates are displayed or if none of the historical candidates are suitable

Enter the text normally.

NOTE

- When you perform “Clear learned” of “T9/Expect words”, predictive candidates and historical candidates in the “Prediction” will be deleted.
- If “Pointer” is set to “OFF” in “Neuropointer”, hold down ○ for 1 second or more to make predictive candidates selectable.
- The common phrases beginning with a set character are also displayed as historical candidates.

Entering common phrases

In the character entry (edit) screen, you can enter pre-stored common phrases. The common phrases include pre-stored “preset common phrases” and “own common phrases” which can be stored by yourself.

- The expression used in the preset common phrases changes according to the input mode as follows: However, preset common phrases you have changed and own common phrases are displayed with their stored expressions regardless of the input mode.

Input method	Input mode	Displayed contents
5-touch (Mode 1) T9 (Mode 3)	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Displayed in kanji/hiragana.
	Kana input mode, Alphabet input mode, Number input mode	Displayed in half-pitch katakana.
2-touch (Mode 2)	Full-pitch input mode	Displayed in kanji/hiragana.
	Half-pitch input mode	Displayed in half-pitch katakana.

Continued on next page

● The common phrases can be entered in the following character entry (edit) screens.

- Text memo
- Common phrase
- Folder name of common phrase
- Schedule
- ToDo
- Wake-up message
- i-mode mail subject
- i-mode mail text
- i-mode mail header
- i-mode mail signature
- Quotation mark for i-mode mail
- Reply with reference to i-mode mail
- Subject for Auto-sort setting
- Subject for Search mail
- Text editing in an i-mode text box
- Text editing with i-αppli
- Dictionary

● For creating and editing common phrases, see p.514.
● About the preset common phrases, see p.564.

1 Select “Common phrases” from the function menu.

2 Select a folder.

To enter “preset common phrases”
Select folder 1 through 2.

To enter “own common phrases”
Select folder 3 through 5.

3 Select a common phrase to enter.

The detailed screen of the common phrase appears.

4 Press ● [Select].

The selected common phrase is entered.

NOTE

● If the total number of characters in the common phrase exceeds the permitted limit as you enter it, a message notifying you that the number of characters exceeds appears. If you select “YES”, the common phrase is entered and the characters exceeding the limit are deleted from the end of the text.
● You cannot enter any common phrases if you have already entered the maximum amount of text.

Entering pictographs and symbols

In addition to characters, you can enter pictographs and symbols in the character entry (edit) screen. Moreover, symbols and pictographs can be entered successively.

Entering symbols

You can enter symbols such as brackets, Greek numbers and units.
You cannot enter full-pitch symbols in the mail address storing screen, the destination entry screen for i-mode mail, or the URL entry screen.

1 Select “Symbols” from the function menu.

The candidates of symbols appear.

2 Select the symbol to enter.

List of symbols and special characters →p.559

Entering symbols and face symbols with character conversion

By entering the reading of symbols or face symbols and converting them in “Kanji/hiragana input mode”, you can enter the symbols corresponding to the reading.

■ Entering symbols

When you enter “きごう” and convert it in “Kanji/hiragana input mode”, the symbol candidates appear. In addition, you can enter symbol names such as “かっこ”, “さんかく” and convert them to enter the symbols.

Symbols in Japanese Conversion →p.560

■ Entering face symbols

When you enter “かお” or “かおもじ” and convert it in “Kanji/hiragana input mode”, the face symbol candidates appear. You can also enter the meanings of the face symbols such as “ありがとう”, “さよなら” and convert them to enter the face symbols.

Face symbols →p.561

Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as faces, weathers, animals in the character entry (edit) screen for mail texts, text memos and common phrases.

1 Select “Pictograph” from the function menu.

The pictograph candidates appears.

2 Select a pictograph to enter.

List of pictographs →p.561

Entering symbols or pictographs continuously

You can continue to enter symbols or pictographs by displaying the candidate screen for the symbols or the pictographs until you close the candidate screen. It is useful because you do not need call items from the function menu whenever you enter.

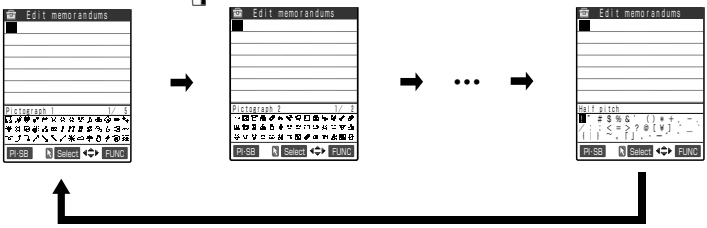
Refer to p.559 for available symbols and p.561 for pictographs.

1 Select “PI•SB input mode” from the function menu.

The candidates from Pictograph 1 appear in the guidance area. “Current page/total pages” is displayed at the upper-right in the guidance area.

2 Press [PI•SB] to switch the candidate screen.

The candidate screen turns to “Pictograph 1” - “Pictograph 2” - “Full pitch 1” - “Full pitch 2” - “Half pitch” in order each time you press [PI•SB].



3 Select a symbol or pictograph to enter.



The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can continue to enter other symbols or pictographs directly.

4 Press CLR when you complete the entry.

The continuous entry of pictographs and symbols ends.

Quoting phonebook data and own number data

You can quote names, readings, telephone numbers, mail addresses, street addresses, and memos stored in "Phonebook" and "Own number" in the character entry (edit) screens such as mail text and "Text memo".

● You cannot quote data in some character entry (edit) screens.

1 Select "Quote phonebook" or "Quote own number" from the function menu.

If you select "Quote phonebook"

Select "Group search" or "Column search" to search the phonebook you want to quote.
How to search the phonebook →p.114

If you select "Quote own number"

Enter your 4 though 8 digit security code.
Security code →p.152

2 Select the item you want to quote.



When quoting the Phonebook

3 Press [Finish].

The selected item is entered.

NOTE

● If a string to be quoted includes a character that cannot be entered in its character entry (edit) screen, the character will be replaced with a half-pitch space.
● In character entry (edit) screens such as "Text memo" and "i-mode mail", 2 half-pitch spaces are entered between the quoted items. In the character screen where a line feed can be made such as in the SMS's character entry (edit) screen, the line feed mark (↵) is entered for each quoted item.
● You cannot quote any text if you have already entered the maximum amount.

Common phrases

Creating and Changing Common Phrases

If you store common phrases beforehand, you can call and enter the phrases in the character entry (edit) screen.
Common phrases are stored in 5 folders. Folder 1 through 2 each contain 10 preset common phrases that have been pre-stored. You can edit the preset common phrases. Folder 3 through 5 are provided for storing up to 10 custom common phrases for each. You can also edit the folder names to sort the common phrases according to their purposes.

● You can store 10 common phrases in each folder, or total 50 common phrases.
● You can enter up to 64 full-pitch or up to 128 half-pitch in each common phrase.
● For contents of common phrases, see p.562.

Creating a new common phrase

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ “Common phrases”.

2 Select a folder.

3 Select <Not stored> and press [Edit].

4 Enter the common phrase.



Changing common phrases

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ “Common phrases”.

2 Select a folder.

To rename a folder

Highlight the folder of which you want to change the name, and then select “Edit folder name” from the function menu.

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch in the folder name.

To reset a folder name

Highlight the folder of which you want to reset the name, and then select “Reset name” from the function menu.

The folder name is reset to the default setting.

3 Select the item you want to change and press [Edit].

To delete a common phrase

Highlight the common phrase you want to delete, and then select “Delete this” from the function menu.

To delete all common phrases in the folder

Select “Delete all” from the function menu.

4 Change the contents.



NOTE

- If you set a folder name without entering any character when editing the folder name, the folder name returns to the default setting.
- If you delete a preset common phrase, the contents return to the default setting.

Copying/Cutting/Pasting Characters

You can copy, cut and paste characters. Copied or cut characters are temporarily stored in the FOMA terminal, so that you can paste them to another part of the text or to another character entry (edit) screen.

●You can only store one set of text or characters in your FOMA terminal with copying or cutting. When you copy or cut a new set of text or characters, the old set is overwritten.

Coping (or cutting) characters

1 Select “Copy” or “Cut” from the function menu.

2 Move the cursor to the first character to be copied or cut and then press ● [Start].



3 Move the cursor to the last character to be copied or cut and then press ● [End].



The selected characters are temporarily stored in the FOMA terminal.

When you cut characters

The selected characters are deleted, but stored in the FOMA terminal.

When you select the part where no character is entered

It is stored as a half-pitch space.

NOTE

● You can also use a pointer to select the copying or cutting area. However, since it is impossible to select the area with a pointer on the i-mode mail entry screen, select .

Pasting characters

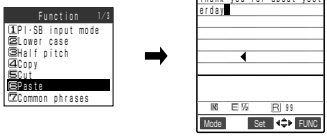
The characters that you have copied or cut can be pasted repeatedly until you copy or cut new characters or turn the FOMA terminal off.

● You can also paste the text accessed by a bar code reader. →p.193

1 Move the cursor to the position where you want to paste the characters.



2 Select “Paste” from the function menu.



The characters are pasted.

If some of the characters cannot be entered on the character entry (edit) screen

A message notifying you that these characters are replaced with spaces appears, and the spaces are pasted.

NOTE

- If the total number of pasted characters exceeds the permitted limit, a message notifying you that the number of characters exceeds appears. If you select “YES”, the entered characters are pasted, and characters that exceed the limit are deleted from the end (right side) of the text. If you select “NO”, the entered characters are not pasted and the previous screen returns.
- If you have already entered the maximum characters, you cannot paste any more.

Kuten codes

Using Kuten Codes to Enter Characters

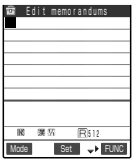
You can enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols, alphabetic characters (letters) and numbers using 4-digit kuten code.

- Select the following input mode based on your character input method before entering characters using kuten codes.
  - · Mode 1 (5-touch) : Kanji/hiragana input mode
  - · Mode 2 (2-touch) : Full-pitch input mode

  You can switch input mode into kuten input mode by function menu without setting above input mode.
- For kuten codes and characters that you can enter with kuten codes, refer to p.563.
- You can enter characters with kuten codes after the entered characters are set.

<Example: To enter “ ⌐” (kuten code 0814)>

1 Press (*).

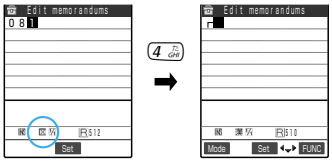


The input mode switches to “Kuten input mode” and “ ☒ ” appears in the information display area.

If the character input mode is “Mode 3 (T9)”

Select “Kuten code” from the function menu.

2 Enter a kuten code (0) (8) (1) (4).



The character corresponding to the entered kuten code is entered and the input mode returns to the original mode.

If there is no character that corresponds to the entered kuten code

A space is entered.

NOTE

- Even if the character input method is “Mode 1 (5-touch)” or “Mode 2 (2-touch)”, you can enter characters by selecting “Kuten code” from the function menu.

Storing Frequently Used Words

Default setting	Not stored

If you store a frequently used word with your favorite reading, the stored word is displayed when you enter and convert the reading in the character entry (edit) screen. It is useful if you store words beforehand that are not displayed with standard conversion.

- You can store up to 100 items in your own dictionary.
- Up to 10 full-pitch or up to 20 half-pitch can be entered for each word. Up to 10 full-pitch characters of hiragana can be entered for each reading.
- The same word and reading cannot be stored.
- You cannot enter any pictograph, line feed or common phrase as words or readings. A space is automatically omitted before it is stored.
- You cannot store symbols (、。・!?) except for the voiced consonant mark and semivoiced consonant mark for readings.

Storing a new word

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ “Own dictionary”.

2 Select <New>.

3 Enter the word.



4 Enter the reading.



Checking the word contents

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ “Own dictionary”.

2 Select the word you want to check.

If you change the word contents
Highlight the word you want to change, and then press [Edit].

To delete one word
Highlight the word you want to delete, and then select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To delete selected word
Select "Delete selected" from the function menu, and then select the words you want to delete.

To delete all words
Select "Delete all" from the function menu.

3 Check the contents.



Clear learned

Resetting the Learning Record to the Default

You can reset the following learned data stored in your FOMA terminal:

- Learning record of 5-touch
- Learning record of "T9 (Mode 3)"
- Prediction function's predicted candidates and historical candidates

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Input method".

2 Select "Clear learned" and enter your security code.

Security code →p.152

3 Select the items you want to delete.

To clear the learned data with "Mode 3 (T9)" and the "Prediction"
Select "T9/Expect words".

To clear the learned data with "Mode 1 (5-touch)"
Select "Kana/Kanji change".

DL dictionary

Using the Downloaded Dictionary

Default setting	Not stored

You can download dictionaries from sites such as i-mode sites for use in Japanese text conversion and then specify the downloaded dictionaries to use for conversion. When you download and specify a dictionary of specialist terms, the specialist terms stored in the dictionary are displayed in the list of conversion candidates.

- You can store up to 5 download dictionaries and enable 2 of them.
- For how to download dictionaries, refer to p.224.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Own data ▶ " DL dictionary".

Continued on next page

2 Select the dictionary you want to specify.

"★" is attached to the dictionary you have set.

To cancel the set dictionary
Select the dictionary with "★".
The specification is canceled and "★" disappears.

To check information on the dictionary
Highlight the dictionary you want to check, and then select "Dictionary info" from the function menu.

To change the title of a dictionary
Highlight the dictionary you want to change, and then select "Edit title" from the function menu.
You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch in a title.

To delete a dictionary
Highlight the dictionary you want to delete, and then select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To delete all dictionaries
Select "Delete all" from the function menu.

NOTE

- If 2 download dictionaries have already been specified, a message notifying you that the dictionaries have already been specified appears. Cancel a dictionary with the "★", and then set another dictionary again.
- If you set a title without entering any character when you edit the title of download dictionary, it returns to the previous title.
- If you insert no FOMA card or another FOMA card that is not used when downloading the dictionaries, you cannot use the dictionaries.

Setting a Character Input Method

You can change the character input method used for entering characters and the settings for the Prediction function and Guidance.

Changing the character input mode

You can select 2 or more input methods used for entering characters and then specify one of those as your favorite method (Prior mode) to be used when you display the character entry (edit) screen. You can also switch the input methods while you are entering text. There are 3 input methods as follows:

Input method	Feature	Entry example: おはよう
5-touch (Mode 1)	A method for entering the characters assigned to a key by pressing that key the correct number of times.	Press 1 ×5, 6 ×1, 8 ×3 and 1 ×3.
2-touch (Mode 2)	A method for entering characters assigned to a 2-digit number by entering that 2-digit number with the keys, as if you send characters to pager*.	Press 1 5 6 1, 8 5 and 1 3.
T9 (Mode 3)	A method for entering characters by pressing the key of the column assigned to the character you want to enter once to display reading candidates, and then selecting one from the displayed candidates. If you continue to press the key, the reading candidates change depending on the contents.	Press 1, 6, 8, 1 and select "おはよう" from the reading candidates.

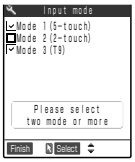
Changing the input method before entering characters

You cannot select only one character input method.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Input method".

2 Select “Input mode”.

3 Select 2 or more input methods to use, and press [Finish].



4 Select the character input method to be given priority.

The character input methods which were not selected in Step 3 are not displayed.

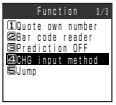
Switching character input method while you are entering text

When the character entry (edit) screen appears, your preferred character input method is set. There are 2 ways to switch to another character input method in the character entry (input) screen.

The switching of the character input method is only effective in the current character entry (edit) screen. Once you finish your character entry, and display the character entry (edit) screen next time, the character input method will return to your preferred input method.

Switching from the function menus

Select “CHG input method” from the function menu to select the character input method you want to use.



Hold down [Mode] for 1 second or more.

Each time you hold down “[Mode]” for 1 second or more, the character input method changes to “Mode 1 (5-touch)”→“Mode 2 (2-touch)”→“Mode 3 (T9)” in turn.

NOTE

- You cannot switch to a character input method which was not selected in “Input mode” in “Input method”.
- You cannot switch the character input method in some character entry (edit) screen for specific items such as zip code entry.

Selecting whether to use the Prediction

Default setting	ON

You can select to use or not to use Prediction function that displays predictive candidates and historical candidates based on the previously entered words. You can turn ON/OFF Prediction function even while you are entering text.

- You can use the Prediction in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” in “Mode 1 (5-touch)” and in “Full pitch input mode” in “Mode 2 (2-touch)”. You can only use the “historical candidates” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” in “Mode 3 (T9)”.

*As of January 2001, the paging service provided by NTT DoCoMo is thereby known as QUICKCAST.

Continued on next page

Switching input mode before entering characters

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Input method”.

2 Select “Prediction”.

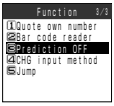
3 Select the item to set.

To use the Prediction function
Select “ON”.

To not use the Prediction function
Select “OFF”.

Switching the Prediction function “ON/OFF” during character entry

When displaying the character entry (edit) screen, the status of Prediction function is the same as you set in “Prediction” in “Input method”. To switch Prediction function On or Off in the character entry (edit) screen, select “Prediction OFF” or “Prediction ON” from the function menu. “Prediction OFF” appears when Prediction function is “ON”, and “Prediction ON” appears when the function is “OFF”.
The switching of Prediction function is only effective in the current character entry (edit) screen. Once you finish your character entry, and display the character entry (edit) screen next time, it will return to the status you set in “Prediction”.



NOTE

- Any stored predictive candidates and historical candidates will not be deleted even when you switch Prediction function On or Off.

Selecting whether to display guidance

Default setting	ON

You can select to display (ON) or not to display (OFF) the operation guidance in the character entry (edit) screen. When you set it to “OFF”, the operation guidance will disappear, so that you can use the character entry area wider.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Input method”.

2 Select “Guidance”.

3 Select the item to set.

To display the operation guidance
Select “ON”.

To not display the operation guidance
Select “OFF”.

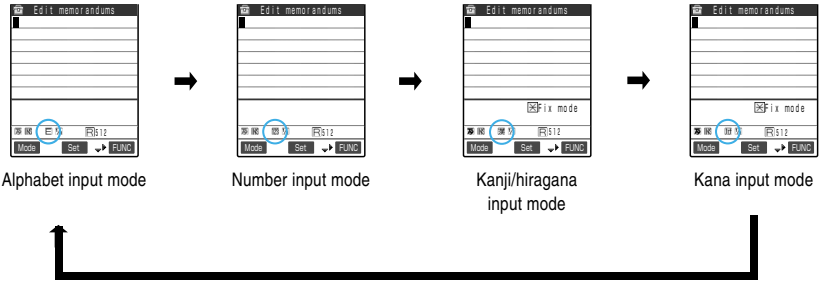
Entering Characters in T9 (Mode 3)

“T9 (Mode 3)” is an input method for entering characters by pressing the key of the column assigned to the character you want to enter once to display reading candidates, and then selecting one from the displayed candidates. It is useful for entering characters by pressing only a few keys.
If the input mode is “Kanji/hiragana input mode”, you can use historical candidates from “Prediction”.
In addition, for cases that no reading candidate you want to enter appears, there are the “Yomi edit mode” function for editing an entered reading, and the “Fix mode” function for directly entering the reading you want to enter.

- You cannot use predictive candidates in “Prediction”.
- For switching to “T9 (Mode 3)”, see p.520.
- For how to switch the full-pitch/half-pitch mode, lower case/upper case characters, and to enter symbols, pictographs, common phrases, see “Entering Characters in 5-touch” (p.504).

Switching the input mode

“T9 (Mode 3)” can be used in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” and “Kana input mode”. When the FOMA is in “Alphabet input mode” and “Number input mode”, the input modes in “5-touch (Mode 1)” (p.504) are used. Each time you press [Mode], the input mode changes in turn.



Alphabet input mode → Number input mode → Kanji/hiragana input mode → Kana input mode

Alphabet input mode

Use “Mode 1 (5-touch)” to enter half-pitch or full-pitch alphabets and symbols. “A” appears in the information display area.

Number input mode

Use “Mode 1 (5-touch)” to enter half-pitch or full-pitch numbers and symbols. “ 123 ” appears in the information display area.

Kanji/hiragana input mode

Use “Mode 3 (T9)” to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and numbers. Entered character are all full pitch. “漢” appears in the information display area.

Kana input mode

Use “Mode 3 (T9)” to enter half-pitch or full-pitch katakana and symbols. “ｶﾅ” appears in the information display area.

This section describes how to input text using “T9 (Mode 3)”.

●List of character assignment in T9 (Mode 3) →p.558

<Example: To enter “戸田”>

1 Press [Mode] to select “Kanji/hiragana input mode”.

2 Enter the reading.



4 (た column), 4 (た column), # (voiced consonant mark)

The reading candidates are displayed by analogy with “ただ”.

If you press a wrong key

Press CLR to delete the character, and then press the correct key.

If entered characters exceed the recognition area

As the characters exceeding the recognition area are grayed out, you press ◎ to change the area of the reading candidate.

3 Slide ● or hold down ○ for one second or more to select the reading candidate.



The selected reading candidate appears in the character entry area.

If you set “Pointer” to “OFF” in “Neuropointer”

Press ○ to highlight the reading candidate and then press ◎ to select the reading candidate.

To return to the reading candidate entry

Press CLR.

4 Convert to kanji.



When you set the character, historical candidates are displayed. You can select a historical candidate to enter the next character.

How to enter characters →p.505

NOTE

- If you change the area of the reading candidate to divide into multiple blocks, each block is stored as one word.
- When you enter readings in “Add to phonebook” in the FOMA card, or enter readings in “Own dictionary”, no number appears as reading candidates.

Editing the reading candidate

If displayed reading candidates do not include the candidate you want to enter, you can edit a reading candidate. If it does not contain a voiced consonant mark or semi-voiced consonant mark, the edited reading candidate will be displayed as the first candidate at the next entry.

<Example: To change reading candidate from "ろーらーと" to "らんらんと">

1 Enter the reading.



9 (ら column), 0 (わ column), 9 (ら column),
0 (わ column), 4 (た column)

The candidates that can be analogize with "らわらわた" appear. In that case, the first reading candidate is "ろーらーと", and the reading candidate "らんらんと" is not displayed.

2 Press [Yomi].

The Yomi edit mode is set and the cursor moves to the beginning of the reading candidate. The characters of "ら column" appear in the display area for the reading candidates.

3 Press the dial key corresponding to the number of the desired character.



In this example, press 1 (ら).
When you edit the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Edit the reading in the same manner.

If you do not change the reading

Press ◎ to move the cursor to the character you want to edit next.

To finish editing the reading on the way

Press [Return].
The characters you have changed until finishing appear as a reading character.

4 Press ● [Set].



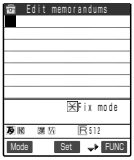
The reading candidate is set. You can press ○ to convert kanji, or katakana, etc.
How to enter characters →p.505

Enter the reading with the fixed input

If you anticipate that the characters you want to enter will not appear as a reading candidate, you can directly enter that reading in the fixed input mode. When you enter a reading in the fixed input mode, the reading candidates will not appear.

<Example: To enter reading “はためく”>

1 Press ✱ (Fix mode).



The fixed input mode is set and the “T9” in the information display area changes to “FIX”.

2 Press the key of the column assigned to the character you want to enter.

In this case, press 6 mno. The characters in “は column” appear in the display area for reading candidates.

3 Press the dial key corresponding to the number of the desired character.



In this case, press 1 ※ (は).
Enter the reading in the same manner.

4 Press ✱ (Fix END) and then ● [Set].



The reading candidate is set. You can press ○ to convert kanji, or katakana, etc.
How to enter characters →p.505

Entering Characters in 2-touch (Mode 2)

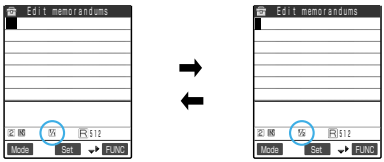
"2-touch (Mode 2)"is a method for entering characters assigned to a 2-digit number by entering that 2-digit number with the keys. The operation is the same as you send characters to a QUICKCAST*.

●For switching to "2-touch (Mode 2)", see p.520.

●For how to switch the full-pitch/half-pitch mode, lower case/upper case characters and to enter symbols, pictographs, common phrases, refer to "Entering Characters in 5-touch" (p.504).

Changing the input mode

There are "Full-pitch input mode" and "Half-pitch input mode" for "2-touch (Mode 2)". The input mode switches between the two modes each time you press [Mode].



Full-pitch input mode　　Half-pitch input mode

■Full-pitch input mode

You can enter full-pitch kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers, symbols and pictographs. "1/1" is displayed in the information display area.

■Half-pitch input mode

You can enter half-pitch katakana, alphabets, numbers, symbols and pictographs. "1/2" is displayed in the information display area.

NOTE

● When you enter readings in "Add to phonebook" in the FOMA card, you can enter only katakana in "Full-pitch input mode".

Entering characters

This section describes how to input text using "2-touch (Mode 2)".

●List of character assignment in "2-touch (Mode 2)"→p.559

<Example: To enter "はる">

1 Press [Mode] to switch to "Full-pitch input mode".

2 Enter the characters.



6 mno 1 あ, 9 wxyz 3 defg

は　　る

NOTE

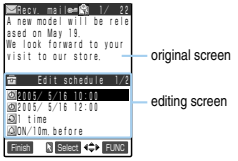
● In "Mode 2 (2-touch)", you can switch between the "Lower case input mode" and the "Uppercase input mode" by pressing 8 tuv 0.

● You may not enter characters in "2-touch (Mode 2)" for some functions. In that case, use "5-touch (Mode 1)" to enter characters.

*As of January 2001, the paging service provided by NTT DoCoMo is thereby known as QUICKCAST.

Switching the Screen to Operate

The character entry (edit) screen appears over the original menu function screen when you perform reply with reference from received mail or reference entry of a schedule from a received mail or the i-mode screen, so that you can edit while viewing contents in the original menu function screen. When you finish replying with reference from received mail or storing a schedule, the original menu reappears.



Reference entry of a schedule from received mail



Reply with reference from received mail

- You cannot enter characters in the character entry (edit) screen while you are operating the original menu function screen.
- For the reply with reference, refer to p.272.
- To store a schedule, referring to received mail, select “Store schedule” from the function menu in the received mail details screen.
- For the schedule, refer to p.413.

How to switch the screen to operate

When the character entry (edit) screen appears over the original menu, you can switch the screen to operate. To switch the operation screen, the following three ways are available.

■ Holding down (i) for 1 second or more

Each time you hold down (i) for 1 second or more, you can switch the screen to operate.

■ Using the pointer to select screen to operate

Slide the Neuropointer to display the pointer, and then select the screen you want to operate.

■ Selecting from the function menu

When you select “Change window” from the function menu, the screen to operate switches.

NOTE

- Even if you switch the screen to operate, the entered characters and cursor position remains the same as before switching.
- You cannot switch the operation screen when reading is being entered.
- If you switch the operation to a received mails or i-mode screen while the edit screen is displayed, you can only scroll the screen. For received mails, you can perform copying and character size setting.

Traveling with N900iG

■ **International Roaming**

International Roaming Service (WORLD WING) 530
Before Using Your Terminal Overseas 532
Overseas Availability of Functions 537

■ **Making/Receiving A Call Abroad**

Making a Call 539
Receiving a Call 544

■ **Setting Overseas Networks**

Setting Network Mode Switchover ..... Network switch 544
Setting Network Detection ..... NW search mode 545
Setting Preferred Networks ..... PLMN setting 547
Setting Whether to Display the Network You Are Roaming In ..... Operator name disp 549

■ **Roaming on an Overseas Network**

Setting Operations During International Roaming ..... Roaming setting 549
Controlling Network Services While Roaming ..... International service 550

■ **Using Other Functions**

Setting the Answer Option for an Incoming Call During i-mode ..... Call FNC/i-mode 552
Setting the Answer Option for an Incoming Call During Packet Communication ..... Call FNC/Packet 552

International Roaming Service (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that DoCoMo provides to FOMA users. It allows communication and i-mode use even overseas via the network of an overseas provider.
The FOMA N900iG features international roaming using the phone number you use in Japan. You can make and receive voice/videophone calls abroad, and use i-mode, SMS and packet communication performed by connecting to a machine such as PC. Convenient network services including the Voice mail service and the Call forwarding service are also available.

- To use the International roaming service, you need to sign up for WORLD WING.
- To use the International roaming service, the FOMA card (green) which validates the WORLD WING service needs to be inserted in your FOMA N900iG.
- Network service requires additional subscription.
- The communication services and functions that are available depend on each roaming network. →p.537
- Overseas networks include 3 types of networks: 3G network, GPRS network and GSM network.
  - A 3G network is a 3rd generation mobile communication network that complies with global standard 3GPP※1.
  - A GPRS network is a 2.5th generation mobile communication network that implements high speed packet communication by GPRS※2 on a GSM network.
  - A GSM※3 network is a 2nd generation mobile communication network supporting communication in digital form. The GSM network is the most widely used network type worldwide.

※1: 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standardization organization established for the development of standardized technical specifications for the 3rd generation mobile communication system (IMT-2000).

※2: GPRS (General Packet Radio Service)
Packet communication service with maximum communication speed of 115 kbps. Widely used in Europe, China and other countries.

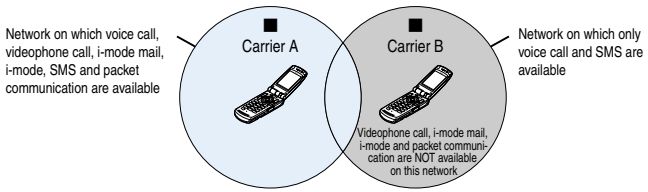
※3: GSM (Global System for Mobile Communications)
A mobile communication standard unified in Europe. This 2nd generation mobile communication system using a digital method is the most widely used worldwide.

■ International roaming functions for FOMA N900iG

Function	Details
Voice call	● You can use your FOMA terminal overseas with the same phone number you use in Japan. ● You can use the FOMA terminal for international calls to Japan or other countries and calls in the country where you stay.
Videophone call	● You can make an international videophone call to users of specific overseas 3G carriers and FOMA users in Japan.
i-mode mail	● You can use the mail address you usually use to send or receive i-mode mails. You can also exchange i-mode mails to which images and melodies are attached.
i-mode	● You can also use i-mode overseas.
Short Message Service (SMS)	● You can also exchange SMS overseas.
Overseas packet communication※	● You can use packet communication by connecting your terminal to a PC.

※: As of December 2004, packet communication performed by connecting to a machine such as PC is not available in overseas areas. For the latest information, see the DoCoMo web site.

- The communication services that can be used vary depending on each network (p.537). They also depend on the carrier you are accessing. Please note that some services you want to use may not be available for these reasons. For details on service areas, refer to "国際ローミングサービスマニュアル(FOMA N900iG)" (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only) and the WORLD WING website.



Switching networks

The FOMA terminal searches and accesses a network automatically. No setting changes are required when going abroad or coming back to Japan. →p.544

● When going abroad from Japan

By simply powering on the FOMA terminal again, the FOMA terminal automatically searches for an available provider for connection.

● When moving around overseas

When you move out of an overseas network that you have been on, the FOMA terminal performs network detection again and accesses another available network.

● When coming back to Japan

The FOMA terminal accesses the FOMA network when the power is switched on for the first time after you come back to Japan. After that, you can use the terminal as usual.

NOTE

- Note that while the FOMA terminal is switching networks, key operations may not work and some of the functions may not be usable.
- Network switchover may not be performed due to low battery power.

Country codes for major countries/regions

Use the following country codes when making an internal call (pp.67 and 539) or set "Int'l dial setting".

October, 2004

Area	Code	Area	Code	Area	Code	Area	Code
USA	1	Korea (South)	82	China	86	France	33
UK	44	Greece	30	Germany	49	Brazil	55
Italy	39	Singapore	65	Turkey	90	Vietnam	84
India	91	Switzerland	41	New Caledonia	687	Peru	51
Indonesia	62	Sweden	46	New Zealand	64	Belgium	32
Egypt	20	Spain	34	Norway	47	Hong Kong	852
Australia	61	Thailand	66	Hungary	36	Macau	853
Austria	43	Taiwan	886	Fiji	679	Malaysia	60
Netherlands	31	Tahiti	689	Philippines	63	Maldives	960
Canada	1	Czech Republic	420	Finland	358	Russia	7

※ For country codes of other countries and regions and more information, see the WORLD WING website.

Before Using Your Terminal Overseas

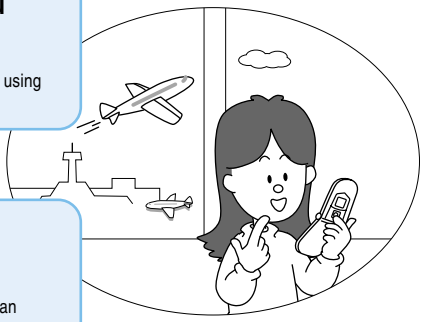
● For N900iG users who will use their terminal overseas for the first time

1 Preparation before departure (p.534)

This section describes the WORLD WING application, charging, checking of network service and useful functions for making calls.

2 Using your terminal where you stay (p.535)

This section describes the functions and notes for using the N900iG overseas.



3 Setting after return to Japan (p.536)

You need to set the network after returning to Japan depending on your terminal condition.

Other manuals for using N900iG overseas

For using the N900iG overseas, please see the manuals listed below along with this manual.

Manual title	Contents
国際ローミングサービスマニュアル(FOMA N900iG)(the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only)	How to use international roaming service for this FOMA terminal, notes
International Roaming Guide Book	Details of international roaming service, fees, how to use the service, notes, etc.
Network Services Operation Guide	Details of international network service, how to use the service, notes, etc.

Quick Manual (for Overseas)

A quick manual for overseas use is attached at the end of this manual. The manual describes the basic operations and displays of N900iG.

Service charge in overseas

Fees incurred overseas are charged along with the monthly charge. There may be a delay of one month in the billing of oversea charges depending on the overseas operators' circumstances.

If you have a problem while using the terminal

When you have a problem or an error message is displayed during overseas use of your FOMA terminal, see "Malfunction Checklist (for overseas use)" (p.574) or "List of Error Messages (for overseas use)" (p.581).

When you want to make inquiries overseas

To report loss or theft from abroad or inquire about payment of accumulated charges, contact "For lost, stolen, and account settlement of total charges" or "For inquiries-malfunctions" shown on the back cover of this manual.

International phone codes for Universal Number (Table 1)

You can make all kinds of inquiries even while overseas by dialing the international phone code for Universal Number and placing a call to the desired number.

Ex: To inquire about malfunctions from England:

00-800-5931-8600

└ International phone code for Universal Number

The international phone codes for Universal Number are listed below.

Area	Int'l phone code	Area	Int'l phone code	Area	Int'l phone code
Ireland	00	Colombia	009	New Zealand	00
USA	011	Singapore	001	Norway	00
Argentina	00	Switzerland	00	Philippines	00
UK	00	Sweden	00	France	00
Israel	014	Spain	00	Brazil	0021
Italy	00	Thailand	001	Belgium	00
Australia	0011	Taiwan	00	Hong Kong	001
Austria	00	China	00	Malaysia	00
Canada	011	Denmark	00	Luxembourg	00
Korea (South)	001	Germany	00		

※ International phone codes may not be usable in some cases.
※ Universal Number is available only in countries listed in "International phone codes for Universal Number" (above).
※ Some hotels may charge you for calls that you make to Universal Numbers from phones at those hotels. (You are responsible for payment of any such charges.) Please confirm with hotel staff before making such calls.

International access numbers of major countries/regions (Table 2)

If you cannot use the above international phone codes for Universal Number inquiries from overseas, use an international access number.

Ex) To inquire about malfunctions from England,

00-81-3-6718-1414

└ International access number

The international access numbers of major countries are listed below.

Area	Int'l access number	Area	Int'l access number	Area	Int'l access number	Area	Int'l access number
Ireland	00	Korea (South)	001	Denmark	00	Vietnam	00
USA	011	Greece	00	Germany	00	Belgium	00
UAE	00	Singapore	001	Turkey	00	Poland	00
UK	00	Switzerland	00	New Zealand	00	Portugal	00
Italy	00	Sweden	00	Norway	00	Hong Kong	001
India	00	Spain	00	Hungary	00	Macau	00
Indonesia	001	Thailand	001	Philippines	00	Malaysia	00
Australia	00/900/90	Taiwan	002	Finland	00	Monaco	00
Netherlands	00	Czech Republic	00	France	00	Luxembourg	00
Canada	011	China	00	Brazil	0041/0021/0023	Russia	810

To use your FOMA terminal overseas, the following preparations are required before departure.

Applying for WORLD WING

You need to apply for WORLD WING for using your FOMA terminal overseas.

- A FOMA card (green) licensed by the WORLD WING must be inserted in your FOMA terminal during international roaming.

Charging the terminal

Check the power voltage used in the country/region where you are visiting before using FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use.

- Although the "FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use" can be used in a range of 100V to 240V AC, the accompanying AC power cord (p.52) is designed for use with 100V AC (Japan domestic specification) only. When you use the AC adapter overseas, you need a conversion plug adapter and power cord that are suitable for the local specification.
- Do not use a voltage converter for overseas use to charge your terminal.
- The simple battery pack can be charged on the desktop holder. You can also use Battery Pack N07, which is available as an optional accessory, as a spare. →p.53
- Precautions on handling the AC adapter →pp.9 and 16
- Charging the battery pack with the AC adapter →p.52

Using i-mode and i-mode mail

- For using i-mode and i-mode mail overseas, you need to select "iMenu" and set "International Settings" in advance. For more information, see "国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)" (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only) and "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".

Setting network service

- You may not set or check the network service depending on the overseas carrier. Moreover, some services can be set or checked only in Japan. Therefore, please read the "国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)" (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only) and "Network Services Operation Guide" before you leave for overseas.
- To use the call waiting and call forwarding services overseas, "Remote Control" must be set in advance in Japan. For details, see "国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)" (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only).

Useful setting

By setting "Int'l dial setting", you can easily make voice calls or videophone calls during international roaming.

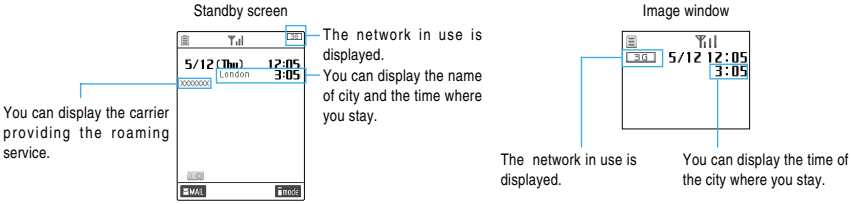
- Setting "Int'l dial setting" →p.542

You can use the communication services without having to worry about areas or countries since the available network or provider is automatically identified under the default setting.

- When you use your FOMA terminal for the first time overseas after leaving Japan, power off and then back on your FOMA terminal.
- You can make and receive voice phone and videophone calls through easy procedures. →pp.539 and 544

Screen display

The network you use is indicated in the standby screen or image window. You can also display the carrier in use, name of the city or the time where you stay.



- The network you use is displayed by using the icons listed below.

Standby screen	Image window	Description
FOMA	FOMA	Using the FOMA network in Japan
3G	3G	Using the overseas 3G network
GPRS	GPRS	Using the overseas GPRS network
GSM	GSM	Using the overseas GSM network

- You can set the displays of the network and carrier in use by using “Operator name disp”. →p.549
- To display the name of the city and the time where you stay in the standby screen, select the city name in “Set remote time” (p.58) and “Local&Remote” in “Clock display”(p.149). To display the time of the city where you stay in the image window, select “local&remote “ in “Clock type” of “Image window”(p.143).
- The dialed call/received call/missed call records of voice calls and videophone calls are displayed based on the date and time that are set by “Set local time”.

Trouble shooting

- “圏外” and/or “Select net” remains displayed.
  - Check “Network switch” (p.544).
  - Check “NW search mode” (p.545).
  - When you use your FOMA terminal for the first time overseas after leaving Japan, power off and then back on your FOMA terminal.
  - Since your FOMA terminal supports the international roaming service, searching the corresponding radio wave may take time just after the terminal is switched on. During this time, “圏外” may be displayed.
- You cannot use videophone calls/SMS/i-mode
  - Check “国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)” (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only) or web page of WORLD WING whether the carrier you use is available.
  - Check “ Network switch” (p.544).
  - Check “ NW search mode” (p.545).
- No caller ID

  When another party makes a call to your terminal with the caller ID, the caller ID may not be notified in your terminal depending on the network or carrier you use. Note that in such case, the following will happen even if the phone number of the other party is registered in the Phonebook:
  - Name, phone number and image of the other party are not displayed during an incoming call and “Not supported” is displayed as the reason for not notifying the caller ID. Moreover, other party’s name and phone number are not displayed in the records of received calls and Record message.
  - When the remote control is used, the reception side does not receive a call as the remote control, but as a videophone call.
  - You cannot send a speed photo mail.
  - For the functions that operate according to the contents set in the phonebook entry, the operation for “Not supported” will occur. (The setting does not work, a call is rejected or calling operation does not work.)

Continued on next page

NOTE

● A number that differs from the number of the other party may be notified during an incoming call depending on the network to which the other party connects. Also, in this case, you cannot use the function that uses caller IDs for the same reason as for incoming calls for which "Not supported" is displayed.

Using functions as needed

For convenient overseas use, your FOMA terminal has the following functions. Use them as necessary.

Example of use	Function name	See page
When you want to use only the specific network	Network switch	p.544
When you want to change how to detect the carrier if the network in use is out of service	NW search mode	p.545
When you want to change the carrier to be connected preferentially	PLMN setting	p.547
When you want to hide the connected carrier in the standby screen	Operator name disp	p.549
When you want to notify the other party that you are in international roaming or to reject incoming calls (Videophone calls/all incoming calls) during international roaming	Roaming setting	p.549
When you want to perform operations such as voice mail service and call forwarding service from overseas	International service	p.550
When you do not want to receive incoming voice calls during i-mode	Call FNC/i-mode	p.552
When you do not want to receive incoming voice calls during packet communication	Call FNC/Packet	p.552

Using advanced functions

For convenient overseas use, your FOMA terminal has the following functions.

Function overview	Function name	Default setting	See page
You want to set an English announcement made to invite a caller to leave a message in your FOMA terminal.	Record message	Answer message: Japanese 1	p.83
You want to enter an unknown word and check it using an English-Japanese or Japanese-English dictionary.	Dictionary	–	p.434

Setting after return to Japan

The FOMA network is automatically connected when your FOMA terminal is switched on following your return to Japan, because the default setting of "Network switch" (p.544) is "Auto".

When you cannot connect your terminal to the FOMA network after your return to Japan

● Is "Network switch" set to "GSM"?
・Change the setting to "Auto" or "3G".
● Is "Network switch" set to "3G" and "NW search mode" (p.545) to "Manual"?
・Set "Network switch" to "Auto" or set "NW search mode" to "Auto".

NOTE

● To use the dual network service following your return to Japan, turn on your FOMA terminal and check that "FOMA" is displayed. For more information on the dual network service, see "Network Services Operation Guide".

Overseas Availability of Functions

The communication services and functions available for the FOMA terminal differ depending on whether the terminal is used in and out of Japan, etc. The network you are using overseas is also a factor.

● Refer to “国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)” (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only) for more information about the communication services available during international roaming.

Communication service availability on each network system

	Network	Make/receive Voice call	Make/receive Videophone call	i-mode	Receive Msg. Request/ Free	Send/receive i-mode mail	Packet communication performed by connecting to a machine such as PC	Send/receive SMS
Japan	FOMA	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Out of Japan	3G	○	○※1	○	○※3	○	○※4	○
	GPRS	○	×※2	○	○※3	○	○※4	○
	GSM	○	×※2	×	×	×	×	○

○: Available(Some carriers or regions may not provide a service.) ×: Not available

※1: Remote monitoring (p.98) is available during overseas use of your terminal. However, the setting of “Other ID” to be registered in the FOMA terminal of the receiver side must match the phone number to be received. Accordingly, check the phone number to be received in advance. If a number that starts with “+81” is received at the receiver side, the same number (with “+81” added) must be registered. Moreover, the remote control may not be available depending on the overseas carrier you use. For more information, see “国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)” (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only) or the WORLD WING website.

※2: The FOMA terminal does not perform receiving operation even when a videophone call comes in. Attempted outgoing videophone calls can only be made through automatic conversion into voice calls by setting “Voice call auto switch” (p.98) to “ON”.

※3: Msg. Free cannot be received.

※4: As of December 2004, packet communication performed by connecting to a machine such as PC is not available in overseas areas. For the latest information, see the DoCoMo web site.

Icons for indicating dialed/received/missed call record

● The following icons are displayed during the international roaming service for indicating dialed/received/missed call record:

Icon	Description
INTL PHONE	Indicates you made/received an international call.
INTL PHONE	Indicates you made/received an international videophone call.
INTL MISS	Indicates you missed an international call.
INTL MISS MSG	Indicates you missed an international call and the caller left a message in “Record message”.
INTL MISS	Indicates you missed an international videophone call.
INTL MISS MSG	Indicates you missed an international videophone call and the caller left a message in “Record message”.
INTL MISS	Indicates you have an unchecked missed international call.
INTL MISS NO CONNECT	Indicates you missed an international videophone call when using a GSM/GPRS network.

● When a "Missed call" icon is displayed on the image window, pressing [Home] view the missed call record displays the following icons.

Icon	Description
INTL MISS	Indicates you missed an international call.
INTL MISS	Indicates you missed an international videophone call.

Continued on next page

Sending/receiving SMS

- You will be able to exchange SMS with some overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. The service start date and available overseas carriers will be announced on the DoCoMo website.
- The following table lists the ways of specifying addresses when you send SMS to another party who uses an overseas network service. If the SMS contains characters that are not supported by the overseas carrier that the other party uses, those characters may not be displayed correctly. For more information, see "国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)" (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only).

Carrier used by other party	How to specify for sending SMS
NTT DoCoMo (FOMA terminal)	Enter the phone number of other party in the same way you do in Japan.
Other carriers	Enter the phone number that includes "+" and country code of other party at the beginning. ※

※: If the phone number starts with "0", exclude "0".

Availability of network service settings

- The following lists indicates whether to perform the network service settings such as service start/stop.
- Note that the overseas network service may have restrictions or may be unavailable even if you can start or stop the service. For more information, see the "国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)" (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only).
- For the FOMA network, all of the following network services can be set and operated.

Service name	Setting availability	Remarks	See page
Voice mail service	△		p.446
Call waiting service	○		p.448
Call forwarding service	△		p.450
Bar nuisance call service	△		p.452
Notify caller ID service	△	You may not notify or receive caller IDs correctly.	p.59
Caller ID request service	△		p.453
Driving mode	○	The driving mode is not available. Cancel the settings in overseas areas.	p.80
Dual network service	–		p.453
English guidance	△		p.454
Roaming setting (Roaming guidance)	△		p.550
Roaming setting (Call barring)	○		p.550
Voice mail (Int.)	○		p.551
Call forwarding (Int.)	○		p.551
Roaming guidance (Int.)	○		p.551

Setting availability
○: Available, –: Not available, △: Available in some networks

Functions not available during International roaming

Icon display	Function	See page	Note
GPRS GSM	Multi access	p.404	Multi access is not available Ex.: You cannot send/receive an i-mode mail during a voice call.
3G GPRS GSM	Software update	p.585	Software update cannot be performed.

Using the international roaming service, you can make calls from abroad.

- Make sure that you have sufficient battery power and that the reception signal is sufficiently strong.
- An international call is made when a phone number that includes "+" at the beginning is dialed with your FOMA terminal. You can make an international call with an easy operation using "+" when you are either in Japan or overseas.

Dialing assistance (function for making international calls more easily)

You can skip or simplify the input of the international access code, country code and "+" that is required to make international calls, either in Japan or overseas.

You can make an international call to Japan from overseas by simply selecting the desired phone number from your phonebook! →p.540

For example, "090XXXXXXXX" registered in the phonebook is automatically changed to "+8190XXXXXXXX" to make a call.



You can easily enter "country code" by using "International Call" from the function menu! →pp.68 and 541

You can enter "country code" simply by selecting it from the already registered codes. Moreover, the international access code or "+" is automatically added.



You can make an international call from Japan to overseas by simply entering "+" instead of the international access code! →p.68

For example, dialed number "+33XXXXXXXX" is automatically changed to "00913001033XXXXXXXX" to make a call.

- Your FOMA terminal has a function (Auto assist setting) for easily making international calls. The procedure for making a call varies depending on the registration method in the Phonebook and the location of the other party.
- If the other party uses a carrier that supports FOMA videophone calls, you can make a videophone call to that party by pressing (V) instead of (C).
- For the registration method in the Phonebook, see p.104.

Other party's phone number	Example of Phonebook registration		How to make a call using the Phonebook		Remarks
			To make a call from Japan	To make a call from overseas	
Phone number used in Japan (Mobile phone or fixed-line phone) Example: 090-XXXX-XXXX 03-XXXX-XXXX	Register the other party's phone number Example: 090XXXXXXXX 03XXXXXXXX	⇨	Select the other party's phone number from the Phonebook and press (C).	Select the other party's phone number from the Phonebook and press (C). ※2 ●"0" at the beginning is automatically converted to "+81".	You can perform the same operation as described on the left when the other party uses WORLD WING overseas.
	Register the phone number with "+ country code".※1 Example: +8190XXXXXXXX +813XXXXXXXX	⇨	Select the other party's phone number from the Phonebook and press (C).	Select the other party's phone number from the Phonebook and press (C).	
Overseas phone number (Mobile phone or fixed-line phone) Example: 01-XX-XX-XX-XX 93-XXX-XXXX	Register the other party's phone number Example: 01XXXXXXXX 93XXXXXXX ●In the case of a phone number of a country or region such as Italy, add "+ country code" before the phone number to register it. (See the example below.)	⇨	①Select the other party's phone number from the Phonebook. ②Select "International Call" from the function menu and select the country name. ③Press (C). ●"IDD Prefix Code" and "Country Code" are added to the beginning of the phone number. ●If the phone number starts with "0", the "0" is replaced with "IDD Prefix Code" and "Country Code".	**To make a call to the phone number in the country where you stay** Select the other party's phone number from the Phonebook and press (C). **To make a call to a phone number outside the country where you stay** ①Select the other party's phone number from the Phonebook. ②Select "International Call" from the function menu and select the country name. ③Press (C). ●"+ country code" is added to the beginning of the phone number. ●If the phone number starts with "0", the "0" is replaced with "+ country code".	To use "International Call", you need to register "Country name and Country Code" and "IDD Prefix name and IDD Prefix Code" beforehand. →p.69, p.542 Default setting Country Code setting: "日本" (Country Code: 81) IDD Prefix setting: "WORLD CALL" (IDD Prefix Code: 009130010)
	Register the phone number with "+ country code".※1 Example: +331XXXXXXXX +3493XXXXXXX	⇨	Select the other party's phone number from the Phonebook and press (C). ※3 ●"+" in the phone number is automatically converted to the IDD Prefix Code.	Select the other party's phone number from the Phonebook and press (C).	

※1: If the phone number starts with "0", register the number without the "0". However, "0" may be needed to make a call to a phone number of a country or region such as Italy. For a phone number of Japanese mobile phone or PHS, register the number without the "0".
※2: "AUTO" must be set to "Auto assist setting" in "Int'l dial setting". →p.542
(The default settings are the following: Auto assist setting: AUTO, Country Code setting: 日本 (Country Code: 81))
※3: "AUTO" must be set to "Auto assist setting" in "Int'l dial setting". →p.69
(The default settings are the following: Auto assist setting: AUTO, IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010))

Making a call to Japan using the phonebook

When you call a general phone or a mobile phone in Japan from another country, you can make the international call through a set of easy steps if the phone number to call is stored in the phonebook.

- The following steps are only available when the number on the phonebook starts with "0".※ "AUTO" and "日本" (default settings) must be set to "Auto assist setting" in "Int'l dial setting" (p.542).
  ※: Also available if "0" is prefixed by "*31#" or "#31#" in the phonebook.
- If the phone number to call is not stored in the phonebook, refer to "Making a call to another country (including Japan) while you are in a foreign country" (p.541) for instructions on how to make such a call.

1 Display the phonebook detail screen.



How to search the phonebook → p.114

2 Press [Call] or [●] [Dial].



"0" at the beginning is replaced with the set of "+" and Japan's country code "81". The screen shows a message asking whether you want to make an international call to this number.

Example of calling "090XXXXXXXX"

"090XXXXXXXX" → "+8190XXXXXXXX": The phone number is replaced and displayed as the latter numeric string.

3 Select "Dial".

The international call is made to the phone number displayed in Step 2.

To call the phone number that was displayed before being replaced in Step 2

Select "Original phone No.".

To cancel calling

Select "Cancel".

NOTE

- You can take the same steps as above to make an international call with the redial function, the dialled call record using the phonebook or other records.

Making a call to another country (including Japan) while you are in a foreign country

When you are out of Japan, you can also make international calls to a country other than the country you are currently in.

- You can make the dialing operation easier by setting country names and country codes for the phone number you frequently call in “Int’l dial setting”.
- The country code of “日本” is preset in “Int’l dial setting” at the time of purchase.

To make a call to a country set in “Int’l dial setting”

1 Enter the phone number to call.

To make a call to a general phone, enter the area code and then phone number. For a mobile phone or PHS in Japan, enter the phone number only.

To display the phone number to call that is stored in the phonebook

Searching the phonebook→p.114

2 Open the function menu and select “International Call” and then a country to call.

If the callee is a “WORLD WING” user overseas, select “日本” as the country.

3 Press [ ] or [●] [Dial].

“+” and the “Country Code” are added and the international call is made.
(If the entered phone number starts with “0”, the first 0 will be omitted.)

To make a call to a phone number of a country or region such as Italy or a phone number in a country that is not set in “Int’l dial setting”

- “0” at the beginning of area code may be needed to make a call to a phone number of a country or region such as Italy.

1 On the standby display, enter “+” (press and hold [0わをん+−] for 1 second or more) – Country code – Area code – Local phone number.

When the area code starts with “0”, omit the initial “0” to enter. However, “0” may be needed to make a call to a phone number of a country or region such as Italy.
If the callee is a “WORLD WING” user overseas, select “81” (Japan) as the country code.

2 Press [ ] or [●] [Dial].

The international call is made.

NOTE

- To make an international call out of the country you are staying in (including a call to Japan) by using the “Phone To function” from an i-mode website or mail detail screen, select “International Call” in the “Dialing” screen (p.226), followed by the country name and “Dial”. “+ Country code” is added at the beginning of the original phone number to be dialed. (If the initial digit of the phone number is “0”, the initial “0” is deleted.) However, you cannot place an international call using the “Phone To function” to a country whose country code is not set under “Int’l dial setting”. You cannot place an international call also using the “Phone To function” to phone number of a country or region such as Italy.

Making a call to a phone number within a visited country

Just like in Japan, you can make a domestic call by dialing a general phone or mobile phone number in the visited country.

- If the callee is a “WORLD WING” user overseas, even in the same local area, make the call as an international call to Japan as described in “Making a call to Japan using the phonebook” (p.540) or “Making a call to another country (including Japan) while you are in a foreign country” (p.541).

1 Enter the phone number to call.

To make a call to a general phone, enter the area code and then phone number.

2 Press or [Dial].

The call is made.

If you and the other party both subscribes to carriers that support the FOMA videophone function※1, you can make an “International videophone call” by pressing after performing the international dial setting operation.※2

※1: As of October, 2004, international videophone calls can be made among DoCoMo (Japan), Hutchison3GUK (United Kingdom) and Hutchison3GHK (Hong Kong).

※2: On international videophone call, the image displayed on the other party’s screen may be distorted or the connection may not be established, depending on the other party’s handset.

※1･2: See the DoCoMo’s website for more information.

Setting for making calls easily <Int’l dial setting>

Default setting	Auto assist setting: AUTO Country Code setting: “日本” (Country Code: 81) IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010)

You can change the “AUTO” setting that you used when making a call to Japan using the phonebook or register the country name of the number that you frequently make international calls to.

- “Int’l dial setting” cannot be changed while “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” is set.
- With this function, you can also change the international access code that you use when making an international call from Japan (IDD Prefix setting). →p.70

Setting the Auto assist setting

If “AUTO” is set, when making an international call from abroad to Japan using the phonebook, the first “0” of the phone number is replaced automatically with a set of “+” and Japan’s country code “81”. →p.540

- If “OFF” is set, the “AUTO” setting for making an international call from Japan is also deactivated. →p.70

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Network setting” ▶ “Int’l dial setting”.

2 Select “Auto assist setting”.

3 Select “AUTO”.

To not add “+”

Select “OFF”.

4 Select “日本”.

You can select from among the countries that are registered to “Country Code setting”. The country name setting is active only when making a call overseas using this function.

NOTE

● This function is available when you make a call to a phone number that starts with "0", using the Phonebook in an overseas country. If this condition is satisfied and other country than "日本" is selected in Step 4, an international call is made to the country selected in Step 4 by following the operation in "Making a call to Japan using the phonebook" (p.540). However, you may not use this function when making a call to a country or region such as Italy, because "0" at the beginning is deleted by using this function.

Setting the Country Code

You can register the country code and country name of the phone number you frequently make international calls. You can register up to 3 country codes.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Network setting" ▶ "Int'l dial setting".

2 Select "Country Code setting".

3 Select <Not Stored> and press [Edit].

To edit an entry that is already set
Select an entry that is already set and press [Edit].

To delete a set entry
Highlight the entry to delete and open the function menu to select "Delete this".

To delete all the set entries
Open the function menu and select "Delete all".

4 Enter the country name.

For the country name, you can enter up to 8 full-pitch characters or 16 half-pitch characters.
Entering characters →p.502

5 Enter the country code.

For the country code, you can enter up to 5 digits long.
Country code →p.531

NOTE

● You cannot delete the country code with "Auto assist setting" set to "AUTO". Moreover, you cannot perform "Delete all" when "AUTO" is set to any country code.

Receiving a Call

You can receive a call with the phone number you usually use while you are roaming on an overseas network.

1 When a call comes in, press ☎ or ● [Answer] to answer the call.

For videophone calls
Press 📹 answer with the camera image.
Press ☎ or ● [Answer] to answer with the substitute image.

Receiving a voice call→p.73
Receiving a videophone call→p.91

When someone wants to call you on an overseas network

Making a call from Japan

While traveling, you may want someone in Japan to call you from his/her general or mobile phone. In this case, just have the person call your phone number as if you were in Japan and the call will be made to you.

090-XXXX-XXXX
or
080-XXXX-XXXX

Making a call from another country

For someone in another country to call you, the person needs to specify the "81" country code of Japan, regardless of where you are, in or out of Japan.

IDD Prefix Code※-81 (Japan's country code) -90-XXXX-XXXX
or
80-XXXX-XXXX
(Phone number excluding the first "0")

※If a call is made from a mobile phone, "+" may be dialed instead of the IDD Prefix Code depending on the mobile phone.

Network switch

Setting Network Mode Switchover

Default setting | **Auto**

You can set switchover to the network to be accessed by the FOMA terminal according to the reception condition as follows:

Setting item	Accessible network type				Note
	FOMA	3G	GPRS	GSM	
Auto	○	○	○	○	The FOMA terminal automatically accesses a 3G, GSM or GPRS network while being abroad. The FOMA terminal accesses the FOMA network while in Japan.
3G	○	○	×	×	The FOMA terminal accesses only 3G networks while being abroad. The FOMA terminal accesses the FOMA network while in Japan.
GSM	×	×	○	○	The FOMA terminal accesses only GSM and GPRS networks.

- When you use the FOMA network in Japan, set "Auto" (recommended) or "3G".
- This function's setting cannot be changed during the Self mode.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Network setting” ▶ “Network switch”.

You can obtain the same result by pressing and holding (MULTI) for 1 second or more when the standby display is displayed.

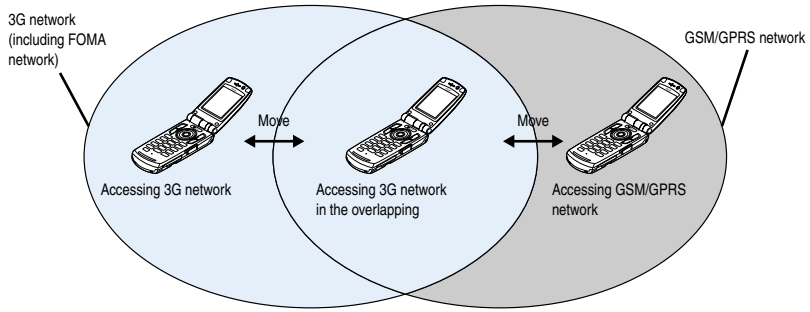
2 Select a setting item.

NOTE

- By changing this function’s setting, the setting in “NW search mode” (below) is also changed to “Auto”.
- By changing this function’s setting, the FOMA terminal newly searches and switches to a network according to the setting that was made. However, network switchover may take a long time or fail depending on radio wave and network conditions.

When you set Network switch to Auto

When this function is set to “Auto”, communication services on 3G networks (including the FOMA network) are prioritized. If you move out of 3G network coverage, the FOMA terminal automatically switches to communication services on GSM/GPRS networks※. Likewise, when you move back within 3G network coverage from GSM/GPRS coverage, the communication services automatically switch back to 3G network communication services※.



※: Searching radio waves may take time during network switching. In this case, “ ” may be displayed.

NW search mode

Setting Network Detection

Default setting	Auto

When the FOMA terminal exits the network it has been on, it automatically searches another available network for roaming on.
You can change the setting to switch the network to be connected manually instead of the automatic search and access, or you can redetect networks to change the current one to another.

- You can preset some carriers in “PLMN setting” (p.547) to be prioritized for access through automatic detection.
- This function may not be settable depending on the radio wave conditions and network status.

Switching the network to be connected manually

● You can deactivate automatic search and access and perform a setting to allow manual network switchover. After this setting is made, network detection is performed. You will then select a network to roam on from the detected networks.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Network setting” ▶ “NW search mode”.

2 Select “Manual”.

The FOMA terminal detects accessible networks automatically and displays them in list form.
When “3G” is set to “Network switch”, only 3G networks are detected. When “GSM” is set, only GSM/GPRS networks are detected.

When “Manual” is already set
The current carrier’s name is displayed here. To change the network, select “Network re-search” and go to Step 3.

To set back to “Auto”
Select “Auto”. If you select “Auto” when “Manual” is set, network detection is performed automatically for switchover.

3 Select a network.

⊗ is displayed for carriers that are not available.

To update the displayed network list
Press [Update].

NOTE

- Even if you set this function to “Manual”, it automatically changes to “Auto” if the “Network switch” (p.544) setting is changed.
- When the “Network switch” (p.544) is set to “Auto”, you cannot set this function to “Manual”.
- When you move out of the coverage of the network you selected using “Manual” setting, “Select net” is displayed on the standby display.
- If you cannot connect to the carrier selected in Step 3, the setting may not work.

Re-searching accessible networks

When network detection is not performed successfully while “Auto” is set to this function, or when you want to switch the current network to another network while “Manual” is set to this function, you can run a search again and switch to another network.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Network setting” ▶ “NW search mode”.

2 Select “Network re-search”.

The network search is newly performed. When “Network switch” is set to “3G”, only 3G networks are detected. When it is set to “GSM”, only GSM/GPRS networks are detected.

When “Auto” is set
The network is switched automatically.

When “Manual” is set
Accessible networks are displayed in list form. Select a network to roam on.

Setting Preferred Networks

The FOMA terminal automatically selects and accesses a network when it goes into international roaming or when it exits any network. You can store networks you want to access more than other networks in your PLMN list and also set priorities to these networks.

Adding a network in your PLMN list

You can select your preferred networks from the network list preset in the FOMA terminal or you can add a new network.

- Up to 20 networks in total can be added in the preferred network list.
- You can set the network type "3G" or "GSM" for each network to be added in the list.

To add a preferred network from the network list preset in FOMA terminal

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Network setting" ▶ "PLMN setting".**

2 **Open the function menu and select "UPLMN by list".**

3 **Select a network to add as a preferred network.**

To search carriers by country name

Press [Search] and select a country name in the country name list displayed.
After pressing [Search], you can enter the country name by pressing [Search] once again.

4 **Confirm the network name and press [Set].**

Name of a country : Displays the county.
Operator name : Displays the carrier.
Operator code : Displays the carrier code.

5 **Set the network type.**

3G : The selected network is set as a 3G network.
GSM : The selected network is set as a GSM network. Set GSM for GPRS networks also.

6 **Press [Finish] and select "YES".**

To add a network continuously

Display the function menu and select an item you want to set.

Add a new network that is not stored in the FOMA terminal

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Network setting" ▶ "PLMN setting".**

2 **Open the function menu and select "UPLMN manual".**

Continued on next page

3 Set each item and press ● [Set].

Set the following items to specify a network:
Country code (MCC) : Set the country code.
Network code (MNC) : Set the network code.

4 Set the network type.

3G : The selected network is set as a 3G network.
GSM : The selected network is set as a GSM network. Set GSM for GPRS networks also.

5 Press [Finish] and select “YES”.

To add a network continuously
Display the function menu and select an item you want to set.

Adding the currently visited network in your PLMN list

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Network setting” ▶ “PLMN setting”.

2 Open the function menu and select “Set VPLMN to UPLMN”.

3 Press [Finish] and select “YES”.

To add a network continuously
Display the function menu and select an item you want to set.

NOTE

- This operation cannot be performed if the current network is already stored in your PLMN list.
- This setting cannot be made in the “Self mode”.

Setting the priority ranking for your PLMN list

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Network setting” ▶ “PLMN setting”.

The preferred network list is displayed in descending order of priority.

To display information of networks stored in the PLMN list
Select a network to display information.
Countries, carriers (operators), network No. (Operator codes) and network types (Access Technology) are displayed.

To delete a network in the list
Highlight the network to delete. Then open the function menu and select “Delete this”.

To delete all networks in the list
Select “Delete all” from the function menu.

On the right of each carrier name, an icon is displayed, indicating its network type as follows:

FOMA : FOMA network (Japan)
3G : 3G network (Overseas)
GSM : GSM/GPRS network (Overseas)

2 **Highlight the network to which you will set a priority ranking and open the function menu to select “Change Priority”.**

3 **Select a priority ranking.**

4 **Press [Finish] and select “YES”.**

To change a priority ranking continuously
Repeat Steps 2 and 3.

NOTE

- The access priority set here may not be implemented when network search is performed by selecting “NW search mode”, depending on the radio wave or network conditions.
- 3G networks are given priority over GSM/GPRS networks for network search by selecting “NW search mode”.

Operator name disp

Setting Whether to Display the Network You Are Roaming In

Default setting	display ON

You can set whether or not to display the currently accessed network name on the standby display during international roaming.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Network setting” ▶ “Operator name disp”.**

2 **Specify the setting.**

To display the network name on the standby display
Select “display ON”.

To not display the network name on the standby display
Select “display OFF”.

NOTE

- This function is active during international roaming only. When you use your FOMA terminal in Japan, the standby display does not show the network name regardless of the setting for this function.

Roaming setting

Setting Operations During International Roaming

Subscription	Unnecessary

Monthly charge	Free

You can set the FOMA terminal’s operations for an incoming voice/videophone call event during international roaming.

- Refer to “国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)” (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only) for more information about network services.

Activating Roaming guidance <Roaming guidance>

You can set the guidance message to be announced to the caller when you have an incoming voice call or videophone call during international roaming.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Roaming setting” ▶ “Roaming guidance”.**

2 **Select “Activate”.**

To stop the roaming guidance
Select “Deactivate”.

To check the setting status
Select “Status request”.

NOTE

- The roaming guidance settings may not be available in some service area.

Setting to not accept incoming calls during international roaming <Call barring>

You can set to not have incoming calls reach the FOMA terminal during international roaming. You can select whether to restrict incoming videophone call calls only or to restrict all incoming events including voice and videophone calls.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “Roaming setting” ▶ “Call barring”.**

2 **Select “Activate BIC-Roam”.**

To deactivate call barring
Select “Deactivate BIC-Roam” and enter the NW security code.

To check the setting status
Select “BIC-Roam status req.”

3 **Select a setting.**

To restrict all incoming calls
Select “All incoming calls”.

To restrict incoming videophone call
Select “Data incoming calls”.

4 **Enter the NW security code.**

NW security code→p.152

International service

Controlling Network Services While Roaming

The voice mail and call forwarding services are partially available from abroad. You can also activate or deactivate roaming guidance from abroad.

- To use Voice mail (Int.) and Call forwarding (Int.), you need to sign up for “Voice mail service” (p.446) and “Call forwarding service” (p.450) in advance. Moreover, you need to set “Remote control” beforehand in Japan. For more information, see “国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)” (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only).
- You cannot control these services from abroad when “圏外” is displayed.
- When you perform this operation from abroad, you will be charged for the country’s international call.
- Refer to “国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)” (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only) for more information about network services.

Performing voice mail service operations from abroad <Voice mail (Int.)>

You can activate/deactivate the voice mail service and replaying voice mail messages.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “International service” ▶ “Voice mail (Int.)”.

2 Select the desired operation.

A message is displayed asking you whether to perform the selected operation.

To activate the voice mail service
Select “Activate voice mail”.

To deactivate the voice mail service
Select “Deactivate voice mail”.

To replay the voice messages
Select “Play messages”.

To change the voice mail service settings
Select “Voice mail settings”.
Under “Voice mail settings”, you can change the absence guide function and the answering message.

3 Select “YES”.

Perform the setting by following the guidance message directions.

Performing call forwarding service operations from abroad <Call forwarding (Int.)>

You can activate/deactivate the call forwarding service.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “International service” ▶ “Call forwarding (Int.)”.

2 Select the desired operation.

A message is displayed asking you whether to perform the selected operation.

To activate the call forwarding service
Select “Activate CF”.

To deactivate the call forwarding service
Select “Deactivate CF”.

3 Select “YES”.

Perform the setting by following the guidance message directions.

Performing roaming guidance operations from abroad <Roaming guidance (Int.)>

You can perform Roaming guidance activation/deactivation. For more information, refer to “国際ローミングサービスマニュアル (FOMA N900iG)” (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only).

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Service ▶ “International service” ▶ “Roaming guidance (Int.)”.

A message is displayed asking you whether to set the “Roaming guidance (Int.)”.

2 Select “YES”.

Perform the setting by following the guidance message directions.

Setting the Answer Option for an Incoming Call During i-mode

Default setting | Answer

You can set whether to answer or reject calls that come in during i-mode.

- When "Answer" is set, if a voice call comes in while you are in i-mode, the screen automatically switches to inform you of the incoming call.
- When "Call rejection" is set, if a voice call comes in while you are in i-mode, the screen does not switch but the call is recorded in the received calls list as a missed call. On the standby display, the "Missed call" desktop icon is displayed.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Call FNC/i-mode".

2 Specify the setting.

To answer calls
Select "Answer".

To not answer calls and record them as missed calls
Select "Call rejection".

NOTE

- When you are in Japan or on a 3G network abroad, the multi access function works regardless of the setting of this function. See p.404 for details.

Setting the Answer Option for an Incoming Call During Packet Communication

Default setting | Answer

You can set whether to answer or reject calls that come in during packet communication.

- When "Answer" is set, if a voice call comes in during packet communication, the screen automatically switches to inform you of the incoming call.
- When "Call rejection" is set, if a voice call comes in during packet communication, the screen does not switch but the call is recorded in the received calls list as a missed call. On the standby display, the "Missed call" desktop icon is displayed.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Call FNC/Packet".

2 Specify the setting.

To answer calls
Select "Answer".

To not answer calls and record them as missed calls
Select "Call rejection".

NOTE

- When you are in Japan or on a 3G network abroad, the multi access function works regardless of the setting of this function. See p.404 for details.

Appendix

Menu List 554
Glossary 556
Overview of the Keypad Character Assignments (5-touch Input) 558
Overview of the Keypad Character Assignments (T9 Input) 558
Overview of the Keypad Character Assignments (2-touch Input) 559
Symbols and Special Characters List 559
Lists of Pictographs and Smiley Face Symbols 561
Lists of Common Phrases 562
Kuten Code List 563
Multi Access Combination Patterns 567
Multi Task Combination Patterns 567
Services Available for the FOMA Terminal 568
Options and Accessories 568
About Data Link Software 569

■ Troubleshooting

Malfunction Checklist 570
List of Error Messages 575
Clearing Settings and Data 582
Warranty and After-Sales Service 583
Updating Software 585

SAR Certification and Other Information 591

Menu List

- Functions with ☆ cannot be used when another function is being activated.
- Functions with ★ cannot be used by your FOMA terminal.
- Functions with ▽ are displayed during calls only.
- LONG indicates that you need to hold down the key on the left of LONG until the screen is changed.

Menu item		Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Mail		–	p.242
i-mode		–	p.198
i-αppli		–	p.310
Settings			
Incoming call	Ring volume	5 0	p.126
	Select ring tone	1 3	p.124
	☆SRS_WOW setting	–	p.127
	Vibrator	5 4	p.127
	Illumination	8 9	p.147
	Manner mode set	2 0	p.133
	Disp. phonebook image	–	p.143
	Answer setting	5 8	p.74
	Fold setting	1 8	p.75
	Call FNC/i-mode	6 9	p.552
	Call FNC/Packet	–	p.552
	☆Mail/Msg. ring time	6 8	p.131
	☆Ringing time	9 0	p.167
	Info notice setting	6 5	p.82
Talk	Noise reduction	7 6	p.72
	Quality alarm	7 5	p.130
	Reconnect control	7 7	p.71
	Illumination in talk	–	p.148
	Select hold tone	–	p.80
Video-phone	Image quality	–	p.95
	Camera image sending	–	p.95
	Select image	–	p.96
	Voice call auto switch	–	p.98
	Remote monitor	–	p.98
	Disp. Setting V-phone	–	p.97
Display	Display setting	5 6	p.140
	Display light	7 0	p.145
	☆Color pattern	8 6	p.146
	☆Image window	9 3	p.143
	☆Font	6 6	p.148
	Desktop icon	6 3	p.135
	☆Select language	1 5	p.56
	☆Original menu	5 2	p.425
	Menu display set	5 7	p.425
	☆Viewer settings	–	p.339
	Automatic display	4 7	p.113
	Icons	3 6	p.35
Call data	Call duration	6 1	p.430
	Reset call duration	6 0	p.430
	Call time display	4 8	p.430

Menu item		Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Clock	Set local time	3 1	p.58
	Clock display	3 9	p.149
	Set remote time	–	p.59
	Alarm setting	–	p.409
Lock/Security	☆All lock	–	p.156
	☆PIM lock	–	p.158
	☆Self mode	–	p.157
	☆Keypad dial lock	–	p.159
	☆Reject unknown	–	p.168
	★FDN setting	–	–
	Call setting w/o ID	1 0	p.166
	Change security code	2 9	p.153
	PIN setting	–	p.153
	☆Secret mode	4 0	p.161
	☆Secret only mode	4 1	p.161
Connection setting	☆Connection timeout	–	p.227
	☆i-mode checking	–	p.295
	☆Host selection	8 1	p.228
	☆SMS center selection	–	p.307
	☆Certificate	–	p.230
i-αppli settings	☆Display software info	–	p.314
	☆α Display light	–	p.318
	☆α Vibrator	–	p.318
	☆α Image window	–	p.318
	☆End stand-by display	–	p.327
External option	Earphone	5 1	p.131
	Automatic answer	9 4	p.436
Network setting	☆Prefix setting	–	p.66
	☆Int'l dial setting	–	pp.69, 542
	NW search mode	–	p.545
	☆PLMN setting	–	p.547
	Operator name disp	–	p.549
	☆Network switch	–	p.544
Other settings	Keypad sound	3 0	p.129
	Charge sound	–	p.130
	Battery level	7 1	p.55
	Side keys guard	* LONG	p.160
	☆Input method	3 5	p.520
	☆Record display set	–	p.160
	Pause dial	8 4	p.65
	☆Subaddress setting	–	p.71
	Neuropointer	–	p.437
	USB mode setting	–	p.393
	☆Reset settings	2 3	p.440

Menu item		Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Other settings	☆Initialize	–	p.582
	☆Software update	–	p.585
Multimedia			
Image		4 6	p.338
i Motion		–	p.349
Melody		1 6	p.365
Chara-den		–	p.359
Accessory			
Camera		–	p.170
Schedule		4 5	p.413
Alarm clock		4 4	p.412
ToDo		9 5	p.421
Text memo		4 2	p.432
Calculator		8 5	p.431
Play/Erase msg.		●	p.85
Record message		5 5	p.83
Voice memo (during standby)		4 3	p.429
▽Voice memo (during a call)		● LONG	p.429
☆Voice announce		9 1	p.128
☆Ir exchange		7 9	p.393
☆UIM operation		–	p.118
Forwarding image		–	p.402
Bar code reader		–	p.193
☆SD-PIM		–	p.385
Dictionary		–	p.434
Network service			
Check messages		2 5	p.448
Notify caller ID		1 7	p.59
Voice mail		–	p.446

Menu item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Call waiting	–	p.448
Call forwarding	–	p.450
Bar nuisance call	–	p.452
Caller ID request	–	p.453
Arrival call act	–	p.455
Set arrival act	–	p.455
Remote control	–	p.456
Dual network	–	p.453
English guidance	–	p.454
International service	–	p.550
Roaming setting	–	p.549
Additional service	–	p.456
Service dial	–	p.454
★Call barrings	–	–
Phonebook		
Add to phonebook	–	p.104
Search phonebook	–	p.114
No. of phonebook	2 2	p.120
Utilities	6 2	p.109
☆Restrictions	1 2	p.164
Group setting	2 6	p.108
Own data		
Own number	0	p.426
Received calls	2 4	p.75
Dialled calls	–	p.75
Mail member	9 7	p.253
Common phrases	3 8	p.514
Own dictionary	8 2	p.518
DL dictionary	–	p.519

Glossary

For the terms used in this manual, refer to the following:

- **3G**
  3G is the generic term for 3rd generation mobile communication systems that comply with the IMT-2000 global standard established by the International Telecommunication Union (ITU). 3G terminals, such as FOMA in Japan, are spreading in use throughout the world.
- **APN**
  Stands for Access Point Name. An APN identifies an Internet service provider or corporate LAN at the connecting end and is represented by a string such as “mopera.ne.jp”.
- **cid**
  A cid is a registration number for an APN preset on a FOMA terminal. A FOMA terminal can store 10 cid from 1 to 10. A cid is equivalent to a memory No. of the Phonebook in the FOMA terminal.
- **DNS**
  Stands for Domain Name System (Service). DNS is a system or service that translates a human-friendly name such as “nttdocomo.co.jp” into a numeric address that can be easily managed on a computer.
- **DPOF**
  Stands for DPOF (Digital Print Order Format). DPOF allows specified information, such as the number of prints to be made of an image, to be recorded on a miniSD memory card.
- **DTMF**
  Standing for Dual Tone Multi Frequency, it is a sound that you hear every time you press a keypad in push phones, etc. It is also called push signal, push sound or tone signal.
  The signal may not be received depending on the device of the other party.
- **GPRS**
  This is the abbreviation of General Packet Radio Service. GPRS is a packet communication service with a maximum communication speed of 115 kbps and is widely used in Europe, China and other countries.
- **GSM**
  This is the abbreviation of Global System for Mobile Communications. GSM is a 2nd generation mobile communication system using a digital method, the mobile communication standard that is unified in Europe and is the most used worldwide.
- **IrDA**
  Stands for Infrared Data Association. IrDA is an international organization that sets and supports standards for infrared data transmission.
- **IrMC**
  Stands for Ir Mobile Communications. IrMC is a standard set by IrDA (Infrared Data Association), which defines a method for exchanging data objects such as the Phonebook, schedule, mail and text memos. It is stipulated that the OBEX standard be used for communication between devices.
- **MCC**
  MCC stands for Mobile Country Code. A 3-digit number is assigned by ITU E.212 in order to identify each country.
- **MNC**
  MNC stands for Mobile Network Code. A 2- to 3- digit number is assigned by ITU E.212 in order to identify a network within the country specified by MCC.
- **PIM**
  Personal Information Manager program such as “Phonebook”, “Schedule”, “Text memo”, “Own number”, “Bookmark” and “Mail”.
- **PIN1 code and PIN2 code**
  The PIN1 code and PIN2 code are 4- to 8-digit numbers (codes) to prevent any unauthorized use of the FOMA card.
  The PIN1 code is a security code to be entered to verify a user when the FOMA terminal is turned on.
  The N900iG does not have functions that require the use of PIN2 code.
- **PUK code**
  An 8-digit number required for canceling the PIN1/PIN2 code lock.

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

- **QoS**
  Stands for Quality of Service and refers to a measure of network service quality. The QoS setting of the FOMA terminal packet communication allows to specify whether to connect at any speed or to only connect at the maximum speed (upload: 64 kbps, download: 384 kbps) (speed varies after connection).
- **TLS/SSL communication**
  TLS stands for Transport Layer Security. SSL stands for Secure Sockets layer. TLS and SSL are methods to perform data communication in a safer way to protect user privacy by using authentication/ encryption technology. On TLS/SSL pages, sending and receiving data is encrypted to prevent eavesdropping, site hijacking※ and alteration during the communication, enabling safer transmission of personal information such as a credit card numbers and addresses.
  ※ Cases such as a third party presenting a fake website pretending to be an authentic one in order to wrongfully obtain a user's information
- **USB storage memory**
  A generic term for portable storage media used by connecting to USB connectors.
  A mobile phone can be connected to a USB connector to use a miniSD memory card as storage memory.
- **W-TCP**
  TCP parameters for leveraging the transmission capabilities of TCP/IP in packet communication on the FOMA network. Making these settings are required for taking full advantage of the communication performance of a FOMA terminal.
- **Rewrite**
  It means that a third party illegally changes the content of information that is exchanged with the server via the Internet.
- **Cache**
  A location in the FOMA terminal where data on Web pages you have displayed are saved temporarily.
- **Byte**
  A unit of the amount of data. A half-pitch character is 1 byte and a full-pitch character is 2 bytes. With a FOMA terminal, the remaining number of characters that can be entered on the character entry screen is displayed in bytes. (However, the numbers of entered characters is displayed in the SMS text entry screen.) “K” (kilo), “M” (mega) and other expressions are also used with byte; 1,024 bytes is equal to 1 KB and 1,024 KB to 1 MB.
- **Administrator privilege**
  Refers to the privilege of accessing all of a Windows 2000 or Windows XP system. For Windows 2000 or Windows XP, users without this privilege have limited access to the system and are not allowed to install drivers.
  This privilege is called “Administrator privilege” on Windows 2000 and “Computer Administrator” or “Administrator privilege” on Windows XP.

Overview of the Keypad Character Assignments (5-touch Input)

Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Katakana input mode	Alphabet input mode	Number input mode
1 あ	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ	?!−/¥&＊()#゛゜ ♥ ☎※1	1
2 ABC か	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc	2
3 DEF さ	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef	3
4 GHI た	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi	4
5 JKL な	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl	5
6 MNO は	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno	6
7 PQRS ま	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs	7
8 TUV や	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv	8
9 WXYZ ら	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz	9
0 わをん+−	わをんーわ	ワヲンーヮ※2	———	0
＊ http://	——— ※3	———	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp ※4 www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp	＊ .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp ※4 www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp
# 絵文字/マナー	゛ ゜ 、。・！？※5	゛ ゜ 、。・！？※5	.@/!?(),−_:'~※6&¥	#.@/!?(),−_:'~※6&¥

※1： Valid only when entering SMS text. Though you cannot enter "Pictograph" when entering SMS text, "♥" and "☎" can be entered. While a symbol is entered as a half-pitch character, "♥" and "☎" are always entered as full-pitch characters.
※2： The lower case character of "ワ" can only be entered in a full-pitch input mode.
※3： Pressing ＊ while you are in "Kanji/hiragana input mode" changes the input mode to "Kuten input mode" (p.517).
※4： Not displayed when the input mode is changed to a full-pitch input mode (Except for "＊" in Number input mode).
※5： "゛" and "゜" are displayed only when you are in "Kanji/hiragana input mode" or "Katakana (full-pitch) input mode", and if "゛" and "゜" can be prefixed to the characters entered. The characters "、", "。", "・", "！" and "？" cannot be used when you enter the reading of words in your own dictionary (p.518) or when you enter the reading of words in the phonebook for the FOMA card (p.106).
※6： Becomes a "~" when you are in "Full-pitch input mode".
: Lowercase characters can be entered in following two ways:
- Enter an uppercase character first and then press ↩ to change it to lowercase.
- Select "Lower case" first from the function menu and then enter the character.

Overview of the Keypad Character Assignments (T9 Input)

Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Katakana input mode
1 あ	あ column、1	ア column、1
2 ABC か	か column、2	カ column、2
3 DEF さ	さ column、3	サ column、3
4 GHI た	た column、4	タ column、4
5 JKL な	な column、5	ナ column、5
6 MNO は	は column、6	ハ column、6
7 PQRS ま	ま column、7	マ column、7
8 TUV や	や column、8	ヤ column、8
9 WXYZ ら	ら column、9	ラ column、9
0 わをん+−	わをんゎ、0	ワヲンヮ※3ー、0
# 絵文字/マナー	※1、※2	※1、※2

- Refer to the Keypad Character Assignments "5-touch input (Mode 1)" for key assignment for "Alphabet input mode" and "Number input mode". →above
- Numbers are not displayed as candidates when entering a reading during an addition to a FOMA card phonebook or on "Own dictionary".

※1： Candidates with "゛" and "゜" (dakuten and handakuten) are switched during reading entry.
※2： After readings or characters have been confirmed, "゛", "゜", "、", "。", "・", "!" and "?" are displayed in the same way as "5-touch (Mode 1)". "゛" and "゜" ("dakuten" and "handakuten") are displayed only when the characters entered can take a "゛" and "゜".
※3： The lower case character of "ワ" can only be entered in full-pitch input mode.

Overview of the Keypad Character Assignments (2-touch Input)

■ Full-pitch input mode

Key		2nd key input									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key input	1	あ ぁ	い ぃ	う ぅ	え ぇ	お ぉ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	た	ち	つ っ	て	と	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z z	?	!	—	／
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		※2 ☎	
	8	や ゃ	（	ゆ ゅ	）	よ ょ	＊	＃		※2 ♥	※1
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ を	ん	※3 ゛ 、	※3 ゜ 。		6	7	8	9	0

■ Half-pitch input mode

Key		2nd key input									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key input	1	ｱ ｧ	ｲ ｨ	ｳ ｩ	ｴ ｪ	ｵ ｫ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ ｯ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z z	?	!	-	/
	7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		※2 ☎	
	8	ﾔ ｬ	（	ﾕ ｭ	）	ﾖ ｮ	＊	＃		※2 ♥	※1
	9	ﾗ @	ﾘ /	ﾙ -	ﾚ _	ﾛ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @docomo. ne.jp	5
	0	ﾜ ｰ	ｦ '	ﾝ	゛ ,	゜ .	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

・ A reading entered during an addition to FOMA card phonebook is in Katakana even in a full-pitch input mode.

※1： Press 8 TUV 0 わ゛゜ to switch between Uppercase input mode (top row) and Lowercase input mode (bottom row). You can also enter the character in uppercase first and then press ☎ to change it to lowercase.

※2： Available only when it is possible to store “Pictograph” such as “Text memo”, “Common phrases”. Note also that these characters are always entered as full-pitch characters. You cannot enter “Pictograph” while you are entering a body text in SMS. However, you can enter “☎” and “♥”.

※3： “゛” and “゜” are displayed only when you are in a full-pitch input mode and the characters entered can take a “゛” and “゜”. Any attempt to enter these characters at other times will result in a space being entered instead.

： A space is entered.

Symbols and Special Characters List

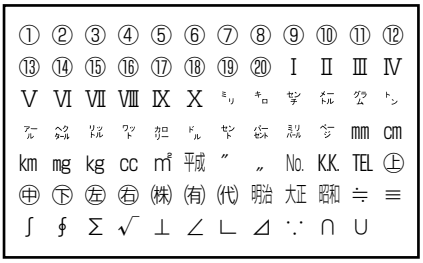
■ Full-pitch Symbols (Full pitch 1)

、 。 , . ・ : ; ? ! ゛ ゜ ´
｀ ¨ ^ ￣ ＿ ヽ ヾ ゝ ゞ 〃 仝 々
〆 ○ ― ‐ - ／ ＼ ～ ∥ ｜ … ‥
‘ ’ “ ” （ ） 〔 〕 ［ ］ ｛ ｝
〈 〉 《 》 「 」 『 』 【 】 ＋ －
± × ÷ ＝ ≠ ＜ ＞ ≦ ≧ ∞ ∴ ♂
♀ ° ′ ″ ℃ ￥ ＄ ¢ £ ％ ＃ ＆
＊ ＠ § ☆ ★ ○ ● ◎ ◇ ◆ □ ■
△ ▲ ▽ ▼ ※ 〒 → ← ↑ ↓ ＝ ∈
∋ ⊆ ⊇ ⊂ ⊃ ∪ ∩ ∧ ∨ ￢ ⇒ ⇔
∀ ∃ ∠ ⊥ ⌒ ∂ ∇ ≡ ≒ ≪ ≫ √
∽ ∝ ∵ ∫ ∬ Å ‰ ♯ ♭ ♪ † ‡
¶ ○ わ ゐ ゑ ワ ヰ ヱ ヴ ヵ ヶ A

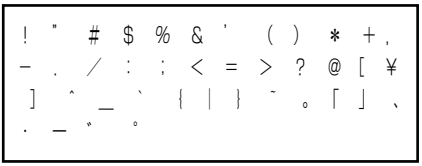
Β Γ Δ Ε Ζ Η Θ Ι Κ Λ Μ Ν
Ξ Ο Π Ρ Σ Τ ϒ Φ Χ Ψ Ω α
β γ δ ε ζ η θ ι κ λ μ ν
ξ ο π ρ σ τ υ φ χ ψ ω А
Б В Г Д Е Ё Ж З И Й К Л
М Н О П Р С Т У Ф Х Ц Ч
Ш Щ Ъ Ы Ь Э Ю Я а б в г
д е ё ж з и й к л м н о
п р с т у ф х ц ч ш щ ъ
ы ь э ю я — ｜ ┌ ┐ ┘ └ ├
┬ ┤ ┴ ┼ ━ ┃ ┏ ┓ ┛ ┗ ┣ ┳
┫ ┻ ╋ ┠ ┯ ┨ ┷ ┿ ┝ ┰ ┥ ┸
╂

Continued on next page

■ **Special Symbols (Full pitch 2)**



■ **Half-pitch Symbols (Half pitch)**



NOTE

● If you send “Full pitch 2” symbols to a mobile phone that is not subscribed to the i-mode mail service or to a PC, they may not be displayed properly.

■ **Symbols in Japanese Conversion**

You can enter symbols by entering “きごう” while you are in Kanji/hiragana input mode, and then converting the text to display the symbol candidates. You can also enter the name of a symbol in hiragana as follows, and then convert the text into the desired symbol.

Symbol name (entering characters)	Symbol
あっと、あっとまーく	@
いこーる	=
えん	¥
おす	↑
おなじ	々
おなじく	〃
おんぷ	♪
かける	×
かっこ	() 〔〕 ［］ ｛｝ ◇ 《》 「」『』 【】 “ ” “” () ◊ ［］ ｛｝ 〔〕
から	～
こめ	※
ころん	:
こんま	,
さんかく	△▲▽▼

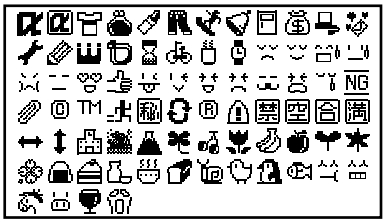
Symbol name (entering characters)	Symbol
しゃせん	／＼
しかく	□■◇◆
たす	＋
どう	ヽヾゝゞ〃々
ぱーせんと	%
ひく	－
ひしがた	◇◆
ほし	☆★
まる	○●◎
むげん	∞
めす	♀
やじるし	→←↑↓
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	√
わる	÷

Lists of Pictographs and Smiley Face Symbols

■ List of Pictographs 1



■ List of Pictographs 2



NOTE

● When you use a pictograph or symbol in the text body of a mail and send it to a mobile phone or PC that does not support such pictograph and symbol, it may not be displayed correctly on the recipient terminal. Even though the recipient side is an i-mode terminal, pictographs may not be displayed correctly unless that terminal supports new pictographs.

■ Smiley Face Symbols

You can enter smiley face symbols by entering "かお" or "かおもじ" while you are in Kanji/hiragana input mode, and then converting the text to display the different smiley face symbol candidates. You can also enter the meaning of a smiley face symbol in hiragana as follows, and then convert the text into the desired smiley face symbol.

Entering characters(Meanings)	Face symbol
ありがと/ありがとう(Thanks!)	m(_ _)m
ばんざい(Hurrah!)	＼(^O^)／
わーい(Wow!)	(^O^)
おーい(Hey!)	(^O^)／
ぶい(Vvvv!)	(^^)v
ぎゃはは(Ha-ha!)	(^Q^)／
あは(Ah ha!)	(o^o^o)
にこ(Smile!)	(^-^)
にこ(Smile! smile)	(*^_^*)
ちゅ(Kiss!)	(^3^)／
ちゅ(Kiss! Kiss!)	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!
わくわく(I'm excited!)	o(^-^)o
ういんく(Wink)	(^_-)
さよなら(Good-bye!)	(^_^)／
がんば(Cheer up!)	p(^^)q
ね(Isn't it?)	(^.^)b
ぽりぽり(Scratch, scratch!)	(^^ゞ
ひやあせ(Sweat!)	(^o^;
あせあせ(Sweat! Sweat!)	(;^_^A
びくっ(Twitch!)	(*_*)
どき(Shocked!)	(◎-◎;)
え(What?)	(@_@;)
めがてん(W*H*A*T?)	(・・;)
はてな(Wait a minute!)	(・・?)
きらーん(Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆。☆)

Entering characters(Meanings)	Face symbol
しくしく(Sob, sob)	(T_T)
さよなら(Good-bye!)	(T_T)／
いたた(Ouch!)	(>_<)
えーん(Crying)	(;_;)
なぜ(Why?)	(?_?)
がーん(Shocked!)	(￣□￣;)!!
えへん(Ahem!)	(￣^￣)
む(Sullen)	(ー_ーメ)
いかり(Angry)	(^^)
むか(Offended)	(;-_-+
こそこそ(Whisper)	(・_・|
じーっ(Gaze)	(-_-)
きこえない(Not heard)	|(-_-)|
こまったもんだ(My goodness!)	(￣～￣)ξ
ぶた一(Pig)	)^o^(
こあら(Koala)	(ー Q ー)
いっぷく(Take a break)	(^!^)y~
いっぷく(Take a break)	(^.^)y-~~~
ほし(Star)	☆彡
ねてる(Zzzz...)	(-_-)zz
ねむい(I'm sleepy)	＼(^o^)／
めも(Memo)	φ(..)
うん(Yeah)	(^_^)(。_。)
かんぱい(Cheers!)	(^^)／▽☆▽＼(^^)
ども(Well, well)	＼(^_^)(^_^)／

Lists of Common Phrases

■ Folder 1 (preset common phrases)

No	Messages
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

■ Folder 2 (preset common phrases)

No	Messages
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

Kuten Code List

Triple-digit numbers on the left side of each column indicate the first to third digit of Kuten codes. The numbers on top of each column indicate the fourth digit of Kuten codes.
<Example : To enter "仝">
Enter "012" in the first to third digit of Kuten codes and then enter "4" in the fourth digit of Kuten codes.

● The display on the screen may differ from the characters and symbols on the Kuten code list.

Continued on next page

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
245										雇
246										後
247										功
248										工
249										抗
250										構
251										糠
252										膏
253										鉱
254										劫
255										刻
256										甑
257										懇
258										恨
259										魂
260										婚
261										艮
										さ
261										些
262										砂
263										最
264										済
265										裁
266										阪
267										削
268										桜
269										錯
270										雑
271										参
272										纂
273										阜
273										山
274										蚕
275										し
276										伺
277										姿
278										勿
279										仕
280										始
281										支
282										祉
283										詩
284										以
285										士
286										指
287										獅
288										詞
289										事
290										持
291										治
292										滋
293										蒔
294										零
295										疾
296										縞
297										者
298										灼
299										取
300										酒
301										就
302										習
303										西
304										柔
305										淑
306										峻
307										殉
308										処
309										署
310										除
311										匠
312										振
313										抄
314										樟
315										省

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
										す
315										諏
316										水
317										随
318										杉
319										筒
320										推
										錘
										据
										雛
										せ
320										制
321										棲
322										製
323										税
324										積
325										拙
326										舌
327										戦
328										煎
329										そ
330										践
331										然
332										措
										そ
332										曾
333										素
334										叢
335										双
336										惣
337										槍
338										綜
339										聡
340										遭
341										即
342										族
										た
343										打
344										耐
345										胎
346										代
347										啄
348										濁
349										迚
350										坦
351										単
352										断
353										弟
354										地
										ち
354										恥
355										着
356										衷
357										貯
358										挑
359										蝶
360										捗
361										塚
362										漬
363										つ
363										椎
364										佃
365										墜
366										鎚
										て
366										偵
367										弟
368										締
369										滴
370										迭
371										貼
372										甜
373										と
373										吐
374										菟
375										灯
376										塔

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377										棟
378										等
379										透
380										導
381										峠
382										毒
383										苫
384										遁
385										豚
386										な
386										雍
387										楠
388										に
388										肉
389										匂
390										認
										ぬ〜の
390										禰
391										能
392										念
393										悩
										は
394										杷
395										配
396										肥
397										尾
398										備
399										膝
400										肌
401										判
402										伴
403										卑
404										蛮
405										ひ
405										匪
406										披
407										疲
408										卓
409										弾
410										彦
411										髭
412										肘
413										ふ
414										埠
415										付
415										不
416										怖
417										舞
418										副
419										覆
420										腹
421										物
422										へ
422										塀
423										柄
424										碧
425										平
426										壁
426										ほ
427										報
428										宝
429										豊
430										抱
431										法
432										褒
433										某
434										防
435										睦
436										翻

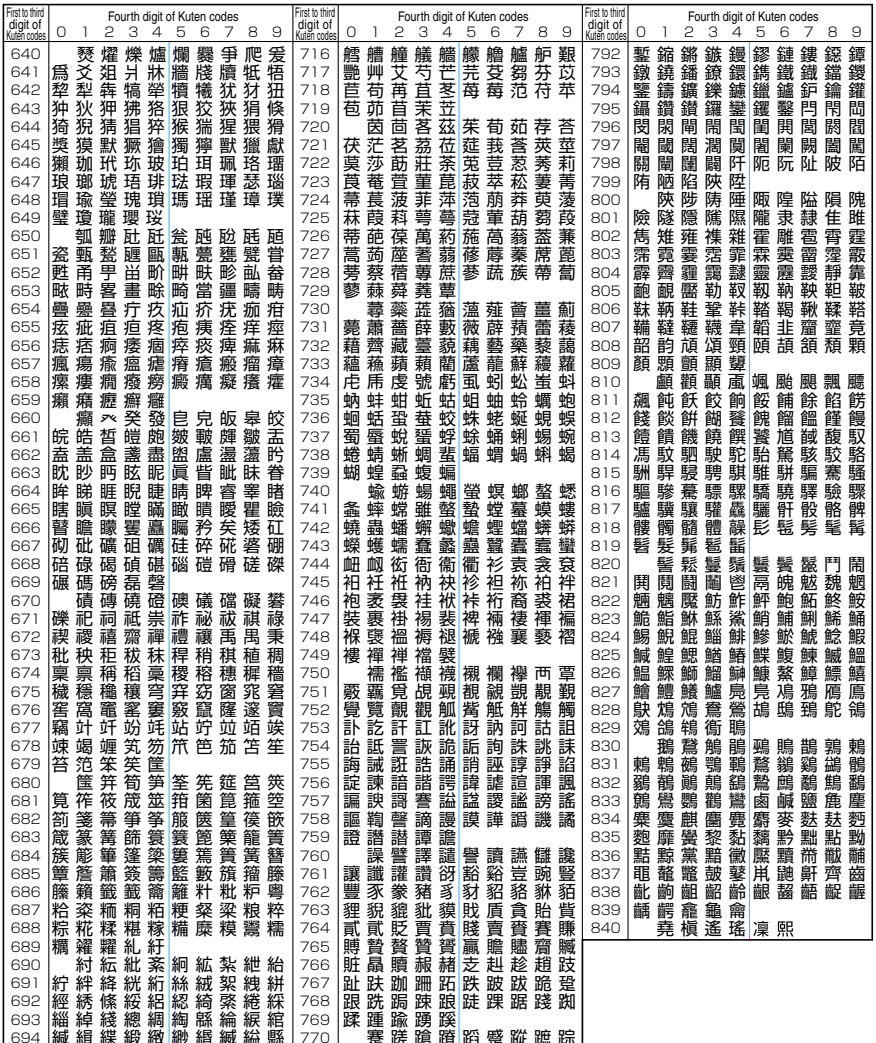
First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
437										棚
438										傲
439										庖
440										蓬
441										乏
442										暴
443										貿
444										朴
445										弁
446										毎
447										幌
448										微
449										菱
450										紐
451										妻
452										蒜
453										頻
454										布
455										撫
456										路
457										仏
458										奮
459										焚
460										払
461										扮
462										風
463										払
464										憤
465										蛮
466										弁
467										変
468										娩
469										偏
470										兵
471										米
472										併
473										陛
474										閉
475										篦
476										勉
477										便
478										蔑
479										捕
480										暮
481										宝
482										縫
483										鋒
484										帽
485										肪
486										僕
487										没
488										奔

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	ま									
436			摩	槙	幕	抹		魔	膜	末
437	妹	柾	侭	埋	鮪	迄	昧	鱒	繭	
438			哩	侯	慢	又	満			
439								麻	枕	沫
440									漫	
	み									
440										密
441				味	稔		未	魅	妙	
	蜜		湊		蓑					
	む									
441										務
442	夢		無		牟		矛	霧	鵡	
	め									
442										冥
443										滅
444	名		免		命	棉		明	綿	盟
								迷	面	緬
	も									
444										妄
445										黙
446	孟	目	紋		毛	牽	門			
447								猛	勿	匁
								盲	餅	
	や									
447										弥
448					也	約		冶	薬	
449	矢	鑓			厄					
	ゆ									
449										幽
450				愉	諭					
451			悠	裕						
452										
	よ									
452										予
453										庸
454										用
455										陽
456										
	ら									
456										羅
457										酪
458										
	り									
458										吏
459										立
460										粒
461										僚
462										稜
463										倫
464										麟
465										
	る～れ									
466										励
467										麗
468										憐
469										
470										
	ろ									
470										路
471										漏
472										禄
473										
	わ									
473										惑
474										湾
475										
476										
477										
478										
479										

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
488	偃	傀	儡	兮	冂	冰	凰	剞	剰	辨
489				偕	偃	傳	僉	儼	凩	剋
490				會	傳	僂	僉	儼	兇	冦
491				僉	僂	僵	僵	凰	冲	冤
492									兇	冐
493									冏	冢
494										
495										
496										
497										
498										
499										
500										
501										
502										
503										
504										
505										
506										
507										
508										
509										
510										
511										
512										
513										
514										
515										
516										
517										
518										
519										
520										
521										
522										
523										
524										
525										
526										
527										
528										
529										
530										
531										
532										
533										
534										
535										
536										
537										
538										
539										
540										
541										
542										
543										
544										
545										
546										
547										
548										
549										
550										
551										
552										
553										
554										
555										
556										
557										
558										
559										
560										
561										
562										
563										

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
564	儉	僥	僊	僉	僂	僵	凱	凩	凭	凾
565										
566										
567										
568										
569										
570										
571										
572										
573										
574										
575										
576										
577										
578										
579										
580										
581										
582										
583										
584										
585										
586										
587										
588										
589										
590										
591										
592										
593										
594										
595										
596										
597										
598										
599										
600										
601										
602										
603										
604										
605										
606										
607										
608										
609										
610										
611										
612										
613										
614										
615										
616										
617										
618										
619										
620										
621										
622										
623										
624										
625										
626										
627										
628										
629										
630										
631										
632										
633										
634										
635										
636										
637										
638										
639										

Continued on next page



First to third digit of Kuten codes
Fourth digit of Kuten codes
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
640 爰 悟 狃 候 猾 獻 瑙 璞
641 爲 挈 狆 狛 狽 狄 狽 猥 獏 瑠 璢
642 爭 爛 爵 狼 猴 獨 琥 琉 瑛 瑪 瑶
643 父 犁 狄 猜 默 獗 獄 琳 琢 琥 瑰 瑣
644 爻 犂 狆 猫 獗 猛 猥 琉 琅 瑚 瑛 瑳
645 爼 犇 狛 猶 獗 猟 琉 琅 瑚 瑛 瑳
646 爽 犠 犧 狡 猟 琉 琅 瑚 瑛 瑳
647 爾 犧 狡 猟 琉 琅 瑚 瑛 瑳
648 壁 壓 瓢 甑 甦 甥 畳 畷 疂 痘 痲 癒
649 塵 塾 塹 墹 墺 墻 墾 壁 壓 壜 壟 壥
650 瓠 瓢 瓩 甑 甦 甥 畳 畷 疂 痘 痲 癒
651 瓷 甑 甬 時 畳 畷 疂 痘 痲 癒 癨
652 甑 畳 疂 痘 痲 癒 癨 癪 癬 癩 癪
653 疂 痘 痲 癒 癨 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩
654 痲 癒 癨 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬
655 癒 癨 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩
656 癨 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪
657 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬
658 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩
659 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪 癬 癩 癪
660 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
661 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
662 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
663 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
664 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
665 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
666 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
667 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
668 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
669 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
670 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
671 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
672 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
673 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
674 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
675 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
676 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
677 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
678 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
679 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
680 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
681 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
682 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
683 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
684 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
685 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
686 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
687 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
688 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
689 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
690 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
691 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
692 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
693 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
694 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
695 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
696 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
697 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
698 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
699 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
700 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
701 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
702 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
703 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
704 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
705 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
706 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
707 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
708 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
709 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
710 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
711 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
712 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
713 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
714 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
715 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
716 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
717 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
718 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
719 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
720 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
721 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
722 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
723 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
724 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
725 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
726 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
727 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
728 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
729 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
730 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
731 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
732 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
733 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
734 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
735 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
736 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
737 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
738 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
739 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
740 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
741 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
742 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
743 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
744 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
745 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
746 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
747 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
748 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
749 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
750 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
751 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
752 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
753 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
754 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
755 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
756 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
757 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
758 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
759 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
760 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
761 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
762 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
763 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
764 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
765 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
766 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
767 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
768 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
769 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
770 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
771 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
772 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
773 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
774 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
775 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
776 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
777 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
778 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
779 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
780 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
781 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
782 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
783 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
784 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
785 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
786 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
787 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
788 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
789 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
790 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
791 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
792 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
793 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
794 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
795 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
796 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
797 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
798 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
799 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
800 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
801 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
802 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
803 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
804 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
805 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
806 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
807 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
808 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
809 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
810 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
811 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
812 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
813 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
814 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
815 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
816 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
817 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
818 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
819 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
820 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
821 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
822 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
823 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
824 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
825 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
826 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
827 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
828 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
829 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
830 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
831 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
832 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
833 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
834 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
835 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
836 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
837 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹
838 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷
839 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸
840 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹 皸 皷 皹

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Major multi access combination patterns are shown below.

Current communication status \ Communication newly started	Make/Receive a voice call	Make/Receive a videophone call	Use i-mode	Use i-αppli	Send/ Receive i-mode mail	Packet communication	Send/ Receive SMS
During a voice call	×※1	×	○	×	○	○	○
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×※4	×	△※2
During i-mode	○	△※3	—	—	○	×	○
During packet communication via PC	○	×	×	△※5	×	—	○

○ : Can be activated. × : Cannot be activated.
△ : Can be activated depending on situation. — : Functionally incompatible.

※1 : If you have subscribed to a network service such as the "Call waiting" service, multi access is available depending on combination.
※2 : SMS cannot be sent.
※3 : Videophone calls cannot be received.
※4 : During videophone calls, i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free are not received, and are stored in the i-mode center instead. You can receive those stored i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free by "Check new message" after the videophone call ends.
※5 : The i-αppli which needs communication cannot be activated.

Multi Task Combination Patterns

Major multi task combination patterns are shown below.

Current status \ Function to use	Mail	i-mode menu	i-αppli	Settings	Multimedia	Accessory	Network service	Phonebook	Own data	Original menu
During starting mail group	○※1	○	○	○※2	○	○※4	○	○※8	○	○
During starting i-mode group	○	×	×	○※2	○	○※4	○	○※8	○	○
During starting setting group	○	○	○	×	○	○※4	×	○※8	○	○
During starting tool group	○	○	○	○※2	×	×	○	×	×	○
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×※5	×	×	×	×
During a voice call	○	○	×	×※3	×	×※6	○※7	○※8	○※9	○
During i-mode communication	○	△	△	○※2	○	○※4	○	○※8	○	○
During packet communication via PC	○	○	○	○※2	○	○※4	○	○※8	○	○

○ : Can be activated. × : Cannot be activated. △ : Cannot be activated simultaneously.

※1 : "Compose message" and "Compose SMS" are unavailable simultaneously.
※2 : Unavailable depending on a function.
※3 : Only "Set local time", "Keypad sound" and "Pause dial" are available.
※4 : "Voice announce", "Ir exchange" , "UIM operation" and "SD-PIM" are unavailable.
※5 : Only "Voice memo (during a call)" is available. (Hold down ▼ [Memo/Check] for 1 second or more.)
※6 : Only "Camera", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Text memo", "Calculator", "Voice memo (during a call)", "Bar code reader" and "Dictionary" are available. However, "Bar code reader" can display the list of character recognition data and their details, but cannot scan new characters. Moreover, only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available for "Camera".
※7 : "Voice mail" cannot be played. "Voice mail" and "Additional service" cannot be set for special numbers.
※8 : "Restrictions" is unavailable.
※9 : "Common phrases", "Own dictionary" and "DL dictionary" are unavailable.

●When using the following functions, you cannot use other functions:
- Videophone
- Downloading an i-αppli software
- Ir exchange
- Exporting / importing data using a miniSD memory card
- UIM operation
- Camera (Mega pixel mode and Long duration mode)
- Editing movies/i-motion
- Data transmission with cable connection
- Updating software

●Some functions cannot be operated while other functions are started.

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Service		Phone number
Collect call (calls charged to the receiver)		(No area code) 106
Directory information for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (charged) (Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given.)		(No area code) 104
Telegram (charged)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (charged)		(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (charged)		Area code of an area you want to know - 177
Emergency call to the police		(No area code) 110
Emergency call for a fire engine or an ambulance		(No area code) 119
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents		(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (charged)		(No area code) 171

NOTE

- When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)). (As of October, 2004)
- When you use the Directory Information Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with sight or upper-limb handicaps. For details, call 116 from a general phone.(As of October, 2004)
- When you call 110 (police), 119 (fire or ambulance) or 118 (emergency number for maritime accidents) from the FOMA terminal, the police or the fire department cannot detect your location and may need to call you back for confirmation purposes. You should tell them that you are making a call from a mobile phone and provide your phone number and exact current location. You should also take care to stay in the same place during the call so that the call is not disconnected. Do not turn the FOMA terminal off for at least 10 minutes after the call so that you can receive calls.
- Depending on your location, there is a possibility that you may not be connected to the police or the fire department for the area you are in. If this happens, call from the nearest pay phone or general phone.
- If you use the “Call Forwarding Service” or “Voice Warp Service” for your general phone and specify your mobile phone number as the forwarding destination, callers may hear a ring tone even when your mobile phone is busy, outside the service area, or turned off, depending on your settings to general/mobile phone.
- Note that 116 (NTT Sales counter), Dial Q2, Message Dial and credit card calls are not available. (Credit card calls can be made from general phones or pay phones to the FOMA terminal.)

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories, your FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet both your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available depending on the area you are in. For more information, contact a DoCoMo service counter or a retail outlet.
For details of an option or accessory, refer to User’s Manual of each device.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001/P002※1
- Stereo Earphone Set P001※1
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- FOMA USB Cable
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01※2
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use※3
- Desktop Holder N05
- Battery Pack N07
- Back Cover N04

※1: To connect to FOMA N900iG, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is necessary.
※2: For use in Japan
※3: For use both in Japan and overseas

About Data Link Software

The “FOMA N900iG Data Link Software” enables you to transfer data such as the phonebooks, mails, melodies, still pictures, movies or i-motion between the FOMA terminal and PC connected.
You can download and use “FOMA N900iG Data Link Software” from NEC’s internet homepage “NEC WaiWai Mobile”.

- NEC WaiWai Mobile (Japanese only)
  http://www.n-keitai.com/

> For details about the downloading methods, transferable data, operation environment and operation procedures and restrictions, check the above website or the Help page of the Data link software.

(You cannot download it using the internet function of the FOMA terminal. Use a PC to download. You can use it for free of charge. You will be separately charged communication fees when downloaded.)

- Setting environment and note
  A “FOMA USB Cable (optional)” is required to connect with a PC. You cannot use it for infrared exchange. For other operating environment, refer to “Introduction to software” [operating environment] on the download page.
  Since the Data Link Software uses OBEX (Object Exchange) for data transfer, refer to “Data Transfer with Infrared Exchange/Cable Connection” (p.393) as well.
  You cannot transfer information downloaded using i-mode/i-αppli to anywhere other than the FOMA terminal even using the Data Link Software according to the Copy Right Laws. You cannot transfer data prohibited to be output outside the FOMA terminal, either.

■Supported OS

Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000 and Windows XP (Japanese-language versions)
※ PC/AT compatible machines that support the above OSs

■Before using the FOMA terminal

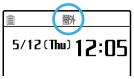
- NEC Corporation makes no guarantees whatsoever to the user regarding the operation, adequateness for the user's intended purposes, accuracy and reliability of its licensed programs, nor accepts any defect liability for such programs. Any problems that may arise in relation to licensed programs are to be dealt at the user's own responsibility and expense.
- NEC Corporation shall not be held liable in any form for any lost earnings, damages caused by extraordinary circumstances (including cases where NEC corporation has or might have predicted such damages), and damages based on the user's own liability for damages vis-à-vis third parties. Users shall not make any claims for damages against NEC Corporation.

Inquiries about Data Link Software
NEC (NEC Mobile Terminals Sales Promotion Division)
0120-102-001 **(Japanese only)**
Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

Malfunction Checklist

If you have a problem during the operation of your terminal, see the following list:

● For problems overseas, see p.574.

Problem	Points to check	See page
The FOMA terminal does not turn on (The FOMA terminal cannot be used).	● Is the battery pack properly attached? ● Has the battery pack run out?	p.49 p.55
Nothing responds by pressing any key.	● Turn off the power, then back on.	p.57
The animation similar to the one shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds.	● The battery pack has run out. Charge the battery pack. 	p.50
The “ ” icon appears and I hear a busy tone.	● Are you outside the service area or in a location with poor radio wave reception? 	p.57
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys.	● Is Keypad dial lock set? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is Restrict dialing set?	p.159 p.157 p.164
I dialed a number, but all I hear is a busy tone.	● Did you start dialing without waiting for the dial tone first? ● Did you dial the area code? ● Is the “ ” icon displayed? ● Is “Please wait” displayed?	p.62 p.62 p.57 p.62
I cannot receive calls. The FOMA terminal does not ring, but I see new records in Received calls.	● Are any of the following functions set? In Restrictions · Call rejection · Call acceptation · Call forwarding · Voice mail In Ringing time · Set mute seconds · Missed calls display Reject unknown In Call setting w/o ID · Not supported: Reject · Payphone: Reject · User unset: Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal set to Driving mode? ● Is All lock set? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is the start time of voice mail or call forwarding service set to “0”? ● Is Caller ID request set to Activate? ● Is mova valid with the Dual network service? ● You may have set the Ring volume to “Silent”.	p.164 p.167 p.168 p.166 p.132 p.80 p.156 p.157 pp.446, 450 p.453 p.453 p.126
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sound when a call comes.	● Is “Set mute seconds” of “Ringing time” set to longer time (such as 99 seconds)? Set “Set mute seconds” to shorter time.	p.167
The records of Dialled calls/Received calls, Redial, Received address /Sent address disappear automatically.	● Is “Keypad dial lock” set? ● Is “PIM lock” set?	p.159 p.158
The Neuropointer does not move quickly.	● Adjust the slide setting.	p.439
A different ring tone sounds from what is set up when you receive a call.	● If incoming call settings of each function overlap, a ring tone sounds in the following priority. ① has the highest priority. ① The ring tone of the Utilities ② The ring tone of the Group Utilities ③ The Select ring tone ● Is another FOMA card inserted?	pp.109, 124 p.48

Problem	Points to check	See page
A different ring tone sounds from what is set up when you receive mail.	● If incoming call settings of each function overlap, it will operate in the following priorities. ① has the highest priority. ① The mail ring tone of the Utilities ② The mail ring tone of the Group Utilities ③ The mail of Select ring tone	pp.109, 124
	● Is another FOMA card inserted?	p.48
A different image is displayed from what is set up when you receive a call.	● If incoming call settings of each function overlap, it will operate in the following priorities. ① has the highest priority. However, if an i-motion operates as a ring tone, the i-motion will appear. ① The i-motion set for the phonebook registration image ② The image of the Utilities ③ The image of the Group Utilities ④ The image set for the phonebook registration image ⑤ The Display setting	pp.104, 109, 124 140 and 143
	● Is another FOMA card inserted?	p.48
A different incoming call lamp by the color or flashing pattern from what is set up glows when you receive a call.	● If incoming call illumination settings of each function overlap, it will operate in the following priorities. ① has the highest priority. ① The illumination settings of the Utilities ② The illumination settings of the Group Utilities ③ The Illumination	pp.109, 147
i-mode, i-mode mail or i-αppli cannot be used.	● Is the PIM lock set?	p.158
i-mode, i-mode mail and i-αppli are not accessible.	● If you have not set “Host selection” to “i-mode”, set it to “i-mode” to use the i-mode.	p.228
	● If you started subscribing to the i-mode Service after purchasing the terminal, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	—
Even if mail has been received, no incoming call notification operation (incoming call ring time, vibrator, incoming call lamp) is performed.	● Haven't you set “Mail/Msg. ring time” to “OFF”?	p.131
	● Is “Receiving display” set to “Operation preferred”?	p.296
Sent mail does not remain in the Outbox.	● Haven't you set “All sort” to the folder of a mail-connected i-αppli such as “Dimo 絵文字メール(Dimo i-pictograph mail)”? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-αppli and then select “Open folder” from the function menu to confirm it.	p.291
Received mail does not remain in the Inbox and “ ” does not disappear.	● Doesn't “ ” appear on the folder of a mail-connected i-αppli such as “Dimo 絵文字メール(Dimo i-pictograph mail)” in the Inbox, or haven't you set “All sort” to the folder of a mail-connected i-αppli? Highlight the relevant folder of mail-connected i-αppli and then select “Open folder” from the function menu to confirm.	pp.278, 291
The ring tone I hear when I receive mail is not the tone I set for mail.	● If a distinctive mail ring tone is set for the mail address, that ring tone sounds instead. ● If a distinctive ring tone is set for the group, that ring tone sounds instead. ● If a distinctive ring tone is set for the mail address and the group, the ring tone set to the mail address has the priority. ● If you received the multiple mails and the latest one has the ring tone set to its mail address, that ring tone of the latest has the priority.	p.109
	● If the sender's mail address is in the “(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp” format, store only that phone number as mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address. ● Is the sender's mail address (the mail address shown in the received mail details screen) stored in the Phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address?	pp.104, 109
	● If you receive SMS, a distinctive ring tone set for the phone number in the Phonebook sounds.	—
	● Is another FOMA card inserted?	p.48

Continued on next page

Problem	Points to check	See page
When illumination flashes for incoming mail, the color is not the color I specified.	● If a distinctive mail illumination is set for the mail address, that illumination flashes. ● If a distinctive mail illumination is set for the group, that illumination flashes. ● If distinctive mail illumination is set for the mail address and the group, the illumination set to the mail address flashes. ● If you have received multiple mails and a distinctive mail illumination was set for the last mail to be downloaded, the illumination for that mail address flashes.	p.109
	● If the sender's mail address is in the "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp" format, store only that phone number as the mail address and set a distinctive mail illumination for that mail address. ● Is the sender's mail address (the mail address shown in the received mail details screen) stored in the Phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive mail illumination for that mail address?	pp.104, 109
	● If you receive SMS, a distinctive illumination set for the phone number in the Phonebook flashes.	—
The mail ring tone sounds but no mail is received.	● Is "Notify tone message" set? The mail ring tone sounds to notify that the number of voice mails increases 1 or more additional voice mails were recorded while you were outside the service area or the FOMA terminal was powered off, and then you come in the service area again or turn on the FOMA terminal.	p.447
When I receive SMS, the name stored in the Phonebook is not displayed.	● Did you correctly store the phone number of the sender on the phone number line ( ) of the Phonebook?	p.104
Mails are not automatically sorted.	● If the other party's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", register the telephone number only in the Auto-sort settings. ● If the other party's mail address is other than "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", register the complete address including the domain name in the Auto-sort settings to be automatically allocated.	p.291
Mails are not automatically received.	● If you have set "Receive option setting" to "ON", set it to "OFF".	p.297
The FOMA terminal cannot be charged (The charge lamp on the FOMA terminal or desktop holder does not turn on).	● When the FOMA terminal unit (to which the battery pack is attached) is charged, is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal?	p.49
	● Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket? ● Is the adapter properly attached to the FOMA terminal or desktop holder? ● When the desktop holder is used to charge the FOMA terminal, is the FOMA terminal or battery pack properly placed in the desktop holder?	pp.52, 53 and 54
The key does not sound when I press them (No key tome).	● Is "Keypad sound" set to "OFF"?	p.129
	● Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode?	p.133
Even if "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF", the keypad sound rings.	● Did you set the manner mode while "Keypad sound" in "Original" under "Manner mode set" was set to "ON"?	p.133
I cannot answer voice call/videophone calls using Any key answer.	● Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"? ● You cannot answer videophone calls using Any key answer.	p.74
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during calls.	● Is the earpiece speaker placed properly against your ear?	p.26
	● Is anything such as seal obstructing the earpiece speaker? ● Is anything obstructing the speaker during handsfree?	
	● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Try changing this setting until you can hear the other party clearly.	p.78
The other party's voice is too high during calls.	● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Try changing this setting until you can hear the other party clearly.	p.78
The other party cannot hear me.	● Is anything obstructing the mouthpiece?	p.26
The message "All lock" and the " " mark appear.	● Enter your security code, and then press ● to cancel All lock.	p.156
I cannot operate the FOMA terminal using the side keys when it is folded.	● Is "Side keys guard" set to "ON"?	p.160

Problem	Points to check	See page
I cannot check missed calls using [Memo/Check] when the FOMA terminal is folded.	● Is “Info notice setting” set to “OFF”?	p.82
	● Is “Side keys guard” set to “ON”?	p.160
The date is displayed in Japanese.	● Is Japanese selected in “Language”?	p.56
	● Is Clock display set to Japanese?	p.149
The thickness of the text font for sites, screen memos, Msg. Request/Free or i-mode mail message does not change even if the “Font” setting was changed.	● The “Type” setting of “Font” is applied to the text of sites, screen memos, Msg. Request/Free or i-mode mail message, but “Thickness” is not applied.	p.148
The display is dim.	● Is the brightness setting of the display light set to “Level 1”?	p.145
The display, image window and display light of the keypad do not turn on.	● Is Lighting of the display light set to “OFF”?	p.145
	● Hold down (5) for 1 second or more to turn the display light on or off. Note that the display light turns off when you hold down (5) for 1 second or more during operation such as creating a mail.	p.28
The motion of the screen during a videophone call is not smooth.	● Is “Change display size” of “Disp. Setting V-phone” set to “Main display size”? Set it to “Real size”.	p.97
When I receive an incoming call immediately after turning on the power, the phone number is displayed but the name stored in the Phonebook is not.	● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card immediately after turning on the power. The Phonebook function may not be available during that time.	—
It takes some time for the power to turn on after (PWR) has been held down for 1 second or more.	● When data such as a phonebook has reached full capacity, data verification takes some time.	p.120
The call does not finish even if I press (PWR).	● This may happen when you perform operations using keys ((0) to (9), (*) and (#)) according to the recorded announcement. In this case, press (PWR) again.	—
Nothing appears on the display and , , multi function key, and are flashing.	● The FOMA terminal is in Power saver mode. Press any keys to cancel Power saver mode.	p.145
No incoming call reaction (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) happens when a call comes.	● No incoming call reaction (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) happens until the set time has passed when you receive a call from a phone number not stored in the Phonebook or from a caller who does not notify its caller ID, if “Set mute seconds” of “Ringing time” is set to other than 0 second.	p.167
When I take pictures with the built-in camera, the images are affected by flickering.	● When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. The flickering may be suppressed by changing the “Image tuning” setting.	p.176
Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera look too bright.	● Is “Image tuning” properly set? Set “Mode 1 (50 Hz)” or “Mode 2 (60 Hz)” according to your local area.	p.176
Still images or movies look blurred if shot with the built-in camera with the out-camera.	● Turn out-camera lens selector to the ● (standard lens) for a normal shot, or to the (macro lens) for a close-up.	p.184
When I attempt to display an image, “” appears. When I attempt to play for demonstration or see a preview, “” appears.	● “” may appear when the image data is corrupted.	—
(Mail) or "Not available" is displayed and some data or files cannot be used for view and play.	● Do you replace the FOMA card after downloading or getting those data or files?	p.48
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed.	● It may occur if you exchange large data by using the miniSD reader/writer function.	—
When I record using Chance capture, the recording time has decreased.	● When you record using Chance capture, the control data will be saved with the movie data. It may shorten the recordable time.	—
Installation of N900iG communication setting file (drivers) or packet communication cannot be performed.	● Is the USB mode setting set to “miniSD mode”? Set “Communication mode”.	p.393

Continued on next page

■Problems that may occur during overseas use

Problem	Points to check	See page
“圏外” (out of service area) and/or “Select net” remains displayed and you cannot use the international roaming service.	● Are you outside the international roaming service area or in a location with poor radio wave reception?	—
	● See “国際ローミングサービスマニュアル(FOMA N900iG)” (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only) or home page of WORLD WING to check whether you are in an available service area or use an available carrier.	—
	● Use “Network switch” to switch to a network that supports the service.	p.544
	● Look for a network that supports the service by using “NW search mode”.	p.545
	● When you use your FOMA terminal for the first time overseas after leaving Japan, power off and then back on your FOMA terminal.	—
You cannot use videophone calls, SMS, i-mode or packet communication.	● See “国際ローミングサービスマニュアル(FOMA N900iG)” (the international roaming service manual (FOMA N900iG)) (Japanese only) or home page of WORLD WING to check whether you are in an available service area or use an available carrier.	—
	● Use “Network switch” to switch to a network that supports the service.	p.544
	● Look for a network that supports the service by using “NW search mode”.	p.545
You cannot receive a voice call or videophone call.	● Is “Activate BIC-ROAM” of “Roaming setting” set?	p.550
“圏外” remains displayed following return to Japan.	● Is “Network switch” set to “GSM”?	p.544
Incoming calls are not available during i-mode operation.	● Is “Call FNC/i-mode” set to “Call rejection”?	p.552
Incoming calls are note available during packet communications.	● Is “Call FNC/Packet” set to “Call rejection”?	p.552
No caller ID. Phone number different from the number of the callee is notified. Function for using the phonebook or the caller ID does not work.	● Even if the callee notifies the caller ID, that ID may not be notified and you may receive a call as "Not supported" or a phone number different from the number of the callee [CN4]may be notified depending on the network or carrier.	p.535

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

List of Error Messages

When error messages are displayed during operation, handle appropriately referring to the following list.

- If an error message appears while you are using your terminal overseas, see p.581 first.
- "(numeric characters)" in an error message displayed during i-mode operation is a code to classify an error sent from the i-mode Center.

Error message	Description/Handling	See page
"Already saved"	● This message appears when you attempt to save i-motion consecutively with the data received screen.	—
"Attached file cannot be sent to i-mode address"	● Mail with a large-sized image cannot be sent to i-mode addresses.	—
"Attached file is deleted"	● This message appears if i-mode mail received that you attempt to quote to send a reply has any file attached. Press ● [Select] to delete the attached file during data transmission via infrared exchange or cable.	—
"Authentication canceled (401)"	● This message appears when you press the "Cancel" button on the "Authentication" screen.	p.210
"Authentication type is not supported (401)"	● This message appears when authentication did not go through. Press ● [Select] to return to the screen displayed before the message appeared.	—
"Call acceptation Already set full" "Call rejection Already set full" "Call forwarding Already set full" "Restrict dialing Already set full" "Voice mail Already set full"	● These messages are displayed if you attempt to add the Restrictions setting to Phonebook when 20 items have already been set in the Phonebook. Perform the desired setting again after canceling the unnecessary Phonebook settings.	p.164
"Calling now Cannot operate"	● This message is displayed when Task menu is displayed during a call and a function that cannot be used is selected.	p.408
"Cannot edit message"	● The text cannot be edited because the size of the attached file has reached 5000 full-pitch characters' worth.	p.260
"Cannot save attached file"	● This message appears when you have received mail with an attached file that cannot be saved during transfer via infrared exchange/cable connection.	—
"Cannot set this schedule"	● Displayed when you perform "Import & add one" to import a schedule entry with date, time and repeat settings that are identical to those of an existing schedule entry.	—
"Cannot use network transmission"	● This message appears while downloading or starting up software when "Network setting" is set to "OFF". Set the "Network setting" to "Check every start" or "ON".	p.316
"Certificate is rejected"	● This message appears when an altered TLS/SSL certificate has been received. TLS/SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
"Connection failed (403)"	● The attempt to connect to a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Connection failed"	● This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in "Host selection" of Connection setting.	p.228
	● The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Connection interrupted"	● The i-mode connection was lost due to poor reception. Move to a location with stronger reception to resume using i-mode.	p.204
	● If this message appears when reception is strong and "📶" is indicated, the site you are trying to connect to is busy. Try connecting again later.	—
"Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion"	● This message appears if the size of the streaming-type i-motion you attempt to obtain exceeds 2 Mbytes and obtaining has failed to be completed.	p.332

Continued on next page

Error message	Description/Handling	See page
“Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion”	● This message appears if the size of the normal-type i-motion you attempt to obtain exceeds 300 Kbytes and obtaining has failed. ● Displayed if the i-motion attached to the i-mode mail cannot be accepted because its size exceeds 100K bytes.	p.332
“Data is too long A part is deleted”	● The address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum size and the “New mail” screen is displayed with the excess part deleted.	—
“Data is too long Please delete message”	● The size of the text and header/signature/quotation marks combined of the i-mode mail to quote to reply/forward exceeds 5000 full-pitch characters’ worth and the header/signature/quotation marks cannot be automatically pasted. Delete the text until the total number of full-pitch characters is less than 5000.	—
“Desktop icon is full”	● This message appears if you attempt to paste a new icon when there are already 15 icons pasted on the standby display. Delete desktop icons that you no longer need and retry pasting.	p.135
“Downloading interrupted” “Unable to download” “Download failed”	● Displayed if a communication error occurs or data contains an error when trying to download data such as a melody, Chara-den or DL dictionary.	—
“Draft mail is full”	● New mail or new SMS cannot be composed because there are already 10 draft messages. Edit and send a draft message or delete some draft messages and try again.	p.250 p.287
“Editing now Cannot delete”	● This message appears if you attempt to delete a message that is in the Draft and being edited.	—
“Enter correct network security code”	● This message is displayed when an incorrect NW security code is entered for a function that requires the NW security code. Enter the correct NW security code. If you have forgotten your NW security code, you need to present your FOMA terminal and an ID such as a driver’s license providing that you are the person stipulated in the contract to a DoCoMo shop.	p.152
“Error in image Does not work correctly”	● This message appears when the Flash image cannot be displayed due to an error found in the data.	—
“Failed to reset”	● This message is displayed if reset of “Network switch” or “NW search mode” cannot be processed when Reset settings is performed. Remove the FOMA card and perform the “Reset settings” operation again.	—
“Format miniSD for your phone”	● This miniSD memory card is abnormal such as an unformatted card. Format the miniSD memory card again.	p.391
“Forwarding number is not set”	● This message is displayed when you have subscribed to the “Call forwarding service” and try to forward an incoming call by selecting “Call forwarding” from the Function menu without setting the forwarding destination.	p.450
“i-mode checking is set all OFF”	● “Check new message” cannot be made because “i-mode checking” is set for “Do not check” for all. Set the item to check in “i-mode checking”.	p.295
“Input error (205)”	● This message appears after you enter data on a site or Web page and send the data. Pressing ● [Select] resets the entered text (the setting or entry made is sent and this operation does not cancel sending).	p.209
“Insert miniSD”	● The miniSD memory card may not be inserted in the FOMA terminal or may not be inserted correctly. Insert the miniSD memory card correctly.	p.377
“Insert UIM”	● This message appears when FOMA card is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that FOMA card is correctly inserted.	p.46

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Error message	Description/Handling	See page
“Invalid address”	● The addresses contain a “,” or space and are invalid. Delete any “,” and space. ● The addresses of the received mail contain more than 50 half-pitch characters and not valid for send replies.	—
	● Displayed when SMS cannot be sent. · SMS cannot be sent because the address contains a character other than “#”, “*” and “+”, or spaces. Delete the numerals, a character other than “#”, “*” and “+”, or space. · The address contains “+”. Delete the extra “+”. · “+” is included other than the beginning of the address. (However, excluding “+” only following “#31#” and “31#”.) Delete the “+” other than the beginning. · The address exceeds maximum 20 digits (excluding “+”). Delete the numerals, characters exceeding 20 digits, or spaces.	p.302
“Invalid content Change i-motion type for replay”	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain streaming-type i-motion when “i motion type setting” is set to “Normal type”.	p.336
“Invalid func in this UIM”	● This message appears when you attempt to use a function that is not supported by the inserted FOMA card.	—
“Invalid UIM auto start not possible”	● This message appears when you attempt automatic start of i-αppli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.48
“Invalid UIM requested service not available”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution. ● This message appears when you select a screen memo, Msg. Request or Msg. Free protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution.	p.48
“Invalid UIM requested software can’t start”	● This message appears when you specify i-αppli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution.	p.48
“Invalid URL”	● This message is displayed when you enter the wrong URL or the wrong number of characters which exceeds the allowable number. Enter a URL correctly. ● This message appears if you select [OK] without entering a URL, or after you enter a URL incorrectly (a URL that does not start with “http://” or “https://”) when setting the Home URL in the “Home URL” setting or another URL. Enter a URL correctly.	p.214 p.219
“i-αppli stand-by display terminated due to security error” “Software terminated due to security error”	● The i-αppli or the i-αppli standby display (including the i-αppli DX) terminated because you attempted to execute unauthorized operation.	p.327 p.329
““i-αppli To” function is not set”	● When trying to start the software from a site, mail, the infrared exchange function or the bar code reader, it does not start because the specified software is not permitted to be interfaced.	p.324
“Maximum size over Cannot receive (452)”	● This message appears when the data to be received exceeds the maximum size and cannot be received.	—
“Memory full” “Not enough memory Cannot save”	● The miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data in the miniSD memory card and export again.	p.389
“Memory is full Cannot receive no more”	● Inbox is full and no more i-mode mail or SMS can be received. Delete or cancel protection for mail that you no longer need until “ ” (red) disappears and perform “Check new message” and “Check new SMS”.	p.270 p.287 p.304
“Memory No.:XXX Cannot overwrite”	● This message is displayed when you attempt to add Phonebook to the same number as a memory number for Phonebook added as secret data when the “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode” is not set.	p.161
	● This message is displayed when you attempt to add Phonebook to the same number as a memory number for Phonebook set to Automatic display. Press ● [Select] to return to the Phonebook edit screen. Select “No”, and enter a vacant memory number to add it.	p.104
“Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu”	● Process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ● [Select] to return to the i-mode menu.	—
“Memory shortage”	● The software program cannot be run due to memory shortage.	—

Continued on next page

Error message	Description/Handling	See page
“Message too long to add header”	● The size of the text and header combined exceeds 5000 full-pitch characters’ worth and the header cannot be pasted. Delete the text until the total number of full-pitch characters is less than 5000.	—
“Message too long to add signature”	● The size of the text and signature combined exceeds 5000 full-pitch characters’ worth and the signature cannot be pasted. Delete the text until the total number of full-pitch characters is less than 5000.	—
“Movie is too big to attach Cannot compose”	● This message appears if the size of a movie shot with the built-in camera in the “Movie mode” has turned out to be too big to attach to i-mode mail when you select “Compose message” from the function menu.	p.260
“No content is available (204)”	● This message appears when there is no data to display on the connected site, etc.	—
“No data”	● This message is displayed when there is no Phonebook that matches the search conditions when performing Phonebook search.	p.114
“No requested Chara-den”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted Chara-den and attempt to execute.	—
“No requested image”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted image and attempt to execute.	—
“No requested i-motion”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted movie or i-motion and attempt to execute.	—
“No requested melody”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted melody and attempt to execute.	—
“No requested software”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted i-αppli program and attempt to execute. ● Displayed if there is no corresponding software when the i-αppli is started from mail, the infrared exchange function or the bar code reader.	—
“No response (408)”	● No response has been received from a site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection.	—
(During infrared exchange) “No response Retry?”	● The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. Place the terminals so that their infrared ports are aligned on the same level. Select “YES” and press ● [Select] to try again.	p.394
“Not correspond contents”	● Information read by the Bar code reader cannot be recognized because there are some contents incompatible with the FOMA terminal.	—
“Not enough memory Cannot receive”	● This message appears if not enough space is available in the Inbox when you attempt to obtain the data for the movie/i-motion attached to i-mode mail. Delete or cancel protection for mail that you no longer need to make more space available.	p.287
“Other function active Cannot operate”	● This message appears if you attempt to perform operation that is unavailable when another function is running.	p.407
“Out of service area”	● This message appears when you try to use the i-mode Service outside the service area or in a location where radio waves do not reach you. Move to a location where “” appears on the display.	p.204
“Page is not found (404)”	● The site is not found. It may not exist.	—
“Password is not correct (401)”	● This message appears when authentication did not go through on the “Authentication” or “Re-authentication” screen. To re-authenticate, select “YES”.	p.210
“Phonebook is full”	● This message is displayed when you attempt to add the 701st phone number or mail address to a FOMA terminal (main unit) Phonebook. Delete an unneeded phone number or mail address already stored in the Phonebook before adding the new one.	p.117
“Photo is too big to attach Cannot compose”	● This message appears if the size of a picture taken with the built-in camera in the “Photo mode” has turned out to be too big to attach to i-mode mail when you select “Compose message” from the function menu.	p.260
“PIN1 code blocked”	● This message is displayed when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press ● [Select] to display the PUK code entry screen. Then, enter the PUK code properly to cancel the lock.	p.155

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Error message	Description/Handling	See page
“Please set time to obtain data”	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain i-motion data with replay period restriction when the “Set local time” setting is not made. Make the “Set local time” setting.	p.58
“Please wait”	● Transmission is restricted. Try voice/videophone calling or i-mode later.	—
“PUK code blocked”	● This message appears if you attempt to power on or perform operation related to FOMA card when PUK code is blocked. Contact a DoCoMo service counter.	p.153
“Reading UIM Cannot operate”	● This message appears when you attempt to perform operation related to FOMA card while FOMA card is being read. Retry later.	—
“Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion”	● This message appears if the size of the streaming-type i-motion you attempt to obtain exceeds 2 Mbytes and obtaining has failed.	p.332
“Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion”	● This message appears if the size of the normal-type i-motion you attempt to obtain exceeds 300 Kbytes and obtaining has failed to be completed. ● Displayed if the i-motion attached to the i-mode mail could not be accepted because its size exceeds 100K bytes.	p.332
“Replace with a new one or check the disk”	● Check the disk of the miniSD memory card.	p.391
“Replay period has expired Cannot play”	● The i-motion cannot be replayed because the replay period is expired.	—
“Replay period has expired Delete?”	● This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with the replay period expired. Select “YES” to delete the i-motion.	—
“Replay period has expired”	● This message appears if you select a desktop icon for i-motion with the replay period expired and attempt to execute.	—
“Replay period has not yet started”	● This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with a replay period set before the period.	—
“Requested software unavailable”	● Displayed if the specified software was not able to be started when trying to start the software with the Ir exchange function or the bar code reader.	—
	● Displayed if the software was not able to be started when trying to start the software from a site or mail.	—
“Root certificate has expired Do you connect?”	● This message appears when the TLS/SSL root certificate in the terminal is expired. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise select “NO”.	p.212
	● This message appears if you attempt to connect to a TLS/SSL-compatible site or Web page when the “Set local time” setting is not made. Make the “Set local time” setting.	p.58
	● This message appears if you are asked to send a client certificate while connecting to a TLS/SSL-compatible site or an internet homepage.	p.212
“Root certificate is not valid”	● This message appears when a certificate with the “Certificate” setting set to “Invalid” is received. Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	p.230
“Secret data”	● This message is displayed when you try to search for a memory number specifying a secret data number during the mode other than secret mode or secret only mode. ● This message is displayed when you try to dial secret data with two-touch dialing during the mode other than secret mode or secret only mode.	p.161
“Service is not registered”	● The i-mode service is not available because you do not subscribe to the service. Subscription is necessary to use the service.	—
“Service unavailable”	● This message is displayed if you perform network service operation when you are outside the service area or where radio waves cannot reach. Perform network service operation after moving to an area where “  ” is displayed.	—
“Set time”	● This message appears if you attempt to perform operation requiring the “Set local time” setting when the setting is not made. Make the “Set local time” setting before operation.	p.58
“Setting keypad dial lock”	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when Keypad dial lock is set.	p.159

Continued on next page

Error message	Description/Handling	See page
“Setting mail security Cannot download”	● Since security is activated for the Inbox/Outbox or folders used with the mail-connected i-αppli, you cannot upgrade the mail-connected i-αppli. To upgrade the mail-connected i-αppli, deactivate the security.	p.163
“Setting PIM lock”	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when PIM lock is set.	p.158
“Setting record display OFF”	● “Record display set” is set to “OFF” and the received address record or sent address record cannot be used. They become available when you set “ON” for “Record display set”.	p.160
“Setting restrict dialing”	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when “Restrict dialing” is set.	p.164
“Setting security Cannot delete” “Setting mail security Cannot delete”	● Since security is activated for the Inbox/Outbox or folders used with the mail-connected i-αppli, you cannot delete the mail-connected i-αppli. To delete the mail-connected i-αppli, deactivate the security.	p.163
“Setting self mode”	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when Self mode is set.	p.157
“Size of page is not supported”	● The data received from a site or Web page has exceeded the maximum size of one page. Reception is interrupted and the data obtained up to that point is displayed. ● This message appears when the maximum size has been exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den.	—
“SMS in UIM filled”	● The FOMA card is full and no more SMS can be stored on the card. To store SMS, delete unwanted SMS from the FOMA card until “ ” disappears.	p.118
“Software for this folder deleted Refer to Open folder”	● Since the mail-connected i-αppli compatible with the selected mail folder is deleted, the software program cannot run. Refer to the mail of the folder from the function menu.	p.268 p.278
“Software is stopped because of error”	● This message appears when you are running a program and an error occurs preventing further operation.	—
“Software upgraded”	● The present software is updated and upgrading does not take place.	—
“Some addresses is invalid”	● This message appears if not all addresses are valid when you attempt to send reply i-mode mail to two or more addresses.	—
“Some attached file will be deleted”	● One or more file not permitted to attach to mail or output from the FOMA terminal is attached to the i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● [Select] to display the “Edit mail” screen with the file deleted.	—
“Syntax error (XXX)” “Data not applicable” “URL address is not valid (XXX)”	● The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The received data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in XXX.	—
“Talking now Cannot operate” “Calling now Cannot operate”	● This message is displayed when operation of a function that cannot be performed during calls is attempted.	p.407
“The data may not be replayed”	● This message appears when i-motion in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) has been obtained.	—
“This certificate has expired Do you connect?”	● This message appears when a TLS/SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise select “NO”.	p.212
	● This message appears if you attempt to connect to a TLS/SSL-compatible site or Web page when the “Set local time” setting is not made. Make the “Set local time” setting.	p.58
“This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?”	● This message appears when the CN of a TLS/SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise select “NO”.	p.212
“This data can no longer be replayed Delete?”	● This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with no replay count remaining. Select “YES” to delete the i-motion.	—
“This data can no longer be replayed”	● This message appears if you select a desktop icon for i-motion with no replay count remaining and attempt to execute.	—
“This data is not supported by this phone”	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion.	—
“This site is not certified Do you connect?”	● This message appears when an unsupported TLS/SSL certificate has been received. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise select “NO”.	p.212
“This software contains an error Unable to download”	● There is an error in the software data and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—

∗The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

Error message	Description/Handling	See page
“This software contains an error”	● There is an error in the software data and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—
“This software is not supported by this phone”	● The software you attempt to obtain is not supported by the terminal and cannot be downloaded.	—
“This UIM cannot be recognized”	● Displayed if a FOMA card that cannot be used on this FOMA terminal may be inserted. Please confirm that the right FOMA card is inserted.	p.46
“Time out”	● Connection to a site, mail sending process, etc. is interrupted due to the connection timeout time set in “Connection timeout” is up. Retry connecting to the site or sending the mail later.	p.227
“TLS/SSL session cannot be established”	● This message appears if connection to a TLS/SSL-compliant site or Web page was not established. Retry connection.	—
“TLS/SSL session failed”	● This message appears when a TLS/SSL communication is interrupted due to an error in the communication of the authentication for a TLS/SSL connection.	—
“Too much data was entered”	● Too many characters are entered into the text box, as a URL, etc. and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend.	p.209
“Unable to display because of Memory shortage”	● The image attached to the i-mode mail exceeds the maximum displayable size and cannot be displayed.	—
“Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error”	● This i-motion cannot be obtained because the i-motion replay restriction data contains an error.	—
“Unable to receive”	● Displayed if a communication error has occurred when trying to accept i-motion.	—
“Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)”	● The attempt to connect to a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
“Unable to support this miniSD”	● This miniSD memory card is not compatible with the FOMA terminal. Use an available miniSD memory card.	p.376
“Unable to write” “Read error”	● Export or import cannot be performed for some reason. Replace the new miniSD memory card and try again.	—
“URL address changed (301)”	● The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is bookmarked or registered as a desktop icon or Home URL.	p.135 p.215 p.218
“URL is too long to add”	● The URL exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be pasted and cannot be pasted onto a desktop icon or i-mode mail.	—
“URL is too long to register”	● The URL exceeds the maximum number of characters and cannot be bookmarked or stored as the Home URL.	—
“Wrong security code” “Security code is 4 to 8 digits”	● This message appears when a wrong security code has been entered for a function requiring entry of the security code. Enter the correct security code. If you forget the security code, the registered service subscriber must bring the FOMA terminal and a form of identification (such as a driver’s license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter to have the number reset.	p.152
“Your terminal ID and UIM ID is requested Send?”	● This message may appear while you are viewing a site or Web page. Select “YES” to send your mobile phone information. Otherwise, select “NO”. The mobile phone information to be sent includes the production number of your FOMA terminal and the identification number of the FOMA card. This information is sent to IPs (information providers) over the Internet and may in some cases be disclosed to third parties.	p.207

■Abroad

Error message	Description/Handling	See page
“Confirmation failed” “Network could not found” “Network detection failed”	● Displayed when you cannot set "NW search mode" due to the reception or network conditions.	—
“Network switch Service unavailable”	● Displayed when attempting a function that is unavailable while switching networks.	—
“Network switch set auto Cannot operate”	● You cannot set “NW search mode” to “Manual” when “Network switch” is set to “Auto”.	p.544 p.545

Clearing Settings and Data

Below are examples of returning the FOMA terminal to its initial status and clearing settings or data.

Resetting handset functional settings of the FOMA terminal

"Reset settings" returns the settings of the FOMA terminal to the initial settings. The data saved in the FOMA terminal remains stored.
For how to execute "Reset settings" and which functions are reset by "Reset settings", see p.440.

Resetting i-mode settings

Under "i-mode settings", "Reset last URL" returns your last URL setting to the iMenu page URL. "Reset settings" resets the "i-mode settings", returning the settings for i-mode to the initial settings. The data saved in the FOMA terminal remains stored.
For how to execute "Reset last URL" or "Reset settings" for the i-mode settings, and which functions are reset, see p.231.

Resetting mail settings

Under "Mail settings", "Reset settings" resets "Mail settings", returning the settings for messaging to the initial settings. The data saved in the FOMA terminal remains stored.
For how to execute "Reset settings" for the mail settings, and which functions are reset, see p.301.

Clearing settings or data for a specific function

You can delete data and reset settings for each of the following functions:

- Phonebook entry→p.117
- Phonebook group name→p.109
- Redial record→p.64
- Dialled/Received call record→p.75
- Sent/Received address record→p.289
- Pause dial→p.65
- Desktop icon→p.139
- Last call/All calls duration→p.431
- Alarm clock→p.413
- Schedule→p.420
- ToDo→p.424
- Text memo→p.433
- Record message→p.86
- Voice memo→p.86
- Voice announce→p.128
- Country code for Int'l dial setting→pp.70 and 543
- PLNM list→p.548
- Own number display (except Own phone number)→p.428
- Common phrases→p.515
- Own dictionary→p.518
- Downloaded dictionary→p.519
- Learning record→p.519
- i-αppli→p.328
- Mail→p.287
- Message→p.239
- Mail address (Reset Mail Address)→p.243
- Mail member→p.298
- Image→p.373
- Movie/i-motion→p.373
- Melody→p.373
- Chara-den→p.373
- Original animation→p.343
- Dictionary search record→p.434

Initializing the FOMA terminal

"Initialize" clears all customized settings and all saved data to restore the FOMA terminal's initial status.

- By performing "Initialize", you can return the FOMA terminal to its initial status. This operation deletes your important data including personal data such as the phonebook and mail, downloaded image and melody files, pictures (still images) and movies you took with the built-in cameras.
- To secure your data, taking notes and/or using Data Link Software (p.569) and miniSD memory card (p.376) is strongly recommended.

*The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.376

- You cannot initialize a FOMA terminal if the FOMA terminal is connected with an external unit such as a PC.
- Even if you initialize the FOMA terminal while a FOMA card is inserted in it, the data in the FOMA card (including the phonebook data and SMS) is not initialized.
- You can initialize a FOMA terminal even if the FOMA card is not inserted in the FOMA terminal. In such case, the “SMS center selection” are not reset.
- In case of insufficient battery power, an alert message prompts you to recharge. In this case, recharge the battery and then perform initialization.

1 **Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Initialize”, and then enter the security code.**

A message notifying you of handset initialization is displayed.
Security code →p.152

2 **Select “YES”.**

A message notifying you about the power is displayed.

To cancel initialization
Select “NO”.

3 **Select “YES”.**

Initialization starts. Don’t power off the FOMA terminal during initialization. When the initialization is completed, the FOMA terminal reboots automatically.

To cancel initialization
Select “NO”.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check that the name of the retailer, the date of purchase, and the necessary details have been filled in on the warranty card, and be sure to keep it in a safe place. If any necessary item on the warranty card is not completed, contact the shop where you purchased the FOMA terminal and request that they complete it. The warranty period is for one year from the date of purchase.
- For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.

After-sales service

If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Refer to the “Malfunction Checklist” section of this manual to see if the solution to your problem is discussed there before bringing your FOMA terminal in for repair.
If the FOMA terminal still malfunctions, contact “For inquiries-malfunctions” indicated on the back cover of this manual.

If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Bring your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Remember to bring your warranty card with you.

During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired free of charge in accordance with our written warranty policy.
- Please be sure to have the warranty card with you when requesting repairs. Charges apply in the following cases even during the warranty period: no warranty is presented; failure and/or damage were due to incorrect handling.
- Charges apply even during the warranty period if the failure is due to the use of devices and/or consumables not specified by DoCoMo.

Continued on next page

■ **The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired in the following cases:**
The water exposure seal reacted; corrosion due to exposure to water, condensation or perspiration is found upon investigation; internal boards are damaged or deformed. Charges apply even if the phone can be repaired, as it is no longer under warranty.

■ **After the warranty period has expired**
Repair will be carried out upon request. Note that charge will apply for such work.

■ **The stocking of replacement parts**
Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of 6 years following the termination of production. Repairs to the FOMA terminal will be possible during this period. Repairs may still be possible after this period has passed, depending on the type of malfunction. Contact the phone numbers given on the back cover of this manual.

IMPORTANT!

- Never attempt to modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
  - Doing so may result in fire, injury or malfunction.
  - The technical standards of the FOMA terminals and FOMA cards are strictly controlled by law to avoid potential network malfunctions and cross talks. The use of the FOMA terminals and FOMA cards that do not meet these technical standards is not permitted.
  - If your FOMA terminal has been modified previously (replacement of parts, modification, coating, etc.), it will only be accepted for the repair of a malfunction if it has been restored to its original state (as a standard DoCoMo product). However, repair may be refused depending on the extent of the modification.
  - The user will be charged for the repair of any malfunction or damage caused by such modifications even during the warranty period.
- Never peal off the seal or the model name plate attached to the FOMA terminal.
  The seal or plate functions as a certification that the equipment conforms to the prescribed technical standards. If the seal or the plate is removed or replaced, repair may be refused because conformity to the standards cannot be determined.
- Note that the information stored in your FOMA terminal, such as settings of various functions and the total call time, may be lost (reset) if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise mishandled. If this happens, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.
- The FOMA terminal incorporates a magnetic element in the following parts. Prevent a bankcard, etc. from being close to the parts since it may be damaged. Location used: Neuropointer key, speaker, earpiece speaker
- If your FOMA terminal is get wet or become moist, you must immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, bring the FOMA terminal to a repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired depending on its state.

Memory dial (Phonebook function) and Downloaded information

- Note that information you stored in your mobile phone be kept separately in a notebook, etc. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your FOMA terminal.
- In the course of repairs to or model change of your mobile phone, data, such as downloaded data, data created by the user or data imported from external sources, may be modified or lost. Furthermore, we may, at their discretion, conduct repairs that entail replacing your mobile phone with an equivalent product, in which event it is not possible to transfer such data in its entirety to the replacement product. We accepts no liability whatsoever for these phenomena.

Updating Software

Check whether software in the FOMA terminal needs to be updated, and download a part of software to update the software by using the packet communication※ if necessary. If software update is required, we will notify the guidance in the DoCoMo's web page or "お知らせ&ヘルプ" (News & Help) in iMenu.

※: The packet communication to update the software will not be charged.

- There are 2 ways to update software as follows:
  Immediate update : Perform update immediately as you want to update software.
  Reserved update : Set the date and time you want to perform update, then software will be downloaded and updated automatically on the reservation date and time.
- You can also update software even if the i-mode host is set to a user's host.
- You must completely charge the battery pack before performing software update.
- You cannot update software:
  - When FOMA card is not inserted
  - Incorrect usage of FOMA card
  - When PIN is locked
  - When PUK code is locked
  - When date and time is not set
  - While there is an incoming call
  - While receiving mail/SMS/message
  - During a voice call
  - During a videophone call
  - During i-mode connection
  - During packet communication
  - When Self mode is on
  - When PIM lock is on
  - Out of service area
  - When packet dialing is locked
  - While using mova with dual network service
  - When miniSD reader/writer function works
  - During International roaming
  - While connecting to an external device
  - While switching networks
  - While other functions are running
- It may take some time to update software (downloading, rewriting).
- If you update the software when "PIN code entry set" is set to "ON", the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed at the auto-start operation after updating the software. Invalid PIN1 code entry does not start the FOMA terminal and the following operation:
  - Incoming call for a voice call and a videophone call
  - Alarm notification for "Schedule" and "ToDo"
  - Reception for mail and Msg. Request/Free
  - Automatic run of I-αppli
  - Reserved update of software
- You cannot use other functions during software update. However, you can transfer the incoming calls or operate the voice memo as well as receive voice calls during downloading.
- SSL communication with the server (DoCoMo's site) is performed upon software update. Enable the certificate in advance. (The default setting is "Valid". Certificate setting →p.230)
- During software update, mail and Msg. Request/Free cannot be received, and stored in the i-mode center instead.
- If "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", message of an incoming mail may not appear after updating the software when you receive the mails during the software update.
- The icons such as "" and "" will not be displayed when reloading after updating software. The mails and messages stored in the voice mail service center are not deleted.
- When the software update is completed without operation for confirmation, you will see the desktop icon "UPDATE (Update complete)" on the standby display. If there is any information to be confirmed, you will see "UPDATE (Check update)". Select "UPDATE" and enter the security code to see the detail results of the update.
- You can leave the existing data such as the phonebook, the camera images, the downloaded data in your mobile phone even if updating the software. However, depending on your terminal condition (such as failure, damage and water exposure), data may not be preserved. It is recommended to backup the required data. (Some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.)
- If software update fails, please go to a designated repair shop.

NOTE

- You should not remove the battery pack during software update. Doing so may cause the update to fail. If update fails, "Rewrite failed" is displayed and you cannot operate anything.
  In that case, contact a designated repair shop.

Make sure that an icon on the top of the screen is displayed as shown on the right before updating software.



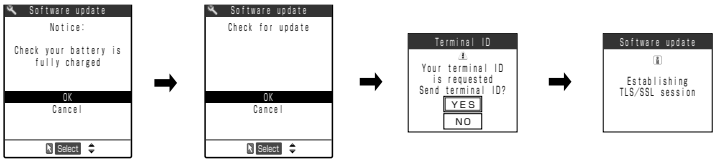
- It is recommended to perform software updates in a location with good radio wave reception (the reception level indicator shows "") at stationary state. In case of poor radio wave reception while downloading software or the downloading is canceled, move to a good location for reception to perform software downloading.

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Software update" and enter your security code.

Security code→p.152

2 Check the notices and whether you need software update.

While the software is being updated, the information (such as model and serial number) specific to your terminal is automatically sent to the software update server managed by NTT DoCoMo.
NTT DoCoMo does not use the information sent from your terminal for any purposes other than software updating.



3 Displays the check result.



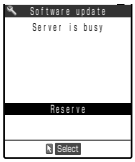
When the display is "Update is needed"

Select "Now update / Reserve".
Select "Now update" to update the software immediately. →p.587
Select "Reserve" to update on a specified timing. →p.588



When the display says "No update is needed"

Select "OK".
Continue using your FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.



When the display says "Server is busy"

Select "Reserve". →p.588

1 Select “Now update” in the check result display (p.586). When you see “Start download Notice:”, select “OK”.

Downloading will start immediately.
Download will begin after a while, even if you do not select “OK”.
When you stop downloading before completion, the data that has been downloaded until then will be deleted.
Once you start downloading, update will be processed automatically without selecting any items such as menu.

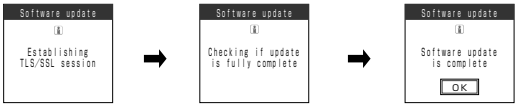


2 When the download is complete, you will see the message “Download is complete Rewrite software”. Select “OK”.

The software will begin rewriting.
Rewrite will begin after a while, even if you do not select “OK”. It may take a time to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot even stop rewriting.
When the software rewriting is complete, the FOMA terminal will reload.
After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check the update completion. When you see the message “Software update is complete”, select “OK”. That is all for updating software.



Selecting the reservation date and time to update software <reserved update>

If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can select the time to startup software update by communicating with the server beforehand.

<Example: Reserving at 7:30 on May 13 (Friday)>

1 Select “Reserve” at check result screen (p.586) and select the timing.



When there are no dates you want to select

Select “Others”. →p.589

2 Check the selected date and time, and then select “YES”.



That is all for setting the time for software downloading.

When you want to select all over again

Select “NO”.



The screen on the left appears at the reservation time and the FOMA terminal starts the software update automatically. Charge the battery pack fully, put the FOMA terminal at a location with strong radio wave reception and show the standby display before the reservation time. The rest of operation is same as “immediate update”.

NOTE

- The timing for the software updates will be based on the server’s time.
- When the reserved update ends, the FOMA terminal is automatically reloaded. When PIN1 code entry set (p.154) is set to “ON”, PIN1 code entry screen remain displayed during reloading (p.155). Note that incoming calls and mails are not received.
- The software will not begin updating in the following situations, even if the set time comes.
  - ·When the FOMA terminal power is off
  - ·Battery shortage
  - ·When FOMA card is not inserted
  - ·Incorrect usage of FOMA card
  - ·When PIN is locked
  - ·When PUK code is locked
  - ·When date and time is not set
  - ·When there is an incoming call
  - ·When receiving mail/SMS/message
  - ·During a voice call
  - ·During a videophone call
  - ·During i-mode connection
  - ·During packet communication
  - ·When All lock is on
  - ·When Self mode is on
  - ·When PIM lock is on
  - ·Out of service area
  - ·When packed dialing is restricted
  - ·While using mova with dual network service
  - ·When miniSD reader/writer function works
  - ·During international roaming
  - ·While connecting an external device
  - ·While switching networks
  - ·While other functions are running
- When the reservation time for the software update is the same as the alarm notification time, the software update is given priority.

If you select “Others”

You can select the desired date and period of time after communicating with the server if you select “Others” at step 1 in p.588.

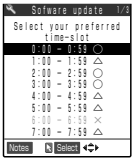
1 Reserve a date.



In the selection display, you will see the update availability represented as shown below:

○ : Open
△ : Almost full
None : Full

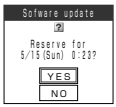
2 Reserve a time zone.



In the selection display, you will see the update availability represented as shown below:

○ : Open
△ : Almost full
× : Full

3 Confirm the software update timing.



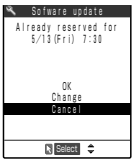
If you check the selected timing and select “YES”, you will communicate with the server. That is all for the update reservation.

Checking the reservation

<Example: Canceling the reservation after checking it>

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Software update”, and then enter the security code.

2 Select “Cancel”.



To accept the reservation date and time

Select “OK”.

To change the reservation date and time

Select “Change”.

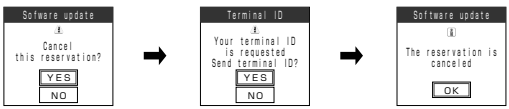
If you select “Change”, perform the same steps as you select “Others” after sending your mobile phone information (such as model and production number of the FOMA terminal) to the server.→above

3 When you see the message “Cancel this reservation?”, select “YES”.

While the software is updated, the information (such as model and serial number) specific to your terminal is automatically sent to the software update server managed by NTT DoCoMo.

NTT DoCoMo does not use the information sent from your terminal for any purposes other than software updating.

When you see the message “The reservation is canceled”, select “OK”. That is all for canceling the reservation.



SAR Certification and Other Information

SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA N900iG meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.
The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.
All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.296W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.
For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO) : http://www.who.int/peh-emf/
ICNIRP : http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC : http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html
TELEC : http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm
NTT DoCoMo : http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/ (Japanese only)
NEC : http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup (Japanese only)

＊ Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
＊＊ The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
＊＊＊ International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

THIS MODEL PHONE MEETS THE U.S. GOVERNMENT'S REQUIREMENTS FOR EXPOSURE TO RADIO WAVES.
Your wireless phone contains a radio transmitter and receiver. Your phone is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government. These limits are part of comprehensive guidelines and establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies.
The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6W/kg.* Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the output.
Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the limit established by the U.S. government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed on position and locations (for example, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone as reported to the FCC when tested for use at the ear is 0.33W/kg, and when worn on the body, is 0.05W/kg. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements).
While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the U.S. government requirement.
The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section at http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid after search on FCC ID A98-FOMA-N900IG.
For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory designated for this product or when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body.

＊ In the United States, the SAR limit for wireless mobile phones used by the public is 1.6 watts/kg (W/kg) averaged over one gram of tissue. SAR values may vary depending upon national reporting requirements and the network band.

Declaration of Conformity

The product “FOMA N900iG” is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on www.neceurope.com.

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves.
Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR* limits** for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.458W/kg. While there may be differences between the SAR* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet*** the EU requirements for RF exposure.

---

* The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

** The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

*** Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

Important Safety Information

AIRCRAFT
Switch off your wireless device when boarding an aircraft or whenever you are instructed to do so by airline staff. If your device offers a 'flight mode' or similar feature consult airline staff as to whether it can be used on board.
DRIVING
Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.
HOSPITALS
Mobile phones should be switched off wherever you are requested to do so in hospitals, clinics or health care facilities. These requests are designed to prevent possible interference with sensitive medical equipment.
PETROL STATIONS
Obey all posted signs with respect to the use of wireless devices or other radio equipment in locations with flammable material and chemicals. Switch off your wireless device whenever you are instructed to do so by authorized staff.
INTERFERENCE
Care must be taken when using the phone in close proximity to personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.
Pacemakers
Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum separation of 15cm be maintained between a mobile phone and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. To achieve this use the phone on the opposite ear to your pacemaker and do not carry it in a breast pocket.
Hearing Aids
Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.
For other Medical Devices:
Please consult your physician and the device manufacturer to determine if operation of your phone may interfere with the operation of your medical device.

Index

186(with caller ID)/184(without caller ID) 64
2-touch (Mode 2) 527
2-touch (Mode 2) 527
5-touch (Mode 1) 504
5-touch (Mode 1) 504
α Image window 318
α Display light 318
α Vibrator 318
A
AC adapter 52
Access Point Name (APN) 477, 480
Accessories 568
Add header 294
Add signature 294
Adding data to phonebook 104, 106, 107, 212
Additional service 456
Address list 289
Address reset 243
Adjusting brightness 187
Adjusting slide 439
Adjusting volume 78, 126
Administrator privilege 557
Alarm clock 409, 412
Low-voltage alarm 56
Quality alarm 130
Schedule 409, 413
ToDo 409, 421
Voice announce 128
Alarm 409
Alarm clock 412
Alarm setting 409
All calls duration 430
All lock 156
Animation 343
Anniversary 415
Answer message (→Utilities (phonebook)) 109
Answer setting 74
Any key answer 74
APN 477, 480
Arrival call act 455
AT commands 479, 490
At fwd party busy 451
Attached file 300
Authentication (→User ID, password) 210
Auto melody play 238
Auto play 299
Auto save set 191
Auto start 321
Auto start info 322
Auto timer 185
Automatic answer 436
Automatic display 113
Automatic mail reception 266
Auto-sort 291
B
Bar code reader 193
Bar nuisance call service 452
Battery level 55
Battery pack 49
Add bookmark 216
Changing title 218
Deletion 218
Display 216
Folder 217
No. of bookmarks 218
Bookmark 215
Bookmark
Bookmark registration 216
Brightness 345
Byte 557
C
Cable 393, 462
Calculator 431
Calendar 414
Call acceptation 164
Call acceptation 164
Call FNC/i-mode 552
Call FNC/Packet 552
Call forwarding 164
Call forwarding (Int.) 551
Call forwarding service 450
Call rejection 164
Call rejection 164
Call setting w/o ID 166
Call time display 430
Call waiting service 448
Caller ID request service 453
Continuous multiple pictures 177
Light 184
Movie 180
Number of storable images/movies 171
Picture (still image) 174
Camera 170
Camera image sending 95
Camera settings 186
CD-ROM for FOMA N900iG 461
Certificate 213, 230
Chaku-motion 124
Chance capture 182
Change CHR code 211
Change Mail Address 243
Change security code 153
Changing forwarding destination 451
Changing input method 520
Changing title 138, 218, 375
Character 502
Copy/Cut/Paste 516
Method 520
Switching screen to operate 528
Character entry 502
Character size 229, 295

Character stamp 347
Chara-den 93, 359
Charge sound 130
Check messages 448
Checkbox 43, 209
Checking address 243
Checking certificate 213, 230
cid 479
Clear learned 519
Clock display 149
Color mode setting 188
Color pattern 46
COM port 479
  Entry 511
  List 562
Common phrase 514
  Communication setting 470
  Communication setting file 463, 466
Communication (data communication) 473, 488
Component names and functions 26
Composite image 348
Computer administrator 557
Connection timeout 227
Continuous multiple pictures 177
Convert to kanji 506
Copy 118, 307, 516
Cut 516

D

Data being edited 510
Data being entered 510
Data Link Software 569
Data transfer 393
Data transfer with cable connection 393
DC adapter 54
Declaration of Conformity 591
Deco-mail 254
Deleting mail 287
  Additional service 457
Data in FOMA card 119
Desktop icon 139
Phonebook 117
Redial 64
Schedule 420
Text memo 433
ToDo 424
Deletion
Desktop 135
Desktop holder 53
Device name (driver) 466
Devices (data communication) 462
Devices required (data communication) 462
Dialed call record 75
Dialing assistance 539
Dial-up 488
Dictionary 224, 518
Dictionary 434
Direct key selection 40, 208
Disp. phonebook image 143
Display 32, 535
Display light 97, 145
Display light 97, 145
Display setting 140
Display software info 314
Displayed icon (Icons) 35
Displaying a page stored as the home URL 219
Displaying address 281
Displaying name 281
Displaying subject 281
Displaying title 211
DL dictionary 519
DPOF setting 389
Draft 250
Driver, driver name 463, 466
Driving mode 80
Dual network service 453

E

Earphone 131
Earphone/microphone 435
Earphone/microphone with switch 435
Earpiece volume 78
Edit image 344
Edit ticker 356
  Characters 509
  Phonebook 117
Editing
Editing text 509
End stand-by display 326
End stand-by info 327
English guidance 454
Enter number 457
  PI input mode 513
Entering pictograph 513
  SB input mode 513
Entering symbol 512
Entry with kuten codes 517
Error message 575
External option 131, 436

F

Face symbol 513
File restriction 192, 375
Flashing of incoming call lamp 147
Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch 568
Fold setting 75
Folder structure 368, 379
  Adding to phonebook 106
  Operational restriction function 48
  Version 49
FOMA card 46
FOMA card operation 118, 307
FOMA card operational restriction function 48
FOMA PC setting software 467, 468
FOMA USB cable 462
Font 148

Continued on next page

Format setting 188
Forwarding image 402
Frame 345
Frequently used function (→Original menu) 425
Function menu 44

G

Glossary 556
Greeting card 259
Group setting 108
Guidance 41, 425, 522

H

Handsfree (→Making a videophone call) 89
Handsfree (in-vehicle) 72
Header 293
Header/Signature 293
High level item 40
- Holding 63
- On hold 79

Hold
Holding 63
Holding tone 80
Holiday 415
Home URL 218
Host selection 228
How to connect (→Executing communication) 473, 488
How to select menu items 40
- Battery remains 55
- Changing title 138
- Deletion 139
- Desktop 135, 137, 139
- Dial record 77, 537
- Displayed icon 35
- During videophone calls 88
- Guidance 41, 425
- Incoming records 77, 537
- Missed call record 77, 537
- Network 535
- Notification 139
- Receiving address list 290
- Sending address list 290
- User icon 416
- Utilities 110

I

icon 32
Icon info 317
Illumination 147, 148
Illumination in talk 148
Illumination which flashes at incoming call 147
Illumination which flashes at incoming call (→Utilities) 109
Image 338
Image display 229
Image displayed at incoming call (→Utilities) 109
Image information 338
Image quality 95
Image storage setting 190
Image window 35, 143, 535
Image-tuning function 176
i-melody 202
iMenu 199, 205
Immediate update 587
- Changing i-mode password 214
- Check new message 234, 270
- Checking i-mode setting 231
- During i-mode 204
- Ending i-mode 204
- i-mode checking 295
- i-mode menu 204
- i-mode password 214
- Resetting i-mode setting 231
- Setting 227
- Setting sound effect 229
- Starting i-mode 204

i-mode 198
- Adding address 274
- Adding folders 283
- Adding phonebook 212, 274
- Adding receiver 252
- Attaching files 260, 264
- Attaching images 260
- Attaching i-motion 260
- Attaching large size images 260
- Attaching melodies 260
- Attaching movies 260
- Auto-sort 291
- Check new message 70
- Checking font size 295
- Checking mail setting 301
- Checking stored count 282
- Compose i-mode mail 248, 264
- Copying 284
- Deco-mail 254
- Delete receiver 253
- Deleting folders 283
- Deletion 287
- Displaying 267
- Displaying images 275
- Displaying names 281
- Displaying title 281
- Editing folder names 283
- Entering address 249, 251, 252
- Filers 285
- Look-up address 251
- Look-up mails 285
- Message preview 249
- Moving folders 283
- Protection/release 287
- Receiving 266
- Receiving in selection 269
- Reediting 250
- Return 271
- Ringing mails/messages 131
- Saving 250
- Saving images 275

Saving i-mode 277
Saving melodies 274
Saving movies 277
Sending 248
Setting mails 291
Sorting 285
Speed photo mail 263
Transferring 273
Viewing address 281
i-mode mail 242
i-mode password 214
Auto play setting 336
Chaku-motion 124
i-motion play back 332, 349
i-motion storage 334
i-motion type setting 336
Streaming 332, 333
i-motion 332, 349
i-motion cutting 355
i-motion editing 354
Auto play setting 336
i-motion mail 260
Important information 584
Important Safety Information 591
Inbox 278
Inbox 278
Info notice setting 82
Infrared exchange 323, 330, 393
Infrared remote control 400
Initializing terminal 582
Check new message 234, 270
Check new SMS 304
Inquiry
Inserting blank (space) 508
Inserting space (blank) 508
Insertion mode 505
Installation 463, 468
International call 67, 539
International roaming 530
Internet 214
Int'l dial setting 69, 542
In-vehicle handsfree 72
i-shot 246
Auto start info 322
Auto start setting 321
Auto start setting 321
Bar code reader 324, 330
Camera 329
Communication setting 316
Deletion 328
Download 312
End 315
icons info 317
Ir-exchange 323, 330
i-αppli execution info 329
i-αppli menu 312
Phonebook/browsing records 317
Ring tone/changing images 318
Software info 314
Software info display setting 314
Software list 315
Start 315
Upgrade 327
i-αppli 310
i-αppli DX 310
i-αppli standby display 325
i-αppli standby display communication setting 326
i-αppli To function 323
i-αppli To setting 324
J
JUMP 509
K
Key 26, 27
2-touch input 559
5-touch input 558
T9 input 558
Keypad character assignments
Keypad dial lock 159
Keypad sound 129
Keypad sound/charge sound 129, 130
Kuten code list 565
L
Language 56
Last one function 444
Last URL 206
Lens selection switch 184, 194
Light 184
Limit Mail Size 243
Line feed 508
Lock function 156
Low-voltage alarm 56
M
Mail details screen 280
Mail illumination (→Utilities (phonebook)) 109
Mail list disp. 296
Mail list screen 279
Mail member 253
Mail member registration 297
Mail menu 248
Mail ring tone (→Utilities (phonebook)) 109
Check settings 301
Reset settings 301
Mail settings 291
Mail To function 226
Mail/Msg. ring time 131
Malfunction 570
Manner mode 132
Manner mode set 133
Marker stamp 346
Attachment 260
Download 223, 274
Melody 365
Memory info 192, 375, 390
Menu display set 425

Continued on next page

Menu functions 38
Menu list 554
Message auto display 234
Message display 296
Message list display 238
Check new message 234
Deletion 239
Filter 237
Msg. Request/Free 236
Msg. Request/Free list screen 236
No. of messages 240
Protect ON/OFF 238
Reception 232
Save image 222
Sort 237
Viewing Msg. Request/Free 236
Message service 202
miniSD format 391
Folder selection 372
miniSD memory card 376
miniSD reader writer 392
Missed alarm (→alarm notification) 411
Missed call 82
Missed call record (→Received call record) 75
Mobile phone information 207
Movie 180, 349, 354
Movie size setting 190
Movie storage setting 190
Movie type setting 189
Multi access 404, 567
Multi task 407, 567
My menu 213

N

N900iG communication setting file 463, 466
Network service 446, 538
Network switch 544
Neuropointer 30
No. of phonebook 120
Noise reduction 72
Notify caller ID 59, 64, 112, 482
Notify caller ID 112
Notify tone message 447
Notifying phone number 59, 64, 112, 482
NW search mode 545
NW security code 152

O

OBEX 393
On hold 79
On hold tone 80
Operation environment (data communication) 462, 468
Operational restriction function 48
Operator name disp 549
Options 568
Original animation 343
Original manner 133
Original menu 43
Outbox 278
Outbox 278
Call FNC/i-mode 552
Call FNC/Packet 552
Dialing assistance 539
Icon 535, 537
International roaming 530
International service 550
Int'l dial setting 542
Making a call 539
Network service 538
Network switch 544
NW search mode 545
Operator name disp 549
PLMN setting 547
Receiving a call 544
Roaming setting 549
Overseas use 529
Overwriting mode 505
Own dictionary 518
Own number 60, 426
Own phone number (your phone number) 60, 426

P

Packet communication 460, 461, 478
Password 210
Paste 135, 516
Pasted i-motion 299
Pasted melody 299
Pasted melody/Msg. 238
Pause dial 65
PC setting software 467, 468, 470
Personal data 426
Phone To function 225
Deletion 117
Editing 117
No. of phonebook 120
Search 114
Storage 104, 106, 107, 212
Phonebook 102
Photo mode selection 187
Picture voice 179
PIM lock 158
PIN lock release 155
PIN1code 47, 153
PIN1code input 155
PIN1code input setting 154
PIN2 code 47, 153
PIN1/PIN2 code change 154
Play/Erase msg. 85
Playing program 352, 367
PLMN setting 547
Plus (+) 68, 539
Pointer 30, 437
Power on/off 57
Power saver mode 145
Prediction 510, 521
Preferred input method (→character input method) 520
Prefix setting 66

Private information 158
Pull-down menu 209

Q

Quality alarm 130
Quick manual 596
Quick record message 85
Quick silent 74
Quotation mark 293
Quote 514
Quote own number 514
Quote phonebook 514

R

Radio button 209
Radio Frequency (RF) Signals 590
Random melody (Select ring tone) 124
Reading candidate 524
Rec. Chara-den 362
Recall 105, 250
Receive option 269
Receive option 269
Receive option setting 297
Received address 252, 289
Received call record 75
Receiving display 296
Reconnect control 71
Record display set 160
Record message 83, 85
- Record message 83
- Voice announce 128
- Voice memo 429

Recording
Redial 63
Register caller 452
Registering secret code 243
Registration for call rejection 452
Reject unknown 168
Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail 243
Rejecting mail 243
Reload 211
Reload image 237
Remote control 456
Remote monitor 98
Reply with quote 272
Rerecorded sound setting 358
Reserved update 588
Reset
- Desktop 39
- FOMA terminal 582
- Group name 109
- Personal data 428
- Reset call duration 430
- Reset i-mode settings 231
- Reset mail settings 301
- Reset settings 440

Reset call duration 430
Reset desktop 139
Reset last URL 231
Reset setting to the default 440, 582
Reset settings 440
Restrict dialing 164
Restrict dialing 164
- Checking 166
- Setting 165

Restrictions 164
Result code 499
Retouch 345
Ring tone (→Utilities) 109
Ring tone/melody/Chaku-motion list 125
Ring volume 126
Ringing time 167
Roaming 530
Roaming guidance (Int.) 551
Roaming setting 549
Rotating 347

S

SAR 590
Save image 222, 276
Saving set value 498
Schedule 413
Screen displayed when shooting 172
- Deletion 221
- Display 220
- Edit title 221
- No. of screen memo 221
- Protect ON/OFF 221
- Save 220
- Save image 222

Screen memo 220
Scroll 230, 295
Scrolling (function) 210
SD-PIM 385
Search 114, 285
Search mail 285
Search phonebook 114
Secret code 113
Secret mode 161
Secret only mode 161
Security 48
- Change security code 153

Security code 152
Security code 152
Security error history 329
Security setting 163
Select hold tone 80
Select image 96
Select ring tone 124
Selecting shutter sound 191
Self mode 157
Sent address 252, 289
Service 568
Service code 456
Service dial 454

Continued on next page

Set arrival act 455
Set as display 340
Set as home URL 219
Set local time 58
Set remote time 59
Setting clock 58
Setting date and time 58
Setting display size 189
Setting home URL 219
Setting Neuropointer 437
Short message (SMS)(→SMS) 302
Side keys guard 160
Signature 293
Quick silent 74
Super silent 133
Silent
Connecting to site 205
Displaying site 199
Site (program) connection service 199
Size for mail 348
Auto-sort setting 291
Checking stored count 282
copy 284
Deletion 287
Display 305
Filter 285
Folder 283
FOMA card operation 118, 307
Font size setting 295
Look-up address 302
Look-up mail 285
Mail setting 291
Protection/release 287
Reception 303
reedition 250
Return 305
Saving to FOMA card 118, 307
Saving(→SMS creation) 303
Send 302
Sending preview 303
SMS checking 304
SMS creation 302
Sort 285
Transfer 305
SMS 302
SMS center setting 307
SMS report display 303
SMS report setting 306
SMS report (sending notification) 303
SMS validation setting 306
Snooze setting 412
Software information 314
Software key 29
Sound effect 127
Sound effect setting 229
Speed photo auto disp. 300
Speed photo mail 263
SRS_WOW setting 127
Standby screen (→Display setting) 140
Standby screen (→Stand-by set) 325
Still image 174, 338, 344
Storing original menu 425
Storing word 518
Streaming 332
Subaddress setting 71
Super silent 133
Support service 583
Suspend Mail 243
Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch 504
Switching between lower case and upper case characters 505
Switching pages 42
Symbols and special characters list 559
T
T9 (Mode 3) 523
Talk time 51, 430
Template 259
Text box 209
Text memo 432
Time 58
TLS/SSL 201
TLS/SSL certification 212, 230
TLS/SSL communication 201, 212
ToDo 421
Tone on (→Fold setting) 75
Trim for image 354
Trim for mail 355
Trimming 347
Two-touch dialing 121
U
Uninstallation 467, 475
Updating software 585
Upgrade 327
Deleting URL records 215
Displaying URL 211
Entering URL 214
URL records 215
URL
USB cable 462
USB mode setting 393
User icon 416
User ID 210
Utilities (group) 109
Checking 111
Setting 110
Utilities (phonebook) 109
V
Vibrator 127
Vibrator (vibration) 127
Videophone 88
Camera image sending 95
Chara-den 93, 359
Disp. Setting V-phone 97
Display light 97
Image quality 95

Remote monitor 98
Select image 96
Substitute image 92, 95
Switching cameras (→Receiving a videophone call) 91
Voice call auto switch 98
Zoom 94
Videophone call 88
Viewer settings 339
Viewing image 207, 338
Voice announce 128
Voice call 62, 73
Voice call auto switch 98
Voice mail 164
Voice mail (Int.) 551
Voice mail service 446
Voice memo 85, 429
Voice memo during a call 429
Voice memo during standby 429

W

Wake-up 142
Warranty 583
Web page 214
Web To function 227
White balance 188
WORLD CALL 67
WORLD WING 530

Z

Zoom 94, 183
ZOOM 94, 183

Icons

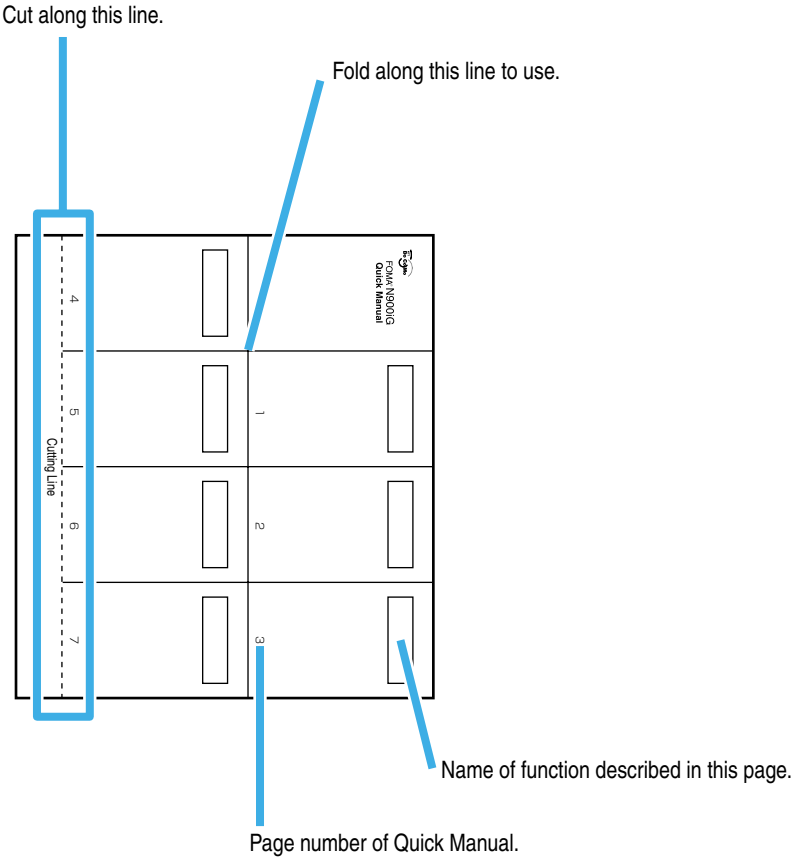
32
S, P 32
D, D/S, D/P 32
32
32
32
F, F 32
R, R 32
32
F, F 32
R, R 32
33
33
33
self 33
33
33
33
33
33
SSL 33
SD 33
Ir 33
SD, SD 33
33
TV 64 33
FOMA, 3G, GPRS, GSM 33,535
33
V, V, V 33
S, S, S 33
33
33
33
33
33
33
33
SIDE 33
33
33
33
33
JPG, JPG, JPG 369
GIF, GIF, GIF 369
JPG, JPG, JPG 369
GIF, GIF, GIF 369
369
369
172
33
33
33
33
68, 539

[MEMO]

[MEMO]

■How to use Quick Manual

- Quick Manual shows basic operations and displays of FOMA terminals.
- Quick Manual can be detached from this book and carried folded.
- Please detach one page at a time to avoid tearing other pages. Then please be careful not to hurt yourself.



NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® N900iG
Quick Manual

For inquiries 〈DoCoMo Information Center〉

■For DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

(no area code) **151** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※Not available for the general phones

■For general phones

0120-005-250 (in English)

※The DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs are also available.
●Please dial correctly.

For inquires - malfunctions

■For DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

(no area code) **113** (toll free)

※Not available for the general phones

■For general phones

0120-800-000

※The DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs are also available.
●Please dial correctly.
●For details, check the "Service station list" provided with the FOMA terminal.

PhoneBook Add to phonebook



1 Press ○ ➔ "Add to phonebook".
2 Select "Phone" or "UIM" ➔ Edit family name ➔ reading ➔ first name ➔ reading.
3 Set the respective items.

- Select the group (00 to 19)
- Store a telephone number (up to 4)
- Store a mail address (up to 3)
- Store a postal code and address
- Store a memo
- Store a still image
- Store a movie
- Store a memory number (000 to 699)*

※A memory number is assigned automatically if you do not select any number.

4 Press [Finish]
Only name, reading, group, telephone number, and mail address can be stored in the FOMA card.

To add data from the received call record
Press ○ ➔ highlight the received call record and then press [FUNC] ➔ "Add to phonebook" ➔ step 2.

To add data from the redial
Press ○ ➔ highlight the redial record and then press [FUNC] ➔ "Add to phonebook" ➔ step 2.

PhoneBook Search phonebook



Press ○ ➔ Select the search method.

To search by reading
Enter the reading and then press ○ or ○.

To search by name
Enter the name and then press ○ or ○.

To search by phone number
Enter the phone number and then press ○ or ○.

To search by mail address
Enter the mail address and then press ○ or ○.

To search by memory number
Enter the 3-digit memory number.
The FOMA card phonebook cannot be searched by memory number.

To search by group
Select the desired group.
Groups of the phonebook of the FOMA card are different from those of the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (main unit).

To search by column
To search the phonebook, press the key corresponding to the column ("ア" to "ワ", numerical symbols) of the first character.

PhoneBook Editing/deleting phonebook

●Editing the phonebook
1 Display the phonebook entry, and then press [Edit] ➔ Edit the respective items ➔ Press [Finish].
2 To store the edited entry in the main unit ➔ "YES"
To store the edited entry in the FOMA card phonebook ➔ "Overwrite" or "Add".

●Deleting the phonebook
Display the phonebook entry, and then press ➔ [FUNC] ➔ "Delete data" ➔ "This phonebook".

PhoneBook Utilities



●To set restrictions
Display the phonebook entry, and then press [FUNC] ➔ "Restrictions" ➔ Enter the security code ➔ select the item that you want to set.
"★" is attached to the function that you have set.

●To display the phone number just by opening the FOMA terminal
1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry ➔ press [FUNC] ➔ "Automatic disp.".
2 ○ ➔ ○ ➔ "Display" ➔ "Automatic display" ➔ "ON".

Character Entry Input method and mode



●Switching the input modes
Each time you press [Mode], the input mode changes in order.

5-touch (Mode 1)
Alphabet input mode ("あ") / Number input mode ("12") / Kanji/hiragana input mode ("漢") / Kana input mode ("ｶﾅ")

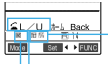
2-touch (Mode 2)
Full-pitch mode ("１/１") / Half-pitch mode ("1/1")

T9 (Mode 3)
Alphabet input mode ("あ") / Number input mode ("12") / Kanji/hiragana input mode ("漢") / Kana input mode ("ｶﾅ")

※When alphabet or number input mode is set, "5-touch (Mode 1)" is used.

●Switching the input method
Press [Mode] .
5-touch / 2-touch ("2") / T9 ("5")

Character Entry Input method and mode



●Switching between half-pitch ("1/1") and full-pitch ("１/１")
5-touch (Mode 1)
Press [FUNC] ➔ "Full pitch" or "Half pitch".
※Other than "kanji/hiragana input mode"
2-touch (Mode 2)
Press [Mode].
T9 (Mode 3)
Press [FUNC] ➔ "Full pitch" or "Half pitch".
※Other than "kanji/hiragana input mode"

●Switching between lower case and upper case characters
・Press [FUNC] ➔ "Upper case" or "Lower case".
・Place the cursor on the characters that you want to switch, and then press .

●Switching between insertion mode ("INS") and overwriting mode ("OVR")
Press [FUNC] ➔ "Insert" or "Overwrite".

Character Entry Input method and mode

<Example: To enter "鈴木" in 5-touch (Mode 1)>
Press [Mode] to switch to "Kanji/hiragana input mode" ➔ 3 2 × 3, 3 2 × 3, 0 × 4, 2 2 × 2
す す き
➔ Press ○ ➔ Press ○ or ○ to select "鈴木" from the conversion candidates and then press ● [Select].

<Example: To enter "鈴木" in 2-touch (Mode 2)>
Press [Mode] to switch to "Full-pitch input mode" ➔ 3 2 3 2, 3 2 3 2 0 4, 2 2 2 2
す す き
➔ Press ○ ➔ Press ○ or ○ to select "鈴木" from the conversion candidates and then press ● [Select].

<Example: To enter "鈴木" in "T9 (Mode 3)">
Press [Mode] to switch to "Kanji/hiragana input mode" ➔ 3 2, 3 2 0, 2 2 ➔ Press ○ or use the neuropointer to select "すずき" from the candidates for conversion. Then press ● [Select] ➔ ○ or ○ and select "鈴木" from the candidates to press ● [Select].

Character Entry Copying/cutting/pasting characters

●Copying and cutting characters
Press [FUNC] ➔ "Copy" or "Cut" ➔ Place the cursor on the starting point, and then press ● [Start] ➔ Place the cursor on the ending point, and then press ● [End].

●Pasting characters
Place the cursor where you paste the characters ➔ Press [FUNC] ➔ "Paste".

Character Entry Entering symbols/pictographs/face symbols

●Entering symbols and pictographs
・Press [FUNC] ➔ "Symbols" or "Pictograph" ➔ Select symbols or pictographs.
・Press [FUNC] ➔ "PI•SB input mode" ➔ Press [PI•SB] (switches the candidate screens) ➔ Select symbols or pictographs from the candidates.

●Entering symbols and face symbols with character conversion
・Enter symbols in "Kanji/hiragana input mode".
Enter symbol names such as "きごう", "かっこ" and "さんかく" ➔ Convert.
・Enter face symbols in "Kanji/hiragana input mode".
Enter "かお", "かおもじ", or the meanings of the face symbols such as "ありがとう" and "さよなら" ➔ Convert.

Cutting Line

Camera Useful functions

Still image shooting screen



A ● **Zoom**
Press ○ → ● [Set].
● **Lighting ON/OFF**
· Press ▯ [ON/OFF].
· Press ○ [Home].
●**Brightness**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "Brightness" → ○
B ●**To switch camera mode**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "Format setting" → Select the size.
※Picture sizes differ depending on the camera mode.

Movie shooting screen



●**To change the camera**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → Select "Front camera/Rear camera".
●**To check the memory**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → select "Memory info".
●**Auto timer**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "Auto timer" → "ON" → Set the time (01 to 15 seconds) → Shoot.
●**White balance (adjust the color with some light source)**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "White balance" → Select the best setting.

Camera Taking picture (still image)

1 **Press ▯ → → "Camera" → "Photo mode" or "Mega pixel mode" → Display the subject and then press ● [Record] or ○ [Memo/Check].**
Photo mode : picture size 640 x 480 pixels (at maximum)
Mega pixel mode : picture size 1280 x 960 pixels (at maximum)
2 **When Auto save set is set to "OFF", press ● [Save] → "YES" → Select "Phone" or "miniSD" → If you select "Phone", select folder.**

To restart taking
Press ▯ [Cancel] or ○ → "YES" in Step 2.
When a message indicating that the process is in progress appears immediately after shooting, do not move the FOMA terminal.

Camera Shooting movies

1 **Press ▯ → → "Camera" → "Movie mode" or "Long duration mode" → Display the subject and then press ● [Record] or ○ [Memo/Check] → ● [Stop] or ○ [Memo/Check].**
2 **When Auto save set is set to "OFF", press ● [Save] → "YES" → Edit the title if needed and then press ● [Set] → select "Phone" or "miniSD" → If you select "Phone", select folder.**

To check the movie before saving
Press ▯ [Play] in Step 2.

To restart shooting
Press ▯ [FUNC] in Step 2 → "Cancel" → "YES".
※Movies shot in Long Duration mode are automatically saved in the miniSD memory card.

Camera Displaying image/playing movie

Select ▯ → → "Image" (for image) or "i motion" (for movie) → Select the folder → Select the image or movie

●**Operations while displaying image**
Press ○ to display the previous or next image.
Press ○ to close the display.

To change the size of screen display
Select ▯ [FUNC] → "Set image disp." → Select the display size.

●**Operations while running a movie**
Press ● to pause and resume run.
Press ○ to run the previous/next movie.
Press ○ perform skip forward.
Press ○ to exit.
Press ⑦(ｳ) or ⑨(ｴ) to adjust volume.
Press ▯ to mute.
Press ○ perform skip rewind.
Press ▯ to fast forward.

To run a movie slowly or fast
Select ● [Stop] (run is paused) → ▯ [FUNC] → "Slow" or "Fast".

Videophone call Making videophone call

Dial the phone number starting with the area code, press → press when you finish.

To call a general phone : Area code + City code + Subscriber number
To call a mobile phone : 090-XXXX-XXXX or 080-XXXX-XXXX

●**Operations while calling**
Press ▯ to switch to handsfree or cancel.
Press ● to switch cameras between in-camera and out-camera.
Press ○ to zoom your camera image in and out.
Press ○ to put a call on hold.
To answer an on-hold call with a camera view
Press .
To answer with a substitute image
Press .

Videophone call Receiving videophone call



When a videophone call comes in, press → press when you finish.

To answer with a substitute image
Press or ● [Answer].

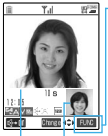
To forward an incoming videophone call
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "Call forwarding".
※A subscription to the "Call forwarding service" is required. (free)

To deliberately reject an incoming videophone call
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "Call rejection".
When you answer a videophone call by pressing a key on the earphone/microphone with switch (optional), or when you set Automatic answer to ON, you can automatically answer a videophone call with a substitute image. (You can switch after answering a call.)

●**Operations while talking**
Press to switch between the camera view and a substitute image.
Press ○ to zoom your camera image in and out.

●**Operations while receiving**
Press to put an incoming call on hold.
Press to answer the videophone call put on hold with a camera image.
Press or ● [Answer] to answer it with a substitute image.

Videophone call Operations while calling



Main screen Sub screen

●**To switch camera images between main screen and sub screen**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "Camera image" or "Other image".

●**To adjust brightness**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "V-phone settings" → "Brightness" → ○.

●**White balance (adjust the color with some light source)**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "V-phone settings" → "White balance" → select the best setting.

Mail Sending mail



1 **Select ▯ MAIL → "Compose message" → ▯ [FUNC] → "Look-up address" → "Phonebook" → search the phonebook and select the mail address of the recipient.**
To add receiver
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "Add receiver".
To : You can add up to 5 receivers in total. You can omit '@docomo.ne.jp'.
2 **Enter the subject and message.**
Subject : Enter the subject and press ● [Set].
: Enter the message and press ● [Set].
3 **Check the preview screen and press ▯ [Send].**

● **To send a greeting card**
After Step 1, press ▯ [FUNC] → "Template" → select the template and go to Step 2 (Edit the message).
●**To decorate message (Deco-mail)**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "Decorate mail" → select the decoration → enter the characters that you want to decorate.
If you select "Blink", "Ticker" and "Swing" for decoration.
After entering the characters that you want to decorate, press ▯ [FUNC] → "Decorate mail" → select previously selected decoration →

Mail Receiving mail



●**To check new messages**
· Select MAIL → "Check new message".
· Select MAIL LONG.
●**To display received i-mode mail**
Select MAIL → "Inbox" → Select the folder → select an i-mode mail that you want to display.
To display the previous or next i-mode mail
Press ○ in the received mail details screen.
● **To forward the received mail**
Press ▯ [FUNC] → "Forward" → edit the address and send.
※The subject will be the "Fw:(the subject of received mail)" format if you do not edit anything.
●**To reply to the received mail**
Press ▯ [Reply] in the received mail details screen → (If the received mail contains more than one address) "To sender" or "To all" → edit the subject and message, and then send.
※The subject will be the "Re:(the subject of received mail)" format if you do not edit anything.

Cutting Line

Menu Menu List

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Mail	Inbox	
	Outbox	
	Draft	
	Compose message	
	Compose SMS	
	Check new message	
	Receive option	
	Check new SMS	
	Mail settings	
i-mode	iMenu	
	Bookmark	
	Screen memo	
	Last URL	
	Go to location	
	Message	
	Check new message	
	i-mode settings	
i-αppli	Software list	
	Auto start set	
	i-αppli info	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume(5 0)
		Select ring tone(1 3)

Menu Menu List

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Incoming call	SRS_WOW setting
		Vibrator(5 4)
		Illumination(8 9)
		Manner mode set(2 0)
		Disp. Phonebook image
		Answer setting(5 8)
		Fold setting(1 8)
		Call FNC/i-mode(6 9)
		Call FNC/Packet
		Mail/Msg. ring time(6 8)
		Ringing time(9 0)
		Info notice setting(6 5)
	Talk	Noise reduction(7 6)
		Quality alarm(7 5)
		Reconnect control(7 7)
		Illumination in talk
		Select hold tone
	Video-phone	Image quality
		Camera image sending
		Select image
		Voice call auto switch

Menu Menu List

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Video-phone	Remote monitor
		Disp. Setting V-phone
	Display	Display setting(5 6)
		Display light(7 0)
		Color pattern(8 6)
		Image window(9 3)
		Font(6 6)
		Desktop icon(6 3)
		Select language(1 5)
		Original menu(5 2)
		Menu display set(5 7)
		Viewer settings
		Automatic display(4 7)
		Icons(3 6)
	Call data	Last call duration(6 1)
		Reset call duration(6 0)
		Call time display(4 8)
	Clock	Set local time(3 1)
		Clock display(3 9)
		Set remote time
		Alarm setting

Menu Menu List

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Lock/Security	All lock
		PIM lock
		Self mode
		Keypad dial lock
		Reject unknown
		FDN setting (Not available)
		Call setting w/o ID(1 0)
		Change security code(2 9)
		PIN setting
		Secret mode(4 0)
		Secret only mode(4 1)
	Connection setting	Connection timeout
		i-mode checking
		Host selection(8 1)
		SMS center selection
		Certificate
	i-αppli settings	Display software info
		αDisplay light
		αVibrator
		αImage window
		End stand-by display

Menu Menu List

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	External option	Earphone(5 1)
		Automatic answer(9 4)
	Network setting	Prefix setting
		Int'l dial setting
		NW search mode
		PLMN setting
		Operator name disp
		Network switch
	Other settings	Keypad sound(3 0)
		Charge sound
		Battery level(7 1)
		Side keys guard(LONG)
		Input method(3 5)
		Record display set
		Pause dial(8 4)
		Subaddress setting
		Neuropointer
		USB mode setting
		Reset settings(2 3)
		Initialize
		Software update

Menu Menu List

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Multimedia	Image(4 6)	
	i-Motion	
	Melody(1 6)	
	Chara-den	
Accessory	Camera	
	Schedule(4 5)	
	Alarm clock(4 4)	
	ToDo(9 5)	
	Text memo(4 2)	
	Calculator(8 5)	
	Play/Erase msg.( )	
	Record message(5 5)	
	Voice memo during standby(4 3)	
	Voice memo during a call(LONG) (displayed while being online only)	
	Voice announce(9 1)	
	Ir exchange(7 9)	
	UIM operation	
	Forwarding image	
	Bar code reader	
	SD-PIM	
	Dictionary	

Menu Menu List

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Service	Check messages(2 5)	
	Notify caller ID(7 7)	
	Voice mail	
	Call waiting	
	Call forwarding	
	Bar nuisance call	
	Caller ID request	
	Arrival call act	
	Set arrival act	
	Remote control	
	Dual network	
	English guidance	
	International service	
	Roaming setting	
	Additional service	
	Service dial	
	Call barrings (Not available with the FOMA terminal)	
Phonebook	Add to phonebook	
	Search phonebook	
	No. of phonebook(2 2)	
	Utilities(6 2)	

Menu Menu List

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Phonebook	Restrictions(1 2)	
	Group setting(2 6)	
Own Data	Own number(0)	
	Received calls(2 4)	
	Dialled calls	
	Mail member(9 7)	
	Common phrases(3 8)	
	Own dictionary(8 2)	
	DL dictionary	

Menu Other Settings

- Manner mode (LONG) (Set or cancel every pressing.)
- Driving mode (LONG) (Set or cancel every pressing.)
- Side keys guard (LONG) (Set or cancel every pressing.)
- Check new message (LONG)
- Earpiece Volume During standby : (LONG) During a call : or

Cutting Line

Network Services



●**Voice mail service**
Subscription is necessary. (charged)
1 **Select** ➔ **"Voice mail".**
2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**
To check whether voice mail messages are stored
Select ➔ "Check messages".



●**Call waiting**
Subscription is necessary. (charged)
1 **Select** ➔ **"Call waiting".**
2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**
●**Activating the call waiting service**
1 **Put the current voice call on hold to answer another voice call.**
After hearing a single hold tone (ppp...ppp...) during a call ➔ press [C] or [●][Answer].

2 **Switch the calls**
To hung up the second call.
Press [C] ➔ [C] or [●][Answer] to answer the first call.
To put the second call on hold
Press [C] (The call is switched each time you press).
If you press [C] while talking on either line, the call is finished. Press [C] or [●][Answer] to answer another line.

Network Services



●**Call forwarding service**
Subscription is necessary. (free)
1 **Select** ➔ **"Call forwarding".**
2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**



●**Bar nuisance call service**
Subscription is necessary. (charged)
1 **Select** ➔ **"Bar nuisance call".**
2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**
The number of the last call that you received can be registered for call rejection in "Register caller".
To register a specific nuisance phone number
Press [1][4][4][C] ➔ follow the voice guidance.



●**Caller ID request service**
Subscription is not necessary. (free)
The caller ID request service responds to voice calls that do not provide a Caller ID by playing an announcement that requests a Caller ID and then automatically terminating the call.
1 **Press** ➔ **"Caller ID request".**
2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**

Network Services



●**Notify caller ID service**
Subscription is not necessary. (free)
1 **Press** ➔ **"Notify caller ID".**
2 **Select from the menu the operation you want to set.**



●**Dual network service**
Subscription is necessary. (charged)
The dual network service is that in which you can use the same phone number for both the FOMA terminal and the mova.
1 **Press** ➔ **"Dual network".**
2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Collect call (calls charged to the receiver)	(No area code) **106**
Directory information for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (charged) ※Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given.	(No area code) **104**
Telegram (charged) ※8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) **115**
Time (charged)	(No area code) **117**
Weather forecast (charged)	Area code of an area you want to know - 177
Emergency call to the police	(No area code) **110**
Emergency call for a fire engine or an ambulance	(No area code) **119**
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents	(No area code) **118**
Emergency Message Recording System (charged)	(No area code) **171**

※An emergency call to the fire station or police station concerned may be interrupted in some areas. In that case, call again from a public phone or other land line.

WORLD CALL (NTT DoCoMo's International Dialing Service)

009130 - 010 - country code - area code - recipient's number ➔ [C]

If the area code starts with "0", omit this "0" when dialing the number. However, for some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required for dialing.

※FOMA subscribers are also subscribed for the "WORLD CALL" service when they apply for the FOMA service (except subscribers who have specified that they do not want the WORLD CALL service).

Icons Notification icons



Battery level
Unread mail
Signal strength indicator
"圏外" is displayed when you are outside of the service area or in a place which the signal cannot reach.
miniSD memory card attached
Currently accessing network

You can operate the following functions by performing the indicated procedure below.
Press [●] ➔ select the icon and press [●] [Select].

Desktop icon	Call up the functions stored as desktop icons.
New mail	Display the Inbox folder.
Missed call	Display the missed call history.
Record message	Display the "Play/Erase msg." screen.
Voice mail	Display the "Voice mail" screen.
Missed alarm	Display the alarm information screen.
Not run soft	Display the auto start info screen.
Secure error hist.	Display the security error log.
Check update	Display the updated results.

Icons Display



Displayed while All lock is activated
Displayed in the Secret mode or Secret only mode
Displayed while PIM lock is activated
Displayed while Keypad dial lock is activated
Displayed while Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode
Displayed while PIM lock and Keypad dial lock

Displayed when Vibrator is set
Displayed when Ring volume is set to Silent
Displayed in the Manner mode
Displayed in the Driving mode
Displayed when Alarm is set
Displayed when Record message is set
Displayed when the backlight is set to "OFF".
Side keys unavailable



●**Check the meanings of icons.**
Select [7][6]➔Select an icon.

Icons Image window



●**Notification icons**
Battery level
Unread mail
Signal strength indicator
"圏外" is displayed when you are outside of the service area or in a place which the signal cannot reach.
miniSD memory card attached
Currently accessing network

●**During a setting display**
Manner mode
Driving mode
One or some of Secret mode, Secret only mode, PIM lock and Keypad dial lock are set
Side keys unavailable

For inquiries〈DoCoMo Information Center〉

■**For DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs**
(no area code) **151** (toll free) (in Japanese only)
※Not available for the general phones

■**For general phones**
0120-005-250 (in English)
※The DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs are also available.
●Please dial correctly.

For inquires - malfunctions

■**For DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs**
(no area code) **113** (toll free)
※Not available for the general phones

■**For general phones**
0120-800-000
※The DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs are also available.
●Please dial correctly.
●For details, check the "Service station list" provided with the FOMA terminal.

Cutting Line

NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® N900iG
Quick Manual (For Overseas)

For lost, stolen, and account settlement of total charges

〈DoCoMo Information Center〉(24 hours) (in Japanese only)

●Universal number

International phone codes for Universal Number (Table 1) **-800-0120-0151**

※Domestic dialing charges may apply in your destination country or region.

●When the Universal Number is not available

International access numbers for your staying country (Table 2) **-81-3-5366-3114**※

※Dialing charges for calls to Japan will apply.

※For calling from 900iG, using +81-3-5366-3114 enables connection. (Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or more to dial "+".)

※See p.15 for the international phone codes for Universal Number (Table 1) and the International access numbers (Table 2).

For inquires - malfunctions

〈Network Operation Center〉(24 hours)

●Universal number

International phone codes for Universal Number (Table 1) **-800-5931-8600**

※Domestic dialing charges may apply in your destination country or region.

●When the Universal Number is not available

International access numbers for your staying country (Table 2) **-81-3-6718-1414**※

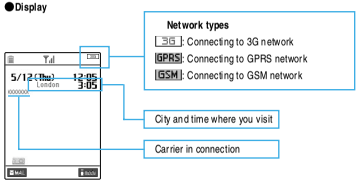
※Dialing charges for calls to Japan will apply.
※The numbers may be changed in Tables 1 and 2.

※For calling from 900iG, using +81-3-6718-1414 enables connection. (Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or more to dial "+".)

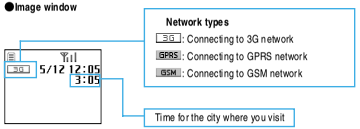
※See p.15 for the international phone codes for Universal Number (Table 1) and the International access numbers (Table 2).

For Overseas Screen display

●Display



●Image window



Power on the FOMA terminal again when using it for the first time after moving overseas from Japan.

For Overseas Setting the Time

●Setting the city and time for the remote clock

1 → Settings → "Clock" → "Set remote time" → "Time zone" → Select the city.

●Showing the city and time of the remote clock on the display

1 → Settings → "Clock" → "Clock display" → "Object" → "Local&Remote"

●Showing the time for the city of the remote clock on the image window

1 → Settings → "Display" → "Image window" → "ON" → "Clock type" → "local&remote" → "ON" or "OFF"

●Setting the summer time

1 → Settings → "Clock" → "Set remote time" → "Summer time" → "ON"

For Overseas Communication Service Differences According to the Network

Services may not be available depending on the local network or area even if the following table indicates "○" (the available network service).

	Voicephone calls	Videophone calls	i-mode	Receiving Msg. Request/Free	i-mode mails	Packet communication performed by connecting to a machine such as PC	SMS transmission
3G	○	○	○	○※2	○	○	○
GPRS	○	×※1	○	○※2	○	○	○
GSM	○	×※1	×	×	×	×	○

○ : Available
× : Not available

※1 : Operation cannot be performed even if you receive the incoming videophone calls. If you set "Voice call auto switch" to "ON", a voicephone may automatically be called back.

※2 : No Msg. Free reception

For Overseas Calls with the Phonebook

If the callee uses the local provider supporting the FOMA videophone, pressing instead of enables a call as a videophone.

How to make a call using your phonebook depending on the way to store the number:

●**For any Japanese phone numbers without addition**

Call up the phone number ➔ ※1 ➔ "Dial"

●**For any Japanese phone numbers with "+" and "country code"** ※2

Call up the phone number ➔

●**For any non-Japanese phone numbers without addition** ※3 **to make a domestic call from your staying area**

Call up the phone number ➔ ➔ "Original phone No."

●**For any non-Japanese phone numbers without addition** ※3 **to make an overseas call from your staying area** ※3

Call up the phone number ➔ [FUNC] ➔ "International Call" ➔ Select the country ➔ Press

●**For any non-Japanese phone numbers with "+" and "country code"** ※2

Call up the phone number ➔

※1 : "AUTO" must be set to "Auto assist setting" in "Int'l dial setting".

※2 : When the area code of the phone number starts with "0", omit the "0" and register the rest of the number. However, the first "0" is required for some countries/regions including Italy. Japanese mobile phone and PHS numbers should also be registered omitting the initial "0".

※3 : The first "0" of the area code may be required for some countries/regions, including Italy. In such a case, do not register the number in that form, but register the phone number adding "+" and "Country Code".

For Overseas Calling to Japan

Follow the operations in "Overseas Calls (Including Japan) from Abroad" if the phone numbers are not added in the phonebook.

1 **Displaying the phonebook detail screen.**

2 **Press or [Dial] to make a call.**

The first "0" is replaced with "+" and "81" (Japanese country code) and the screen prompts you to confirm whether you will make an international call or not.

For a videophone call

Press .

3 **Select "Dial" to make a call.**

For Overseas Domestic Calls

If the callee is a "WORLD WING" user overseas, even if in the same local area as you, make the call as an international call to Japan as shown in "Making a call to Japan" or "Making a call to another country (including Japan) while you are in a foreign country".

1 **Dial the number for the callee.**

2 **Press or [Dial] to make a call.**

For a videophone call

Press .

For Overseas Overseas Calls (Including Japan) from Abroad

●**To make a call to a country set in "Int'l dial setting"**

1 **Dial the number for the callee.**

2 [FUNC] ➔ **[International Call] ➔ Select the country**

If the callee is a "WORLD WING" user overseas, select "日本" as the country.

3 **Press or [Dial] to make a call.**

For a voicephone call

Press .

●**Making a call to Italy or some other country/region or a country that is not set in "Int'l dial setting"**

You may need the initial "0" to make a call to some countries/regions, including Italy.

1 **On the standby display, enter "+" (press and hold for 1 second or more) - Country code - Area code - Local phone number.**

When the area code starts with "0", omit the initial "0" to enter. However, you may need the initial "0" to make a call to some countries/regions, including Italy. If the callee is a "WORLD WING" user overseas, select "81"(Japan) as the country code.

2 **Press or [Dial] to make a call.**

For a videophone call

Press .

For Overseas Easy Calling

●**To set "+" and "81" automatically appended when making an international call**

1 ➔ Settings ➔ **"Network setting" ➔ "Int'l dial setting" ➔ "Auto assist setting" ➔ "AUTO"**

To not set it automatically

Select "OFF".

2 **Select "日本"(Japan).**

●**Setting the country code**

1 ➔ Settings ➔ **"Network setting" ➔ "Int'l dial setting" ➔ "IDD prefix setting".**

2 **<Not stored> ➔ [Edit]**

To edit the entry already set

Select the entry ➔ [Edit]

3 **Enter the country name.**

4 **Enter the country code.**

Cutting Line

For Overseas Receiving a Call

●To receive a call

1 When a call comes in, press [ ] or [●] [Answer] to answer the call.

For a videophone call

Camera view: Press [ ]

Substitute image: Press [ ] or [●] [Answer]

●Calling from the callee

To let the callee make a call from Japan

090-XXXX-XXXX
or
080-XXXX-XXXX

To let the callee make a call from other than Japan

International access number*-81 (Country code for Japan) -90-XXXX-XXXX
or
80-XXXX-XXXX
(No 0 at the begging)

※If a call is made from a mobile phone, "+" may be dialed instead of the international access number depending on the mobile phone.

For Overseas Setting Network Mode Switchover

Default setting: Auto

1 [ ] ➔ [Settings] ➔ "Network setting" ➔ "Network switch"

2 Select an item to be set

Auto: Performs automatic network switchover between 3G and GSM/GPRS networks abroad, while the FOMA network connection is performed in Japan.

3G: Performs the 3G-network connection abroad and the FOMA network connection in Japan.

GSM: Uses only GSM/GPRS network

For Overseas Network Detection

Default setting: Auto

●Switching the network manually

1 [ ] ➔ [Settings] ➔ "Network setting" ➔ "NW search mode"

2 Select "Manual"

3 Select a network

●Re-searching accessible networks

1 [ ] ➔ [Settings] ➔ "Network setting" ➔ "NW search mode" ➔ "Network re-search"

When "Auto" is set

Automatic switchover

When "Manual" is set

Select a network to be accessed.

For Overseas Preferred Networks

●Adding a network in your PLMN list

1 [ ] ➔ [Settings] ➔ "Network setting" ➔ "PLMN setting"

To select a preferred network from the network list

[ ] [FUNC] ➔ "UPLMN by list" ➔ Select a network to add as a preferred network. ➔ [●] [Set] ➔ Set the network type. ➔ [ ] [Finish]

To add a new network not stored

[ ] [FUNC] ➔ "UPLMN manual" ➔ Set each item. ➔ [●] [Set] ➔ Set the network type. ➔ [ ] [Finish]

●Adding the currently visited network in your PLMN list

1 [ ] ➔ [Settings] ➔ "Network setting" ➔ "PLMN setting" ➔ [ ] [FUNC] ➔ Select "Set VPLMN to UPLMN". ➔ [ ] [Finish]

●Setting the priority ranking for your PLMN list

1 [ ] ➔ [Settings] ➔ "Network setting" ➔ "PLMN setting" ➔ Select a network. ➔ [ ] [FUNC] ➔ "Change Priority" ➔ Select a priority ranking. ➔ [ ] [Finish]

For Overseas Displaying the network

Default setting: display ON

1 [ ] ➔ [Settings] ➔ "Network setting" ➔ "Operator name disp" ➔ Select an item to be set.

display ON: Displays the network name on the standby display

display OFF: Not display the network name on the standby display

For Overseas Operations during International roaming

●Activating Roaming guidance

1 [ ] ➔ [Service] ➔ "Roaming setting" ➔ "Roaming guidance"

2 Select "Activate".

To stop the roaming guidance

Select "Deactivate".

●Not accepting incoming calls during international roaming

1 [ ] ➔ [Service] ➔ "Roaming setting" ➔ "Call barring"

2 Select "Activate BIC-Roam".

To deactivate call barring

Select "Deactivate BIC-Roam".

3 Select an item to be set.

All incoming calls: Restricts all incoming calls

Data incoming calls: Restricts incoming Videophone call only

4 Enter the NW security code.

For Overseas Using Network Services

●Performing voice mail service operations

1 [ ] ➔ [Service] ➔ "International service" ➔ "Voice mail (Int.)"

2 Select the desired operation. ➔ Select "YES". ➔ Follow the guidance with voice.

Activate voice mail: Activates the voice mail service

Deactivate voice mail: Deactivates the voice mail service

Play messages: Replays the voice messages

Voice mail settings: Changes the callee-absent guidance function or the answering message.

●Performing call forwarding service operations

1 [ ] ➔ [Service] ➔ "International service" ➔ "Call forwarding (Int.)"

2 Select the desired operation. ➔ Select "YES". ➔ Follow the guidance with voice.

Activate CF: Activates the call forwarding service

Deactivate CF: Deactivates the call forwarding service

●Performing roaming guidance operations

1 [ ] ➔ [Service] ➔ "International service" ➔ "Roaming guidance (Int.)". ➔ Select "YES". ➔ Follow the guidance with voice.

For Overseas Answering

●Setting how to answer a call during i-mode communications.

Default setting: Answer

1 [ ] ➔ [Settings] ➔ "Incoming call" ➔ "Call FNC/i-mode" ➔ Select an item to be set.

Answer: Answers a call

Call rejection: Records a call as a missed call without answering a call

●Setting how to answer a call during packet communications.

1 [ ] ➔ [Service] ➔ "Incoming call" ➔ "Call FNC/Packet" ➔ Select an item to be set.

Answer: Answers a call

Call rejection: Records a call as a missed call without answering a call

For Overseas Useful Functions

●Setting an answer message of the record message to English.

Default setting:Japanese 1

1 [ ] ➔ [Memory] ➔ "Record message" ➔ "ON" ➔ "English"

2 Enter the ringing time.

●Using the dictionary

1 [ ] ➔ [ ] ➔ "Dictionary"

2 Select "Enter word" ➔ Enter a word to search.

3 Select the English-Japanese dictionary or the Japanese-English.

4 Select a word from the search result list.

For Overseas After traveling

●Setting back so that the FOMA network may be available

1 [ ] ➔ [Settings] ➔ "Network setting" ➔ "Network switch"

2 Select "Auto" or "3G".

For Overseas Country codes

As of October, 2004

Area	Code	Area	Code
USA	1	Canada	1
UK	44	Korea (South)	82
Italy	39	Greece	30
Indonesia	62	Singapore	65
Australia	61	Switzerland	41

※Check the WORLD WING website for other country codes and additional information.

For Overseas International phone codes for Universal Number (Table 1)

Area	Code	Area	Code
USA	011	Korea (South)	001
UK	00	Singapore	001
Italy	00	Switzerland	00
Australia	0011	Thailand	001
Canada	011	Taiwan	00

※Check the WORLD WING website for other country codes and additional information.

For Overseas International access numbers (Table 2)

Area	Code	Area	Code
USA	011	Canada	011
UK	00	Korea (South)	001
Italy	00	Greece	00
Indonesia	001	Singapore	001
Australia	00/900/90	Switzerland	00

※Check the WORLD WING website for other country codes and additional information.

Cutting Line

Using your FOMA terminal politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, don't forget to consider the feelings of the people around you.

Always turn your FOMA terminal off in the following situations:

■ In places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited

There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Always turn your FOMA terminal off in such places.

・In aircraft ・In hospitals

※Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby or waiting room, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.

■ When you are driving

Using your FOMA terminal while you are driving may hamper safe driving and must be avoided as a dangerous practice.

※Park your car in a safe place before using your terminal or set the driving mode while you are driving.

■ When you are in a crowded place such as on trains in case you may be near the people who is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.

■ When you are in public places such as a theater, cinema or gallery

Using your FOMA terminal in public places where quiet is needed can annoy the people around you.

Be aware of where you use the FOMA terminal and the volume of your voice and the ring tone

■Take care not to speak too loudly when you use your FOMA terminal in quiet locations such as restaurants and hotel lobbies.

■Take care not to obstruct other people when you use your FOMA terminal in shopping areas, etc.

The privacy should be protected

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Use these FOMA functions to avoid offending people around you

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with convenient functions that remove the need to answer incoming calls and mute all the sounds made by the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original Manner mode]

Manner mode mutes the sounds made by the FOMA terminal, such as the keypad sounds and the ring tone. In Original Manner mode, you can also change settings by function, such as the record message, vibrator or ring tone. However, neither the Manner mode nor the Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound the cameras make.

[Driving mode]

In this mode, the FOMA terminal plays an announcement informing the caller that you are driving and cannot answer the phone, and then terminates the call. This promotes safe driving since the FOMA terminal does not ring.

[Vibrator]

This makes the FOMA terminal vibrate rather than ring when a call comes in.

[Record message function]

When you cannot take calls, this function allows the caller to leave a recorded message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice mail service (p.446) and Call forwarding service (p.450).

You can subscribe “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Waiting”, “Call Forwarding Service”, “Bar Nuisance Call Service”, “WORLD CALL” and “WORLD WING” at the DoCoMo e-site.

●For i-mode　iMenu ▶ □料金&お申込 ▶ ■ドコモeサイト　**Fee free for the packet communication**

●For PC　http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/ ▶ オンライン手続き/照会サービス ▶ ドコモeサイト
or http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/

※To access e-site via i-mode, your “NW security code” applied to NTT DoCoMo is required.
※The packet communication fee for e-site via i-mode is free. However, you may be changed for some contents.
※To access e-site from your PC, your “User ID” and “Password” are required.
※If you lose or forget your “NW security code”, “User ID” and “Password”, please contact inquiry offices shown below.
※Depending on contracts, you may not be able to access e-site.
※You may not be able to access e-site due to system maintenance etc.
※Some payment plans may not be available.

For inquiries〈DoCoMo Information Center〉

■For DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※Not available for the general phones

■For general phones

0120-005-250 (in English)

※The DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs are also available.
●Please dial correctly.

For inquires - malfunctions

■For DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

(No prefix) **113** (toll free)

※Not available for the general phones

■For general phones

0120-800-000

※The DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs are also available.
●Please dial correctly.
●For details, check the “Service station list” provided with a FOMA terminal.

For lost, stolen, and account settlement of total charges

〈DoCoMo Information Center〉(24 hours) (in Japanese only)

●Universal number

International phone codes for Universal Number (Table 1) **-800-0120-0151**

※Domestic dialing charges may apply in your destination country or region.

●When the Universal Number is not available

International access numbers for your staying country (Table 2) **-81-3-5366-3114**※

※Dialing charges for calls to Japan will apply.
※For calling from 900iG, using +81-3-5366-3114 enables connection. (Press and hold the “0” key for 1 second or more to dial “+”.)
※See p.533 for the international phone codes for Universal Number (Table 1) and/or the International access numbers (Table 2).

For inquires - malfunctions

〈Network Operation Center〉(24 hours)

●Universal number

International phone codes for Universal Number (Table 1) **-800-5931-8600**

※Domestic dialing charges may apply in your destination country or region.

●When the Universal Number is not available

International access numbers for your staying country (Table 2) **-81-3-6718-1414**※

※Dialing charges for calls to Japan will apply.
※The numbers may be changed in Tables 1 and 2.
※For calling from 900iG, using +81-3-6718-1414 enables connection. (Press and hold the “0” key for 1 second or more to dial “+”.)
※See p.533 for the international phone codes for Universal Number (Table 1) and/or the International access numbers (Table 2).



Don’t forget your cellular phone … or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in public, don’t forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales:　NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.　NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.　NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.　NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.　NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.　NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.　NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation

Li-ion

To protect the environment, return used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailers, or a recycling agency.

This manual is made of 100% recycled paper.

PRINTED WITH SOY INK
This manual is printed with soy based ink.

’04.12（1st Edition）
MDS-000055-EAA0